



University of Kentucky
UKnowledge

Spanish Literature

European Languages and Literatures

2003

Amadis of Gaul, Books I and II: A Novel of Chivalry of the 14th Century Presumably First Written in Spanish

Garci R. de Montalvo

Edwin B. Place

Herbert C. Behm

[Click here to let us know how access to this document benefits you.](#)



Thanks to the [University of Kentucky Libraries](#) and the [University Press of Kentucky](#), this book is freely available to current faculty, students, and staff at the University of Kentucky.

Find other University of Kentucky Books at uknowledge.uky.edu/upk. For more information, please contact UKnowledge at uknowledge@lsv.uky.edu.

Recommended Citation

de Montalvo, Garci R.; Place, Edwin B.; and Behm, Herbert C., "Amadis of Gaul, Books I and II: A Novel of Chivalry of the 14th Century Presumably First Written in Spanish" (2003). *Spanish Literature*. 3.
https://uknowledge.uky.edu/upk_spanish_literature/3

Amadis of Gaul

BOOKS I AND II



TRANSLATED BY

Edwin Place and Herbert Behm

STUDIES IN ROMANCE LANGUAGES: 11

John E. Keller, Editor

This page intentionally left blank

AMADIS OF GAUL

BOOKS I AND II

A NOVEL OF CHIVALRY OF THE 14TH CENTURY
PRESUMABLY FIRST WRITTEN IN SPANISH

*Revised and Reworked
by Garci Rodríguez de Montalvo
prior to 1505*

*Translated from the Putative Princeps
of Saragossa, 1508*

BY
EDWIN B. PLACE AND HERBERT C. BEHM

With a New Foreword by John E. Keller

THE UNIVERSITY PRESS OF KENTUCKY

Publication of this volume was made possible in part by grants from the Program for Cultural Cooperation between Spain's Ministry of Education and Culture and United States Universities, and the National Endowment for the Humanities.

Copyright © 1974, 2003 by The University Press of Kentucky

The University Press of Kentucky
Scholarly publisher for the Commonwealth,
serving Bellarmine University, Berea College, Centre
College of Kentucky, Eastern Kentucky University,
The Filson Historical Society, Georgetown College,
Kentucky Historical Society, Kentucky State University,
Morehead State University, Murray State University,
Northern Kentucky University, Transylvania University,
University of Kentucky, University of Louisville,
and Western Kentucky University.
All rights reserved.

Editorial and Sales Offices: The University Press of Kentucky
663 South Limestone Street, Lexington, Kentucky 40508-4008
www.kentuckypress.com

Cataloging-in-Publication Data is available from
the Library of Congress.

ISBN 978-0-8131-9034-1 (pbk: acid-free paper)

This book is printed on acid-free recycled paper meeting
the requirements of the American National Standard
for Permanence in Paper for Printed Library Materials.



Manufactured in the United States of America.



Member of the Association of
American University Presses

CONTENTS

Foreword to the New Edition	5
Foreword to the 1974 Edition	8
Preface	9
Montalvo's Preface	17
Book I	21
Book II	411
Notes	683

This page intentionally left blank

FOREWORD TO THE NEW EDITION

IN 1974 THE UNIVERSITY PRESS OF KENTUCKY published the translation by Edwin B. Place and Herbert C. Behm of Books I and II of *Amadís de Gaula*. Under the editorial board's unanimous recommendation, it came out as number 11 in the Studies in Romance Languages series. Though the book went out of print in 1986, recent demand has led the Press to offer this unaltered paperback edition. Place's brief foreword and scholarly preface remain intact, since he has been recognized as the authority on matters concerning Spain's greatest and most emulated novel of chivalry.

After the translation went out of print, we found that it had been adopted for courses in various colleges and universities and that the general public had found it readable. The translators had chosen wisely the rendition of Garci Rodríguez de Montalvo (1508), a critical edition of which Place had produced. As editor of Studies in Romance Languages, I must stress an aspect of *Amadis of Gaul* that Place certainly recognized as important, but to which he did not accord due emphasis. The novel's entertaining qualities attracted a segment of the reading public of greater volume and diversity than Place had considered probable, although he was well aware that *Amadis* was very readable. Fourteenth-century readers of the novel would not necessarily have been interested in gentlemanly manners and etiquette. The audience I have in mind did not, for example, suspect that the fearsome dragon Amadís fights might be the devil. This audience was made up not only of gentlemen but of members of the new and educated middle class. There must have been a great many women as well, noble and common, who could appreciate an exciting tale and a love story in which the two lovers, Amadís and Princess Oriana, remain virgins until they are married. Surely there were fathers pleased to find a book daughters and wives could read that eschewed the adulterous tenets of courtly love. Physically powerful and heroic, the

knight Amadís must have been considered a man's man, and he was likely admired by women for the same qualities. He is a man of action, of derring-do, an expert at jousting as well as on the battlefield. Just as today's readers, moviegoers, and television audiences delight in tales of adventure and science fiction, in stories of vampires, war, and the Wild West, so too did the readership of *Amadís de Gaula* seek the exotic and thrilling. In Montalvo's times and for generations thereafter, readers of fiction did not possess minds spiritually sharpened by training in allegory, nor did they hear only mystical overtones in, for example, Ovid's *Art of Love*. How enlightening it is to read from the critics and commentators of the twelfth century that author intent was *delectare* (delight) and nothing more! I believe that contemporary commentators would offer similar statements about *Amadis of Gaul* and reaffirm that most readers read solely for entertainment.

Montalvo wrote two more lengthy narratives about his hero, Books III and IV. The translation by Place and Behm was published in 1975 as an addition to number 11 of *Studies in Romance Languages*. Readers should know that Amadís and Oriana were the parents of two sons, Esplandián and Galaor. Esplandián becomes a puissant knight and soon equals his sire in strength and prowess. Montalvo knew, as did his readers, that Amadís was aging and was not as strong as he had been. The old knight needed to be replaced with a younger hero; and who better to fill the role than a son destined to continue the family tradition? The author utilizes an age-old motif when Amadís and Esplandián, their faces concealed by helmets, unknowingly engage each other in mortal combat. Amadís is vanquished and slain in this match, a proper death for a knight. Montalvo named his new novel *Las Sergas de Esplandián*, which in English would be *The Exploits of Esplandian*. This lengthy work was full of the same incredible adventure, and though it did nothing to eclipse the fame and attraction of *Amadís de Gaula*, it became very popular. When Spanish explorers discovered the West Coast of the North American continent, they were reminded of a land described in the *Sergas*, and they named newly discovered land California.

Novels of chivalry proliferated. Not even Cervantes, when in *Don Quixote* he described the burning of the books in the mad old knight's library, could bring himself to commit *Amadís* to the flames. After all, one of the old knight's most famous traits was his belief that he was Amadís.

I feel obliged in closing to make it clear that although Edwin Place

failed to emphasize the readability of *Amadis*, he had some inkling of its potential for a wider audience. When Place signed the contract to publish his translation, he insisted that if any Hollywood producer should adapt it to the screen, he would receive due payment.

John E. Keller
Series Editor

FOREWORD TO THE 1974 EDITION

WE HAVE CHOSEN TO TRANSLATE *Amadís de Gaula* into modern English without any attempt to give our translation an archaic flavor. Since our work is addressed to the general reader not necessarily familiar with the landmarks of prose fiction, we have tried in the following Preface to place the *Amadís* in its proper literary perspective and to indicate its social impact on upper- and middle-class Europeans during the Renaissance and thereafter. Also, for the benefit of the studious and as a bow to the canons of scholarship, the Preface has been extensively annotated and Notes to the individual chapters have been placed at the end of the volume. It is our hope to publish later the remainder of the *Amadís* proper (i.e., Books III and IV).

Our translation is based on the critical edition by E. B. Place (4 vols., Madrid: Consejo Superior de Investigaciones Científicas, 1959-1969) of the putative princeps published by Jorge Coci at Saragossa in 1508. The only extant copy of the Coci edition is housed in the British Museum.

We desire to thank the Consejo and the Spanish Comisión Central de Publicaciones for their kind authorization to publish this translation. We are greatly indebted to Professor Otis H. Green for advice and encouragement, and especially for his kindness in reading our translation of Book I in manuscript.

E. B. P.

H. C. B.

PREFACE

IN THE LONG HISTORY OF EUROPEAN prose fiction few works are to be found that have exercised more influence not only on literature proper but also on manners and customs, or that have enjoyed a more enduring popularity, than the romance of chivalry entitled *Amadís de Gaula*.¹ Although the identity of its original author is still unknown, it now seems likely that it was originally written in Spanish during the first half of the fourteenth century by someone whose native language was not Spanish, but quite possibly may have been Galician.²

At any rate, the first known mention of the *Amadís* (originally consisting of only one or two Books) is of 1345-1350 and was made by a Spaniard.³ Portuguese and French claims to authorship seem at the present time to be ill founded in view of the discovery and publication in 1956 of a number of manuscript fragments of Book III written in Spanish.⁴ This primitive Book III on the evidence afforded by the fragments would appear to have been much longer than the one preserved today. It is likely that Book III was added to Books I and II by a second writer at some time

¹ See any reliable encyclopedia or any history of Spanish literature. For a detailed study of its influence on French manners and customs, see Place, "*Amadís de Gaula* como manual de cortesanía en Francia," *Revista de filología española* 35 (1954): 151-69.

² See Place edition of the *Amadís* (full title is given above in the Foreword), 2: 585-87 and 3: 921-28.

³ See R. Foulché-Delbosc in *Revue Hispanique* 15 (1906): 815.

⁴ See A. Rodríguez-Moñino et al. "El primer manuscrito del *Amadís de Gaula*," *Boletín de la Real Academia Española* 26 (1956): 199-225. Reissued as a monograph with its own pagination, Madrid, 1957.

before 1379.⁵ And it is certain that in it Amadís himself met death in a duel with his son Esplandián, who did not perceive that his armor-clad challenger was his father.⁶ But late in the following century Garci Rodríguez de Montalvo of Medina del Campo reworked Book III with some basic changes.⁷ There is some reason to believe, on the basis of internal evidence afforded by the *Amadís* as it has come down to us from his hands, that the whole sequence of Montalvo's "amadising" was somewhat as follows: first from the primitive Book III he extracted material for the nucleus of Book IV, in which Amadís, whose slaying he planned to deny, would ultimately play second fiddle to Esplandián, who was already represented as firmly arrayed against the alleged "folly" of knight-errantry motivated by courtly love, and was dedicated to vanquishing infidels, giants, and other sinister characters of the Near and Far East in the name of Church and State.⁸ This program of activities for Esplandián was further elaborated in Book V, entitled *Sergas* (Exploits) *de Esplandián*, which Montalvo sought to enliven by adventures apparently in imitation of certain ones told of Amadís in the primitive Books I and II. Having thus put together IV and the first half of the *Sergas*, which seemingly were completed and circulated in manuscript before 1474, by 1492 or shortly thereafter Montalvo completed the *Sergas*.⁹ It is likely that the latter, along with IV, was printed

⁵ See Place ed. of *Amadís*, 3: 926-27, 931.

⁶ See María Rosa Lida de Malkiel, "El desenlace del *Amadís* primitivo," *Romance Philology* 6 (1953): 283-89.

⁷ Not "Ordóñez de Montalvo," an error common to most of the sixteenth-century Spanish editions and hence perpetuated until modern times. For its correction, see N. Alonso Cortés, "Montalvo, el del *Amadís*," *Revue Hispanique* 41 (1933): 434-42.

⁸ See Place ed. of *Amadís*, 4: 1343-45. The *Sergas* may be read in the Gayangos ed., Biblioteca de Autores Españoles, Vol. 40. The name "California" is taken from the *Sergas*. The queen of California was a blood-thirsty pagan amazon ruling a nation of warlike women. (The men served only for procreation, being immediately thereafter slain.)

⁹ See preceding note, and Place, "¿Montalvo autor o refundidor del *Amadís* IV y V?" *Homenaje a Rodríguez-Moñino*, 2 vols. (Madrid, 1966), 2: 603-6.

shortly thereafter, but no copies are extant. Then Montalvo proceeded to accomplish a definitive restyling of the primitive I and II and the confection of a greatly abbreviated and somewhat transformed III, scattering throughout these three Books references to the already completed IV and to the *Sergas*.¹⁰ At some time between 1492 and 1504 he finished his long drawn-out task with the writing of a *prólogo* or preface. Shortly before 1505 he died.¹¹ The first known printed edition of his work is posthumous, having been printed in 1508.¹² (The first authenticated printed edition of the *Sergas* is of 1510.)

VOGUE OF THE "AMADÍS"

Once in print, the *Amadís* became enormously popular, as is attested by the many editions of it published in Spain during the sixteenth century and the numerous continuations composed and printed during that century.¹³ But this was only the beginning of its vogue: by the end of the first quarter of the seventeenth century it had been translated into French, Italian, German, English, Dutch, Portuguese, and Hebrew.¹⁴ And of the adaptations made of it, outstanding is the French *Trésor des livres d'Amadis*, a collection of courtly speeches for every occasion culled from the French translation by Nicolas d'Herberay and first published in 1559, and republished thereafter, with successive accretions from the continuations, a total of twenty times. As a manual of courtesy it became extremely popular among the French upper classes, exercising a salutary influence on French manners considerably

¹⁰ See Place ed. of *Amadís*, 3: 926-27.

¹¹ Concerning the date of Montalvo's death, see Alonso Cortés, *loc. cit.*

¹² For exact title, see Place edition mentioned above, Foreword.

¹³ For a descriptive bibliography of editions, adaptations, and translations of the *Amadís*, see Place ed., 1: xiii-xlvi. (A second ed. of I was published in 1971.) On the subject of the continuations, see *ibid.*, pp. xxviii-xxix. An excellent study of the influence of the *Amadís* and its continuations *en bloc* on English literature is to be found in J. J. O'Connor's "*Amadís de Gaulle*" and its Influence on Elizabethan Literature (New Brunswick, N. J., 1970), pp. 131-225.

¹⁴ See preceding note, first reference.

greater, if measured by the number of French editions, than the famous Italian courtesy books, Castiglione's *Cortegiano* and the *Galateo* of Giovanni della Casa. The *Trésor* was translated into German and English.¹⁵

But the impact of the *Amadis* proper was much more far-reaching: throughout the sixteenth century imitations of it were legion. And nearly all these imitations, inferior as most of them were, speedily received translations into other European languages, including many into English.¹⁶

Though Cervantes in the *Quijote* condemns most of the Spanish continuations and imitations of the *Amadis*, including the *Sergas*, he praises the *Amadis* proper. In fact, as has been indicated repeatedly by critics, Don Quijote incorporates many of the noble qualities of *Amadis*.¹⁷

For lack of space, the European vogue of the *Amadis* is not set forth here in detail. But certain highlights should be mentioned. In sixteenth-century Italy Bernardo Tasso (father of Torquato) was so charmed by the work that he endeavored to make of it a "romantic epic," *l'Amadigi*, which achieved some contemporary popularity. In France the *Amadis* again became so popular in the eighteenth century that operas and adaptations in verse were made of some of its episodes. This popularity reasserted itself during the heyday of early nineteenth-century Romanticism, once again spreading to England and back to its Hispanic homeland. And it is striking that in the twentieth century there have already appeared in print some fifteen Spanish editions and adaptations.¹⁸

ORIGINS OF THE "AMADÍS"

The unknown authors of the primitive *Amadis* modeled the action of the work on Spanish and French prose redactions of

¹⁵ See Note 1, second reference.

¹⁶ See Sir Henry Thomas, *Spanish and Portuguese Romances of Chivalry* (Cambridge, Eng., 1920).

¹⁷ See E. B. Place, "Cervantes and the *Amadis*" in *Hispanic Studies in Honor of Nicholson B. Adams* (Chapel Hill, N. C., 1966), pp. 131-40.

¹⁸ See Place ed. of *Amadis*, 1: xxvi-xxviii.

twelfth- and thirteenth-century French romances in verse of the so-called Breton cycle, which dealt principally with King Arthur and the knights of the Round Table.¹⁹ These prose redactions have been entitled collectively the *Vulgate* cycle (and in an abridged form the *Pseudo-Robert de Boron* cycle). In the *Vulgate* (and its abridgment), of which courtly love is the principal motif, the outstanding protagonists are Lancelot, son of a king of *Gaule* (a little half-fictitious region situated in or near Brittany, and on that account *Gaula* and not *Galia* in the Spanish redactions and in the *Amadís*)²⁰ and, ultimately, Tristan, transformed into a knight of the Round Table. Amadís, also son of a king of *Gaula*, is a composite of Lancelot and Tristan; and most of the action of Books I-III of the *Amadís* is modeled on episodes of the *Vulgate* and its Spanish redactions.²¹ But the Hispanic touch is evident in one significant change: Amadís is not the lover of Queen Brisena, as was Lancelot of Queen Guinevere and Tristan of King Mark's wife Isolda, but of Oriana, unmarried daughter of a pre-Arthurian British king named Lisuarte, Brisena's husband.

The composition of the primitive *Amadís* (Books I and II) appears to coincide in time with the efforts of King Alfonso XI of Castile and Leon to popularize chivalry in his dominions.

THE AMADÍS AS A MORALITY

Its first author seems to have been a cultured well-born person of high principles—very possibly a cleric. In fact, his work quite obviously was intended originally to be a moralizing admonishment to the nobility and to the crown itself. Amadís

¹⁹ The first thorough study of sources of the *Amadís* is by Grace Williams, "The Amadís Question," *Revue Hispanique* 21 (1909): 1-67. On the Arthurian romances, see R. S. Loomis et al., *Arthurian Literature in the Middle Ages, A Collaborative History* (Oxford, 1959). See also Place, "Fictional Evolution, the Arthurian Romances and the Primitive *Amadís*," *PMLA* 71 (1956): 521-29.

²⁰ See Place, "*Amadís of Gaul or Wales or What?*" *Hispanic Review* 23 (1955): 99-107.

²¹ See above, Note 18.

is endowed with the virtues respectively opposite to the seven deadly sins: humility, justice, chastity (with respect to all women save his beloved Oriana, whom he was pledged secretly to wed), charity, mercy, temperance (with no anti-alcoholic connotation), and zeal. Most of the adversaries whom he overcomes in combat symbolize various deadly sins, especially that of Pride (arrogance). In addition, the fact that Amadís, his kin, and close friends are foreign knights in King Lisuarte's service leads to jealousy on the part of two old courtiers who, on seeing their sons' knightly exploits overshadowed by those of the foreigners, persuade the king by means of false allegations that Amadís is plotting his overthrow. Thereupon the king forces him and the other foreign knights to leave his kingdom, which he subsequently would have lost to invading enemies had it not been for the assistance given incognito by Amadís and others. Hence the principal apparent objectives of Books I and II of the primitive version were threefold: first, to depict a knight motivated by courtly love in his struggle with the evils of his time; second, to extol the many foreign knights, mainly French and British, in the service of the Hispanic monarchs during the first half of the fourteenth century; third, to demonstrate that the greatest danger to their monarchies might derive from the possible deceit of royal counselors.²²

The author of the primitive Book III quite obviously disapproved of courtly love, Arthurian style, as the proper motivation for knights errant, although he does permit Amadís to slay the monstrous Endriago, a creature which represents the Devil himself. But he causes the knight to yield to the sins of Pride and Jealousy by engaging incognito in single combat with Esplandián, who slays him. Subsequently he has Esplandián motivated by Christian missionary zeal and nationalistic patriotism, to which the love motif is subordinated; and in certain episodes involving other knights courtly love is made to appear ridiculous.²³

²² See Place ed. of *Amadís*, 3: 928-31.

²³ *Ibid.*, 931-32.

Montalvo follows the second author's lead in featuring Esplandián, and ultimately in the *Sergas* he entirely repudiates Amadís as the perfect knight. Perhaps the specter of the Inquisition and the warring of the Catholic Sovereigns against all deviations from Christian orthodoxy caused him to regret his long preoccupation with Amadís of Gaul.²⁴

E. B. P.

²⁴ See Place, "Montalvo's Outrageous Recantation," *Hispanic Review* 37 (1969): 192-98.

For additional bibliographical information on the *Amadís*, see Place ed., vol. 4, 1381-1382, and 1-4 passim.

This page intentionally left blank

MONTALVO'S PREFACE

THE SAGES OF OLD, ON CONSIDERING HOW BRIEF, in the great battles whereof they have left written records, was the actual military action that took place in those battles — as occurs in the battles of our own time which we ourselves have witnessed and whereof we have a clear idea through experience and report — sought to provide some foundation of truth on which to elaborate and adorn such extraordinary deeds; whereby not only did they think to leave a perpetual memory of those engagements for the benefit of professional men of arms, but also for the enlightenment and delight of others who might read their accounts with a wonder no less great than is felt concerning the written accounts of the exploits of the Greeks and Trojans.

Sallust says that the deeds of the Athenians were famous in proportion to the exaltation and embellishment accorded them by the writers of antiquity. Therefore, if the generation of those discoursers who exercised their wits and wearied their minds on matters of fame rather than on subjects of material interest had been able to witness and bear testimony of the saintly conquest that our most valiant King recently made of the Kingdom of Granada, how many flowers, how many roses would have been strewn on it by them — as much with regard to the courage of the knights, to the uprisings, skirmishes and dangerous combats, and to everything else regarding the perilous confrontations and hardships of said war, as concerning the courageous speeches of the great King to his nobles gathered in the royal tent, and the obedient replies made by them; and, above all, the great praise, the heightened encomiums that the King deserves for having undertaken and finished that most Catholic struggle. Cer-

tainly I believe that both the true and the embroidered that might have been related by the writers of antiquity about the fame of so great a prince, rightly based on a broad foundation of truth, would have been able to reach the clouds.

And thus it may be believed that by his own learned chroniclers, if it had been granted to them to imitate the antiquity of that style as a memorial for those to come, it would have been left in writing, by rightly elevating his great deeds to a higher degree of fame and loftiness than those of the other emperors who with more affection than truth have been lauded more than our king and queen; for the greater the difference in the law they upheld, the more the latter were deserving, because the ones first mentioned served the world which gave them their reward; and ours its Lord, who with such recognized love and volition sought to aid and favor them on account of finding them so worthy in executing with much toil and expense what to such a high degree is in His service. And if perchance something remain forgotten here below, in the presence of His Royal Majesty, where He holds ready for them the reward that they deserve, it will not so remain.

Another manner, more properly to be accredited, that great historian Titus Livy adopted to exalt the honor and fame of his Romans; for turning them away from brute force, he invested their hearts with boldness and courage; because if as regards the first item there be some doubt, none would be found concerning the second. If he by extreme effort recorded the daring of him who burned his own arm and of him who voluntarily plunged into the perilous lake, we have already beheld other deeds by those who, with no regard for their own lives, sought death in order to save others from it; so that by virtue of what we have seen we can believe what we have read in Livy, however bizarre it may seem to us. But certainly nowhere in his great history will there be encountered any of those awful blows or superhuman clashes to be found in the other histories, such as those concerning mighty Hector, famous Achilles, courageous Troilus, and brave Ajax, and many others of whom much is recorded, in accordance with the writers' high regard for them. Hence these accounts, as well as others closer to our own times concerning that distin-

gushed duke Godfrey of Bouillon's sword slash on the bridge at Antioch administered to the armed Turk whom he almost cut in half when he was King of Jerusalem.

One may very well believe that Troy existed and that it was besieged and destroyed by the Greeks, and likewise that Jerusalem, along with many other places, was conquered by the above-mentioned duke and his companions. But let us attribute such blows as the foregoing to the writers, as I have already said, rather than to their actually having taken place. There were other writers of lower quality who not only failed to base their works on fact, but on any semblance of it. These are the ones who composed the feigned histories in which marvelously unnatural things are to be found, which very rightly ought to be deemed fakes.

Now let us see whether the martial perils occurring resemble that which almost daily we see and experience, even though such martial perils be not for the most part of virtue and good conscience — and let us be apprised that those which seem to us very strange and difficult are fabricated and faked — and what should we derive from them all which would be fruitful for us? Certainly nothing more than the good examples and teachings which most closely relate to our own salvation, so that, through there having been impressed on our hearts the grace of the most high Lord in order to bring us into contact with said teachings, we may take them as wings whereby our souls may rise to the height of the glory for which they were created.

And I, considering all this, desiring that some vestige of remembrance of me might remain, and not daring to set my feeble talents at that with which the wisest learned men have been concerned, have sought to join the latest ones to write about the most trivial and insubstantial matters on account of their being most in keeping with the weakness of my talents; namely, by correcting these three Books of *Amadis*, which through the fault of poor scribes or revisers were read in corrupt and defective versions; and by translating and emending the fourth Book, together with the *Exploits of Esplandián* its offspring, which up to now within no one's memory has been seen, for very fortunately it came to light in a stone tomb discovered under-

ground below a hermitage near Constantinople and was brought to this part of Spain by a Hungarian merchant, being inscribed on parchment so old that only with great difficulty were those who knew the language able to read it. The said five Books, although up to now they have been considered fictions rather than chronicles, by virtue of the said emendations are augmented with moralizations and teachings of such a kind that they properly can be compared with cheap, coarse, cork salt shakers encased and adorned with bands of silver and gold — thus augmented in order that gentlemen, both old and young, may find in them what pertains to each.

And if perchance in this ill-planned work some error appears of the kind that transgresses civil and canon law, I humbly ask pardon for it, for since I firmly hold to and believe in everything that Holy Church holds to and enjoins, my unwary discretion, rather than my labors, was the cause of it.

INCIPIIT

HERE BEGINS THE FIRST BOOK of the courageous and virtuous knight Amadis, son of King Perion of Gaul and of Queen Elisena, which was corrected and emended by the honorable and virtuous gentleman Garci-Rodríguez de Montalvo, Alderman of the noble town of Medina del Campo. He corrected the ancient originals which were corrupt and poorly composed in the antique style through the fault of diverse poor scribes, taking out many superfluous words and putting in others of a more polished and elegant style pertaining to chivalry and the deeds thereof.

Not many years after the passion of our Redeemer and Savior, Jesus Christ, there was a Christian king in Little Brittany by the name of Garinter, who being completely sincere was quite devout and well mannered. This king had two daughters by a noble matron, his wife. The elder was married to Languines, King of Scotland and was called the Garland Lady because the king her husband never would permit her to cover her beautiful hair except with a very rich garland, so pleased was he to gaze upon her locks. This couple were parents of Agrajes and Mabilia. Of the one as a knight and the other as a damsel much mention is made in this great narration. The second daughter, who was named Elisena, was infinitely more beautiful than the first. And although she was much sought in marriage by very great princes, it was not her pleasure to wed any of them. Rather, her devout and secluded way of life caused everyone to call her a confirmed bigot, for they held the opinion that for a person with such a high rank, endowed with such beauty, demanded in marriage by

so many grandees, the adoption of such a style of life was not suitable.

At any rate this aforementioned King Garinter, being of sufficiently advanced age, in order to give repose to his mind, used to go hunting in the forest occasionally on horseback. On one such occasion, he set out one day from one of his towns which was called Alima, and having strayed away from the beaters and hunters, going through the forest saying his prayers, he saw at his left a fierce battle of a lone knight engaged in fighting two; he recognized the two knights as vassals of his, from whom because of their arrogance, evil ways, and the fact that they were relatives-in-law, he had received great annoyance. But the one whom they were fighting he could not recognize, and not trusting enough in the prowess of the one to dispel the fear that the other two would kill him, he stood apart from them and watched the fight. Finally, by the hand of the one, the two were overcome and killed. This done, the knight came over to the king, and as he saw him alone, said to him:

“My good sir, what land is this where knights errant are attacked in this manner?”

The king replied: “Do not be surprised at this, sir, for just as in other lands there are good knights and bad, so there are in this. And those of whom you speak not only have done great wrongs and outrages to many, but also to their very own king, their master, who is unable to bring them to justice; being related by marriage, they have committed enormous offenses, including some in this densely forested region where they were wont to take refuge.”

The knight said in reply: “Well, this king of whom you speak I have come from a distant land to seek out and to bring news of a great friend of his. And if you know where I can find him, I beg of you to tell me.”

The king replied: “Come what may, I shall not fail to tell you the truth: Know you then, with certainty, that I am the king you are seeking.”

Taking off his shield and helmet and giving them to his squire, the knight went and embraced the king, saying he was

King Perion of Gaul, who very much wished to make his acquaintance.

Great was the delight of these two kings on having been thus brought together. And speaking of many things they went to the place where the hunters were, so that they might return to the town; but before this there appeared an exhausted deer that had slipped by the beaters. Whereupon both the kings went after it at top speed of their horses with the intent to kill it, but the affair turned out otherwise: emerging in front of them from a dense thicket, a lion overtook the deer and killed it; and having ripped it open with its very strong claws, it exhibited an ill-restrained ferocity to the kings.

And as King Perion saw it thus, he said: "You can't be so enraged as not to leave to us a part of the game."

And taking his arms he dismounted from the horse which, fearful of the strong lion, did not want to go forward; and holding his shield in front of him, sword in hand, he advanced toward the lion; for the great shouts that King Garinter uttered could not deter him. Likewise, the lion, leaving the prey, came toward him. And both joining in combat, and the lion having him beneath him and being on the point of killing him, the king, not losing his great strength, wounding it with his sword through the belly made it fall dead before him. Whereupon King Garinter, greatly surprised, said to himself, "Not without cause does he have that fame of being the best knight in the world."

This done, the band of hunters being assembled, the king had the lion and the deer loaded on two palfreys and carried to the town. There the queen having been notified of their guest, they found the palace hall impressively and splendidly adorned and the tables set. At the highest table sat the kings and at another nearby, Elisena, Garinter's daughter. And there they were served as was fitting in the house of such a great man. Then being in such contentment, as that princess was so very handsome and King Perion likewise, and the fame of his great deeds at arms published throughout the world, under such circumstances they gazed at each other, that her great modesty and exemplary life could not prevent her from becoming a prisoner of incurable and great love for him, and the king in like manner for her (for until

then his heart he had kept free from subjection to anyone), in such wise that all during the dinner both of them were almost out of their senses. Then, the tables having been cleared, the queen wished to retire to her room, and on rising, Elisena dropped from her lap a very beautiful ring which she had removed from her finger in order to wash and because of her great confusion had not bethought herself to put it on again. She stooped to pick it up; but King Perion, who was beside her, sought to give it to her, and thus their hands met at the same time. And the king took her hand and squeezed it. Elisena blushed and looking at the king with amorous eyes, said softly that she was grateful to him for the service.

“Ah, madam,” said he, “I hope it will not be the last, for my whole life will be employed in serving you.”

She withdrew in her mother's wake so greatly agitated that she could scarcely see, from which it followed that this princess, not being able to endure that new pang that with such power had overcome the old resolution, divulged her secret to a maid of hers by the name of Darioleta whom she trusted, and with tears in her eyes and more in her heart, she begged her to advise her how she would be able to know whether King Perion loved any other woman and whether that amorous state that he had revealed to her had come upon him in the same way and as forcibly as in her heart she had felt it. The maid, startled by such a sudden change in a person so removed from relations of that kind, taking pity on such pitiful tears, said to her:

“Madam, well I see that according to the excessive passion that that tyrant Love has implanted in you, it has left no place in your judgment where advice or reason can be lodged; and for this reason, following not what I owe to you as a servant, but what I owe to your will and my obedience, I will do what you command by the most upright means that my poor discretion and great desire to serve you can find.”

Then leaving her, she went to the chamber where King Perion was housed and found his squire at the door with the apparel that he wanted to give him to wear; and she said to him:

“Friend, go do something else, while I stay with your master and take care of him.”

The squire, thinking it would be to his advantage, gave her the clothes and left. The damsel entered the room where the king was in bed; and when he saw her, he recognized her to be the one he had seen Elisena speak with more than with anyone else, since she trusted her more than any other person — and he believed that she had not come without some remedy for his mortal desires; and with a trembling heart, he said to her:

“Good maid, what is it that you wish?”

“To give you some clothing,” said she.

Said he: “This must be for my heart, which is quite stripped and bare of pleasure and joy.”

“In what way?” said she.

“In that coming to this land,” said the king, “with complete freedom, solely fearing the adventures at arms that could befall me, in some way or other on entering the house of your master and mistress I am wounded with a mortal wound; and if you, good damsel, procure some remedy for me, I shall reward you well.”

“Certainly, sir,” said she, “it would make me very happy to serve a person of such high degree and such a good knight as you are, if I knew how I might do so.”

“If you promise me,” said the king, “as a loyal maidservant not to reveal it except there where it is proper to do so, I shall tell you.”

“Tell me without fear,” said she, “for it will be kept quite secret by me.”

“Well then, my friend,” said he, “I say to you that at a crucial moment I beheld the great beauty of Elisena, your mistress, that tormented by strong desire and yearning I am at the point of death, which if I do not find some remedy cannot be avoided.”

The damsel, who knew the heart of her mistress completely in this matter, as you have already read, when she heard this, was very happy, and said,

“Sire, if you promise me as a king to guard the truth, as you are more than anyone else obligated to do, and as a knight who reputedly has endured many trials and perils in order to maintain it, and to take her for your wife, when it be time, I shall put you in a situation where not only your heart may be satisfied,

but hers also, which as much as — or perchance more than yours — is in distress and pain from that same wound; and if you do not do this, you will not have her nor shall I believe that your words spring from a loyal and sincere love.”

The king, on whose will the permission of God was already imprinted for that to ensue which you will hear later, took the sword that he had near him and putting his right hand on its hilt, said, “I swear by this hilt and sword which I received with the order of knighthood, to do what you, damsel, ask of me, whenever it be demanded of me by your mistress Elisena.”

“Then now rejoice,” said she, “For I shall carry out what I said.”

And leaving him, she returned to her mistress, and relating to her the pact that she had made with the king, she brought great joy into Elisena’s heart.

The latter embracing her, said, “My true friend, when can I hold in my arms the one whom you have given me for master?”

“I will tell you,” she said. “You know, madam, how that room in which King Perion is lodged has a door that opens on the garden, through which your father sometimes goes out to take recreation. Now it is covered up with curtains, and for it I have the key. Well, when the king goes out from there I shall open it, and it being so late at night that those who dwell in the palace will be taking their rest, we shall be able to enter through it without anyone’s noticing. And when it is time to leave, I shall call you and return you to your bed.”

Elisena on hearing this, was so overwhelmed with joy that she was unable to speak at first. Then recovering her composure, she said to her:

“My friend, to you I entrust my whole affair. But how can what you say be carried out, for my father shares the room with King Perion, and if he should hear, we would be in great danger?”

“Leave that to me,” said the damsel, “for I shall take care of it.” With that they left off talking.

And the kings and the queen and the Princess Elisena spent the day dining and supping as before. And when it was dark, Darioleta took aside the squire of King Perion and said to him:

"Ah, friend, tell me if you are a well-born man."

"Yes, I am," he replied, "and even the son of a knight; but why do you ask?"

"I will tell you," she said, "because I wanted to ascertain one thing from you, and I beg of you by the faith that you owe to God and to the king, your master, that you tell me."

"By Holy Mary," said he, "everything I know I shall tell you, if it be not such as would endanger my master."

"This I swear to you," said the damsel, "that neither shall I question you to his harm, nor would you be right to tell it to me. But what I wish to know is that you tell me who the damsel is that your master loves extremely."

"My master," said he, "loves all damsels in general, but certainly I don't know anyone that he loves in the manner you say."

At this moment King Garinter came up to where they were talking, and seeing Darioleta with the squire, he called her to him and said,

"What do you have to talk about with the king's squire?"

"In heaven's name, sire, I will tell you: he called me and told me that his master is accustomed to sleeping alone, and he certainly feels much embarrassment with your company."

The king left her and went to King Perion and said to him:

"My lord, I have many matters to deal with in my administration, and I get up at the hour of matins. So in order not to annoy you, I consider it proper that you remain alone in the room."

King Perion replied, "Sire, do in this as you please."

Then King Garinter recognized that the damsel had told him the truth and he ordered his butlers immediately to take his bed out of the chamber of King Perion.

When Darioleta saw that thus, indeed, what she desired had come to pass, she went to Elisena, her mistress, and told her all that had happened.

"Dear friend," said she, "now I believe, since God thus ordains it, that this which at present appears to be an error, later will be greatly in His service. And tell me what we shall do, for the great joy that I have robs me of a large part of my wits."

“Lady,” said the damsel, “Let us do tonight what is arranged, for the door of the room that I told you about I have open.”

“Then to you I leave the duty to bring me there when it is time.”

Thus they stayed until everybody went to bed.

CHAPTER I

HOW PRINCESS ELISENA AND HER MAIDSERVANT DARIOLETA WENT TO THE CHAMBER WHERE KING PERION WAS.

When everyone was at rest Darioleta arose and took Elisena as bare as she was in her bed — clad only in her shift and covered with a cloak — and they both went out into the garden. The moon was shining brightly. The maidservant looked at her mistress, and opening the latter's cloak she gazed at her body and said, laughing:

“Madam, in a lucky hour was born the knight who this night will possess you.”

And it was well said that of face and body this was the most beautiful maiden then known.

Elisena smiled and said:

“The same you can say for me: that I was born with good luck to be joined with such a knight.”

Thus they came to the door of the chamber. And although Elisena was going to the person whom she loved best in all the world, her whole body was trembling so much that she could not utter a word.

And as they knocked on the door to enter, King Perion, who not only with the great anguish that he had in his heart but also with the hope that the maidservant had given him, had not been able to sleep, and at that moment already exhausted and overcome by drowsiness, had fallen asleep and was dreaming that someone was entering that chamber by a side door, and he did not know who, and that this person on going up to him and putting his

hands on his side, drew out his heart and threw it in the river. And he said:

“Why did you commit such a cruel act?”

“This is nothing,” said the other, “for there remains for you another heart that I shall take from you, although it will not be through my desire.”

The king, who felt a great anguish within him, awoke terrified and began to make the sign of the cross. By this time the maidens already had opened the door and were entering. And when he heard them, he feared treachery because of what he had dreamed; and raising his head through the curtains, he saw the open door, about which he knew nothing, and by the moonlight entering through it, he saw the forms of the maidens. Leaping from the bed where he lay, he took his sword and shield and went toward where he had seen them. And Darioleta, when she saw him thus, said to him,

“What is this, sir? Put down your weapon, for against us little defense is required.”

The king, who recognized her, looked and saw Elisena, his greatly beloved; and throwing down the sword and shield, he covered himself with a cloak that he had at his bedside, with which he sometimes arose, and went to take his lady in his arms. And she embraced him as the one she loved more than herself.

Darioleta said to her:

“Remain, lady, with this knight, for although up to now you have defended yourself as a maiden against many men, and he also has defended himself against many other women, your powers are not sufficient for you to defend yourselves from each other.”

And Darioleta looked about for the sword where the king had cast it, and took it as a token of the oath and promise that he had made with regard to his marriage with her mistress, and went out into the garden.

The king remained alone with his mistress, whom he gazed at by the light of the three candles that were in the chamber. As he looked at her it seemed to him that all the beauty in the world was united in her, considering himself very fortunate that God had brought him to such a connubial state. And thus embracing

they went to bed. Whence she, for so long a time with such beauty and youth, sought after by so many princes and men of high degree, who had defended herself, maintaining the freedom of a maiden, now in a little more than a day, when her thoughts were farthest removed and withdrawn from it, Love breaking those strong bonds of her modest and saintly life, made her lose that freedom, becoming from then on a matron.

From which one is given to understand that thus women, by withdrawing their thoughts from worldly things, scorning the great beauty with which nature has endowed them, the fresh youth that in a large measure enhances that beauty, the pleasures and delights that with the abundant wealth of their parents they expected to enjoy, seek to save their souls by putting themselves as recluses into convents, yielding with complete obedience their free will to the will of others, seeing their lifetime passing without fame or worldly glory, which they know that their sisters and other relatives are enjoying. Thus they must carefully cover their ears and close their eyes, avoiding seeing relatives and neighbors, withdrawing into devout contemplations and saintly prayers, taking these as true delights, as they really are; because with conversing and seeing they endanger their sacred purpose; wherefore may it not be like that of this beautiful princess Elisena, for after so long a time that she had sought to preserve herself, in one single moment on her seeing the very good looks of that King Perion, her purpose was changed in such a way that if it had not been for the discretion of her maidservant, who sought to preserve her honor with secret matrimony, in truth she would have been completely determined to fall into the worst and lowest path of dishonor; just as it is with many others whom one could mention in this world, who not guarding themselves from what is mentioned above, did likewise, and in the future unheedingly will do so.

While these two lovers thus were taking their pleasure, Elisena asked the king if his departure would be shortly. He said to her:

“Why, my lady, do you ask?”

“Because this good fortune,” said she, “that has placed my mortal desires in such joy and peace, already threatens me with

the great sadness and worry that your absence will cause me, to the point of being nearer death than life."

Having heard these words, he said:

"Have no fear of that, for although this my body be separated from your presence, my heart will remain joined with yours, which will give strength to both of us, to you to endure, and to me that I may return quickly; for without my heart there is no other force so strong as to detain me."

Darioleta, who saw it was time to leave, entered the chamber and said,

"Madam, I realize that at other times you have been more pleased with me than now, but it is necessary that you get up and that we go, for it is high time."

Elisena arose and the king said:

"I shall dwell here longer than you imagine, and this will be on your account; and I beg of you not to forget this place."

They went off to their beds, and he remained in his own bed greatly pleased with his mistress, but fearful of the dream that you have already heard. And because of it he was more desirous of going back to his own land where there were at the time many learned men who knew how to explain and clarify such things, and even he himself knew something that he had learned when younger.

Amid this great delight and pleasure King Perion dwelt there for ten days, dallying every night with his very beloved mistress; at the end of which he decided to leave, constraining his will and the tears of his lady, which were no few. So, having bade farewell to King Garinter and the Queen, clad in full armor, when he wanted to gird on his sword he did not find it; and he did not dare ask for it, although it grieved him deeply because it was a very fine and beautiful one; he followed this course in order that his love affair with Elisena be not revealed and in order not to anger King Garinter. And he ordered his squire to find another sword for him; and thus wearing full armor except on hands and head he set out on horseback straight for his kingdom with no other company than his squire. But first Darioleta spoke to him, telling him of the great sorrow and loneliness in which he was leaving his mistress. And he said to her:

"Ah, my friend, I commit her to you just as to my own heart."

And taking from his finger one very beautiful ring of the two he wore, both alike, he gave it to her that Elisena might wear it for love of him. Thus Elisena remained with much loneliness and great sorrow for her friend, so much so that if it had not been for that maidservant who encouraged her very much, she would not have been able to endure except with great difficulty; but by having conversation with her, Elisena felt some surcease.

Thus they were passing their time until she became aware that she was pregnant, losing her appetite, her sleep, and her very beautiful color. Then her worries and sorrows were exceedingly great and not without cause, because at that time it was established by law that any woman, of however high estate and nobility she might be, if she were discovered in adultery, could not by any means avoid death. This very cruel and abominable custom lasted until the coming of the very virtuous King Arthur, who was the best king of those who reigned there, and he revoked the law at the time that he killed Floyan in battle before the gates of Paris. But many kings reigned who upheld this law between him and King Lisuarte. And although by those words that King Perion had sworn on his sword hilt, he was without guilt in the sight of God, he was not without it in the world's view because said words had been so clandestine. But to think of making it known to her friend could not possibly be, since he was so young and proud of heart that he never took pleasure anywhere except in winning honor and fame, and never spent his time in anything except going from one place to another as a knight errant. Thus it was that she did not find relief for her condition in any way. She did not regret so much the loss of her sight of the world in death, as that of her very beloved master and true friend; but that all-powerful Lord through whose permission all of this came to pass, for His holy service infused such courage and discretion in Darioleta that she sufficed with His help to solve everything as you will now hear.

There was in that palace of King Garinter a secluded cave room opening on a river that flowed by there, and it had a small iron door through which the maidens sometimes went out to the river to disport themselves. And it was unoccupied, for no one

lived in it. On the advice of Darioleta, Elisena asked her father and mother for this chamber as a retreat and restorative for her poor state of health, and for the solitary posture which she always tried to maintain, and in order to recite her prayers without being disturbed by anyone except Darioleta, who knew about her indisposition and who would serve her and keep her company. This request was quickly granted by them in the belief that it was her intention solely to restore her body to better health and her soul with more austerity, and they gave the key to the small door to the maid to keep and to open whenever their daughter wished to take comfort there. Thus lodged, Elisena, with somewhat more repose on seeing herself in such a place — for in her opinion there rather than anywhere else she could guard against her peril — took counsel with her maid as to what to do with the one to be born.

“What, lady?” said she. “Let it suffer in order that you may be free.”

“Oh, Holy Mary!” said Elisena; “how can I consent to killing what was engendered by the person whom I love most in the world?”

“Don’t worry about that,” said the maidservant, “for if they kill you, they will not spare it.”

“Although I may die adjudged guilty,” said she, “they will not want the innocent baby to suffer.”

“Let us stop talking any more about it,” said the maid. “For it would be madness that in order to save a thing to no advantage we condemn you to death, and your beloved who without you would not be able to live. But with you and he both living, you will have other children which will cause you to lose the desire for this one.”

Since this damsel was very wise and guided by God’s mercy, she sought to have a remedy ready before the difficulty arose. And it was in this wise: she obtained four boards large enough so that a baby with its swaddling clothes could be contained therein as in an ark, and as long as a sword, and she caused certain materials to be brought for making a pitch with which she might join them together so that water would not enter. And she kept everything under her bed without Elisena’s being

aware of it, until with her own hands she fastened the boards together with that durable pitch. And she made the ark as exact and well executed as a master carpenter would have done. Then she showed it to Elisena and said:

“What do you think this was made for?”

“I do not know,” she said.

“You will know,” said the maidservant, “when it becomes necessary.”

She said, “I would give very little to know anything that is being said or done since I am close to losing my happiness and what I hold most dear.”

The maid was greatly distressed to see her thus, and the tears coming to her eyes, she withdrew from Elisena’s presence so that she might not see her weeping.

Then it was not long before the time came for Elisena to give birth, she feeling the pangs of childbirth as a thing so new, so rare for her that her heart was in great affliction. As one for whom it was necessary to be able not to moan or complain, her anguish in giving birth was doubled. But finally after a time, the all-powerful Lord willed that without danger to herself she should bear a son. The maidservant, taking it in her hands, saw that it would be handsome if it were fortunate. But Darioleta did not delay in putting into execution the plan that she previously had thought necessary; and she wrapped it in fine swaddling clothes and put it near its mother, and brought there the ark that you have already heard about.

Elisena said to her,

“What do you want to do?”

“Put the baby in here and set it afloat on the river,” said she, “and with good luck it can be saved.”

The mother held it in her arms weeping bitterly and saying:

“My little one, how grievous to me is your misfortune!”

The maidservant took ink and parchment, and wrote a letter saying, “This is Amadis, the Ill-Timed, son of a king.” She said “ill-timed” because she believed that it would soon be dead, and this name was much esteemed there because thus a saint was named to whom the maid commended it. She covered this whole letter with wax, and attached with a cord she put it around the

neck of the child. Elisena had the ring that King Perion gave her when he left her, and she put it on the same cord with the wax, and at the same time that they put the child in the ark, they placed in it the sword of King Perion. This is the sword which on the first night that she had slept with him he cast on the floor, as you have already heard, and which was kept by the maidservant. And although the king missed it, he never dared ask for it lest King Garinter should become angry with those who entered the chamber.

This done, she put the plank on top so well joined and calked that neither water nor anything else could enter there. And taking it in her arms and opening the door, she put it in the river and let it go. And as the water was high and strong it soon passed out to sea, which was not more than half a league away. At this time the dawn was appearing and there occurred a beautiful and marvelous thing, one of those that the very great Lord is accustomed to perform when it so pleases him: for over the sea a ship was proceeding in which was a knight from Scotland with his wife. The wife, whom he was bringing from Little Brittany, had just given birth to a son who was named Gandalin. And the knight's name was Candales. And going at full speed on their way to Scotland, the morning being already clear, they saw the ark floating on the water; and summoning four sailors, he ordered them quickly to cast off a small boat and bring the ark to him; which was speedily done, although the ark had already floated a long distance from the ship. The knight took the ark and pulled open the covering and saw the boy baby. He took it in his arms and said,

“This is from some good place.”

He said this because of the fine clothing and the ring, and the sword which seemed to him very handsome. He began to curse the woman who through fear had abandoned so cruelly such a baby. Putting away for safe-keeping those objects, he begged his wife to rear the child; and she put it to the breast of that nurse who was rearing Gandalin, her own son. And he took it with great desire to suckle, for which the gentleman and his lady were very happy. Thus they crossed the sea with favorable weather until they landed at a town in Scotland which

was called Antalia. And leaving there, they arrived at a castle of theirs, one of the finest of that land, where they had the child brought up as if it were their own son. And everybody thought it was, for the event of its discovery could not be known from the sailors, because they sailed to other places in the ship, which was their own.

CHAPTER II

HOW KING PERION WENT HIS WAY WITH HIS SQUIRE, WITH HEART
MORE ACCOMPANIED BY SORROW THAN BY JOY.

King Perion having left Brittany as has already been related, his spirit was greatly tormented by grief as much on account of the great longing that he felt for his mistress whom he truly loved as because of the dream you have already heard which he had at that time. Having arrived in his own kingdom, he sent for all his nobles and commanded the bishops to bring to him the wisest clerics there were in his land in order to explain his dream.

When his vassals learned of his arrival, those summoned, as well as many others, came to him with a great desire to see him, for he was well beloved by all. And often their hearts were tormented on hearing of the armed confrontations in which he engaged. Being fearful of losing him on that account they wanted to keep him with them. But they could not accomplish it, for his mighty heart was happy only when he put his body in great danger.

The king spoke with them concerning the state of the kingdom and about other things having to do with its affairs, but always with a sad countenance, which caused them much sorrow. All matters having been disposed of, he ordered them to return to their lands.

And he had three clerics remain whom he knew to be wisest for what he wanted. Taking them with him, he went to his chapel, and there on the sacred Host he made them swear that they would speak the truth concerning whatever he might ques-

tion them about, not fearing anything, no matter how serious it might seem to them. This done, he commanded the chaplain to leave, and he remained alone with them. Then he recounted to them the dream as already related, and told them to explain to him what might occur from it. One of them, named Ungan the Picard, who was the one who knew most, said:

“Sire, dreams are a vain thing and should be regarded as such, but since it pleases you that yours be deemed important, give us time to examine it.”

“So be it,” said the king, “and take twelve days for it.”

And he commanded them to separate and not to speak with, or see one another during that time.

They established their judgments and firm convictions, each to his best ability. The time having arrived, they came together before the king. And he took aside Albert of Champagne and said,

“You know what you have sworn to me; now speak.”

“Then let the others come,” said the cleric, “and I will speak in their presence.”

“Let them come,” said the king. And he had them called.

Then all being together, Albert said,

“Sire, I shall tell you what I understand. It seems to me that the room that was well locked and that you saw entered by the little door signifies that this kingdom of yours, though locked and guarded, would be entered by someone through some part of it in order to take something from you, and just as he placed his hand on your sides and drew out your heart and threw it in a river, so he will take city or castle and will place it in the power of one from whom you will not be able to get it back.”

“And the other heart,” said the king, “which he told me was left to me and which he would unwillingly cause me to lose?”

“As for that, it seems that another person will enter your land to take something similar, more constrained by force of someone who commands him to do so than of his own free will. And on this case I do not know, sire, what more to say to you.”

The king commanded the other cleric, whose name was Antales, to say what he had found out. He agreed with everything that the other had said. “Except that my reading of auguries shows me it is already done and by the one who loves you; and

this makes me wonder, because even now you have not lost any of your kingdom, and if such were the case, it would not be by a person who loved you greatly."

On hearing this the king smiled a little, for it seemed to him that nothing had been said. But Ungan the Picard, who knew much more than they, lowered his head and laughed most assuredly, although he did so seldom, for by nature he was an aloof, sad man. The king looked at him and said.

"Now, master, tell us what you may know."

"Sire," said he, "by chance I saw things that it is not necessary to make known except to you alone."

"Then everybody go outside," said he, and closing the doors they both remained.

The master said,

"Know you, oh king, that what I was laughing about was those words which you had just held in low esteem, for he said it was already done by the one who loves you most. Now I wish to tell you what you are keeping quite secret and you think that nobody knows. You love where already you have done your will, and the one whom you love is wondrously beautiful." — And he described to him all her features as if he had her before him. — "And concerning the room in which you saw yourself locked, this you clearly understand and how she, wanting to remove from your heart and hers those troubles and worries, sought to enter through the door you had not perceived, without your knowledge; and the hands that she put into your side is the joining of you both, and the heart that she drew out signifies a son or daughter that she will have by you."

"But master," said the king, "what does her throwing it into the river show?"

"That, sire," said he, "don't seek to know, for it holds no advantage for you."

"Still," said he, "tell me and don't fear."

"Well, since such is your pleasure," said Ungan, "I wish of you a guarantee that because of anything that I may say here you will not be angry at her who loves you so much."

"I promise," said the king.

"Then you must understand the one thing by means of the other, which is that you will have another son and in some manner you will lose it against the will of that one who now will cause you to lose the first."

"Tremendous things you have told me," said the king, "and may it please God in his mercy that the last item concerning the sons not turn out to be as true as what you have told me concerning the lady whom I love."

"The things ordained and permitted by God," said the master, "no one can hinder or know how they will end, and for this reason men should not become saddened or happy on account of them, because often the bad like the good that apparently can happen to them, happens differently from what they expected. And you, noble king, dismissing from your memory all this which you with such insistence have wanted to know, maintain in it always the need to pray to God that in this as in all other things He do what is in His holy service, because that without doubt is best."

King Perion was very well satisfied with what he wanted to know and even more with the advice of Ungan the Picard, and always kept him near at hand, bestowing on him many boons and favors. And on leaving for the palace, he encountered a damsel more adorned with finery than beauty; and she said to him:

"Know you, King Perion, that when you recover what you have lost, the seignior of Ireland will lose its flower."

And away she went and he could not stop her. Thus the king was left meditating about this and other things.

The author ceases to speak of this and returns to the youth that Gandales was bringing up, who was called the Child of the Sea, for thus they named him; and he was reared with great care by that knight Don Gandales and his wife, and became so handsome that all who saw him marvelled. And one day Gandales rode forth armed, for he was a very fine knight and very courageous. And he was always accompanied by King Languines in the period when they pursued a martial career, and although the king had ceased to do so, Gandales did not; rather he used arms often, and going along thus armed as I am telling you, he came upon a damsel who said to him:

"Alas! Gandales, if many men of high degree knew what I know now they would cut off your head."

"Why?" said he.

"Because you are custodian of their deaths."

And know you that this was the damsel who said to King Perion that when his loss was recovered, the seigniory of Ireland would lose its flower. Gandales, who did not understand, said:

"Damsel, in God's name, I beg of you to tell me what that is."

"I shall not tell you," said she, "but nevertheless it will so come to pass." And leaving him, she went her way. Gandales kept thinking about what she had said, and after a bit he saw her turn around very quickly on her horse, crying out:

"Oh, Gandales, succor me, or I'm a goner!"

And he looked and saw an armed knight coming after her with his sword in his hand. And Gandales spurred his horse and placed himself between them and said,

"Sir knight, God curse you, what do you want of the damsel?"

"Why," said he, "do you want to protect this woman who by deceit has me ruined in both body and soul?"

"I know nothing about that," said Gandales, "but I am here to protect her from you, because women should not be chastised this way, no matter how much they deserve it."

"Now you will see," said the knight. And putting his sword in the scabbard, he returned to a grove where there was a very beautiful damsel, who gave him a shield and a lance. He rode on the run toward Gandales, and Gandales toward him. And they struck each other on their shields with their lances so hard that they flew to pieces, and horses and men collided so violently that both men fell, each in a different spot, and their horses with them. Each one got up as quickly as he could, and they gave battle on foot, but it did not last long, for the damsel who had been fleeing placed herself between them and said,

"Gentlemen, have done!"

The knight who had come up behind her then drew aside, and she said to him,

"Obey me."

"I shall come willingly," said he, "as to the thing I love most in the world." And throwing down the shield from his

neck and the sword from his hand, he knelt before her. And Gandales was greatly amazed at this; and she said to the knight whom she had before her:

“Tell that damsel under the tree to go away at once; otherwise that you will cut off her head.”

The knight turned to the other damsel and said,

“Alas, you evil woman, I marvel that I don't knock off your head.”

This damsel saw that her friend was enchanted, and mounting her horse, she then went away weeping. The other damsel said,

“Gandales, I am very grateful to you for what you have done; good luck to you, for if this gentleman wronged me, I pardon him.”

“I don't know about your pardon,” said Gandales, “but I am not calling off the combat unless he concede defeat.”

“You will call it off,” said the damsel, “for even though you were the best knight in the world, I would cause him to vanquish you.”

“You will do whatever you can,” said he, “but I will not stop unless you tell me why you said that I was custodian of the deaths of many men of high degree.”

“Rather shall I tell you,” said she, “because I love this knight as my lover, and you as my helper.”

Then she drew him aside and said,

“You shall swear to me as a loyal knight, that no other shall ever learn it until I command you to tell.”

He so agreed, and she said to him,

“I say to you that the one you found in the sea will be the flower of the knights of his time; he will make strong men shudder; he will begin all things and will finish honorably where others fail; he will do such things as no one ever thought could be commenced or concluded by mortal man. He will cause the proud to be of good grace; he will have cruelty of heart against those who deserve it; and even more I tell you, for this will be the knight who in the world most loyally will maintain love and he will love such a person as is becoming to his high prowess. And know you that he comes of kings on both sides. Now, go you,” said the damsel, “and believe firmly that all will hap-

pen as I tell you; and if you reveal it, there will befall you because of it more evil than good."

"Oh, lady," said Gandales, "I beg of you in God's name that you tell me where I shall find you in order to speak with you concerning his concerns."

"This you will not know from me or from any other," said she.

"Then tell me your name, by the faith that you owe to the thing that you love most in the world."

"You entreat me so much that I will tell you; the thing that I love most I know dislikes me more than anything that is in the world, and this is that most handsome knight with whom you fought; but I do not cease on this account to force him to do my will without his being able to do otherwise. And know you that my name is Urganda the Unknown; now gaze on me well and recognize me if you can."

And he who first saw her as a damsel in his opinion not over eighteen years of age, now saw her so old and weak that he wondered how she was able to maintain herself on the palfrey. And he began to cross himself at that marvel. When she saw him thus, she laid hands on a coffer that she carried on her lap. And passing her hand over herself, she became as she was at first.

"Does it seem to you that you would find me even though you searched for me? Well, I tell you not to go to any trouble about it; for if all those in the world should seek me, they would not find me against my will."

"May God save me, lady," said Gandales, "I so believe it. But I beg of you in God's name to remember the youth who is abandoned by all except me."

"Don't think about that," said Urganda, "for that abandoned one will be protection and restorative for many, and I love him more than you think, as one who expects from him soon to have two aids that no one else would be able to plan, and he will receive two rewards for which he will be very happy; and now I commend you to God, for I wish to go, and you will see me sooner than you think."

And she took her lover's helmet and shield in order to carry them to him. And to Gandales, who saw him with his head

disarmed, he seemed the most handsome knight he had ever seen. And thus they departed from their encounter.

This is where we shall allow Urganda to go away with her friend and shall tell about Gandales, who departing from Urganda, headed for his castle. And on the way he encountered the damsel who had been accompanying Urganda's beloved and who was weeping near a fountain. And when she saw Gandales she recognized him and said:

"What about that, sir? Why hasn't that treacherous woman whom you helped had you killed?"

"Treacherous she is not," said Gandales, "but good and wise; and if you were a knight, I would make you pay well for your insane talk."

"Alas, wretched woman that I am!" said she. "How well she knows how to deceive everyone!"

"And what deceit did she wreak on you?" said he.

"She took from me that handsome knight whom you saw, who of his free will would rather live with me than with her."

"That deceit indeed she did practice," said he, "for beyond all reason and without conscience you and she are holding him; so it seems to me."

"However that may be," said she, "if I can I shall avenge myself."

"You are thinking wildly," said Gandales, "in seeking to anger that woman, who will know it, not only before you do it, but before you plan it."

"Go away now," said she, "for often those who know most fall into the most dangerous snares."

Gandales left her and as before went his way thinking about the affairs of his young man child. And arriving at the castle, before disarming he took him in his arms and began to kiss him, gazing at him with tears in his eyes, saying to himself: "My handsome son, may God grant that I live to see your heyday."

At that time the child was three years old and his extraordinary good looks were regarded as marvelous; and when he saw his foster father weeping, he put his hands before the latter's eyes as if he wanted to wipe them; for which Gandales was happy considering that the older he grew the more he would

grieve about his sadness. He put him down and went to remove his armor. And from that time forward with greater fondness he took care of him until he was five years old. Then he made him a bow to his size and another for his son Gandalin; and he had them shoot in his presence; thus he continued to rear him up to the age of seven years.

Then at this time King Languines, on passing through his kingdom with his wife and his entire retinue from one town to another, came to the castle of Gandales, which was on his way, and where he was very well entertained. But Gandales commanded that the Child of the Sea and his own son Gandalin and other youths be put in a yard so that the king and his retinue might not see the boy. But the queen, who was lodged in the highest part of the house, on looking out from a window, saw the youths who were shooting their bows, and the Child of the Sea among them, so spruce and handsome that she was astonished on seeing him; and she beheld him better dressed than all the others, so that he seemed to be their lord; and since she did not see any of Don Gandales' household whom she could ask, she summoned her ladies-in-waiting and maids, saying:

"Come and see the most handsome child you have ever seen."

Then while all were gazing as at a thing very strange and extraordinarily handsome, the youngster became thirsty; and putting down his bow and arrows he went to a water pipe to drink, and a youth older than the others took his bow and sought to shoot with it, but Gandalin would not permit it, and the other pushed him roughly.

Gandalin said: "Help me, Child of the Sea."

And when he heard him, he stopped drinking and went over to the big boy, and the latter let go of the bow, and he took it in his hand and said,

"You struck my brother at a bad time;" and with the bow he struck him as hard a blow on top of his head as he could, and they grappled with each other, so that the older one, in poor shape, began to run away and met the tutor who was in charge of them. He said,

"What is the matter?"

"The Child of the Sea," said he, "struck me."

Then he went to him with a leather strap and said,
“How is this, Child of the Sea, that you now dare to attack
the boys? Now you will see how I shall punish you for it.”

He knelt before him and said,

“Sir, I would rather you strike me than that in my presence
anyone should dare harm my brother.” And tears came to his
eyes.

The tutor had compassion, and said to him:

“If you do that again, I shall make you really weep.”

The queen had a good view of all this, and she wondered
why they called the boy Child of the Sea.

CHAPTER III

HOW KING LANGUINES TOOK WITH HIM THE CHILD OF THE SEA AND GANDALIN, THE SON OF DON GANDALES.

At this juncture the king and Gandales entered, and the queen said,

“Tell me, Don Gandales, is that handsome boy your son?”

“Yes, madam,” said he.

“Well why,” said she, “do they call him Child of the Sea?”

“Because he was born at sea,” said Gandales, “when I was coming from Brittany.”

“By Heaven, he resembles you very little,” said the queen.

She said this because the boy was marvelously handsome and Don Gandales had more virtue than good looks. The king, who was gazing at the boy, who seemed to him very handsome, said,

“Summon him, Gandales; I wish to rear him.”

“Sire,” said he, “I will do so; but he is not yet old enough to leave his mother.”

Then he went for him and brought him, saying to him,

“Child of the Sea, do you wish to go with my lord, the king?”

“I shall go wherever you bid me,” said he, “and let my brother go with me.”

“I shall not stay without him,” said Gandalin.

“I believe, sire,” said Gandales, “that you will have to take them both, for they don’t want to part.”

“That pleases me very much,” said the king.

Then he brought him to his side and ordered his son Agrajes summoned, and said to the latter:

"Son, cherish greatly these youths, as much as I cherish their father."

When Gandales saw this, that the Child of the Sea was being put into the hands of another who was not worth as much as he, the tears came to his eyes and he said to himself: "Fair son, who when tiny didst begin to encounter adventure and danger, and whom I see in the service of those who might well serve you; may God protect and direct you in all matters pertaining to His service and your great honor, and may He render true the words which the wise Urganda said to me of you, and may He let me live to see your great deeds at arms which are promised you." The king, who saw Gandales' eyes full of tears, said:

"I never thought you were so foolish."

"I am not so much so as you think," said he, "but if you please, grant me brief audience in the queen's presence." Then they ordered everyone to withdraw, and Gandales said to them:

"My lord and lady, know you the truth about this boy whom you take and whom I found on the sea." And he related to them in what manner it had come about, and also told them what he found out from Urganda except that covered by the oath he took.

"Now do with him as you ought, for may God save me: according to the trappings he brought, I believe he is of very high lineage."

The king was quite pleased to know it, and esteemed the knight who had watched over him so well. He said to Gandales,

"Well, since God took such care in preserving him, it is right that we take care also in bringing him up, forming his character properly when it be time."

The queen said:

"I wish him to be mine, if it so pleases you, while he is of an age to serve women; afterwards he will be yours."

The king agreed.

The next morning they departed from there, taking the boys with them, and went their way. But I tell you concerning the queen that she had the Child of the Sea brought up with as much care and honor as if he were her own son.

But the pains that were taken with him were not in vain, because his talent was such and his nature so noble that he

learned everything much better and more quickly than anyone else. He loved hunting and wild country so much that if he had been permitted it, never would he have withdrawn from it, shooting with his bow and feeding game to the dogs. The queen was so pleased with the way he served that she never let him leave her presence.

The author here tells again of King Perion and of his mistress Elisena. As you have heard, Perion was in his kingdom after having talked with the clerics about the dream they explained to him, and often he thought about the words that the damsel had said to him; but he could not understand them.

Then a few days having passed, and as he was in his palace, a damsel entered by the door and gave him a letter from Elisena, his mistress, in which he was informed that King Garinter, her father, had died and that she was left without any protector to take pity on her; for the queen of Scotland, her sister, and the king, husband of the latter, were seeking to take her lands. King Perion, although he felt great sorrow for the death of King Garinter, was happy to think of going to see his mistress, for whom he had never lost his desire, and he said to the damsel:

“Now go and tell your mistress that without lingering a single day, I will be with her soon.”

The damsel returned very happy. The king, arranging for the people that were needed for his journey, set out straightway for where Elisena was; and so much ground did he cover each day that he soon reached Brittany, where he found news that Languines had entire possession of the land, except those towns that her father had left to Elisena. And knowing that she was in a town called Acarte, he went there, and whether he was well received, there is no need to tell, and likewise she by him, for so deeply they loved each other. The king told her to have all her friends and relatives summoned because he wished to take her as his wife. Elisena did so with great joy of heart, because that was the goal of all her desires.

The arrival of King Perion being learned by King Languines, and how he wanted to marry Elisena, King Languines ordered summoned all the nobles of the land, and taking them with him set out to join him. Both of them having greeted and received

each other with good will, and the wedding and festivities having been celebrated, the kings decided to return to their kingdoms. As King Perion and Elisena, his wife, were traveling, on passing near a river at a place where they wanted to camp for the night, the king went alone upstream thinking about how he would find out from Elisena concerning the son that the clerics had told him about when they explained the dream. And so far did he walk while thinking of this that he arrived at a hermitage; into which, tying his horse to a tree, he entered in order to offer a prayer. And he saw inside an old man dressed in clerical garb, who said to the king:

"Sir, is it true that King Perion is married to the daughter of the king our lord?"

"It is true," said he.

"It gives me great pleasure," said the good man, "for I know for certain that he is loved by her with all her heart."

"How do you know?" said he.

"From her lips," said the good man.

The king, thinking he would find out what he desired to know, made himself known to him and said,

"I beg that you tell me what you know from her."

"I would commit a great error in doing that," said the good man, "and you would regard me as a heretic if I were to make known to you what was said in confession; let what I now tell you suffice: that she loves you with a true and loyal love. But I want you to know what a damsel who seemed to me very wise told me at the time you came to this land, and I do not understand it. She said that from Brittany would come two dragons who had their seigniorship in Gaul and their hearts in Great Britain, and they would go forth from there to eat the beasts of the other lands, and that they would be very fierce and ferocious against some; and against others, gentle and humble, as if they had neither claws nor hearts. And I was greatly amazed to hear it. But not that I know the sense of it."

The king marvelled, and although at that time he did not understand it, time was when he clearly knew it to be the truth. And so King Perion bade farewell to the hermit and returned to the tents where he had left his wife and retinue, where that night

he remained with great delight. Being in their bed in much pleasure, he told the queen what the learned men had declared about his dream, and he begged her to tell him whether she had borne a son. The queen on hearing this was so ashamed she wished she were dead, and she denied it, saying that she had never given birth. Thus the king was not able at that time to find out what he wanted. The next day they departed from there and pursued their daily journeys until they reached the kingdom of Gaul. And everyone in the land was pleased with the queen, who was a very noble lady. And there the king dallied somewhat more than was his wont, and had by her a son and a daughter. The son they named Galaor, and the daughter, Melicia.

When the son was two and a half years old, it so happened that the king his father was at a town near the sea called Bangil. He was at a window overlooking a garden, and the queen was in the garden amusing herself with her ladies-in-waiting and her maidens, having by her side the son, who was already beginning to walk. They saw enter through a postern that opened on the sea, a giant with a very large mace in his hand, and he was so large and so terrible in appearance that there was no man who saw him who was not frightened thereby. And so were the queen and her retinue, for some fled among the trees, and others fell to the ground, covering their eyes in order not to see him. But the giant went straight to the child, whom he saw helpless and alone; and on his reaching it, the child stretched out his arms laughing, and the giant took him in his arms, saying:

“The damsel told me the truth.” And he returned the way he had come, and getting into a boat he went away over the sea.

The queen, who saw him go carrying the child, shouted loudly, but it availed her little; but her grief and that of everyone was so great that although the king had great sorrow at not having been able to rescue his son, on seeing that it couldn't be helped he went down to the garden to comfort the queen, who was beside herself; for there came to her the memory of the other son whom she had launched on the sea, and now that she was intending to remedy her great sadness with this one, to see it lost in such a way, not having any hope of ever recovering it, caused the greatest raving madness in the world. But the king

took her with him and made her repair to her room, and when he beheld her somewhat calmer, said,

"Lady, now I know to be true what the clerics told me, that this was the last heart, and tell me the truth, for in view of the occasion, you ought not to be blamed."

The queen, though with much shame, related to him all that had happened to the first son, and how she had cast it into the sea.

"Don't be distressed," said the king. "Since it has pleased God that we should take but little enjoyment in these two sons, I hope in His name that the time will come when by some good fortune we shall find out something concerning them."

This giant who took the child was a native of Leonis and had two castles on an island, and his name was Gandalas, and he was not such a doer of evil as the other giants. Rather he was well-disposed until he was enraged, but after he was, he was wont to commit great acts of cruelty. He went with his child to the extremity of the island, where there was a hermit, a good man of saintly life. And the giant, who had had that island populated with Christians, customarily ordered them to give alms for the hermit's maintenance, and said,

"Friend, I give you this child to bring up and teach all that befits a knight, and I tell you that he is the son of a king and queen, and I forbid you ever to be against him."

The good man said to him,

"Tell me, why did you commit this very cruel act?"

"I will tell you," said he. "Know you that being about to enter a boat in order to fight with Albadan, the fierce giant who killed my father and holds, taken by force from me, the rock of Galtares, which is mine, I encountered a damsel who said to me,

"What you wish must be carried out by King Perion of Gaul's son, who will have much greater strength and dexterity than you.'

"And I asked her if she was telling the truth.

"This you will see' said she, 'at the time when the two branches of one tree which now are separated are united.'

Thus this boy called Galaor remained in the power of the hermit, and what happened to him will be related hereafter.

At the time that the things happened which you have heard previously, there reigned in Great Britain a king named Falangriz, who on dying without issue, left a brother greatly skilled at arms and of great discretion by the name of Lisuarte, who had just wedded the daughter of the King of Denmark, Brisena by name, who was the most beautiful maiden to be found in all the islands of the sea. And although she had been courted by many princes of high degree, and her father out of fear of some, did not dare give her to any of them, on seeing this Lisuarte and learning of his good conduct and great strength, rejecting all others, she married him, who was serving her out of love. This King Falangriz now being dead, the nobles of Great Britain, knowing the feats at arms that this Lisuarte had accomplished and that through his great prowess he had attained such a fine marriage, sent for him to take over the kingdom.

CHAPTER IV

HOW KING LISUARTE SAILED ACROSS THE SEA AND MADE PORT IN THE KINGDOM OF SCOTLAND, WHERE HE WAS RECEIVED WITH GREAT HONOR.

After the embassy was heard by King Lisuarte, the king set out on the sea, aided by his father-in-law with a great fleet. Sailing over the sea he was carried to the kingdom of Scotland, where he was received with great honor by King Languines. This Lisuarte brought with him Brisena, his wife, and a daughter he had by her when he dwelt in Denmark, Oriana by name, about ten years old, the most beautiful creature ever seen. So beautiful was she that she was called the peerless one, because in her time there was no one who was her equal.

And because she was prone to seasickness, he decided to leave her there, begging King Languines and the queen to take charge of her. They were happy to do so, and the queen said, "You may believe that I will watch over her just as her mother would."

And very hurriedly taking ship, Lisuarte arrived in Great Britain and found some who obstructed him, as is customary in such situations. For this reason he did not bethink himself of his daughter for some time. And by dint of the great effort he put forth, he was king—the best king there ever was there; the one who best maintained knighthood in its rights until King Arthur reigned, who surpassed in might all the kings who went before, although many reigned between the one and the other.

The author leaves Lisuarte ruling with great peace and quiet in Great Britain and returns to the Child of the Sea, who at that time was twelve years old, and in his height and limbs seemed

fully fifteen. He was in the queen's service, and thus by her and by all her ladies-in-waiting and maids was greatly beloved. But as soon as Oriana, the daughter of King Lisuarte, came there, the queen gave the Child of the Sea to her for her service, saying to her,

"My dear, this is a youth who will serve you."

She said that she was pleased. The youth took this word to heart in such a way that never afterwards did he remove it from his memory, so that without fail, just as this story relates, in all the days of his life he was never weary of serving her and his heart was always given into her keeping. This love lasted as long as they lived; for just as he loved her, so did she love him. Thus they never stopped loving each other for an instant. But the Child of the Sea, who did not recognize or know anything about how she loved him, considered himself very bold to have his thoughts on her, because of her high estate and her beauty, without any intention of being so bold as to say to her a single word about it. And she who had for him a heartfelt love, refrained from talking with him any more than with others, in order that people might not suspect anything. But their eyes had great pleasure in showing their hearts what they loved most in the world. Thus they lived in secrecy without saying anything about their affair of the heart to each other.

In the course of time as I am telling you, the Child of the Sea felt that he would be capable of bearing arms if there were someone to make him a knight. And he desired knighthood with the resolve that he would be such a knight as to perform deeds whereby he would die, or if he lived his lady would esteem him. And with this desire he went to the king, who was in a garden, and kneeling he said to him,

"Sire, if it please you, it might be time for me to be a knight."

"Why, Child of the Sea, do you strive already to maintain knighthood? Know you that it is easy to attain and difficult to maintain. And for him who seeks to win this name of knighthood and to maintain it to his own honor, so many and so difficult are the deeds that he must do that often his heart becomes embittered."

tered; and if he is such a knight that through fear or greed he fails to do what is proper, death would avail him more than to live in shame; and therefore I should deem it well then that you be patient for a while."

The Child of the Sea said to him:

"Not for all that will I fail to be a knight, for if in my thought I could not fulfill what you have said, my heart would not be striving to be one. And since I am voluntarily your servant, perform what you ought with me in this matter; if not, I shall seek someone else to do it."

The king, who feared he would do just that, said,

"Child of the Sea, I know when it will be necessary and most to your honor that you be made a knight. And I promise you to do it; and meanwhile your armor, weapons, and riding gear shall be made ready. But to whom do you intend to go?"

"To King Perion," said he, "who they tell me is a good knight and married to the sister of my lady the queen; and I shall let him know that I was a servant of hers, and when he knows this, I thought that he would gladly knight me."

"Now," said the king, "stand by, for when it is time you will be honorably knighted."

And then he ordered that the things needed for the order of knighthood be prepared for him, and informed Gandales of all that had befallen him with the latter's ward, for which Gandales was very happy, and sent to the Child of the Sea by a maiden the sword, the ring, and the letter wrapped and sealed in wax just as they were in the ark where he found him. And one day as the beautiful Oriana was amusing herself in the palace with other ladies-in-waiting and maidens while the queen was sleeping, the Child of the Sea was there with them, though he did not dare even gaze at his lady, and he was saying to himself:

"Oh God, why does it please You to give such beauty to this lady and to me such great trouble and sorrow because of her? In an unfortunate moment my eyes beheld her, for by losing the light of her countenance they will pay with death for that great madness which they have put into my heart."

And while he was thus almost out of his senses, a page entered and said to him,

"Child of the Sea, there outside is a strange damsel who brings you gifts and wishes to see you."

He wanted to go out to her. But when she who loved him heard her, her heart fluttered so that if anyone had looked at her, he would have been able to perceive her great perturbation. But the others had no such thought. And she said,

"Child of the Sea, remain here and let the damsel enter, and we shall see the gifts."

He remained and the damsel entered, and she was the one whom Gandales sent. And she said,

"Child of the Sea, your foster father Gandales greets you heartily as one who loves you, and he sends you this sword and this ring and this wax, and begs you out of love for him to wear this sword as long as it lasts."

He took the gifts and put the ring and wax in his lap, and he began to unwind from around the sword a piece of linen that covered it, while wondering why it did not bear a scabbard. And meanwhile Oriana took the wax which she did not believe would have any other object in it, and said to him,

"Of these gifts I wish this one."

But he begged her to take the ring, which was one of the most beautiful ones in the world. And while he was looking at the sword the king entered and said,

"Child of the Sea, what do you think of this sword?"

"Sire, it seems to me to be very beautiful, but I don't know why it is without a scabbard."

"For full fifteen years it has not had one," said the king.

And taking him by the hand, he drew him aside and said to him,

"You wish to be a knight, and you do not know whether by right it befits you, and I wish you to know the facts about yourself as I know them."

And he related to him how out in the sea he was found in the ark with that sword and ring, as you have heard.

"I believe what you tell me, because that damsel told me that my master Gandales sent me this sword, and I thought that she misspoke in not telling me that it was my father who sent it. But what you tell me does not cause me sorrow, except my

not knowing my lineage, nor they about me. But I consider myself a nobleman, for my heart so constrains me. And now, sire, knighthood is more important to me than before, and to be one to win honor and glory, as one who knows not where he comes from, and as if all those of my lineage were dead, for so I consider them, since they do not know me, nor I them."

The king believed he would be a good man and very courageous for everything; and while they were engaged in this conversation, a knight came and said to him:

"Sire, King Perion of Gaul has arrived at your house."

"Why at my house?" said the king.

"In your palace he is," said the knight.

He went then very quickly, as one who knew how to honor everyone; and when they saw each other they greeted one another, and Languines said to him:

"Sire, why did you come to this land so unexpectedly?"

"I came to seek friends," said King Perion, "because I have more need of them now than ever, for King Abies of Ireland is waging war against me; and he is with all his forces in my land, and he is entrenching himself in my waste land and comes with his cousin Daganel, and both have so great a force gathered against me that I need very much my relatives and friends as much on account of having lost many of my people in the war, as on account of many others in whom I trusted having failed me."

Languines said to him:

"Brother, I am very sorry for your trouble; and I shall help you as best I can."

Agrajes was already a knight, and kneeling before his father said:

"Sire, I beg of you a boon."

And he who loved him as he did himself said:

"Son, ask whatever you wish."

"I ask of you, sire, that you permit me to go to defend the queen, my aunt."

"I grant it," said he, "and I shall send you with the most honor and the most elegantly equipped that I can."

King Perion was very happy about this. The Child of the Sea, who was there, was gazing fixedly at King Perion, not as his

father, for he did not know that, but more on account of the great prowess at arms that he had heard told of him, and he wanted to be a knight by his hand more than by any other in the world. And for this he believed that the request of the queen would be of much avail to him; but finding her very sad because of her sister's loss, he did not seek to speak to her, and he went where his lady Oriana was; and kneeling before her, he said:

"Lady Oriana, might I learn from you the cause of the sadness that the queen has?"

Oriana, who thus saw before her that one whom she most loved, without his knowing it or anyone else, was thrilled to the heart, and said to him:

"Oh, Child of the Sea, this is the first thing you have asked of me, and I shall do it willingly."

"Ah, lady," said he, "I am not so bold or so worthy as to beg anything of such a lady, but to do what I am commanded by you."

"And why is it?" said she. "Is your heart so weak that it is not strong enough to ask?"

"So weak," said he, "that in all things opposing you it must fail me, except to serve you as one who without being his own master is all yours."

"Mine," said she, "since when?"

"Since when it pleased you," said he.

"And how did it please me?" said Oriana.

"Let it be recalled, lady," said the Child of the Sea, "that the day when your father left here, he took the queen by the hand and placing me before you, said, 'This youth I give you to serve you,' and you said you were pleased thereby. Since then I hold and shall hold myself ready to serve you without any other woman or myself having mastery over me as long as I live."

"That word," said she, "you took with greater understanding than the purpose with which it was said, but it pleases me well as it is."

He was so overcome at the pleasure that he received from this that he was unable to make any answer; and she saw that she had complete mastery over him; and leaving him she went to

the queen and found out that the cause of her sadness was her sister's loss, which on returning to the Child of the Sea she made known to him.

"If it should please you, lady, that I be a knight, it would be in aid of that sister of the queen, by your permitting my departure."

"And if I did not permit it," said she, "would you not go there?"

"No," said he, "for without the favor of the one whose it is, my vanquished heart could not be supported in any affront, even less without affront."

She laughed with good countenance and said to him,

"Well, since this I have won from you, I agree that you be my knight and that you help that sister of the queen."

The youth kissed her hands and said,

"Since the king, my lord, has not wished to make me a knight, I should be most willing that it be by King Perion at your request."

"I shall do in the matter what I can" said she, "but it will be necessary to say so to Princess Mabilia, for her request would be of great avail with the king her uncle."

Then she went to her and told her how the Child of the Sea wished to be a knight at the hands of King Perion, and that her request for it on their behalf would be necessary. Mabilia, who was very courageous and who loved the Child with a wholesome affection, said,

"Then let us do it for him, for he deserves it, and let him come to my mother's chapel wearing full armor, and we shall keep him company with other damsels; and when King Perion starts to take horse to leave, which according to what I have learned will be before dawn, I will send him a message to request that he see me; and there he will carry out our request, for he is very much a well-mannered gentleman."

"You are talking sense," said Oriana; and calling the Child they told him how they had it arranged. He took it as a favor to himself. Thus they ended that conversation in which all three were in agreement; and the Child of the Sea called Gandalin and said to him:

"Brother, bring all of my arms secretly to the queen's chapel, for tonight I intend to be a knight, and because on the hour I must depart from here, I wish to know if you will want to go with me."

"Sire, I tell you I shall never willingly be parted from you."

The tears came to the eyes of the Child, and he kissed him on the face and said to him:

"Friend, now do what I told you."

Gandalin put the arms in the chapel while the queen was having supper; and the tables having been cleared, the Child of the Sea went to the chapel and armed himself completely except his head and hands, and said his prayers before the altar, praying God that in arms as in those mortal desires that he had for his lady, he be given victory. As soon as the queen went to bed, Oriana and Mabilia with a few damsels went to him to bear him company; and when Mabilia ascertained that King Perion was on the point of riding away, she sent for him to tell him to see her beforehand. He came immediately and Mabilia said to him,

"Sire, do what Oriana, daughter of King Lisuarte, will request of you."

The king said he would do it willingly, for the merit of her father obliged him to do so. Oriana came before the king, and when he beheld her so beautiful, he believed that the equal of such beauty could not be found anywhere in the world; and she said,

"I wish to ask a boon of you."

"Willingly," said the king, "I will grant it."

"Then make my page a knight."

And she pointed him out as he knelt before the altar. The king saw the youth to be so handsome that he was greatly astonished, and coming up to him, he said,

"Do you wish to receive the order of knighthood?"

"I do," he replied.

"In the name of God, and may He ordain that it be in you as well employed and as augmented in honor as He augmented your good looks." And putting the right spur on him, he said to him:

"Now you are a knight and you may take the sword."

The king took it and gave it to him, and the Child of the Sea girded it on in very proper fashion.

And the king said,

“Certainly I should like to have performed this act of dubbing you knight with greater honor in accordance with your bearing and appearance. But I hope to God that your fame will be such as to give testimony of what should have been done with more honor.”

And Mabilia and Oriana were very happy, and kissed the hands of the king; and commending the Child of the Sea to God, the king went on his way.

That was the beginning of the love affair of this knight and this maiden; and if to anyone who reads these words, they seem naive, may he not wonder at it, because not only at such a tender age as hers, but at other ages at which with great discretion, many things have happened, great, over-abundant love has had such force that senses and speech in such situations were disturbed. Thus very rightly they in saying the words and the author in not writing them in more polished ones should be without blame, because to each thing one must give what befits it. The Child of the Sea being knighted as is told above, and wishing to bid farewell to Oriana, his lady, and to Mabilia and the other damsels who kept vigil with him in the chapel, Oriana, to whom it seemed that her heart was breaking, without letting him know it took him aside and said to him,

“Child of the Sea, I consider you so good that I do not believe you are the son of Gandales; if you know anything else about this, tell me.”

The youth told her what he had ascertained from King Languines concerning his antecedents, and she, being very happy to learn it, bade him godspeed.

And at the door of the palace he found Gandalin, who had for him his lance, shield, and horse. And mounting it he went on his way, without anyone's seeing him, it being already night. He went on until he entered a forest, where past mid-day he ate what Gandalin had brought him. And it being now late, he heard to his right some very sad cries as of a man who was suffering greatly; and he went in that direction; and on the way he found a dead knight, and passing by him, he saw another who was sorely wounded, and bending over him was a woman who

was causing him to make the outcries by inserting her hands in his wounds; and when the knight saw the Child of the Sea, he said:

“Alas, sir knight, help me! And don’t let this treacherous woman kill me in this fashion.”

The Child of the Sea said,

“Withdraw, lady, for what you are doing does not become you.”

She withdrew and the knight went into a swoon, and the Child of the Sea dismounted, for he wanted very much to know who the knight was, and took him in his arms; and as soon as he revived, he said,

“Oh, sir, I am dying; and take me where there is counsel for my soul.”

The Child of the Sea said to him,

“Sir knight, exert yourself and tell me, if you please, what plight this is in which you are.”

“That which I sought,” said the knight, “for I, being rich and of a distinguished lineage, married that woman whom you saw, out of the great love which I had for her, she being contrary in all respects. And last night she was going away with that knight who lies there dead, whom I had never seen until last night, when he lodged with me. And after I killed him in combat, I told her that I would pardon her if she swore not to do me any more wrongs or dishonor, and she agreed to this. But when she saw me bleeding so much from my wounds that I no longer had any strength, she sought to kill me by inserting her hands in them. So I am dying and I beg you to carry me on to where a hermit dwells who will care for my soul.”

The young knight had him mount in front of Gandalin, and he mounted and they went toward the hermitage. But the evil woman, fearing that her husband would go after her, had three brothers of hers come along that road, and these encountered her and asked her why she was going thus; she said,

“Ah, sirs, help me, for heaven’s sake, for that bad knight who goes yonder killed this one whom you see there and is carrying away my lord as good as dead! Go after him and kill him, and

also the man whom he has with him, who did as much harm as he did."

She said this because if both died, her evil deed would not be known, for her husband would not be believed. And mounting her palfrey, she went with them in order to point them out to them. The Child of the Sea had already left the knight in the hermitage and was continuing on his way; but he saw the woman coming with the three knights, who said, "Stop, traitors, stop."

"You lie," said he, "for I am not a traitor. Rather I shall defend myself well from treachery; and come at me like knights."

"Traitor!" said the foremost one, "all of us ought to do you ill, and so we shall."

The Child of the Sea, who held his shield and had his helmet linked, let himself go at the first one, and he at him, and he struck his shield so hard that it went through it and the arm on which he held it; and he knocked down both him and his horse with such ferocity that the knight had his right shoulder broken and the horse had a leg broken from its great fall; in such wise that neither the one nor the other could get up. And he had broken his lance, and grasped the sword which Gandales had saved for him, and let himself go at the other two, and they at him. And they struck him on his shield, which they pierced, but not his coat of mail, which was strong. And the Child of the Sea struck the one on top of his shield and cut it as far down as its clasp, and the sword reached his shoulder in such wise that with its point he cut flesh and bones, for his coat of mail was of no avail to him; and when he pulled his sword back the knight went to the ground, and the Child of the Sea went at the other one, who was striking him with his sword, and struck him on top of his helmet; and he hit him with such force on the top of his head that he made him embrace the neck of the horse, and the other let himself fall in order not to await another blow. The treacherous woman tried to flee, but the Child of the Sea shouted to Gandalin to capture her. The knight who was on foot said,

"Sir, we do not know whether this combat was right or wrong."

"It could not be right," he said, "for that evil woman killed her husband."

"We are deceived," said he, "and grant us security and you shall know the reason why we attacked you."

"I give you security," he said, "but I do not exempt you from the combat."

The knight related to him the reason they came at him. The Child of the Sea made the sign of the cross many times on hearing it, and told them what he knew.

"And here is her husband in this hermitage who will tell it to you just as I have."

"Since that's the way of it," said the knight, "let us be at your mercy."

"This I will not grant unless you swear as loyal knights that you will carry this wounded knight, and his wife with him, to the court of King Languines and tell all that happened concerning her, and that a novice knight, who today left the town where he is, sends her, and that he sends word to him to do whatever he considers right."

The two agreed to this, as did the other one after they had pulled him out in very bad shape from under the horse.

CHAPTER V

HOW URGANDA THE UNKNOWN BROUGHT A LANCE TO THE CHILD OF THE SEA.

The Child of the Sea turned over his shield and helmet to Gandalin and went on his way; and he had not gone far when he saw a damsel coming on her palfrey, and she carried a lance with a sash. And he saw another damsel, who was coming along another road, join her, and they both came towards him talking; and as they drew near the damsel with the lance said,

"Sir, take this lance, and I say to you that before the third day you will give with it such blows that you will free the house from whence you first came forth."

He was amazed at what she said, and replied,

"Damsel, how can the house either die or live?"

"It will be as I tell you," she said, "and the lance I give you for some favors I expect from you. The first will be when you confer an honor on a friend of yours whereby he will be put in the greatest confrontation and danger into which any knight has been put for the past ten years."

"Damsel," said he, "such an honor, God willing, I shall not confer on my friend."

"I know well," said she, "that it will happen just as I tell you."

And spurring her palfrey, she went her way; and know you that this was Urganda the Unknown. The other maiden remained with him and said,

"Sir knight, I am from a foreign land, and if you wish, I will await you until the third day and cease to go where my lady is."

"And where are you from?" said he.

"From Denmark," said the maiden.

And he recognized that she was telling the truth by her language, which he occasionally had heard his lady Oriana speak when she was younger; and he said,

"Lady, it pleases me, provided you do not regard it as a hardship."

And he asked her whether she knew the damsel who gave him the lance. She said she had never seen her except there; but that she told her she was carrying it for the greatest knight in the world, "and she told me that after she left you, I should inform you that she was Urganda the Unknown and that she loves you very much."

"Oh, heavens!" said he, "how unlucky I am not to recognize her; and if I fail to look for her, it is because no one will ever find her without her consent."

And thus he traveled with the damsel until nightfall, when he encountered a squire on the road who said to him:

"Sir, where are you going?"

"I am going along this road," said he.

"That is true," said the squire, "but if you wish to lodge in a town it will be desirable for you to leave it, because from here on for a long distance nothing will be found except a fortress which belongs to my father, and there every service will be rendered you."

The damsel told him it would be all right and he agreed with her. The squire turned them off the road in order to guide them, and this he did on account of a custom that obtained at a castle on ahead along the knight's route; and this squire wanted to see what the knight would do, for he had never seen a knight errant fight. Then, having arrived there, they were very well served that night. But the Child of the Sea did not sleep very much, for most of the night he was thinking about his lady, from whom he had departed. And in the morning he put on his armor and went his way with the damsel and the squire. His host told him he would accompany him as far as a castle that was ahead. Thus they went three leagues, and they saw the castle, which appeared very beautiful, for it was on a river and had a drawbridge at the end of which was a very fine, high tower. The Child of the Sea asked

the squire whether that river had any other crossing except by the bridge. He said not, that everyone crossed on it, "and we are going to cross there."

"Then onward," said the Child of the Sea.

The damsel crossed and the squires next, with the Child of the Sea in the rear; and so intently was he thinking of his lady that he was completely beside himself. As the damsel entered the tower, some foot soldiers wearing helmets and cuirasses seized her mount by the bridle and said,

"Lady, you must swear, or die."

"What shall I swear?"

"You will swear never to make love with your lover if he does not promise you that he will help King Abies against King Perion."

The lady shouted that they were about to kill her. The Child of the Sea went to where she was and said,

"Evil churls, who ordered you to lay hands on matron or maiden, on this one in particular who is under my protection?"

And coming up to the elder of them he seized his battle axe and gave him such a blow with its tip that he knocked him down. The others began to strike him, but he gave one such a blow that he split his head open down to his eyes and struck the other on the shoulder, cutting through to his ribs. When the others saw these two dead from such blows, they were hesitant, and started to flee; and he threw at one the battle-axe, which cut off half his leg. And he said to the damsel:

"Go ahead, for all those be damned who take as a right that any churl lay hands on a matron or maiden."

Then they went ahead along the bridge and heard from the castle at the other end a great hubbub. The damsel said,

"There is a lot of shouting, and I would be in favor of your arming yourself."

"Do not fear," said he, "for anywhere where women are mistreated, whereas they ought to go about in safety, there can't be a man worth anything."

"Sir," said she, "if you do not arm yourself, I would not dare to proceed further."

He armed himself and went forward and on entering the gate of the castle he saw a squire who approached weeping and said,

"Oh heavens, why are they killing the greatest knight in the world because he will not take an oath that he cannot rightly keep."

And going past him, the Child of the Sea saw King Perion, who had dubbed him knight, greatly maltreated, for they had killed his horse, with two knights with ten armed foot soldiers attacking and wounding him in many places; and the knights were saying to King Perion:

"Swear; if you don't, you die."

The Child of the Sea said,

"Stand aside, you evil, arrogant people, don't lay hands on the greatest knight in the world, or all of you shall die because of him."

Then one knight and five foot soldiers drew away from the others and coming forward said to him:

"You will have to swear thus or you die."

"How," said he, "can I swear against my will? It will never be, God willing."

They shouted to the gate keeper to close the gate. And the Child of the Sea, giving his horse free rein, charged the knight and struck him with the lance on his shield so hard he fell over the rump of the horse to the ground, and on falling he hit his head on the ground in such wise that he twisted his neck and was as good as dead. And leaving the foot soldiers who were attacking him, the Child of the Sea went for the other knight, and pierced his shield and cuirass and thrust his lance into his side so that he had no further need of a physician. When King Perion saw that he was succored in such fashion, he endeavored to defend himself better, and with his sword gave strong blows to the men on foot. But the Child of the Sea, still mounted, charged so violently into their midst, attacking them with his sword with such deadly, harsh blows, that he felled most of them. Thus with this and with what the king accomplished there was no great delay in their being annihilated, and some who managed to flee climbed the wall; but the Child of the Sea dismounted from his horse and went after them, and so great was the fear they had, that not daring to tarry, they let themselves fall down from the wall, except two of them, who put themselves in a chamber. And the Child of the Sea, who followed them, entered

behind them, and he saw on a bed a man so old that he could not rise from there, who was shouting,

“Evil churls, from whom are you fleeing?”

“From a knight,” they said, “who is raising the devil, and has killed both your nephews and all our companions.”

The Child of the Sea said to one of them,

“Show me your master, or you die.”

He showed him the old man who lay on the bed.

The Child of the Sea began to make the sign of the cross and said,

“Evil old man, being on the point of death, do you maintain such a custom? If you were able now to take up arms, I would prove you were a traitor, and this you are to God and to your own soul.”

Then he pretended to be about to strike him with his sword, and the old man said,

“Alas, sir, mercy; don’t kill me.”

“Dead you are,” said the Child of the Sea, “unless you swear that such a custom will never more be maintained during your life.”

He swore it.

“Now then, tell me why you maintained this custom.”

“For King Abies of Ireland,” said he, “who is my nephew, and not being able to help him with my body, I wished to help him with the knights errant.”

“False old man,” said the Child, “what have the knights to do with your help or opposition?”

Then he kicked the bed and turned it over on top of him, and commending him to all the devils of hell, he went out into the courtyard, and taking one of the horses of the knights whom he had killed, he brought it to King Perion and said,

“Take horse, sire, for I am but little content with this place, or with those who are in it.”

Then they mounted and went out of the castle; and the youth did not doff his helmet, so that the king might not recognize him, and being already outside, the king said:

“My dear sir, who are you who have succored me when I was near death, and have deterred from attacking me many

knights errant, and the friends of the damsels who pass by here, for I am that one against whom they had to take oath?"

"Sire," said the Child of the Sea, "I am a knight who has desired to serve you."

"Sir," said he, "this I see well, for a man would hardly be able to find any other help so good; but I shall not leave you without knowing who you are."

"This is not to your advantage or to mine."

"Then I ask as a courtesy that you take off your helmet."

He lowered his head and did not answer; but the king begged the damsel to take it off, and she said,

"Sir, comply with the request of the king, who wishes it so much."

But he would not; and the damsel took off his helmet against his will, and as the king saw his face, he recognized him as the youth whom he had dubbed knight by request of the damsels; and embracing him, he said,

"By heavens, friend, now I know you better than before."

"Sire," said he, "indeed I recognized you, for you gave me the honor of knighthood; on account of which if it please God, I shall serve you in your war in Gaul, as soon as it be permitted, and until then, I had not wished to make myself known to you."

"I am very grateful to you," said the king, "for you do so much for me that it is not possible to do more, and I give thanks to God that such an act was performed by me."

This he said on account of having made him a knight, for the relationship that he had to him he neither knew nor imagined.

Conversing on this, they arrived at two highways, and the Child of the Sea said,

"Sire, which of these do you wish to follow?"

"This one that goes to the left," said he, "for it is the right one for going to my land."

"God be with you," said he, "for I shall take the other."

"May God guide you," said the king, "and remember what you have promised me, for your help has removed most of my fear, and gives me hope that with it my loss will be remedied."

Then he went on his way, and the knight remained with the damsel, who said to him:

"Sir knight, I have awaited you on account of what the damsel who gave you the lance told me: that she was bringing it for the best knight in the world; and I have seen enough to know it to be the truth. Now I wish to resume my way to see that lady whom I told you about."

"Who is she?" said the Child of the Sea.

"Oriana, the daughter of King Lisuarte," said she.

When he heard his lady mentioned, his heart was so shaken that he almost fell from his horse, and Gandalin, who saw him so overwhelmed, embraced him; and the Child of the Sea said,

"My heart is overcome."

The damsel, worrying lest it might be another ailment, said,

"Sir knight, disarm yourself, for you have suffered great distress."

"It is not necessary," said he, "for I often have this illness."

The squire, whom you have already heard about, said to the damsel,

"Are you going to the court of King Languines?"

"Yes," said she.

"Well, I will accompany you," said he, "for I have to be there by a certain time."

And bidding good-bye to the Child of the Sea, they turned back over the way whence they had come; and he went along his way where adventure guided him.

The author here ceases to speak of the Child of the Sea and again tells about Don Galaor, his brother, whom the giant had borne away. Don Galaor, who was being brought up by the hermit, as you have heard, being now eighteen years old, had become valiant of body and husky; and he was always reading in some books which the good man gave him of the ancient deeds at arms which the knights were engaged in; so partly because of this and because of his innate nature, he had been moved to desire greatly to be a knight; but he did not know whether by right he ought to be; and he frequently besought the good man who reared him to tell him. But, knowing for certain that after being a knight he would have to fight the giant Albadan, tears came to his eyes and he said to him,

"My son, it would be better if you pursued another path more secure for your soul than to put yourself in armor and in the order of knighthood, which is very difficult to maintain."

"Sir," said he, "I could ill pursue what I took up unwillingly; and in this which my heart wishes, if God gives me success I will devote myself to His service; and without it, I would not wish my life to continue."

The good man, who perceived Galaor's firm will, said,

"Since that is the way of it, I tell you truly that if it be not lost through you, it will not be lost because of your lineage, for you are the son of a king and queen; and may the giant not find out that I told you."

When Galaor heard this he was so happy that he could not have been more so; and he said,

"The aspiration to be a knight which until now I deemed so lofty, according to what you have told me, I now consider a small matter."

The good man, fearing that he might leave, sent to tell the giant how his servant was at the age and with the desire to be a knight, and that he consider what befitted him. Having heard this, the giant mounted his horse and went there, and found Galaor very handsome and brave, more so than his age required, and he said to him,

"Son, I know that you wish to be a knight, and I wish to take you with me, and I shall strive for it to be greatly to your honor."

"Father," said he, "in that my wish will be entirely fulfilled."

Then he had him mount a horse in order to take him away. But before he bade farewell to the good man, he knelt before him, begging him to remember him. The good man wept and kissed him many times; and after he gave him his blessing, Galaor went away with the giant. And on their arrival at the castle, he made him armor to his measure; and had him ride and tilt in the field; and gave him two fencing instructors to develop him and make him dextrous with shield and sword, and he had him learn all the things about arms that it befitted a knight to know; and in this he kept him occupied for one year, which the giant saw sufficed for him to be able to be a knight without hindrance.

Here the author leaves off narrating this, because in its proper place mention will be made of what this Galaor did; and he returns to his narration of what happened to the Child of the Sea after he left King Perion and the Damsel of Denmark, and the castle of the old man.

He went along for two days without encountering any adventure, and on the third day at noon he arrived in sight of a very beautiful castle which belonged to a knight, Galpano by name, who was the bravest and most courageous at arms to be found in those parts, so that he was much feared and distrusted by all. And with his great valor together with the strong fortification of the castle, he maintained customs that a very arrogant man must needs maintain while following more the service of the Devil than that of that high Lord, (which would have rendered him so distinguished among all others) as you will now hear:

He made the matrons and maidens who passed by go up to the castle, and working his will on them by force, they had to swear to him that as long as he should live they would not take any other lover; and if they did not so swear he beheaded them, and the knights he caused likewise to take an oath, for they had to fight with two brothers of his; and if one defeated them, he had to fight him. And he was so good at arms that no one dared to await him in the field. And he made them swear to call themselves, "Conquered by Galpano," or he cut off their heads; and he taking from them whatever they brought, they had to leave on foot. But God, already angered that such great cruelty should continue for such a long time, permitted Fortune — while those people whom He had supported so frequently in their great haughtiness and in excessive delights so to their liking were proceeding against Him — within a short interval to reverse her wheel by paying back those wicked men for their iniquity, thus affording to others like them a fearful object lesson whereby they might mend their ways, as now will be told you.

CHAPTER VI

HOW THE CHILD OF THE SEA FOUGHT WITH THE FOOT SOLDIERS OF THE KNIGHT, WHO WAS CALLED GALPANO, AND AFTERWARDS WITH THE BROTHERS OF THE LORD OF THE CASTLE, AND WITH THE LORD HIMSELF, AND HOW HE KILLED HIM WITHOUT HAVING MERCY ON HIM.

Then the Child of the Sea arriving near the castle saw coming toward him a damsel greatly lamenting, and a squire and page who were awaiting her. The damsel was very beautiful with lovely hair and she was tearing it out. The Child of the Sea said to her,

“Friend damsel, what is the cause of such great distress?”

“Alas, sir,” she said, “so great is my trouble that I cannot tell it.”

“Tell me,” said he, “and if I can rightly be of help to you, I will be.”

“Sir,” said she, “I come on a mission of my master’s to one of the good young knights now known; and four foot soldiers seized me yonder, and taking me to the castle, I was violated by a traitor, and on top of everything else he made me swear not to have any other lover as long as he lived.”

The Child of the Sea took her steed by the bridle and said to her,

“Come with me and I shall obtain justice for you if I can.”

And taking her steed by the reins, he went along talking with her, asking her who the knight was to whom she was bringing the message.

"You will find out," said she, "if you avenge me; and I tell you that he is such that he will have great sorrow when he learns of my dishonor."

"'Tis right," said the Child of the Sea.

Thus they arrived where the four foot soldiers were, and the Child of the Sea said to them:

"Foul traitors, why did you do evil to this damsel?"

"Because we were afraid," said they, "of your winning justice for her."

"Now you will see," said he, and he laid hand on his sword and let himself go at them and gave to one, who was raising a battleax to strike him, such a blow that he cut off his arm and knocked it to the ground. The foot soldier fell down shouting. Afterwards he struck another across the nose and he cut him to the ears. When the other two saw this they began to flee toward a river through a dense thicket. He put his sword in the scabbard and took the damsel by her steed's bridle and said, "Let us go ahead."

The damsel said, "Near here is a gateway where I saw two armed knights."

"All right," said he, "for I want to see them." Then he said, "Damsel, come behind me and do not be afraid."

And on entering through the castle gate, he saw an armed knight before him who was riding a horse; and once the latter had issued forth a portcullis was lowered behind him. And the knight said to them very haughtily,

"Come, you will receive your disgrace."

"Let us leave that," said the Child of the Sea, "to him who can ascertain it; but I ask you whether you are the one who raped this damsel."

"No," said the knight, "but if I were, what would therefore happen?"

"My avenging her," said he, "if possible."

"Then I want to see how you fight."

And he let himself go at him, and his blow missed. And the Child of the Sea struck him with the lance on the shield so hard that no items of armor that he wore availed him. The steel penetrated through to his back, and he knocked him dead to the

ground. And pulling his lance out of him, he went for another knight, who was coming toward him saying,

"You enter here inauspiciously." And the knight struck him on the shield and went through it; but the iron of his lance was arrested by his coat of mail, which was strong; but the Child of the Sea struck him with his lance with gusto on his helmet and knocked it off his head; and the knight fell to the ground immediately. And when he saw himself in this situation he began to utter loud outcries, and three armed foot soldiers came out of a room and he said to them,

"Kill this traitor."

They struck his horse in such a way that they felled it to the ground along with him; but getting up enraged from the horse which they had killed, he went and struck the knight with his lance on the face so that the iron went between his ear and his neck and he fell at once. And he turned to those on foot who were striking him, and they had wounded him on one shoulder, from which he was losing much blood; but so great was his rage that he did not feel it, and he struck with his sword on the head that one who had wounded him, in such wise that he sliced off his ear and his face, and whatever he reached; and the sword descended as far as his chest; and the other two went toward the courtyard saying in loud voices,

"Come, sir, come, for we are all being slain."

The Child of the Sea mounted the horse of the knight whom he had killed and went after them and saw at a door an unarmed knight who said,

"What is this, sir? Have you come here to kill my men?"

"I came," said he, "to avenge this damsel for the outrage that was done her here, if I find the one who did it."

The damsel said,

"Sir, that is the one by whom I am put to shame."

The Child of the Sea said to him,

"Ah, haughty knight, full of villainy, now you will pay for the evil you did. Arm yourself immediately; if not, I shall kill you as you are, unarmed; for with evil men like you one ought not to exercise restraint."

"Ah, sir," said the damsel, "kill that traitor, and don't give him an opportunity to do more evil, for now everything would be your responsibility."

"Ah, wicked woman," said the knight, "in an evil hour the one who came with you believed you." And he entered a large room and said,

"You, knight, await me and do not run away, for nowhere will you be able to take refuge from me."

"I swear," said the Child of the Sea, "if I can get out of here, don't leave me any place heavily guarded."

And in a short time he saw him come out on a white horse, and so completely armed that he lacked nothing; and he came saying, "Ah, bad knight errant, in an unlucky hour you saw the damsel; for here you will lose your head."

When the Child of the Sea heard himself threatened, he was very angry and said,

"Now may each one protect his own, and he who does not defend it will lose it."

Then they let themselves go at full speed of their horses, and they struck each other with their lances on their shields, which immediately were penetrated; and their coats of mail likewise; and the iron lance points thrust into their flesh, and they collided with their bodies, shields, and helmets so violently that both fell to earth. But it fared so well with the Child of the Sea that he held the reins in his hand, and Galpano got up very battered; and they laid hands on their swords and held their shields before them and struck each other so fiercely that they frightened those who were watching them. From their shields there fell to the earth many slices and from their coats of mail many fragments, and their helmets were dented and broken; so the area where they were fighting was red with blood. Galpano, who suffered from a wound that he had sustained on his head so that the blood was dropping down over his eyes, retired to one side in order to clean them; but the Child of the Sea, who was moving very nimbly and with great courage, said to him,

"What is this, Galpano? Cowardice does not befit you. Don't you remember that you are fighting for your head and if you do not defend it, you will lose it?"

Galpano said,

“Hold up a moment and let us rest, for there is time for us to fight.”

“There is no need for that,” said the Child of the Sea, “for I am not fighting you through courtesy, but to give satisfaction to that damsel whom you dishonored.”

And he went and struck him so fiercely on top of his helmet that he made him kneel down on both knees; and he got up at once and began to defend himself, but not in such a way that the Child of the Sea was unable to make him do his will, for the knight was already so tired that he could hardly hold his sword and thought only to cover himself with his shield, which was all cut up on his arm so that nothing remained of it. Then having no other recourse, he began to flee through the square hither and yon from the sword of the Child of the Sea, who did not let him rest; and he sought to escape to the tower, where he had his men. But the Child of the Sea overtook him on some steps, and taking him by the helmet he jerked him so violently that he made him fall prone to the ground, and the helmet remained in his hands. And with his sword he gave him such a blow on the neck that his head was severed from his body; and the Child of the Sea said to the damsel:

“From today on you may have another lover if you wish, for this one to whom you swore is dispatched.”

“Thanks to God and to you,” said she, “who have killed him.”

He had wanted to go up into the tower, but he saw the stairway raised; and he mounted Galpano’s horse, which was very handsome, and said,

“Let’s go away from here.”

The damsel said,

“Sir, I shall carry the head of this one who dishonored me, and I shall give it on your behalf to the one to whom I carry the message.”

“Do not carry the head,” said he, “for it will be a bother to you; but carry the helmet in place of it.”

The damsel agreed and ordered her squire to take it; and they left the castle and found the gate opened by those who had

fled through it. Then, being on their way, the Child of the Sea said,

"Tell me who the knight is to whom you bring the message?"

"Know you," said she, "that he is Agrajes, son of the King of Scotland."

"Blessed be God," said he, "that I have been of such avail that he will not receive this offense; and I say to you, damsel, that he is the best young knight that I know of, and if you took dishonor on account of him, he will make return in honor. And tell him one of his knights sends regards to him — whom he will encounter at the war in Gaul if he goes to it."

"Ah, sir," said she, "since you love him so, I beg you to grant me a boon."

He said,

"Very willingly."

"Then," said the damsel, "tell me your name."

"Damsel," said he, "don't seek now to know my name, and ask another boon that I can grant."

"I do not wish any other boon," said she.

"So help me God," said he, "you are not courteous in wanting to know from any man something against his will."

"Nevertheless," said she, "tell me, if you want to be quits."

When he saw that he could not do otherwise, he said,

"They call me the Child of the Sea."

And leaving her as quickly as he could, he went on his way. The damsel was quite delighted to learn the name of the knight. The Child of the Sea was sorely wounded, and so much blood flowed from him that the road was red from it, and the horse, which was white, seemed vermilion in many places. And going along until the hour of vespers, he saw a very beautiful fortress and toward him came an unarmed knight, and as he reached him, he said to him,

"Sir, where did you get these wounds?"

"In a castle hereabouts that I left," said the knight.

"And that horse, how did you get it?"

"I took it in exchange for mine which was killed," said the Child of the Sea.

"And the knight whose it was, what became of him?"

"Alas, he lost his head," said the Child of the Sea.

Then the knight got down to kiss his foot. And the Child of the Sea removed his foot from the stirrup, and the other kissed the skirt of his coat of mail and said,

"Ah, sir, be you very welcome, for through you I have recovered all my honor."

"Sir knight," said the Child of the Sea, "do you know where these wounds might be cared for?"

"Yes, I know," said he, "for in this my house there will care for you a damsel, who is my niece, better than any other woman there is in this land."

Then they dismounted and went and entered the tower; and the knight said,

"Ah, sir, that traitor whom you have killed has held me for a year half dead and in ridicule, so that I did not take up arms; and he made me lose my name and swear not to be called anything except one vanquished by him; because of you I am given back my honor."

There they placed the Child of the Sea in a luxurious bed, where his wounds were treated by the hand of the damsel, who told him she would restore him provided that he avoided traveling for a few days. And he said he would follow her advice.

CHAPTER VII

HOW ON THE THIRD DAY AFTER THE CHILD OF THE SEA LEFT THE COURT OF KING LANGUINES THERE CAME THOSE THREE KNIGHTS WHO BROUGHT A KNIGHT ON A LITTER, AND HIS TREACHEROUS WIFE.

On the third day after the Child of the Sea departed from the house of King Languines, where he was dubbed a knight, there arrived there the three knights who were bringing the false matron, and the knight, her sorely wounded husband, on a litter. And the three knights put the matron into the hands of the king on behalf of a novice knight. And they related to the king what had happened concerning the knight. The king made the sign of the cross many times on hearing of such treachery by a woman, and was very grateful to the knight who sent her, for no one knew that the Child of the Sea was a knight, except his lady Oriana and the other women whom you have already heard about. Rather, they thought that he had gone to see his foster father Gandales. The king said to the knight of the litter,

“A woman so treacherous as your wife is ought not to live.”

“Sir,” said he, “Do what you must, but I shall never consent to kill the thing that I love most in the world.”

And having bade farewell to the king, he had himself carried away on the litter.

The king said to the matron,

“By heaven, that knight was more loyal to you than you to him; but I shall have you pay for your disloyalty.” And he ordered her burned to death.

The king wondered greatly who the knight could be who had made them come there, and the squire in whose castle the Child of the Sea had lodged said,

“Perchance he is a novice knight for whom I and a damsel from Denmark, who arrived here today, were waiting.”

“And what knight is that?” said the king.

“Sire,” said the squire, “he is very young and so handsome it is a marvel to see him, and I saw him perform so well at arms in a short time that if he has the good fortune to live, he will be the greatest knight in the world.” Then he related all that he had seen and how the Child of the Sea had saved King Perion from death.

“Do you know,” said the king, “what his name is?”

“No, sire,” said he, “for moreover he is very secretive concerning himself.”

Then the king and all the others were more desirous than ever of learning it. And the squire said,

“The damsel was with him more than I.”

“Is the damsel here?” said the king.

“Yes,” said he, “for she comes seeking the daughter of King Lisuarte.”

Then he commanded her to come before him and she told all that she had seen concerning him, and how she had awaited him because the damsel who gave him the lance had said that she was bringing it for the best knight who now would be able to hold it in his hand.

“So much do I know of him,” said she, “but of his name I know nothing.”

“Oh, heavens, who could he be?” said the king.

But the Child of the Sea’s beloved had no doubts as to who he might be, because the damsel had told her how he had come to seek her in order to take her away with him. And as soon as she named him, Oriana experienced great agitation, because she had the belief that the king would afford the opportunity for her to take her to her father, and once departed she would not have news so continuously of the one whom she loved more than herself. Thus six days passed during which they did not ascertain any news of him. And as the king was talking to his son

Agrajes, who was about to leave for Gaul with his company, a damsel entered by the door, and kneeling before them said,

“Sir, hear me a little, in the presence of your father.”

Then she took in her hands a helmet with so many sword strokes that there was no untouched place on it, and she gave it to Agrajes and said,

“Sir, take this helmet instead of the head of Galpano, and I give it to you on behalf of a novice knight, who is more fit to bear arms than any other knight in the world; and he sends you this helmet because its owner dishonored a damsel who was going with a message for you.”

“What,” said he, “Is Galpano dead by the hand of a knight? By heavens, damsel, you tell me wondrous things!”

“Certainly, sir,” said she, “that man he overcame, and he killed all there were in the castle; and finally he fought him alone and cut off his head, and it being an annoyance to carry, he told me that the helmet was sufficient.”

“Certainly,” said the king, “that is the novice knight who passed through here, for clearly his deeds of chivalry are foreign to other knights.”

And he asked the damsel if she ascertained his name.

“Yes, sire,” said she, “but this was with much cunning.”

“By heavens, tell me what it is,” said the king, “for you would make me very happy.”

“Know you, sire,” said she, “that he has the name of the Child of the Sea.”

When the king heard this he was astonished, and all the others too. And he said,

“If he went in search of someone who would make him a knight, he ought not to be blamed, for a long time ago he besought it of me and I delayed it; and I did wrong to delay knighthood for one who does so well as knight.”

“Alas,” said Agrajes, “where could I find him?”

“He sends you his regards,” said the damsel, “and through me the message to tell you that you will find him at the war in Gaul if you go there.”

"Oh, heavens, what good news you tell me," said Agrajes; "now I have a greater desire to leave; and if I find him, never shall I willingly be separated from him."

"That is right," said the damsel, "for he loves you much."

Great was the joy that all had from the good news concerning the Child of the Sea; but especially so was that of his lady Oriana, although more than anyone she concealed her rejoicing. The king sought to learn from the damsels in what manner he was made a knight, and they told him everything. And he said,

"He found more courtesy in you than in me, yet I delayed only for his sake, for I saw he was very young."

The damsel told Agrajes the message that she brought to him from the lady about whom the story will tell later. And he departed with a very good company for Gaul.

CHAPTER VIII

HOW KING LISUARTE SENT TO THE COURT OF KING LANGUINES FOR HIS DAUGHTER, AND LANGUINES SENT BACK WITH HER HIS DAUGHTER MABILIA, THE TWO BEING ACCOMPANIED BY KNIGHTS AND MATRONS AND DAMSELS.

Ten days after Agrajes had departed there arrived there three ships in which came Galdar of Rascuyl with a hundred knights from King Lisuarte, and matrons and damsels to escort Oriana. King Languines received Galdar well, for he deemed him a good knight and very prudent. Galdar gave the message of the king his lord: that he was sending for his daughter, and furthermore this Galdar said to the king on behalf of King Lisuarte that he was requesting him to send with Oriana his daughter Mabilia, who at his command would be treated and honored like Oriana herself.

The king was very happy about this, and fitted them out very well, and retained the knight and the matrons and damsels in his court for several days, honoring them with many feasts and favors. And he had other ships prepared and equipped with the necessary things, and caused those knights and matrons and damsels who seemed suitable for such a voyage to make ready. Oriana, who saw that this journey could not be avoided, prepared to gather up her precious possessions; and while so engaged, she saw the wax that she had taken from the Child of the Sea, and she was reminded of him, and tears came to her eyes and she wrung her hands with the love anguish that took possession of her. And she broke the wax, and saw the letter that was inside, and reading it, found that it said, "This is Amadis, the Ill-Timed

One, son of a king." She, who beheld the letter, thought a while and understood that the Child of the Sea had the name of Amadis and she realized that he was the son of a king. Such joy never entered the heart of anyone else as into hers; and calling the maid of Denmark, she told her:

"My dear, I want to tell you a secret that I would tell to no-one except my heart; and keep it as a secret of such a noble damsel as I am and of the greatest knight in the world."

"I shall do so," said she, "and, lady, do not fear to tell me what to do."

"Well, my dear," said Oriana, "go to the novice knight whom you know, and I tell you he is called the Child of the Sea, and you will find him at the war in Gaul; and if you arrive before him, wait for him and then as soon as you see him, give him this letter and tell him that in it he will discover his name, the one that was written in it when he was cast into the sea; and let him know that I know that he is the son of a king, and that since he was so effective when he did not know it, now let him strive to be better; and tell him my father sent for me and that they are taking me to him; and that I send you to tell him that he leave the war in Gaul and go immediately to Great Britain, and strive to live with my father until I command him what to do."

The damsel with this message that you hear was bidden good-bye by her and started on her way to Gaul, of which we shall speak in due time. Oriana and Mabilia with matrons and maidens, king and queen commending them to God, were put into the ships; the sailors weighed anchor and spread the sails, and as the weather was favorable, they traveled quickly to Great Britain, where they were very well received.

The Child of the Sea lay wounded for two weeks in the house of the knight and of the maiden his niece who was ministering to him. At the end of this time, although the wounds were still recent, he did not wish to tarry there any longer and departed one Sunday morning, and Gandalin with him, for he never left him. This was in the month of April, and entering a forest he heard the birds singing and saw flowers everywhere, and as

he was so completely in the power of love, he remembered his beloved and began to soliloquize:

“Alas, miserable Child of the Sea, without lineage and without possessions, why were you so daring as to put your heart and your love in the keeping of that lady who is worth more than all the others in goodness and beauty and in lineage? O, wretch that I am! For any of these three things the best knight in the world ought not to be so presumptuous as to love her, for she is more fair than the best knight under arms, and her goodness is worth more than the wealth of the greatest men in the world; and I a wretch, I who do not know who I am, who live with torment of such madness that I shall die loving without daring to tell her of it.”

Thus did he lament, and he went along so overwhelmed that he did not see anything except the neck of his horse; and then he glanced into a thicket of the forest and saw an armed and mounted knight waiting for his enemy, and who had heard all that lament that the Child of the Sea made; and as the knight saw that the latter was keeping silent, he stopped in front of him and said,

“Sir, it seems to me that you love your lady friend more than you do yourself, greatly depreciating yourself and praising her. I wish you to tell me who she is and I shall love her, since you are not the sort to serve a lady so noble and so beautiful, according to what I have heard from you.”

The Child said,

“Sir knight, reason obliges you to say what you have said, but the rest you shall not find out at all. And I tell you more, that from your loving her you would not be able to garner any fruit.”

“If there come to a man toil and danger,” said the knight, “for the sake of a good lady, he should receive the same with pleasure, because finally he will derive from it the reward that he hopes for. And since a man loves as you do so highly placed a lady, he ought not to be disturbed by anything that might befall him.”

The Child of the Sea was consoled by what he heard him say, and considered that this discourse was of benefit to him; and he tried to go ahead. But the other said,

"Halt, sir, for still you have to tell me what I am asking you, either by force or of your own free will."

"May God not help me," said the Child of the Sea, "if you ascertain it from me of my own free will, or from anyone else so authorized by me."

"Then forthwith you are engaged in combat," said the knight.

"That is more to my liking," said the Child of the Sea, "than telling you."

Then they linked their helmets and took up their shields and lances; and as they were about to draw apart from each other for their joust, a damsel arrived who said to them,

"Stay, sirs, stay, and tell me some news if you know it, for I come in a great hurry and cannot wait for the conclusion of your battle."

They asked her what she wanted to know.

"Whether either of you has seen," said she, "a novice knight called Child of the Sea."

"And what do you want him for?" said he.

"I bring him news of Agrajes, his friend, the son of the King of Scotland."

"Wait a minute," said the Child of the Sea, "for I will tell you about him."

And he went at the knight, who was shouting that he defend himself, and the knight struck him so fiercely on the shield that the lance flew through the air in pieces. But the Child of the Sea, who performed with complete accuracy, struck him with his horse to the ground, and the horse arose and tried to run away, but the Child of the Sea seized it and gave it to him saying,

"Sir knight, take your horse and do not seek to ascertain anything from anyone against his will."

He took the horse but could not mount so quickly, for he was hurt from the fall. The Child of the Sea turned to the damsel and said to her:

"Friend damsel, do you recognize this one about whom you are asking?"

"No," said she, "for I have never seen him; but Agrajes told me that he would make himself known as soon as I told him that I was his servant."

"That is true," said he, "and know you then that I am he."

Then he unfastened his helmet and the damsel, who saw his face, said,

"I really believe you are telling the truth, for I heard you praised extravagantly for your good looks."

"Well, tell me," said he, "where did you leave Agrajes?"

"On a beach," said the damsel, "near here where he has his company in order to go to sea and cross over to Gaul, and he has first sought to find out about you so that you might go with him."

"God give you thanks," said he. "And now lead the way and let us go and see him."

The damsel set out on the way and it was not long before they saw on the beach the tents of the knights, and the knights nearby; and being now close to the camp, they heard behind them a voice shouting,

"Turn back, sir knight, for it is still necessary that you tell me what I ask of you."

He turned his head and saw the knight with whom he had joustured before, and another knight with him, and taking up his arms he went toward them, who carried their lances lowered, and were coming at full speed of the horses. And those in the tents saw him go so well seated in his saddle that they marveled. And you may well believe there was not in his time any other knight who seemed more spruce in the saddle, or tilted more beautifully, — to such a degree that in some places where he wanted to hide his identity, by that fact he was recognized. And the two knights struck him with their lances on his shield, which they penetrated, but not the coat of mail, which was strong, and their lances were broken; and he struck the first whom previously he had felled, and he collided with him so forcibly that he threw him to the ground and broke one of his arms, and he seemed dead; and the Child of the Sea lost his lance, but he laid hand on his sword and let himself go at the other who was striking him, and the Child of the Sea struck him on top of his helmet so that the sword reached his head, and when he tugged at it, the laces broke and he jerked the helmet from his head, and he raised his sword to strike him, and the other raised his shield

and the Child of the Sea held up his blow, and passing his sword to his left hand, he seized the shield and pulled it from his neck and struck him with it on the head, so that the knight fell to the ground stunned.

This done, he gave his arms to Gandalin and went with the damsel to Agrajes at the tents. The latter was greatly wondering who the knight could be who so quickly had overcome the two knights, and he went toward him, recognized him, and said,

“Sir, you are very welcome.”

The Child of the Sea dismounted and they embraced. And when the others saw that he was the Child of the Sea, they joined him very happily. And Agrajes said to him,

“Oh, heavens, how I wanted to see you!”

And then they brought him to his tent and Agrajes had him disarm, and he ordered that they bring there the knights who remained injured on the field. And when they came before him, he said,

“By heavens, in complete madness you undertook combat with such a knight.”

“It is true,” said the one with the broken arm, “but there was a time today that I held him in such small esteem that I did not expect to find any defense in him.”

And he related all that had befallen him with the Child of the Sea in the forest, but of the lamentation he did not dare tell. They laughed heartily at the patience of the one and the great arrogance of the other. On that day they took their ease there with much pleasure, and the next day they mounted and rode until they arrived at Palingues, a good town which was a seaport facing Gaul, and there they entered the ships of Agrajes, and with a good wind they quickly crossed the sea and arrived at another town, Galfan by name, in Gaul, and from there they went overland to Baladin, a castle where King Perion was, where he was waging his war, having lost many men. He was very happy at their arrival, and had them given good quarters, and Queen Elisena sent word to her nephew Agrajes to come and see her. He summoned the Child of the Sea and two other knights to go there with him. King Perion gazed at the Child of the Sea and

recognized that he was the one he had made a knight and the one who had come to his rescue in the castle of the old man. And he went to him and said,

"Friend, you are very welcome, and know you that in you I have great strength, so much so that now I have no fear concerning my war, since I have you in my company."

"Sire," said he, "you will have me in your aid as long as I endure and until the end of the war."

Conversing thus they came to the queen, and Agrajes went and kissed her hand, and she was very happy with him. And the king said,

"Lady, here is the very good knight of whom I spoke to you, who extricated me from the greatest danger I was ever in. I tell you to esteem this knight more than any other."

And she came and embraced him. And he knelt before her and said,

"Madam, I have been reared by your sister, and on account of her I come to serve you, and as if you were she herself you may command me."

The queen thanked him with great affection and noticed how handsome he was; and recalling her sons whom she had lost, the tears came to her eyes. Thus she wept for him who stood before her and she did not recognize him. And the Child of the Sea said,

"Madam, do not weep, for happiness will quickly return to you with the help of God and the king, and with that of this knight, your nephew and of mine, for I willingly will serve you."

She said, "My good friend, you who are my sister's knight, I wish that you lodge in my house, and there they will give you the things that you need."

Agrajes wanted to take him with him, but the king and the queen begged him so insistently that he had to consent. Thus he remained under the protection of his mother, where he was highly honored.

King Abies and Daganel, his half brother, learned the news that these knights had arrived at King Perion's court. And King Abies, who was at that time the most highly esteemed knight known, said,

"If King Perion has the heart to fight and is enterprising, now he will seek a battle with us."

"He will not do so," said Daganel, "because he is very much afraid of you."

Galayn, the Duke of Normandy, who was there, said,

"I will tell you how he will do so; let me and Daganel ride forth tonight, and at dawn we shall appear near his town with a fair-sized number of men; and let King Abies remain hidden with the rest of the force in the forest of Galpano, and in this manner we shall encourage him to dare to come out; and we by showing some fear, shall strive to get them into the forest as far as the place where the king is, and thus they will all be lost."

"You speak well," said King Abies, "and so let it be done."

Then immediately Daganel, and Galayn, who had given the advice, went armed with all the men and entered the forest, and passed well in front of where the king was, and thus they remained all night. But when morning came, King Perion and his wife went to see what the Child of the Sea was doing; and they found that he had arisen and was washing his hands, and they saw his eyes a bright red, and his face wet with tears, so that it appeared plainly that he had slept little the night before, and thus it was without mistake; for remembering his beloved and considering the great longing that came over him without having any hope of remedy, he hoped only for death. The queen called Gandalin and said to him,

"Friend, what was the matter with your master, for he seems to me in his appearance to be in great sorrow? Is it on account of some discontentment that he has experienced here?"

"Madam," said he, "here he receives great honor and favor, but he has the habit of weeping while sleeping, which now you see shown in his appearance."

And while thus they stood, those in the town saw many enemies well-armed near them, and they shouted, "To arms! To arms!" The Child of the Sea, who saw the commotion, was very happy, and the king said to him:

"Good friend, our enemies are here." And he said, "Let us arm ourselves and go see them."

And the king called for his arms and the Child of the Sea for his, and as soon as they were armed and mounted, they went to the gate of the town: where they found Agrajes, who was complaining greatly because it was not being opened, for he was one of the knights in the whole world most spirited of heart and most aggressive at all affronts; and if his strength had been equal to his courage, there would not have been anyone to surpass him in armed might. And as they arrived, he said to the Child of the Sea,

“Sir, command them to open the gate for us.”

And the king, who was no less pleased to fight, commanded that they open it, and all the knights went out, and when they saw their enemies were so many, some there were there who said it was madness to attack them. Agrajes spurred his horse saying,

“Now bad luck to the one who holds himself back the most.”

And moving against them, he saw the Child of the Sea, in the van as they all moved forward together. Daganel and Galayn, who saw them come against them, prepared to receive them as those whom they greatly hated. The Child of the Sea attacked Galayn, who was in the fore-front, and struck him so hard that he overthrew him and his horse, and Galayn had one leg broken; and the Child of the Sea broke his lance and immediately took his sword in hand and let himself run at the others like an enraged lion, performing wonders in striking blows everywhere; so that there was nothing before his sword that he did not cause to be knocked to the ground, some men dead, others wounded. But so many attacked him that his horse could not go anywhere with him, so that he was in a serious predicament. Agrajes, who saw it, arrived there with some of his men and did great damage to the enemy. King Perion came with all the troops very courageously, for he of his own volition had a great desire to attack them; and Daganel received him with his men very spiritedly. So they were all mingled together in a melee. There you would have seen the Child of the Sea doing extraordinary deeds, overthrowing and killing as many as he found in front of him, for there was no man who dared await him; and he rushed at his enemies, causing them to make way for him so that he

resembled a fierce lion. Agrajes, when he saw him do these things, took on much more strength than he had before, and cried out in a loud voice in order to encourage his men:

“Knights, behold the best and most courageous knight that ever was born.”

When Daganel saw how he was destroying his men, he went toward the Child of the Sea to strike his horse in order that he might fall into their midst, but he could not, and the Child of the Sea gave him such a blow on top of his helmet that its laces were perforce broken and it fell from his head.

King Perion who arrived in aid of the Child of the Sea, gave Daganel such a blow with his sword that he cleaved him down to the teeth. Then those from the Desert and from Normandy were defeated, fleeing to where King Abies was, and many were saying,

“Alas, King Abies, why do you delay so long that you let them kill us?”

And King Perion and his company continuing to strike the foe, it was not long before King Abies of Ireland appeared with all his men, and they came saying:

“Now at them, and let no man remain whom you do not kill, and fight to enter with them into the town.”

When King Perion and his men, all unsuspecting, saw those they did not know about, they were greatly alarmed, for they were already weary and did not have lances; and they knew that King Abies was one of the best knights in the world, and the one whom they most feared; but the Child of the Sea began to say to them,

“Now, sirs, it is necessary to maintain your honor and it will be manifest in which of you there is a point of honor.”

And he made all those who had scattered gather together, and those from Ireland came on to attack so fiercely that it was a wonder, like men coming fresh and full of the urge to do evil. King Abies did not leave a knight in the saddle as long as his lance lasted him; and when he lost it, he took his sword in hand and began to attack with it so fiercely that he made his foes take fright; and his own men continued to keep with him, attacking and unhorsing the enemy, so that the men of King Perion,

not being able to endure it any longer, were retreating toward the town.

When the Child of the Sea saw that things were going badly, he began with great fury to fight better than before, lest those on his side flee in disarray, and he kept thrusting himself between the two forces and by wounding and killing amid those of Ireland, he gave reason for his own men not to turn their backs completely. Agrajes and King Perion, who saw him in such great danger doing so much, remained always with him. So that all three were a protection to their men and with them their opponents had their hands full, for King Abies had placed his men ahead while anticipating victory in order that together with them he might enter the town, where he expected his war to be finished. And in this crush which you are hearing about they arrived at the gate of the town, where if it had not been for these three knights, all would have entered together. But they suffered so many blows and gave so many that their being able to stand it was a wonder. King Abies, who believed that his men were inside with them, passed forward; and it did not turn out for him thus, for which he had great sorrow, and still more on account of Daganel and Galayn, for he learned that they were dead. And a knight of his came to him and said,

“Sir, do you see that knight on the white horse? He performs nothing but marvels and has killed your captains and many others.”

He was talking about the Child of the Sea, who was riding on the white horse of Galpano. King Abies went closer and said,

“Sir knight, through your coming the man whom I loved most in the world is dead. But I will make you pay dearly for it if you are willing to fight any more.”

“It is not the proper time for me to fight you,” said the Child of the Sea, “for you have many men well rested, and we are very few and weary, so that it would be a wonder if we were able to withstand you. But if you want to take revenge as a knight for that of which you speak, and to show the great valor for which you are lauded, choose among your people those whom you endorse most highly and I among mine and if they be equal in number, you would be able to achieve greater honor than with

a great surplus of men and with excessive arrogance to come to take without any reason what belongs to another."

"Then say," said King Abies, "how many you want to be in the battle."

"Since you leave it to me," said the knight, "I shall propose to you another agreement, and it may be most to your liking. You are angry at me for what I have done and I at you for what you have done in this land; therefore for our guilt there is no reason why anyone else should suffer; and let the fight be between you and me and immediately if you wish, provided that your people and ours also give assurance that no one move until the end of it."

"So be it," said King Abies.

And he had ten knights called, the best of his men, and with another ten that the Child of the Sea put forward, they made safe the field by guaranteeing that whatever happened, for good or ill, they would not interfere. King Perion and Agrajes argued with the Child against the battle's taking place until the next morning because they saw him badly wounded; but they were not able to dissuade him from it, because he wanted the battle more than anything else. And this was for two reasons:

One, to test himself with that knight who was so highly praised as the best in the world. And the other, because if he won, the war would be finished, and he would be able to go to see his lady Oriana, for in her was his entire heart and his desire.

CHAPTER IX

HOW THE CHILD OF THE SEA FOUGHT KING ABIES OVER THE WAR THAT HE HAD WITH KING PERION OF GAUL.

The battle between King Abies and the Child of the Sea having been arranged, as you have heard, those on the one side and those on the other, seeing that the greater part of the day was gone, agreed against the will of both of them that it be for the next day. In order to repair their arms as well as to alleviate somewhat the wounds they had, and because the men on both sides were so battered and weary that they wanted the respite for their repose, each one repaired to his lodging. The Child of the Sea with bared head entered the town with King Perion and Agrajes, and everyone said,

“Ah, good knight, God help you and give you honor, so that you may finish what you have commenced! Ah, what knightly good looks! In this man knighthood is well employed, since more than all others he maintains it in its high place.”

And when they arrived at the palace of the king, a damsel came who said to the Child of the Sea:

“Sir, the queen begs that you do not disarm except in your lodging where she awaits you.”

This was by the advice of the king, and he said,

“Friend, go to the queen, and let Agrajes go with you to keep you company.”

Then the king went to his apartment and the Child of the Sea to his, where they found the queen and many matrons and damsels who disarmed them. But the queen did not permit anyone to lay a hand on the Child of the Sea except herself, who disarmed

him and covered him with a cloak. At this moment the king arrived and saw that the Child of the Sea was wounded, and said,

“Why didn’t you extend the time limit for the battle?”

“It was not necessary,” said the knight, “because I do not have any wound on account of which I should fail to wage it.”

Then they treated his wounds and gave him and Agrajes their supper. The next day early the queen and all her damsels came to them and found them talking to the king, and the mass began, and it having been said, the Child of the Sea armed himself, not with those arms that he had worn in the fight the day before, for they did not remain in such condition as to be of any use, but with others much more handsome and strong; and having taken leave of the queen and of the matrons and damsels, he mounted a fresh horse which they had for him at the castle gate. And King Perion carried the Child of the Sea’s helmet and Agrajes his shield, and an old knight, Agonon by name, who was greatly esteemed at arms, his lance. And for his great past excellence in courage as well as in virtue, he ranked third after the king and Agrajes, son of a king.

And the shield that the latter bore had its field of gold and two lions on it in blue, rampant, as if they sought to bite each other. And coming out of the gate of the town, they saw King Abies on a great black horse and fully armed except that he had not yet laced his helmet. Those of the town and those of the army all placed themselves where they could best see the combat, and the lists were already marked and the paling set up with many wooden stands around it.

Then they laced on their helmets and took their shields. And on his neck King Abies slung a shield that had a blue field and on it a giant depicted, and next to him a knight who was cutting off his head. He bore these arms because he had fought with a giant who kept coming into his land and laying it all waste, and just as he had cut off his head, so did he bear it depicted on his shield. And as soon as both took up arms, all others left the field, each one commending his own champion to God; and they went and attacked each other without any delay as fast as their horses could run, as men who were of such great strength and heart. At the first blows all their arms were pierced, and breaking their lances,

they collided, horses as well as men, with such force that each one fell in turn, and everyone believed they were dead; and they had bits of the lances thrust through their shields so that the iron points pierced their flesh; but as both were very agile and keen of heart, they quickly got up and removed the pieces of the lances from themselves, and laying hands on their swords they attacked each other so fiercely that those who were round about were frightened to see them. But the combat seemed unequal, not because the Child of the Sea was not well knit and of fair height, but because King Abies was so tall that there was never found a knight than whom he was not a hand taller, and his limbs seemed aught but those of a giant. He was well loved by his people and his ways were all good except that he was more arrogant than he should have been.

The combat between them was so cruel and hard-fought without their permitting themselves to rest, and the blows so great that they seemed those of twenty knights. They slashed the shields, making large slices fall on the field, and they dented the helmets and stripped the trim from the coats of mail. So indeed each made known to the other his strength and courage. And the great force and effectiveness of their swords made the armor of little avail, so that for the most part they cut into their flesh, for there remained nothing of the shields with which they could cover or protect themselves, and so much blood flowed from them that it was a wonder that they were able to hold themselves up; but so great was the courage that they brought with them that they were not aware of this. So they continued in this first combat until the hour of tierce, nor could one perceive in them any weakness or cowardice, only that they were fighting with great spirit. But the sun, which was heating up their armor, produced in them some fatigue; and at this juncture King Abies stepped a little to one side and said,

“Hold on, and let us straighten our helmets, and if you are willing for us to rest a bit, our combat will not waste time; and although I dislike you very much, I value you more highly than any other knight with whom I have fought, but my esteem for you does not afford you the advantage of causing me to keep from doing you harm, for you killed the one whom I loved so

much; and you put me to great shame before so many commoners by withstanding me for so long.”

The Child of the Sea said,

“Does this shame you, and not your coming with great pride to do so much evil to one who does not deserve it? Consider that men, especially kings, are not to do what they can, but what they ought, because often it happens that the harm and violence that they wish to do to those who do not deserve it, finally falls on themselves and they lose everything, and even their lives also; and if now you would like me to let you rest, so also others have wished, whom you, without consenting to it, were greatly harassing; and in order that you may feel what you made them feel, prepare yourself, for you will not rest with my consent.”

The king took his sword and said,

“This fiery courage ill serves you, for it puts you in this lion’s den from which you will not come out without losing your head.”

“Now make your effort,” said the Child of the Sea, “for you shall not rest until your death arrive or your honor be achieved.”

And they attacked each other much more furiously than before and as fiercely as if the battle just then had begun and they had not delivered a blow that day. King Abies, as he was very skillful because of great practice in arms, fought very prudently, protecting himself from blows and striking where he best could harm. The wonders that the Child of the Sea performed in moving nimbly and aggressively, and in delivering very severe blows, put all of King Abies’s knowledge in confusion, and not being able any longer to endure it, in spite of himself he began losing ground. And the Child of the Sea finished destroying the whole shield on his arm, so that nothing remained of it, and he cut his flesh in many places, so that the blood flowed freely and King Abies was no longer able to attack, for his sword was revolving in his hand. He was so harassed that almost turning his back, he went looking for some shelter out of fear of his sword, so cruelly did he have experience with it. But when he saw there was nothing except death, he turned, taking his sword in both hands and let himself go at the Child of the Sea, thinking to strike him on top of his helmet; and the latter raised his shield, where he received the blow, and the sword so embedded itself in it that he was not

able to withdraw it; and throwing it aside, the Child of the Sea without opposition gave him on his left leg such a wound that half of it was cut off, and the king fell his full length on the field. The Child of the Sea advanced upon him and jerking off his helmet said to him,

“You are a dead man, King Abies, unless you accept defeat.”

“Truly, I am dead, but not defeated, and I believe that my pride has killed me; and I beseech you to assure for me the safety of my followers against harm and they will carry me to my own land, and I pardon you and those for whom I wish ill, and I command that as much as I took from King Perion be restored to him; and I beg of you that you let me have confession, for I am dying.”

When the Child of the Sea heard this from him, he had extraordinarily great sorrow for him. But well he knew that the other would not have had any sorrow for him if he had been of more avail. All of this having occurred as you have heard, those of the army and of the town whose safety was assured gathered together. King Abies ordered that all he had taken from him be given back to King Perion, and the latter guaranteed the safety of all Abies's people until they bore him to his native land. And having received all the sacraments of Holy Church, King Abies's soul departed his body, and his vassals carried his remains back to their own land amid great weeping for him.

The Child of the Sea having been taken by King Perion and Agrajes and the other grandees supporting them, and removed from the field with that glory which is wont to accrue to conquerors in such actions — glory not only of honor but for restitution of a kingdom to him who had lost it — went away to the town with him. And the damsel of Denmark, who on behalf of Oriana was coming to him, as I have already told you, arrived there at the time the battle commenced; and as she saw that he had concluded it so greatly to his honor, she came up to him and said,

“Child of the Sea, speak with me privily, and I shall tell you concerning your affairs more than you know.”

He received her kindly and turned aside with her on going across the field, and the damsel said,

"Oriana, your lady love, sends me to you, and I give you from her this letter on which is written your name."

He took the letter but did not understand anything of what she said. So perturbed was he when he heard his lady mentioned, that first the letter fell from his hand and then the reins on the neck of the horse, and he was as though out of his senses. The damsel requested the letter that was on the ground from one of those who had watched the battle, and returned to him, while everyone was watching what had occurred and wondering why the Child of the Sea had been disturbed by the damsel's news. And when she reached him, she said to him,

"What is this, sir; do you receive so badly the message of the most exalted maiden in the world, the one who loves you deeply and who caused me to endure so much fatigue while seeking you?"

"Friend," said he, "what with this ill which came upon me, I did not understand what you told me, as already once before happened to me in your presence."

The damsel said,

"Sir, deceit is not necessary with me, for I know more of your affairs and of those of my lady than you know; for she wished it thus and I say to you that if you love her, you do no wrong, for she loves you so much that it could not easily be told. And know you that they have brought her to the house of her father, and she sends word to you that as soon as you leave this war, you are to go to Great Britain and strive to dwell with her father as long as she commands. And she tells you that she knows that you are the son of a king, wherefore she is no less happy than you, and since while not knowing your lineage you were so good, that now you should strive to be much better."

And then she gave him the letter and said to him,

"Here is this letter in which is written your name, and this you wore around your neck when they cast you upon the sea."

He took it and said,

"Ah, letter, how well guarded you were by that lady of my heart, by that one for whom I have come many times to the point of death; but if I have had pain and anguish for her cause, to a much greater extent with great joy I am satisfied! Ah, Lord God,

when shall I see the time when I shall be able to repay that lady for this favor that she renders me!"

And on reading the letter, he learned from it that his right name was Amadis. The damsel said to him:

"Sir, I wish to return immediately to my mistress, since I have carried out her command."

"Ah, damsel," said the Child of the Sea. "By heaven! Rest here until the third day, and do not in any wise leave me and I shall escort you wherever you wish."

"To you I came," said the damsel, "and I shall do only what you command."

Their talk having been concluded, the Child of the Sea went at once to the King and Agrajes who were waiting for him, and on their entering the town everyone said:

"Welcome to the good knight through whom we have recovered honor and happiness!"

Thus they went as far as the palace and found in the room of the Child of the Sea the queen with all her attendants, manifesting very great joy, and into their arms was he taken from his horse and disarmed by the queen's own hand. And master physicians came who cared for his wounds; and although these were many, there was none that might give much trouble. The king had wished that he and Agrajes dine with him, but he was unwilling to dine with anyone except this damsel, in order to do her honor, for he saw very well that she was able to alleviate most of his distress. So he took his ease for a few days with great pleasure, especially from the good news that had come to him, until neither the past travail nor the present wounds prevented him from getting up and walking about through a room talking always with the damsel, who had been detained by him, so that she not leave until he were able to take up arms and escort her. But one wonderful thing that happened to him at this time caused the damsel to depart from there alone, while he tarried a few days longer, as you shall now hear.

CHAPTER X

HOW THE CHILD OF THE SEA WAS RECOGNIZED BY KING PERION, HIS FATHER, AND BY HIS MOTHER, ELISENA.

At the beginning it was related how King Perion gave Queen Elisena, when she was his mistress, one of two rings that he wore on his hand, both exactly alike without any difference appearing; and how at the time when the Child of the Sea was cast upon the river in the ark, he wore that ring suspended from his neck; and how later it was given to him along with the sword by his foster-father Gandales. And King Perion had asked the queen several times for the ring, and she, not wanting to tell him where she had put it, told him she had lost it.

Then it so happened that the Child of the Sea, on passing through a room talking with his damsel, saw the little girl Melicia, daughter of the king crying, and asked her what was the matter. The little girl said,

“Sir, I have lost a ring that the king gave me to keep while he was sleeping.”

“Well, I will give you,” said he, “another as good or better to give to him.”

Then he drew from his finger a ring and gave it to her. She said,

“This is the one that I lost.”

“It is not,” said he.

“Well, it is the one ring in the world that most resembles it,” said the girl.

“Therefore that’s even better,” said the Child of the Sea, “for you shall give it to him in place of the other.”

And leaving her he went with the damsel to his bedroom and lay down on a bed and she on another which was there. The king awoke and asked his daughter to give him the ring, and she gave him the one she had. He put it on his finger thinking it was his, but saw lying at one side of the room the other that his daughter had lost; and taking it, he put it with the other one and saw that it was the one he had given to the queen, and he said to the child,

“What about this ring?”

She, who greatly feared him, said,

“By heaven, sire, I lost yours, and the Child of the Sea passed by; and as he saw I was weeping, he gave me this one that he wore, and I thought it was yours.”

The king was suspicious of the queen lest the great excellence of the Child of the Sea, together with his very handsome appearance, may have led her to some improper thought. Taking his sword he entered the queen's chamber, closed the door, and said,

“Lady, you always denied me the ring that I gave you, and now the Child of the Sea has given it to Melicia; how could it be that you see it here? Tell me where he got it, and if you lie, your head will pay for it.”

The queen, who saw that he was very angry, fell at his feet and said,

“Alas, sire, in heaven's name have mercy, for you wrongly suspect me! Now I will tell you of my trouble, which up to now I have denied to you.”

Then she began to weep, very bitterly, striking her face with her hands, and she told how she had cast her son upon the river and that he had carried with him the sword and that ring.

“By Holy Mary!” said the king, “I believe that this is our son.”

The queen held out her hands, saying,

“So might it please the Lord of the world.”

“Now let us go there, you and I,” said the king, “and ask him about his affairs.”

Then they both went alone to the room where he was, and found him sleeping very quietly; and the queen kept weeping on account of the suspicion that so unreasonably he had of her. But the king took in his hand the sword, which was placed at the

head of the bed; and examining it, he recognized it at once as that with which he had given many and good blows; and he said turning toward the queen,

"By heaven, I know this sword well, and now I believe more truly what you have told me."

"Ah, sire," said the queen, "let us permit him to sleep no longer, for my heart is sorely beset."

And she went to him and taking him by the hand, drew him a little closer to her, saying,

"My dear sir, aid me in this distress and anguish in which I find myself."

He awoke and saw her weeping very bitterly, and said,

"Madam, what is this which troubles you? If my service can remedy it somewhat, command me, for until death it will be rendered."

"Ah, my friend," said the queen, "then help us now with a statement telling us whose son you are."

"So help me God," said he, "I do not know, for by extraordinary chance I was found at sea."

The queen fell at his feet quite perturbed, and he knelt down before her and said,

"Ah, heavens! What is this?"

She replied, weeping,

"Son, you behold here your father and mother."

When he heard this, he said,

"Holy Mary! What is this that I hear?"

The queen, holding him in her arms, turned and said,

"It is, son, that God wills through His mercy that we make amends for that error which through great fear I made; and, my son, I as a bad mother cast you upon the sea; and here you see the king who engendered you."

Then he knelt and kissed their hands with many tears of pleasure, giving thanks to God because He had thus delivered him from so many dangers in order to give him at last so much honor and good fortune with such a father and mother. The queen said,

"Son, do you know whether you have another name besides this one?"

"Madam, yes I do," said he, "for on my leaving the battle, that damsel gave me a letter which was wrapped in wax when I was cast upon the sea, in which it said I was called Amadis."

Then, drawing it from his breast, he gave it to them, and they saw it was the same that Darioleta in her own hand had written; and the queen said,

"My beloved son, when this letter was written I was in great distress and grief, and now I am in complete delight and joy; blessed be God, and from now on call yourself by this name."

"So I shall do," said he.

And he was called Amadis, and in many other regions Amadis of Gaul. The pleasure that Agrajes, his cousin, and all the others of the kingdom, had with this news it would be unnecessary to relate; for by finding lost sons, although they be intractable and ill-conditioned, their parents and relatives receive consolation and joy.

Then consider how it could be with him, who in the whole world was a clear and shining model.

Therefore, ceasing to speak any more about this, we shall relate what happened afterwards. The maid of Denmark said,

"Amadis, sir, I wish to leave with this good news from which my lady will derive great pleasure, and you remain to give joy and happiness to those eyes which out of desire for you have shed so many tears."

Tears came to his eyes, and streamed down his face; and he said,

"My dear, go, and may God be with you; and to you I entrust my life that you may have pity, for from my lady I would not be so bold as to ask it, in view of the great favor that she has now done me. And I will be there to serve her quickly with arms similar to those I had in the battle with King Abies, by which you can recognize me if there be no opportunity to ascertain from me my identity."

Agrajes in like manner bade farewell to him, telling him how the damsel to whom he gave Galpano's head in revenge for the dishonor that he did her, brought him a message from his lady love Olinda, daughter of King Vavayn of Norway, to the effect that he should go see her at once. He had won her as his

sweetheart at the time that he and his uncle, Don Galvanes, were in that kingdom. This Galvanes was a brother of his father, and because he had only the poor castle as an inheritance he was called Galvanes Lackland. And Agrajes said to him,

"Sir cousin, I would prefer your company to anything, but my heart, which is very troubled, permits only that I go see that woman in whose power I always am, whether near or far away, and I wish to know where I might find you when I return."

"Sir," said Amadis, "I believe you will find me in the house of King Lisuarte, for they tell me that there chivalry is maintained at a higher level than in the house of any other king or emperor in the world. And I beg of you to give my regards to the king, your father, and to your mother, and to tell them that on account of the rearing that they gave me, they may consider me in their service to the same extent as you."

Then Agrajes bade farewell to the king and to the queen, his aunt; and on riding forth with his company, and the king and Amadis with him in order to do him honor, as they went out by the town gate they met a damsel, who taking the king's horse by the bridle, said,

"Remember, king, that a damsel told you that when you recovered your lost one, the seignior of Ireland would lose its flower, and see whether she spoke the truth, for you recovered this son whom you had lost and that courageous King Abies died, who was the flower of Ireland. And even more I tell you: that it will never regain that flower through any lord there until the good brother of the lady comes, who by force of arms will cause tribute to come from another land, and he will die by the hand of the one that will be killed by the thing that he loves most in the world. (This was Morlote of Ireland, brother of the Queen of Ireland, the one who killed Tristan de Leonis over the tribute that he demanded from his uncle, King Mark of Cornwall. And Tristan died afterwards on account of Queen Isolt, who was the thing that he loved most in the world.) And this, Urganda, my mistress, sends me to tell you."

Amadis said to her:

"Damsel, tell your mistress that the knight to whom she gave the lance sends his best regards to her, and that now I see what

she told me to be the truth: that with it I would liberate the house from which I first issued, for I freed the king, my father, who was at the point of death.”

The damsel went her way, and Agrajes also, having taken leave of the king and of Amadis; at which point we shall leave him until the proper time.

King Perion ordered his parliament to assemble in order that all might see his son Amadis, whence many demonstrations of joy and many festivals resulted, to the honor and in the service of that lord whom God had given them, with whom and with his father they hoped to live in much honor and repose. There Amadis learned how the giant had carried away Don Galaor, his brother, and he resolved to try hard to ascertain what might be done and to recover him by force of arms or in whatever other way might be necessary. Many things were done at that parliament meeting and many and great gifts the king presented at it, which would be a long story. At the end of said session, Amadis spoke with his father, saying that he wished to go to Great Britain, to the end that since the king had no need of him, he be given leave. The king and queen strove hard to detain him, but were in nowise able to do so, for the great longing that he continually felt for his lady did not leave him, nor did it permit any other obedience except that which was subjugating his heart. And taking with him only Gandalin and a new set of arms like those which King Abies had cut to pieces, he departed, and traveled until he reached the sea. And boarding a light boat, he crossed to Great Britain and reached port at a good town called Bristol. And there he ascertained that King Lisuarte was in a town of his called Windsor, and that he was very powerful and well supported by good knights, and that all the other kings of the islands nearby were submissive to him. Amadis left there and entered upon his way, but he had not traveled far along it, when he encountered a damsel who said to him,

“Is this the road to Bristol?”

“Yes,” said he.

“By chance do you know if I would find there a vessel that might be crossing to Gaul?”

“Where are you going there?” said he.

"I am going to look for a good knight, son of the King of Gaul, called Amadis, who has just been recognized by his father."

He marveled and said,

"Damsel, through whom do you know that?"

"Through that woman from whom things cannot be hidden, and who knew the facts about him before he or his father did, for she is Urganda the Unknown, and she has so much need of him that if not by him, by no one else can she recover what she greatly desires."

"Thanks be to God," said he, "that the one they all need has need of me. Know you, damsel, that I am the one you are seeking, and now let us go wherever you wish."

"What," said she, "are you the one I am looking for?"

"I am most certainly," said he.

"Then follow me," said the damsel, "and I shall take you to where my lady is."

Amadis left his road and entered the one on which the damsel guided him.

CHAPTER XI

HOW THE GIANT CONDUCTED GALAOR TO BE ARMED BY THE HAND OF KING LISUARTE, AND AMADIS KNIGHTED HIM VERY HONORABLY.

Don Galaor being with the giant as we have told you, learning to ride and to wield a sword and all the other things that were proper for a knight, being already very skillful in them, and the year having been completed that the giant had set as the time limit, he said to him,

“Father, I now ask you to make me a knight, since I have attended to everything that you have commanded.”

The giant who saw it was high time, said to him,

“Son, I am pleased to do so, and tell me whom do you wish to do it?”

“King Lisuarte,” he replied, “who is reputedly so famed.”

“I shall take you there,” said the giant.

And the third day, having all their equipment, they departed from there and went on their way, and on the fifth day they found themselves near a very strong castle that overlooked salt water, and the castle was called Bradoyd, and it was the most beautiful in all that land, and was located on a high cliff, and on one side flowed that water and on the other there was a great marsh; and on the water side one could enter only by boat, and on the side toward the marsh there was a causeway so wide that one cart could go and another come, but at the entrance to the causeway there was a narrow bridge and it was a drawbridge, and when it was lifted the water was very deep, and at the entrance to the bridge were two tall elms; and the giant and Galaor saw under them two damsels and a squire, and they

saw an armed knight on a white horse with arms bearing the device of a lion, who had arrived at the bridge, which was raised, and he could not pass, and he was shouting to those in the castle. Galaor said to the giant,

“If you please, let us see what that knight will do.”

And it was not long before they saw at the castle end of the bridge two armed knights and ten foot soldiers without armor, and they asked the knight what he wanted.

“I want to enter there,” said the knight.

“That cannot be,” they said, “if you do not fight with us first.”

“Since otherwise it is not possible,” said he, “lower the bridge and come to the joust.”

The knights had the foot soldiers lower it, and one of the former let himself go on the run at the one who carried his lance low, and with his horse going as swiftly as he could carry him. And the knight with the lion device on his arms moved against him, and they struck each other fiercely. The knight of the castle broke his lance and the other struck him so hard that he knocked him to the ground, and his horse on top of him; and he went for the other who was starting over the bridge, and both horses collided, for the lances missed their aim, and the knight from outside collided so heavily with the knight of the castle that he knocked him and his horse into the water and the knight was killed immediately. And the knight from the outside crossed the drawbridge and kept on going toward the castle, and the churls raised the bridge, and the maidens from outside shouted to him that they were raising the bridge; and he who was returning to them, saw coming toward him three knights very well armed, who said to him,

“You have crossed here inopportunately, for you will have to die in the water just as he who is more worthy than you died.”

And all three charged at him, and they struck him so fiercely that they made the horse kneel and he was near to falling; and they broke their lances and he was wounded by two of them, but he struck one of them in such a way that the armor he was wearing was of no use to him, for the lance entered him through one side and the iron with a piece of the shaft came out his other side; and the knight with the lion device seized his sword very

bravely and went and struck the two knights and they, him, and they began between them a dangerous battle; but he of the lion device, who feared death, fought to rid himself of them, and gave one such a blow with his sword in the right arm that he made him fall to the ground with his sword, and he began to flee toward the castle, shouting,

"Help, friends, for they are slaying your lord!"

And when he of the lion device heard that that other was the master, he strove all the more to defeat him, and gave him such a blow on top of his helmet that he thrust his sword through to the flesh; whereat the knight was so undone that he lost his footing in the stirrups and would have fallen if he had not grasped the neck of the horse. And he took him by the helmet and jerked it from his head, and the knight tried to flee, but saw that the other one was between him and the castle.

"You die," said he of the lion device, "unless you surrender at once."

And he, who was much afraid of the sword that he had already felt on his head, said,

"Ah, good knight, have mercy, don't kill me; take my sword and I yield myself up as a prisoner."

But he of the lion, who saw the knights and armed foot soldiers coming out of the castle, took him by the boss of his shield and put the point of his sword to his face and said,

"Command those to turn about; if not, I shall kill you."

He shouted to them to turn back if they loved their lives; they seeing his great danger, did so, and the knight with the lion device said further,

"Have the foot soldiers lower the bridge."

And he immediately so ordered. Then the former took him with him and crossed the bridge with him, and he of the castle who saw the damsels, recognized one of them, who was Urganda the Unknown, and said,

"Ah, sir knight, if you do not protect me from that damsel, I am dead!"

"So help me God," said he, "that I will not do; rather I shall do with you what she commands."

Then he said to Urganda:

"Here is the knight of the castle; what do you wish me to do to him?"

"Cut off his head, if he does not give you my friend whom he has there imprisoned in the castle and if he does not put in my hands the damsel that caused him to be held."

"So be it," said he.

And he raised the sword to frighten him, but the knight said, "Ah, good sir, don't kill me; I shall do all that she commands."

"Well, let it be at once," said he, "without any more delay."

Then the knight of the castle called one of the foot soldiers and said to him,

"Go to my brother and tell him, if he wishes to see me alive, to bring immediately the knight who is there and the damsel who brought him."

This was done at once, and he of the lion device having come, he said to the released knight,

"Knight, there is your friend, love her, for she endured much anxiety to get you out of prison."

"I love her indeed," said he, "more than ever." Urganda went and embraced him, and he her.

"Then what will you do with the damsel?" said the knight of the lion device.

"Kill her," said Urganda, "for I have endured her for a long time." And she made a spell in such wise that the damsel, trembling, was going to cast herself into the water.

But the knight said,

"Madam, in heaven's name, don't let this damsel die, for she was captured by me."

"I shall let her off this time for your sake, but if she fails me, she will pay for everything altogether."

The lord of the castle said,

"Sir, since I have complied with all you commanded, free me from Urganda."

She said to him,

"I free you, in honor of this man who overcame you."

He of the lion device asked the damsel why of her own volition she was casting herself into the water.

"Sir," said she, "it seemed to me I had on each side a blazing torch which was burning me, and I wanted to save myself with the water."

He began to laugh and said,

"By heaven, damsel, yours is a great madness, to anger one who can avenge herself so well."

Galaor, who had seen it all, said to the giant,

"This one I wish to dub me knight, for if King Lisuarte is so renowned, it would be for his eminence, but this knight deserves fame for his great courage."

"Then go to him," said the giant, "and if he will not do it, it will be to his harm."

Galaor went where he of the device of the lion was standing under the elms, and in his company with him he had four squires and two damsels; and as Galaor arrived, they both greeted each other; and Galaor said,

"Sir knight, I ask of you a boon."

He, who saw him handsomer than any man he had ever seen, took him by the hand and said,

"If it be right, I grant it to you."

"Well, I beg of you that as a favor, you make me a knight without delay, and you will save me from going to King Lisuarte, to whom just now I was going."

"Friend," said he, "you would be doing a very foolish thing to reject for such an honor the greatest king in the world and to take instead a poor knight like me."

"Sir," said Galaor, "the greatness of King Lisuarte would not infuse in me as much courage as your great valor which here I have seen you demonstrate. And do fulfill what you have promised me."

"Good squire," said he, "with any other favor that you may ask of me, I shall be happier than with this one which does not befit me, nor is it an honor to you."

At this moment Urganda came to them, as one who had not overheard anything, and said,

"Sir, how does this youth strike you?"

"He strikes me as the most handsome youth I have ever seen, and he asks of me a favor which befits neither him nor me."

"And what is it?" said she.

"That I dub him knight," said he, "he being on the way to go ask it of King Lisuarte."

"Of course," said Urganda, "in failing to be knighted there would come to him greater harm than advantage, and I say to him not to release you from granting the boon and to you that you comply. And I tell you that chivalry will be in him better served with one single exception than in any of all the knights there are now in all the islands of the sea."

"Since that's how it is," said he, "in the name of God, so be it; and now let us go to some church in order to hold the vigil."

"It is not necessary," said Galaor, "for I have already heard mass and I saw the true Body of God."

"This suffices," said he of the lion device.

And placing on him the right spur and kissing him, he said,

"Now you are a knight, and take the sword from whomever you prefer."

"You shall give it to me," said Galaor, "for from no other would I willingly take it."

And he summoned a squire to bring a sword that he had in his hand. But Urganda said,

"You shall not give him that one, but the one yonder that is hanging in that tree, with which you will be happier."

Then they all looked at the tree; they saw nothing. She began to laugh in earnest, and said,

"By heaven, it has been there for all of ten years, and no one ever saw it who passed by here and now everyone shall see it."

And again looking, they saw the sword hanging from a limb of the tree, and it appeared very beautiful, and as fresh as though it had been placed there just then, and the sheath very richly wrought of silk and gold. He of the lion device took it and girded it on Galaor, saying,

"Such a beautiful sword was appropriate for such a handsome knight, and certainly the one who guarded it for you for such a long time does not dislike you."

Galaor was very happy with it and said to him of the lion device,

"Sir, it is necessary that I go to a place that I cannot avoid. But I desire your company much more than that of any other knight, if you please, just tell me where I shall find you."

"In the court of King Lisuarte," said he, "where I shall be happy to see you, for it is right to go there because it has been only a short time that I have been a knight, and in such a court I have to earn some honor like you."

Galaor was very happy with this, and said to Urganda,

"Lady maid, I am very grateful for this sword you have given me; remember me as your knight."

And having taken leave of them he returned to where he had left the giant, who had remained hidden on the bank of a river.

Meantime, while this took place, a damsel of Galaor's was talking with the other, who was one of Urganda's, and from her found out that that knight was Amadis of Gaul, son of King Perion, and that Urganda, her mistress, had him come there to get her friend out of that castle by force of arms, for her great knowledge did not avail her because the lady of the castle, who knew much of that art, had first put a spell on him, and not fearing the knowledge of Urganda they sought to insure themselves against force of arms by that custom that the lion device knight overcame by crossing the bridge, just as it has been related to you; and for this reason they had held there Urganda's friend, whom a damsel, niece of the lady of the castle, had brought there, the one who, as you have already heard, wanted to drown herself in the water. Thus Urganda and the knight of the lion device remained conversing a part of that day, and she said to him,

"Good knight, don't you know whom you knighted?"

"No," said he.

"Then it is right that you should know, since he has the same stout heart as you yourself, so that if you encountered him while not knowing him, it would be a great misfortune. Know you that he is the son of your father and mother, and this is the one whom the giant took, when he was a child of two and a half years, and he is as tall and handsome as now you see; and for love of you and of him, I kept that sword for him for such a long time;

and I tell you that he will make with it the best start in chivalry that ever a knight made in Great Britain."

The eyes of Amadis filled with tears of joy, and he said,

"Ah, lady, tell me where I shall find him."

"It is not now necessary," said she, "for you to search for him, for it is needful that what is ordained should occur."

"Then can I see him soon?"

"Yes," she said, "but it will not be so easy for you to recognize him as you think."

He abstained from asking any more about it, and she with her beloved went their way; and Amadis departed with his squire along another road with the intention of going to Windsor, where at that time King Lisuarte was.

Galaor came to where the giant was and said to him,

"Father, I am a knight; praise be to God and to the good knight who accomplished it."

He said,

"Son, I am very happy about this and I ask you a boon."

"Very willingly," said he, "I grant it, provided that it not be a hindrance to my going to win honor."

"Son," said the giant, "if it please God, rather will there be a great increase of it."

"Then ask it," said he, "for I grant it."

"Son," said he, "sometimes you have heard me tell how Albadan the giant treacherously killed my father and took from him the Rock of Galtares which should be mine. I ask of you that you confer on me the right to it, for no one but you can give it to me, and remember the rearing that I have given you and that I would risk death out of love for you."

"It is not for you to ask that boon of me," said Galaor; "rather I ask of you that you grant me that battle, since it is so crucial to you. And if I come out of it alive, all the other things that be most to your honor and advantage, until this life of mine repays that great debt that it owes you, I am prepared to do. And let us go there at once."

"In God's name," said the giant.

Then they entered upon the road to the Rock of Galtares and had not traveled far when they met Urganda the Unknown. And they greeted each other courteously, and she said to Galaor:

"Do you know who knighted you?"

"Yes," said he, "the greatest knight of whom I have ever heard."

"That is true," said she, "and he is even better than you think, and I wish you to know who he is."

Then she called Gandalas the giant and said,

"Gandalas, don't you know that this knight whom you have brought up is the son of King Perion and of Queen Elisena, and because of the words I spoke to you you took him and have reared him?"

"It is true," said he.

Then he said to Galaor:

"My dear son, know you that the one who knighted you is your brother, and that he is two years older than you, and when you see him, honor him as the best knight in the world, and strive to resemble him in courage and good will."

"Is it true?" said Galaor, "that King Perion is my father and the Queen my mother, and that I am the brother of that very fine knight?"

"It certainly is," said she.

"Thanks be to God," said he, "now I tell you that I am placed in much greater concern than before and my life in greater danger, for now it behooves me to be as you say, damsel, so that they, as well as everyone else, must rightly believe it."

Urganda bade them good-bye, and the giant and Galaor went on their way as before; with Galaor asking the giant who that very wise lady was, and he telling him it was Urganda the Unknown, and that she was called thus because she often transformed herself and became quite changed. They reached a river-side and it being very warm, they agreed to rest meanwhile in a tent that they set up. It was not long before they saw a damsel coming along the road and another along a different road, so that they met near the tent; and when they saw the giant they sought to flee, but Don Galaor went to them and made them

return by reassuring them; and he asked where they were going. One of them said to him,

“I am going by order of my mistress to see a very strange combat of a single knight who is to fight with the strong giant of the Rock of Galtares, in order that I may bring back to her a report of it.”

The other damsel said,

“I marvel that you say that there is a knight who dares to commit such a mad act; and although my way lies elsewhere, I wish to go with you to see a thing so far removed from reason.”

They started onward, and Galaor said to them,

“Damsels, do not worry about reaching there, for we go to see this battle, and you may go in our company.”

They promised him not to worry, and took great pleasure in seeing such a handsome youth with the apparel of a novice knight, which rendered him much more elegant, and they all ate together there and disported themselves. Galaor drew the giant aside and said to him,

“Father, it would please me very much if you would allow me go on to do my battle, and without you I shall arrive sooner.”

He said this in order that they might not find out that he was the one who was to do battle and that they might not suspect that with his strength alone he wanted to undertake something so tremendous. The giant grudgingly agreed, and Galaor armed himself and started on his way, and both the damsels with him, and three of the giant's squires whom the latter ordered to go with him to carry the arms and whatever else he needed; and so he went until he arrived at two leagues from the Rock of Galtares, and there nightfall found him in the house of a hermit, and knowing he was in orders, he confessed to him. And when he told him he was going to do that battle, the latter was greatly shocked and said to him,

“Who has incited you to such great madness as this? Because in all this region there are not ten knights who would dare to undertake it, for he is so fierce and frightful and merciless. And you being so young, to put yourself in such danger amounts to your seeking to lose your life and even your soul, for those who

knowingly put themselves in the path of death when being able to avoid it, kill themselves."

"Father," said Don Galaor, "God will do His will with me, but the battle I shall not abandon under any circumstances."

The good man began to weep and said,

"Son, may God help and give you strength, since in this matter you do not wish to do anything else, and I am pleased at finding you to be of exemplary life."

And Galaor begged him to pray to God for him. There they lodged that night; and the next day, having heard mass, Galaor armed himself and went out toward the Rock, which he saw ahead standing very high and with many fortified towers that made the castle appear marvelously beautiful. The damsels asked Galaor if he knew the knight who was to fight the battle. He said to them,

"I believe I have already seen him."

Galaor asked the damsel who came to see the battle on behalf of her lady to tell him who the latter was.

"No one can know this except the knight who is to fight."

And while talking about this they arrived at the castle, and they found the gate locked. Galaor knocked and two men appeared above the gate; and he said to them,

"Tell Albadan that a knight of Gandalas's is here, who comes to fight him. And if he delays there, no man will come out or enter whom I do not kill, if I can."

The men laughed and said to him,

"This rancor will not last long, because either you will flee or you will lose your head."

And they went to tell the giant, and the damsels came to Galaor and said,

"Sir friend, are you the fighter of this battle?"

"Yes," said he.

"Alas, sir," said they, "may God help you and let you conclude it to your honor, for you begin a great deed, and farewell, for we dare not await the giant."

"Friends, do not fear, and do watch that for which you came, or return to the house of the hermit, for I shall be there if I do not die here."

One of them said,

“Whatever ill befalls you, I wish to see what I came for.”

Then, going away from the castle, they stationed themselves at the edge of a forest into which they expected to flee if things went badly for the knight.

CHAPTER XII

HOW GALAOR FOUGHT WITH THE GREAT GIANT, LORD OF THE ROCK OF GALTARES, AND OVERCAME AND KILLED HIM.

To the giant went the news, and it was not long before he came out on a horse, appearing on it so tremendous that there was no man in the world who would have dared to look at him. He wore plated armor of such length that it covered him from his neck down to his saddle, and a large helmet, which was moreover very bright; and he carried a huge, very heavy iron mace with which he was accustomed to deal blows. The squires and the damsels were very much frightened on seeing him, and Galaor was not then so courageous as not to have great fear. But the closer he approached him, the more it diminished. The giant said,

“Wretched knight, how dare you await your death? For he who sent you here will not see you any more. And just wait and you will see how I can lay on with a mace.”

Galaor was enraged and said,

“You devil, you will be overcome and killed with what I bring to my aid, which is God and the right.”

The giant, who seemed as big as a tower, moved against him. Galaor went at him with lance lowered and at the greatest speed of his horse, and struck him on the chest with such force that he made him lose one stirrup, and he broke his own lance. The giant raised the mace in order to strike him on the head, and Galaor passed so quickly that he only reached the boss of his shield, and breaking its arm bands and neck cord, the giant caused it to fall to the ground, and Galaor almost fell after it,

and the blow was so strongly given that his arm could not hold back the mace and he struck the head of his own horse, so that he knocked it down, and he was under it; and on his trying to stand up, after having extricated himself from underneath with great effort, Galaor came up and struck him with his horse's chest and trampled him hard twice before he could get up, and then Galaor's horse stumbled over that of the giant and fell beyond it. Galaor left it immediately, for he saw himself risking death, and he grasped the sword that Urganda had given him, and charged at the giant, who was picking up his mace from the ground, and he struck the mace with his sword on its handle and cut it in two so that only a piece of it was left in the giant's hand, and with that the giant struck him such a blow on top of his helmet that he was forced to drop one hand to the ground, for the mace was strong and heavy and he who was striking was of great strength; and Galaor's helmet was twisted askew on his head; but since he was very nimble and strong of heart, he got up at once and returned to the giant, who sought to strike him again; but Galaor, who continued resourceful and agile, avoided the blow and struck him on the arm with his sword such a blow that he cut it off at the shoulder, and the sword swooping down his leg cut it nearly half off. The giant gave a great cry and said,

"Ah, wretch that I am, I am held up to ridicule by one man only."

And he sought to embrace Galaor with great fury, but he could not go forward because of the great wound on his leg, and he sat down on the ground. Galaor again attacked him, and as the giant thrust out his hand to seize him, Galaor gave him a blow that hurled his fingers to the ground along with half his hand. And the giant, who in order to seize him had reached far out, fell, and Galaor went at him and killed him with his sword and cut off his head. Then the squires and the damsels came to him and Galaor ordered the squires to carry the head to their lord. They were happy, and said,

"By heaven, sir, he gave you a good upbringing, for you have won glory and he the revenge and the profit."

Galaor mounted a horse of the squires, and saw coming out of the castle ten knights attached to one chain, and they said to him,

“Come and take the castle, for you have slain the giant, and we are those who were serving him as guards.”

Galaor said to the damsels,

“Ladies, let us stay here this night.”

They said they would be pleased to do so. Then he had the chain removed from the knights, and they all repaired to the castle, where there were beautiful apartments, and in one of them he disarmed, and was fed, and his damsels with him. So they took their ease there with great pleasure, as they looked at that strong array of towers and walls that to them seemed marvelous. The next day there were gathered there all those of the land round about, and Galaor went out to them, and they received him with great joy, saying to him that since he had won that castle by slaying the giant who ruled them by force and great oppression, they wanted him for their lord. He was very grateful to them for this. But he told them that they already knew that that land was Gandalas's by right, and that he as his foster son had come there to win it for him; that they were to obey him as their lord just as they were in duty bound, and that Gandalas would treat them kindly and honorably.

“Be he welcome,” they said, “for since he is our native-born lord, he will take care to do well by us as his very own, for this other one whom you have killed treated us as foreigners and strangers.”

Galaor took a solemn oath of fealty from two knights who seemed to him most honorable, to the end that they hand over the castle to Gandalas when he should arrive. And taking his arms and the damsels and one squire of the two that he had brought there, he started out on his way to the house of the hermit, and on his arrival there, the good man was quite delighted with him, and said to him:

“Fortunate son, you must love God much, for He loves you, since He desired that such a great vengeance be accomplished by you.”

Galaor, taking his blessing and beseeching him to remember him in his prayers, started on his way. The one damsel begged him to grant her his company. And the other said,

"I came here only to see the conclusion of this battle, and I saw so much that I shall have plenty to relate wherever I go; now I wish to go to the court of King Lisuarte to see a knight, my brother, who is questing thereabouts."

"My dear," said Galaor, "if there you should see a young knight who bears on his arms a lion device, tell him that the youth whom he knighted sends regards to him, and that I shall strive to be an honorable man; and if I see him, I shall tell him more about his and my affairs than he knows."

The damsel went her way, and Galaor said to the other one that since he had been the knight who had done battle, she tell him who her lady was that had sent her there.

"If you wish to know," said she, "follow me, and five days from now I shall show her to you."

"Not on that account will I fail to find out, for I shall follow you."

So they traveled until they reached two roads, and Galaor, who was going ahead, went on one road thinking that the damsel was behind him, but she took the other, and this was at the entrance to the forest called Brananda, which divided the counties of Clare and Gresca, and soon Galaor heard some voices shouting,

"Ah, good knight, help me."

He turned his face and said,

"Who is doing that shouting?"

The squire answered,

"I think it is the damsel who has got herself separated from us."

"What," said Galaor, "did she leave us?"

"Yes, sir," said he, "she is going along that other road."

"By heavens, I watched over her poorly."

And lacing on his helmet and taking shield and lance, he went as fast as he could to where he heard the cries, and saw an ugly dwarf upon a horse and five foot soldiers with him wearing capelines and armed with battle axes, and the dwarf was striking the damsel with a stick he had in his hand.

Galaor came up to him and said,

"Get out, you evil, ugly thing; may God put a curse on you!"

And he transferred his lance to his left hand and went at him; and taking the stick, he gave him such a wound with it that he fell to the ground quite stunned; the churls went at him, and attacked him from all sides; and he gave one of them such a blow in the face with the stick that he beat him down to the ground, and struck another with his lance on the chest, who had his battle axe imbedded in Galaor's shield and could not draw it out, for it had gone clear through it, and he fell and the lance remained in him; and Galaor pulled the axe out of the shield and went at the others, but they did not dare await him and fled through so dense a thicket that he could not go after them; and when he returned he saw that the dwarf had mounted, and the latter said,

"Knight, inopportune have you struck me and killed my men."

And he lashed his nag and went away as fast as he could along a highway. Galaor drew out the lance from the churl and saw it was still undamaged, for which he was pleased, and he gave his arms to the squire and said,

"Damsel, go in front and I shall protect you better."

And so they returned to the road, by which in a short time they reached a river, which was named Bran and which could not be crossed without a boat; the damsel, who was going ahead, found the boat and crossed to the other side, and while Galaor was waiting for the boat, the dwarf whom he had wounded arrived saying,

"By my faith, traitor, you die and you shall give up the damsel whom you took from me."

Galaor saw that with him came three knights well armed and on good horses.

"What!" said one of them, "All three of us to one alone? I don't want any help."

And he let himself go at him as hard as he could; and Galaor, who already had taken up his arms, went toward him and they struck each other with their lances, and the knight of the dwarf penetrated all his armor, but the wound was not great, and

Galaor struck him so violently that he knocked him from his saddle, so that the other two were amazed; and the two of them together let themselves go at him on the run, and the one missed his blow and he broke his lance into pieces against the shield; and Galaor struck him so hard that he knocked his helmet from his head and he lost his stirrups and was about to fall. But the other returned and struck Galaor with his lance on the chest and broke the lance, and although Galaor felt the blow, it did not make much of a hole in his coat of mail; Then they all grasped their swords and began to fight, and the dwarf said in a loud voice,

“Kill his horse and he will not flee.”

And Galaor sought to strike the one whose helmet he had knocked off, and the other raised his shield and Galaor's sword entered through the shield arm band almost a span and reached with the sword point the knight's head and clove him down to his jawbone so that he fell dead. When the other knight saw this blow he fled, with Galaor in pursuit of him, and he struck him with his sword on top of his helmet and he did not aim it well, so that the blow came down to the saddle cantle and took off a piece of it and many meshes of his armor, but the knight dug strongly into the horse with his spurs and cast away the shield from his neck in order to go faster.

When Galaor saw him go thus, he left him and sought to order the dwarf to be hung by his legs, but he saw him go fleeing on his horse as fast as he could, and he turned to the knight with whom he had fought just before and who was already regaining consciousness and said to him,

“I'm sorrier for you than for the others, because in the manner of a good knight you tried to fight; I do not know why you attacked me, for I did not deserve it from you.”

“It is true,” said the knight; “but that treacherous dwarf told us that you had attacked and killed his men and had taken by force a damsel who wished to go with him.”

Galaor pointed out to him the damsel who was waiting for him on the other side of the river and said,

“You see the damsel, and if I had forced her, she would not wait for me; but on coming in my company she wandered from

me in this forest, and he took her and was beating her very severely with a club."

"Ah, the scoundrell!" said the knight, "inopportunately did he make me come here; if I only meet him!"

Galaor had him given his horse and told him to torture the dwarf, who was a scoundrel. Then he crossed in the boat to the other side and started on his way guided by the damsel. And when it was between none and vespers, the damsel pointed out to him a very beautiful castle overlooking a valley, and said to him,

"We shall go there to lodge."

And they went on until they arrived, and they were very well received, as it was the house of the damsel's mother, and she said to her:

"Madam, honor this knight as the best that ever slung a shield on his neck."

She said,

"Here we shall provide for him every service and pleasure."

The damsel said to him,

"Good knight, in order that I may comply with what I have promised you, you must wait here and immediately I shall return with instructions."

"I earnestly beg you," said he, "not to delay me, for it would make me very sorry."

She went away, and it was not long before she returned and said to him,

"Now mount and let us go."

"In God's name," said he.

Then he took his arms, and mounting his horse he went with her, and they kept riding through a forest, and as they emerged from it night fell, and the damsel, leaving the road that they were following, took off in another direction; and a part of the night having passed, they reached a beautiful town called Grandares. As soon as they arrived where the fortress was, the damsel said,

"Now let us dismount, and you come behind me, for in that fortress I shall tell you what I have promised."

"Then shall I bring my arms?" said he.

"Yes," said she, "for one does not know what may happen."

She went ahead and Galaor behind her until they reached a wall, and the damsel said:

"Climb over here and enter there, and I shall go another way, and shall hasten to you."

He climbed up with great effort and took his shield and helmet and let himself down; and the damsel went away. Galaor went through a garden and reached a small wicket which was in the wall of the fortress; and he was there only a short time when he saw it open, and saw the damsel and another damsel with her. And she said to Galaor:

"Sir knight, before you enter, it is necessary that you tell me whose son you are."

"Enough of that!" said he, "for I have father and mother of such quality that until I am more worthy, I would not dare to say I am their son."

"Still," said she, "it is important that you tell me, for it will not be to your harm."

"Know you that I am the son of King Perion and Queen Elisena, although less than a week ago I would not have been able to tell you."

"Enter," said she.

He having entered, they had him take off his armor and they covered him with a cloak, and they left him. And one damsel went behind him and the other in front and he in between, and entering a large and very beautiful palace where many matrons and damsels were lying on their beds, if some of them asked who was going there, both the damsels answered. Thus they went on to a room that was within the palace confines, and on entering it, Galaor saw a beautiful damsel seated in a chamber with very rich hangings, who was combing her beautiful hair; and when she saw Galaor, she placed on her head a lovely garland and came to him saying,

"Friend, may you be welcome as the greatest knight that I know."

"Lady," said he, "and be you very well met as the most beautiful maiden I have ever seen."

And the damsel who had guided him there said,

"Sir, behold my lady, and I am acquitted of my promise; know you that she has the name Aldeva and is the daughter of the King of Serolis; and the Duke of Bristol's wife, who is her mother's sister, has reared her here."

Then she said to her mistress:

"I have given you the son of King Perion of Gaul, both of you are children of kings and very handsome; if you love each other much, no one will take it amiss."

And they having gone out, Galaor dallied with the damsel that night at his pleasure, and without any more about it being recounted to you here, because from such acts, which do not conform to good conscience or virtue, one should rightly pass on quickly, holding them in that small esteem that they deserve.

Then the hour at which it behooved him to leave having arrived, he took with him the damsels and returned to where he had left his arms, and arming himself, went out to the garden and found there the dwarf whom you have heard about, and the latter said to him,

"Sir, in an evil hour you have entered here, for I shall have you and the treacherous woman who brought you here killed."

Then he shouted,

"Come out, knights, for a man is leaving the duke's chamber."

Galaor climbed up on the wall and betook himself to his horse, but it was not long before the dwarf with other people came out of a door that they opened, and Galaor who saw himself in the midst of them all, said to himself,

"Ah, wretch that I am, I am dead unless I take satisfaction from this scoundrel of a dwarf!"

And he set out to go and take him; but the dwarf on his nag placed himself behind everyone else. And Galaor with the great rage that he bore threw himself among them, and they began to strike from all sides. When he saw that he could not pass through, he attacked them so fiercely that he killed two of them, on whom he broke his lance. And he grasped his sword and gave them deadly blows, so that some were killed and others wounded; but before he came out of the melee, they killed his horse; he stood up with a great effort, and they attacked from all sides. But as soon as he was on foot, he gave them such an object

lesson that none dared to approach him. When the dwarf saw he was on foot, he thought he would strike him down with the breast of his horse and went at him as hard as he could; and Galaor reached out a little and extended his hand, and seizing his horse by the bridle he gave him such a wound in the breast with the hilt of his sword that he knocked him to the ground, and the dwarf was so stunned by the fall that blood came out of his ears and nose; and Galaor jumped on the horse; and on mounting he lost the reins and the horse went out of the melee with him, and as it was large and a great runner, before Galaor could recover the reins he had moved away a good bit, and when he recovered the reins he sought to return and smite them; but he saw at the window of a tower his mistress, who with a cloak was making signs for him to leave. He departed thence, because a crowd of people had already come on the scene. And he went on until he entered a forest; there he gave his shield and helmet to his squire.

Some of the men said that it would be well to follow him; others that it would not be of any use, since he was in the forest; but all were astounded to have seen how fiercely he had fought. The dwarf, who was in bad shape, said,

“Take me to the duke and I shall tell him on whom he should take vengeance.”

They took him in their arms and they went up to where the duke was, and he told him how he had found the damsel in the forest, and because he had wanted to bring her with him, she had made a loud outcry, and the knight had hastened to her aid, and had killed his men and had wounded him with the club, and that afterwards he had followed him with the three knights in order to take the damsel from him, and how he had routed and overcome them. Finally he told him the damsel brought the knight there and had put him in the duke's chamber. The duke asked him if he would recognize the damsel; he said that he would. Then he commanded that all the damsels in the castle come there, and as the dwarf saw her among them he said,

“This is the one by whom your palace was dishonored.”

“Ah, scoundrel,” said the damsel, “but you beat me badly

and commanded your men to strike me, and that good knight defended me, and I do not know whether it was he or not."

The duke was very furious and said,

"Damsel, I shall make you tell me the truth."

And he commanded them to put her in prison; but neither by torture nor privations to which they subjected her did she disclose anything, and there they let her remain to the great sorrow of Aldeva, who loved her very much and who did not know by whom she could make it known to Sir Galaor, her friend.

The author leaves off here the narration of this, and again tells of Amadis, and concerning Galaor he will make relation in its proper place.

CHAPTER XIII

HOW AMADIS LEFT URGANDA THE UNKNOWN AND ARRIVED AT A
FORTRESS, AND WHAT HAPPENED TO HIM THERE.

Amadis, having departed from Urganda the Unknown with great joy in his heart at having learned that the one whom he had knighted was his brother and because he believed he would quickly be where his lady was, for even though he might not see her, it would be a great consolation to him to see the place where she was, traveled so far toward that destination through a forest without finding a town that nightfall overtook him in the forest; and after a bit he saw at a distance a lighted home that appeared over the trees, and he went toward it, thinking to find lodging. Then leaving the road, he went until he arrived at a beautiful fortress, through the windows of whose tower shone the light of some candles, and he heard voices of men and women singing and making merry. He knocked at the gate, but they did not hear him, and after a little while those in the tower looked out between the merlons and saw him who was knocking. And a knight said to him,

“Who are you who knocks at such an hour?”

And he said,

“Sir, I am a stranger knight.”

“So it seems,” said the one on the wall, “for you are a strange fellow to avoid traveling by day and to travel by night; but I believe you do it in order not to have reason to fight anyone, for now you will find no one but devils.”

Amadis said to him,

"If there were any good in you, sometimes you would see walking at night those who cannot help it."

"Now go away," said the knight, "for you shall not enter here."

"May God help me," said Amadis, "I think that you would not want a man worth anything in your company. But I should like to know before I leave what your name is."

"I will tell it to you," said he, "provided that when you encounter me you fight with me."

Amadis who was furious, agreed to it. The knight said,

"Let it be known that my name is Dardan, and that this night you cannot fare so ill that the day you encounter me will not be much worse."

"Well, I wish to free myself immediately from this promise, and let us be lighted by those candles so that we may fight."

"What!" said Dardan, "in order that I go to battle with such as you, I would have moreover to take up arms in the night-time? Bad luck to anyone who would put on spurs or bear arms in the name of honor."

Then he left the wall and Amadis went his way.

Here the author discusses prideful people and says, Proud ones, what do you want? What is your thought? I beg of you to tell me whether a handsome person, great valor, ardor of the heart, were by chance inherited by you from your parents, or whether you bought such things with riches, or obtained them in the schools of great sages, or won them through the bounty of great princes. It is certain that you will say you didn't. Well, where did you get them? It seems to me that they came from that most high Lord whence all good things occur and come. And to this Lord what thanks, what services do you give in payment? Certainly none others than by scorning the virtuous and dishonoring those who are good, mistreating those in holy orders, killing the weak out of your great pride, and doing many other insults to His service. Believing, as it seems to you that just as in this way you gain worldly fame and honor, so with a small penance at the end of your days you will win the glory of the other world. Oh, what a vain and mad thought! Having spent your time in such things without repentance, without the satis-

faction that you owe to your Lord, you hold back everything together for that sad and perilous hour of death, which will come to you you know not when or in what guise! You probably say that the power and grace of God is very great, together with his mercy; that is true. But thus your power would have to be such as to subdue in time your wrath and cruelty and take from you those things which He holds in such abhorrence, in order that by making yourselves deserving, deservingly you may be able to attain His forgiveness, considering that not without cause cruel hell was established by Him.

But now I wish to put aside this which you do not see and discuss with you the present which we have seen and read about. Tell me, for what reason was that evil Lucifer cast down from Heaven into the bottom of the abyss? Only for his great pride. And that strong giant Nimrod who first ruled the whole human race? Why was he forsaken by everyone and why, like a stupid animal devoid of sense, did he waste away his life in the desert? Not for any other cause save because with his great pride he sought to make a stairway in the manner of a road, thinking thereby to ascend to and command the heavens. Well, what shall we say was the reason great Troy was laid waste and destroyed by Hercules, and its powerful King Laomedon, father of King Priam of Troy, killed? For no other thing than on account of the haughty message he sent to the Greek knights by his emissaries, who arrived under safe-conduct at the port of Simois. Many others could be cited who on account of this evil and accursed pride perished in this world and in the next, whereby my exposition would be even more reinforced. But one refrains from any further citation because, being more prolix, it would be more annoying to read. It only will be brought to your mind that if those who in heaven, and on earth where they had such great power and honor, through pride were lost, dishonored, and damned, what fruit is there in those vile words uttered by Dardan and by others like him? What control do they hold or can accrue to them in either case? Our story will show you later on.

Amadis, greatly infuriated, having left that very proud knight Dardan, went through the forest looking for some suitable thicket where he might take shelter. And thus going along, he heard

ahead of him someone speaking; and hurrying, spurring his horse harder, he found two damsels on their palfreys, and a squire with them. He came up to them and greeted them. And they asked him where he was coming from armed at such an hour. He recounted to them all that had happened to him since night had fallen.

"Do you know," they asked, "what the name of this knight was?"

"Yes, I know," said he, "for he told me his name was Dardan."

"It is true," said they, "that he has the name of Dardan the Proud, and he is the most arrogant knight of this land."

"I well believe it," said Amadis.

And the damsels said to him,

"Sir knight, our camp is near here; stay with us."

Amadis agreed to this; and going together, they found two small tents set up in which the damsels were to lodge, and they dismounted there; and when Amadis disarmed himself, the damsels were very pleased with his good looks and made for him a shelter where he might sleep, and meanwhile the damsels asked him where he was going.

"To the house of King Lisuarte," he said.

"And we are going there," they said, "to see how things will turn out for a lady who was one of the best looking and noblest in this land, and all she has in the world she has staked on a battle; and she is to appear within these ten days before King Lisuarte with someone to do her battle for her; but we do not know what will happen to her, for the one against whom she is to defend herself is now the best knight there is in Great Britain."

"Who is that knight," said Amadis, "who is at arms so highly touted where there are so many good ones?"

"The same one whom you have just now left," they said, "Dardan the Proud."

"For what reason must this battle be? So may God help you, tell me."

"Sir," said they, "this knight loves a lady of this land who was daughter of a knight married to this other lady, and the loved one said to her friend Dardan that she would never make love with him unless he brought her to the house of King Lisuarte

and declared that the estate of her stepmother ought to be hers, and that over this right, he would fight anyone who might say the contrary, and he did just as his friend ordered; and the other lady was not so supported by evidence as was necessary, and she said that she would present a defense advocate for herself before the king, and this she said because she was so greatly in the right and was intending to find someone who would maintain it for her; but Dardan is such a good knight at arms that, rightly or wrongly, everyone has fears about her battle."

Amadis was very happy about this news because the knight had been arrogant to him and he would be able to take revenge for his anger while being in the right, and because the battle would be performed in the presence of his lady Oriana. And he began to think about it very steadily. The damsels noticed his concern and one of them said,

"Sir knight, I beg of you out of courtesy to tell us the reason for your meditation if it can properly be told."

"Friends," said he, "if you promise as loyal damsels to maintain secrecy and not tell it to anyone, I shall tell you willingly."

They agreed and he said,

"I have been thinking of fighting on behalf of that lady you were telling me about, and I shall do so, but I do not want anyone to know about it."

The damsels thought highly of him for it, for Dardan had been greatly lauded to them for his prowess at arms; and they said,

"Sir, your thought is good and of great courage; God grant that it come out well."

And they went to sleep in their tents, and in the morning they mounted and went their way. And the damsels begged him that since they were on a journey and some men of ill-repute frequented that forest, he should not leave their company. He agreed to this.

Then they went on together talking about many things, and the two damsels asked him, since God had thus brought them together, that he tell them his name. He told them and recommended to them that no one find it out. So traveling as you have heard, lodging in the wilds, being comfortable in their tents with the

provisions that the damsels brought, they happened to see two armed knights under a tree, who were mounting their horses and who placed themselves in front of them on the road, and one of them said to the other,

"Which of these damsels do you want, and I will take the other?"

"I want this damsel," said the knight.

"Then I this other one."

And each took his own.

Amadis said to them:

"What is this, sirs? What do you want with the damsels?"

They replied,

"To treat them as our mistresses."

"So lightly do you wish to take them," said he, "without their consent?"

"Well, who will take them from us?" said they.

"I," said Amadis, "if I can."

Then he took his helmet and shield and lance and said,

"Now you must give up the damsels."

"First you shall see that I know how to joust," said one.

And both charged at the full speed of their horses and attacked each other fiercely with their lances. The knight broke his lance, and Amadis wounded him so severely that he knocked him head down and feet up from his horse, and breaking the laces of his helmet, it flew off his head. The other knight came at him with great force and struck him in such wise that piercing his armor he wounded him; but the wound was not serious and the knight broke his lance. Amadis missed his aim and they met head on with their horses and shields. And Amadis seized him and pulling him from his saddle, he beat him down to the ground; and so the two knights were on foot and the horses loose.

Amadis had the two damsels ride ahead of him and they went on their way until they reached a river bank where they ordered their tents set up, and that they be given food. But before he dismounted, the two knights with whom he had jousting arrived and said to him,

"You have to defend the damsels with the sword, just as with the lance; if not we shall take them."

"You will not take them," said he, "as long as I can defend them."

"Then put aside your lance," said they, "and let's have the battle."

"I will do that," said he, "provided you come on one at a time."

And giving his lance to Gandalin he grasped his sword and went toward one of them, the one who prided himself most on his blows, and they began their battle; but in a short time the knight was so maltreated that it was necessary that his companion help him, although he had promised otherwise. And Amadis who saw him said,

"What is this, knight? Don't you keep your word? I tell you that I despise you."

The knight came rested to the fray, and as he was brave, he attacked Amadis with severe blows. But the latter, who saw himself fighting both of them, did not try to be slothful and struck that rested newcomer with all his strength on his helmet, and the blow came obliquely so that it descended to his shoulder and cut off of him the leather straps of the coat of mail along with flesh and bones. And the sword fell from his hand. The knight considered himself as good as dead and began to flee. And Amadis went for the other one and pierced his shield on direct line with his fist and cut it so badly that the thrust reached his hand and split it to the arm, and the knight said,

"Alas, sir, I am dead!"

Then he dropped his sword and the shield from his neck; and Amadis said to him,

"That is not necessary, for I shall not leave you unless you swear never to seize a matron or damsel against her will."

The knight swore it immediately, and Amadis had him put his sword in its scabbard and suspend his shield from his neck, and he let him go wherever he might find shelter. Amadis returned to where the damsels were, near the tents, and they said to him,

"It is certain, sir knight, that we would have been objects of scorn if it had not been for you, in whom there is more prowess than we thought; and we are very hopeful that not only will you receive satisfaction for the haughty words that Dardan spoke to

you, but that the lady will also for the great danger in which she is placed, if Fortune directs that you win the battle."

Amadis was abashed because they thus praised him; and after he disarmed, they ate and rested a bit. And returning to their road, they traveled along it until they reached a castle, and there they lodged with a lady who did them much honor. And the next day they traveled uneventfully until they arrived at Windsor, where King Lisuarte was; and on approaching the town, Amadis said to the damsels,

"My dears, I don't want to be known by anyone, and until the knight comes to the combat I shall remain here in some hidden place; send to me one of these young squires who knows about me and can call me when it is time."

"Sir," said they, "The appointed time is only two days from now; if it pleases you, we shall remain with you, and we shall have in the town someone who will tell us when the knight will have come there."

"So let it be done," said he.

Then they left the road and had their tents set up together near a river. And the damsels said that they wanted to reach the town and return at once. Amadis mounted his horse, unarmed as he was, and Gandalin with him, and they went to a knoll from where it seemed to them they would be able to see the town better, and near there there was a great highway. Amadis sat down at the foot of a tree and began to look at the town and saw the towers and the very high walls, and he said to his heart:

"Ah, God! where yonder is the flower of the world? Ah, town, how lofty art thou now because that lady is within thee — she who has no equal in all the world in goodness or beauty, and I even say that she is more beloved than all divinely gifted women, and I shall prove this to the best knight of the world if it be granted me by her."

After he had praised his lady, such a great concern possessed him that tears came to his eyes, and with flagging heart he fell into a deep reverie, to the extent that he was swooning and unconscious. Gandalin saw coming along the highway a company of matrons and knights, and that they were approaching where his master was. And he went to him and said,

"Sir, don't you see this group that is coming here?"

But he did not answer, and Gandalin took him by the hand and drew him toward himself. And breathing hard he recovered consciousness and his face was all wet with tears. And Gandalin said to him,

"So help me God, sir, I am much worried about you to think that you take such concern as no other knight in the world would take, and you ought to be sorry for yourself and pluck up your courage as you do in other matters."

Amadis said to him,

"Ah, friend Gandalin, how my heart suffers! If you love me, I know that you would rather counsel death for me than that I should live in such great anguish desiring what I do not see."

Gandalin could not help weeping and said to him,

"Sir, such a deep-felt love is a great misfortune, for so help me God, I believe there is no woman so good and so beautiful as to be equal to your goodness, and that there never will be."

Amadis, when he heard this, was very angry and said,

"Be gone, you crazy, senseless fellow, how dare you utter such great nonsense? Would I, or anyone else equal in worth her in whom all the good in the world resides? And if you ever say that again, you will not go another step with me."

Gandalin said,

"Dry your eyes; don't let those who are coming see you thus."

"What! Is someone coming?"

"Yes," said Gandalin.

Then he showed him the matrons and knights who were now coming near the hillock. Amadis mounted his horse and went toward them, and greeted them, and they, him, and he saw among them a very beautiful, well-dressed matron who was weeping immoderately. Amadis said to her,

"Lady, may God make you happy."

"And to you may He give honor, for now I am far removed from joy, if God does not counsel me."

"May God counsel," said he, "but what worry do you have?"

"Friend," said she, "I have everything I possess risked on the outcome of a battle."

And then he understood that she was the matron they had told him about, and he said to her:

"Lady, do you have anyone to fight for you?"

"No," said she, "and my time limit is tomorrow."

"Then what are you considering doing about it?"

"Losing all that I have," said she, "if in the house of the king there is not someone who will take pity on me and undertake this combat out of mercy and to maintain the right."

"May God give you good counsel," said Amadis, "for that would greatly please me as much for your sake as because I hate the one who is against you."

"God make you a good man," said she, "and quickly give you and me revenge on him."

Amadis went to his tent and the lady with her companions to the town. And the damsels came a short while later and told him how that Dardan was already in the town, well accoutered to do battle. And Amadis told them how he found the lady, and of their interview. That night they rested, and at dawn the damsels got up and told Amadis that they were going to the town and that they would send word to him of what the knight was doing.

"I intend to go with you," said he, "in order to be nearer, and when Dardan comes out on the field, one of you come and tell me."

And then he armed himself and they all went together. And when they were near the town, Amadis remained at the edge of the forest and the damsels went on.

He dismounted and took off his helmet and shield and stood waiting. And this was about sunrise.

At this said hour King Lisuarte mounted with a large retinue of nobles and went to a field that was located between the town and the forest, and Dardan came there heavily armed on a beautiful horse, and was escorting his sweetheart by leading her horse, she being as gorgeously dressed and adorned as he could have her, and thus he stopped with her before King Lisuarte and said,

"Sire, let it be ordered that what should be hers be delivered to this lady, and if there is any knight who dissents, I will fight him."

King Lisuarte then had the other lady called, and she came before him, and he said to her,

"Lady, do you have anyone to fight for you?"

"No, sire," said she weeping.

And the king was very sorry for her, because she was a good woman. Dardan stopped in the place where he was to wait until the hour of tierce so armed, and if no knight came, the king would award him a decree of judgment, for thus it was the custom. When the damsels saw him waiting, one of them went as fast as she could to tell Amadis. He mounted, and taking his arms, told Gandalin and the damsel to go by another route, and that if he came out of the battle with honor, to go back to the tents, for he would come there. And then he came forth from the forest completely armed and on a white horse, and he went to where Dardan was preparing his arms. When the king and those of the town saw the knight come out of the forest, they wondered who it could be; but they said that they had never seen a knight who appeared so handsome armed and mounted. The king said to the challenged lady,

"Madam, who is that knight who wishes to support your right?"

"So help me God," said she, "I do not know, for I have never seen him that I remember."

Amadis entered the field where Dardan was and said to him,

"Dardan, now maintain the right of your lady love, for I shall defend the other lady with the help of God, and acquit myself of what I promised you."

"And what did you promise me?" he said.

"That I would fight with you," said Amadis, "and this was in order to find out your name when you were ill-mannered with me."

"Now I esteem you less than before," said Dardan.

"Now nothing you may say irks me," said Amadis, "for I am about to avenge myself if God grants me good fortune."

"Then let the lady come," said Dardan, "and request you for her knight; and take your vengeance if you can."

Then the king came with his knights to see what was going on; and Dardan said to the lady,

"This knight wishes to fight for you; do you confer on him the right?"

"I confer it," said she, "and may God give him a good reward for it."

The king looked at Amadis and saw that he had his shield pierced in many places, and around the edges cut by sword strokes, and he said to the other knights,

"If that strange knight should ask for a shield, he would rightly be given it."

But Amadis was so concerned about fighting with Dardan that he had no thought for anything else, bearing in mind those base words that he had said as more vivid and recent than when they occurred; which everyone should take as an object lesson and put a curb on his tongue, especially with those one does not know, because from such situations have often come notable consequences. The king and all the others withdrew. And Dardan and Amadis moved toward each other from a distance, and the horses were runners and swift and their riders of great strength, who attacked each other with their lances so fiercely that their armor was completely pierced, but neither was wounded; and their lances were broken and they collided with their horses' bodies and with their shields so furiously that it was a wonder. And Dardan fell to the ground on that first joust, but he was so lucky as to succeed in holding on to the reins. And Amadis passed by him, and Dardan got up quickly and mounted, for he was very agile, and he grasped his sword in a fury. When Amadis turned his horse toward him, he saw him about to attack him, and he grasped his sword, and both went ahead and attacked so fiercely that all were frightened to see such a battle, and the people of the town were on the towers and on the wall and in places where they best could see them fight; and the rooms of the queen overlooked the wall and there were there many windows where there were many ladies-in-waiting and damsels, and they watched the battle of the knights which seemed to them frightful to see, for they were striking each other on their helmets, which were of fine steel, so that it seemed to all that their heads were flashing, because of the many sparks of fire emanating from them. And from their coats of mail and other arms many pieces and bits of

mail and many large slices from their shields fell to the ground. So that their battle was so cruel that those who were watching it took very great fright; but the combatants did not desist from striking each other everywhere, and each one showed the other his strength and zeal. To King Lisuarte, who was gazing at them, no matter how many perilous confrontations he had personally experienced or had seen with his own eyes, all seemed as nothing compared to this, and he said,

“This is the fiercest battle man has ever seen, and I want to see how it will end, and I shall have a statue erected at the gate of my palace to the one who is victorious, so that all who are to win honor may see it.”

While the knights were continuing their battle with great zeal, just as you are hearing, and striking each other great blows without resting a bit, Amadis, who was very angry at Dardan, and who hoped to dwell in that king's house where his lady was in order that he might serve her at her command, on seeing that the knight was causing him so much delay, began to belabor him with great, hard blows, like a man who, if he was of any worth, wanted to demonstrate it there where his lady was, rather than anywhere else; so that before the hour of tierce arrived, everyone recognized that Dardan was getting the worst of it in the battle, but not in such a way as to fail to defend himself so well that there was no one present so bold as to dare to fight him. But all was of no avail, for the strange knight only improved in strength and ardor and struck him as hard as at first; so that all said that nothing was failing him except his horse, which was no longer as effective as was needful. And likewise the opposing horse, for both horses often stumbled, and fell to their knees with them, so that they could hardly get them to go forward; and Dardan, who deemed himself a better fighter on foot than on horseback, said to Amadis,

“Knight, our horses are failing us, for they are very tired; and this is prolonging our battle; and I believe that if we had proceeded on foot, I would have had you beaten a while back.”

He said this so loud that the king and all those around him heard it. And the strange knight was thereby very much embarrassed, and said,

“Since you believe you can defend yourself better on foot than on horseback, let us dismount, and do you so defend yourself, for you need to, although it does not seem to me that a knight should leave his horse as long as he can stay on it.”

So then they dismounted without delay, and each one took what remained of his shield and with great zeal they attacked each other, and they struck each other much more fiercely than before, so that it was a wonder to see them. But by far the strange knight was having the best of it, for he was able to reach him better, and he was striking him with very great blows and with great frequency, for he did not let him rest; but he saw that he needed to do so, and many times he made him swing around from one side to the other, and sometimes he brought him to his knees, to such an extent that everyone was saying,

“Dardan made an insane request when he sought to get down on foot with the knight, for he was not able to reach him on horseback, because his horse was very tired.”

Thus the strange knight was dominating Dardan quite at will, for now the latter was struggling more to guard himself from the blows than to attack, and he kept withdrawing toward the palace of the queen, and the damsels and everyone else were saying that Dardan would die if he persisted any longer in the battle. When they were under the windows, they all said,

“Holy Mary, Dardan is as good as dead!”

Then Amadis heard the damsel from Denmark talking, and recognized her by her speech and looked up and saw his lady Oriana, who was at a window. And as soon as he saw her, the sword turned in his hand, and his fight and everything else were out of his control on account of seeing her. Dardan had seized the opportunity to rest a bit, and he saw that his enemy was looking away; and taking his sword in both hands, he gave him such a blow on top of his helmet that he caused it to be twisted around on his head. Amadis for that blow did not give another nor did he do anything except to straighten his helmet. And Dardan began to strike him every place. Amadis struck him only a few times, for his intentions were changed from combatting to gazing at his lady. At this time Dardan began to improve and he to get worse, and the damsel from Denmark said,

"It was ill luck that that knight saw some woman here, for by being distracted he has caused Dardan, who had arrived at the point of death, to recover. Certainly at such a time the knight should not give up his task.

Amadis heard her, and was so ashamed that he would rather have been dead, for he feared that his lady would think that there was cowardice in him; and he rushed at Dardan and struck him on top of the helmet such a mighty blow that he made him touch hands to the ground, and so he took him by the helmet and jerked it so hard that he pulled it off his head, and he gave him with it such a blow that he made him fall stunned, and striking him with the hilt of his sword on his face, he said,

"Dardan, you are dead unless you concede that the lady is acquitted."

And he said,

"Ah, sir, mercy, don't kill me, I concede that she is acquitted."

Then the king and his knights came up and heard him. Amadis, who was ashamed of what had happened to him, went and mounted his horse, and set out to go as fast as he could to the forest. Dardan's lady love came to where he stood all battered, and she said to him,

"Dardan, from today on do not regard me as your lady love, neither you nor any other man in the world, except that good knight who just now fought this battle."

"What!" said Dardan; "I am vanquished and made a laughing-stock for your sake, and you want to forsake me for that one who was the vanquisher, to your detriment and my dishonor? By heaven, you are indeed a woman to say such a thing, and I shall give you the reward for your treachery."

And grasping his sword that he still had on his belt, he gave her such a blow with it that he cast her head at her feet; he stood for a moment thinking about himself and said,

"Ah, wretch that I am! What have I done to kill what I loved most in the world! But I shall avenge her death."

And taking his sword by the point he thrust it into himself, so that he could not be succored, although it was attempted. And as everyone came to view him, for a wonder no one went in pursuit of Amadis to find out who he was. But with that death

everyone was pleased, because although this Dardan was the most valiant and strong knight of all Great Britain, his pride and bad temper caused him not to employ his talents except to the harm of many, appropriating things in an outrageous manner, esteeming his own strength and the great zeal of his heart more than the judgment of the most high Lord, who with very little of His power brings it about that the very strong are overcome and dishonored by the very weak.

CHAPTER XIV

HOW KING LISUARTE HAD DARDAN AND HIS LADY LOVE BURIED, AND CAUSED TO BE PLACED ON THEIR TOMB AN INSCRIPTION THAT TOLD OF THE MANNER OF THEIR DEATH.

This battle, in which Dardan and his lady love had such a cruel death, having thus been won, the king ordered two burial crypts to be brought and had put on them lions of stone, and within the crypts they placed Dardan and his lady love in the field where the battle had taken place, together with an inscription that signalized what had happened. And afterwards in due time there was placed there the name of the one who defeated him, as will be subsequently related.

And the king asked what had become of the strange knight. But they did not know what to say except that he went away toward the forest as fast as his horse could run.

"Ah," said the king, "Would that one could have such a man in his company! For in addition to his great strength, I believe that he is very self-restrained, for all of you have heard the vilification that Dardan heaped on him, and although he had him in his power, he did not seek to kill him, for I really believe that he perceived in the other's mood that he would not have had any mercy if he had the power over him."

While speaking about this, he went to his palace, he and all the others talking about the strange knight. Oriana said to the damsel from Denmark:

"My dear, I suspect that that knight who fought here is Amadis, for now it would be time for him to arrive, because since I sent word for him to come, he would not tarry."

"Certainly," said the damsel, "I believe it is he, and I ought to have remembered today when I saw the knight riding a white horse, for I certainly left him such a horse when I departed from there."

She said furthermore,

"Did you recognize the arms he bore?"

"No," said she, "for the shield was battered from the blows; but it seems to me it had a field of gold."

"Lady," said the damsel, "He had in the battle with King Abies a shield that had a field of gold and two rampant blue lions on it, but that shield was there completely ruined and he ordered immediately another like it made, and told me that he would be bearing the new one when he came here, and I believe it is that one."

"My dear," said Oriana, "if it is he, he will either come or send word to the town, and now go out there farther than your wont to see if you will find a message from him."

"Lady," said she, "I shall do so."

And Oriana said,

"Ah, God, what a favor you would confer on me if it were he, because I would now have the opportunity to speak with him."

Thus the two pursued their conversation.

And the author again tells about Amadis and what happened to him. When Amadis left the battle he went through the forest so secretly that no one found out anything about him, and he arrived late at the tents, where he found Gandalin and the damsels, who had food prepared, and on his dismounting they disarmed him, and the damsels told him how Dardan had killed his mistress and afterwards himself and for what reason. He made the sign of the cross many times at such a bad outcome and then they sat down to eat with much pleasure; but Amadis never forgot how he would advise his lady of his arrival and what she commanded him to do. The table having been cleared, he got up and drawing Gandalin aside, he said to him,

"Friend, go to town and try to see the damsel from Denmark and let it be in great secrecy, and tell her I am here, and to send to tell me what I shall do."

Gandalin agreed to go on foot in order to go more secretly, and so he did; and arriving in town, he went to the king's palace. And he was not there long before he saw the damsel from Denmark, who was walking back and forth. He came up to her and greeted her and she, him; and she looked at him more closely and saw it was Gandalin, and she said to him,

"Ah, my friend, be you very welcome; and where is your master?"

"Already today there was a time you saw him," said Gandalin, "for he was the one who won the battle, and I left him hidden in that forest, and he sends me to you for you to tell him what to do."

"Be he welcome to this land," said she, "for his lady will be very happy with him, and come along after me; and if someone asks, tell them you are from the Queen of Scotland and bringing a message from her to Oriana; and that you came to look for Amadis who is in this land, in order to accompany him, and thus you will remain afterwards in her company and no one will suspect anything."

So they entered the palace of the queen, and the damsel said to Oriana,

"Madam: here you see a squire who brings you a message from the Queen of Scotland."

Oriana was very happy about it, and much more so when she saw it was Gandalin; and kneeling before her, he said,

"Madam, the queen sends you many greetings as one who loves you and esteems you highly, and who would be very much pleased at your fame and would not fail to do what she could to increase it."

"May the queen have good fortune," said Oriana, "I am very appreciative of her message; come to this window and you shall tell me more."

Then she drew apart with him, had him sit down beside her, and said to him,

"Friend, where did you leave your master?"

"I left him in that forest yonder," said he, "where he went last night when he won the battle."

"Friend," said she, "I adjure you to tell me how he fares."

"Lady," said he, "he fares according to whatever you wish, as a man who is all yours, and who for you is dying, and his soul endures that which no other knight has suffered." And he began to weep, and said,

"Lady, he will not disregard your command either for ill or for good that may befall him. And for heaven's sake, lady, have mercy on him, because the anguish that he has suffered up to now, no one else in the world could endure; for often I expected him to fall down dead before me, having already his heart dissolved in tears; and if he should have the good fortune to live, he would become the greatest knight who ever bore arms, and certainly according to the great things that have taken place through him and to his honor since he has been a knight, he is now such a knight. But luck failed him when he made your acquaintance, for he will die before his time. And certainly it would have been better for him to die in the sea, upon which he was launched without his parents knowing him, inasmuch as they are seeing him die without being able to help him." And she did nothing but weep, and he said,

"Lady, this death of my lord would be cruel and many would grieve for him if thus, without any help, he should suffer more than in the past."

Oriana said, weeping and wringing her hands,

"Ah, friend Gandalin, in heaven's name, hush and don't tell me any more! For God knows how much it distresses me if you believe what you say. For I would rather kill my own heart and all I hold dear, and it would be as hard for me to desire his death as for one who would not live a single day if he were to die; and you blame me because you know his anguish and not mine, for if you knew mine, you would grieve more for me and you would not blame me. But persons cannot hasten to give aid as they desire; rather, the situation of being farthest apart is what obtains, with the continuance of what aggravates and angers them; and so it is with me and your lord, for God knows, if I were able, with what good will I would apply a remedy to his great desires and mine."

Gandalin said to her:

"Do what you should if you love him, for he loves you more than all the things that today are loved; and lady, now command what he should do."

Oriana showed him a garden that was below that window where they were talking and said,

"Friend, go to your lord and tell him to come tonight very secretly and go into the garden, and here below is the chamber where Mabilia and I sleep, which has near the ground a small window with a grating of iron, and at it we shall talk, for Mabilia already knows my heart."

And taking a very beautiful ring from her finger, she gave it to Gandalin to take to Amadis because she liked it more than any other ring she had; and she said,

"Before you go, you will see Mabilia, who will know how to conceal you very well, for she is very wise, and you both will say that you are bringing to her news of her mother, so that no one will suspect anything."

Oriana called Mabilia to see that squire who had come from her mother; and when she saw Gandalin, she understood very well the reason; and Oriana went to the queen her mother, who asked her whether that squire would return soon to Scotland, because she would send gifts to the queen by him.

"Lady," said she, "the squire comes to look for Amadis, son of the King of Gaul, the fine knight of whom many here are speaking."

"And where is he?" said the queen.

"The squire says," she said, "that more than ten months ago, they had word that he was coming here and he wonders why he doesn't find him."

"So help me God," said the queen, "it would give me much pleasure to see such a knight in the king my lord's household; he would be of great aid to him in the many disputes that on every hand confront him; and I say to you that if he comes here, he will not fail to become his liege man on account of anything he may demand which the king can satisfy."

"Madam," said Oriana, "of his knighthood I know no more than what they say, but I tell you he was the handsomest youth

known at the time he served me, Mabilia, and other damsels in the house of the King of Scotland."

Mabilia, who had remained with Gandalin said,

"Friend, is your master already in this land?"

"Lady, yes," said he, "and he sends cordial greetings to you as the cousin whom he loves more than any other, and he was the knight that won the battle here."

"Oh, Lord God," said she, "be Thou blessed for having created such a great knight in our family and for having made him known to us."

Thus she said to Gandalin:

"Friend, how is it with him?"

"Madam," said he, "it would be well, if it were not for the power of love, which keeps him half-dead, and for heaven's sake, madam, hasten and help him, for truly if he does not have some relief in his love, the greatest knight in our family and in all the world is lost."

"He will not expire through my fault," said she, "in whatever I can do; now go and greet him kindly for me and tell him to come as my lady orders, and every time it is necessary you will be able to speak with us as the squire of my mother."

Gandalin parted from Mabilia with that message that he was carrying to his lord, and the latter was awaiting him, expecting life or death according to the news he might bring, for he certainly at that time was so worried that his strength was not sufficient to bear it; for the great relief he had received on seeing himself so near to where his lady was, had changed into such a desire to see her, and with the desire such great concern and anguish, that he had reached the point of death; and when he saw Gandalin coming, he went to him and said,

"Friend Gandalin, what news do you bring me?"

"Good news, sir," said he.

"Did you see the damsel of Denmark?"

"Yes, I saw her."

"And did you find out from her what I am to do?"

"Sir," said he, "the news is better than you think."

He trembled with joy and said,

"In God's name, tell me quickly."

Gandalin told him all that had happened with his lady, and the talks that they both had, and what his cousin Mabilia said to him, and the talk that he left arranged, so that nothing more remained to be told him. You can well imagine the great joy he had from this; and he said to Gandalin:

"My true friend, you have been more wise and daring in my behalf than I would have been, and this is not surprising, for your father has both attributes to perfection. And now tell me if you know well the place where she ordered me to be."

"Yes, sir," said he, "for Oriana showed it to me."

"Oh, heavens," said Amadis, "how shall I requite this lady for the great favor that she now does for me? I do not know why I should complain of any worry."

Gandalin gave him the ring and said,

"Take this ring that your lady sends you because it is the one she likes best."

He took it with tears coming to his eyes, and kissing it, put it straightway over his heart, and it was a few moments before he was able to speak. Then he put it on his finger and said,

"Ah, ring, to think that you were on that hand! For one would not be able to find another hand anywhere of such worth."

"Sir," said Gandalin, "go to the damsels and be happy, because this worry is destroying you and it can endanger your affair."

He did so, and at that supper he talked more and with more enjoyment than was his wont, for which the damsels were very happy; for he was the most gracious and pleasant knight in the world when meditation and worry did not stand in the way. And the hour of sleeping having arrived, they went to bed in their tents as usual; but the proper time having come, Amadis arose and found that Gandalin already had the horses saddled and his arms prepared, and he armed himself, for he did not know what might befall him; and mounting, they went toward the town, and arriving at a great many trees that were near the garden, which Gandalin on that day had noted, they dismounted and left their horses there and continued on foot. And they entered the garden through a little opening that the rains had made; and arriving at the window Gandalin knocked very softly.

Oriana, who did not care about sleeping, when she heard him, got up and called Mabilia, and said to her:

"I believe that your cousin is here."

"He is my cousin," said she, "but you have more of him than his whole family does."

Then they both went to the window and put in it some candles that gave a bright light, and they opened it. Amadis saw his lady by the light of the candles, appearing so perfect to him that there was not a person who could believe that such beauty could be possible in any woman in the world. She was dressed in clothing of India silk, embroidered with many heavy gold flowers, and she was with hair bared, which was wonderfully beautiful, and she covered it with a very rich garland; and when Amadis saw her thus, he trembled all over with the great joy that he had on seeing her, and his heart beat so hard that he was not able to be at ease. When Oriana saw him thus, she approached the window and said,

"My lord, be you very welcome to this land, for we have desired you very much and have taken great pleasure in your fine strokes of good fortune, both at arms and in your becoming acquainted with your father and mother."

Amadis when he heard this, although he was overwhelmed, by exerting himself more than for any other confrontation, he said,

"Lady, if my discretion is not sufficient to satisfy the favor that you tell me of and that which you did me in sending the damsel of Denmark, do not wonder at it, because my heart, very perturbed and a prey to excessive love, does not allow my tongue its freedom; and because just as with my delightful memory of you, I think I shall subdue everything, so at the sight of you I myself am subdued without there remaining in my senses anything free in my power; and if I, my lady, were so deserving or my services were to merit it, I would ask of you now your pity for this so afflicted heart of mine before it be entirely dissolved with tears; and the favor which I ask of you, my lady, is not for my repose, for of the things truly beloved the more one attains, the more one's desire and concern increase and grow; but because if everything came to an end, there would also come

to the end of his life the one who thinks only of serving you."

"My lord," said Oriana, "all that you tell me I believe unhesitatingly, because my heart by what it feels shows that it is true; but I tell you that I do not consider sensible what you are doing in having such anguish as Gandalin tells me about, because nothing can come from it except that it be either the cause of disclosing our love affair, from which so much misfortune could befall us, or that if the life of one of us came to an end, that of the other would not be able to endure. And for this reason I command you, by that dominion that I have over you, that by imposing temperance on your life, you impose it on mine, which thinks only of finding a way that your desires may have surcease."

"Lady," said he, "in everything I shall carry out your command except for what my strength does not dispel."

"And in what is that?" said she.

"The thought," said he, "that my judgment can not resist those mortal desires with which it is so cruelly tormented."

"I do not say," said she, "that you put your thought aside completely, but that it be with such moderation that you not allow yourself to be disgraced in the presence of noblemen; because you already know what will be gained by destroying one's life, as I have said. And, my lord, I tell you to remain with my father if he asks you to do so, in order that the situations you may encounter, you meet at my command. And from now on, speak with me without inhibition, telling me the things that most please you, for I shall do all I possibly can."

"Lady," said he, "I am yours, and at your command I have come: I shall do nothing except what you command."

Mabilia came and said,

"Lady, let me share this knight."

"Approach," said Oriana, "for I wish to see him as soon as you have spoken with him."

Then she said,

"Sir cousin, be you very welcome, for you have given me great joy."

"My lady cousin," said he, "and be you very well met, for wherever I might see you, I should be obliged to love and cherish

you, and much more in this place, where by observing our relationship you will be taking pity on me."

She said,

"At your service I shall put my life and my services, but I well know, according to what I have learned from this lady, that they can be superfluous."

Gandalin, who saw morning near at hand; said,

"Sir, although you may not like it, the approach of daybreak obliges us to leave here."

Oriana said,

"Sir, now go, and do as I have told you."

Amadis, taking her hands, which through the grating of the window she extended, she wiping away with them the tears that fell on his face, he kissing them many times, parted from the ladies; and mounting their horses, he and Gandalin arrived before dawn broke at the tent; where, disarming himself, he went to bed unperceived by any person.

The damsels arose, and one stayed to keep company with Amadis, and the other went to the town; and know you that both were sisters, and first cousins of the lady for whom Amadis fought. Amadis slept until the sun came up; and getting up, called Gandalin and gave orders that he go to the town, as his lady and Mabilia had commanded. Gandalin departed, and Amadis remained talking to the damsel. And before long he saw the other damsel coming, who had gone to town, and she was weeping bitterly and riding at full speed. Amadis said,

"What is the matter, my good friend? Who has made you grieve? For so help me God, amends will be made for it, unless I lose my life first."

"Sir," said she, "the remedy depends entirely on you."

"Now tell it," said he; "if I do not uphold your cause, do you never again accompany a strange knight."

When she heard this, she said,

"The lady, our cousin, for whom you fought, is imprisoned, for the king orders her to have the knight who fought for her come there, and if she does not, she will in no wise leave the town; and well you know that she cannot do so, for she never knew anything about you; and the king in a great fury at her,

believing that you are hidden through her knowledge, orders that you be looked for everywhere."

"I should have preferred," said he, "that it be otherwise, because I am not of enough renown to make myself known to such an eminent man, and I tell you that although all those of his house were to find me, I would not take a single step to go there if not by force; but I cannot continue to be in the situation of not doing what you wish, for I love and esteem you highly."

The damsels knelt before him, giving him many thanks.

"Now one of you go," said he, "to the lady and tell her to obtain an agreement from the king that he will not demand anything from the knight against his will, and I shall be there tomorrow at the hour of tierce."

The damsel returned to town and so told the lady, which made her very happy, and she went before the king and said,

"Sire, if you agree not to ask anything of the knight against his will, he will be here tomorrow at the hour of tierce; and if not, neither shall I have him here nor shall you meet him, for so help me God, I do not know who he is, or for what reason he willed to fight for me."

The king agreed, for he had a great desire to meet him. With this the lady went away, and the news was reported throughout the palace and the town to this effect: tomorrow the good knight who won the battle will be here.

And all were very pleased with the news, because they hated Dardan for his pride and bad nature. And the damsel returned to Amadis and told him how the agreement had been approved by the king, just as the lady had asked.

CHAPTER XV

HOW AMADIS MADE HIMSELF KNOWN TO KING LISUARTE AND TO THE GRANDEES OF HIS COURT AND WAS WELL RECEIVED BY ALL.

Amadis took his ease that day with the damsels, and next morning armed himself, and mounting his horse, taking with him only the damsels, he went to the town. The king was in his palace, for he did not know from what direction the knight would come. Amadis went to the lodging of the lady, and when she saw him, she knelt before him and said,

“Ah, sir, all I have you gave to me.”

He raised her up, and said,

“Lady, let us go to the king, and by his giving you your release, I shall be at liberty to return to where I have to go.”

Then he took off his helmet and shield and took with him the lady and the damsels, and went to the palace; and wherever he went everyone said: “This is the good knight who defeated Dardan.”

The king, who heard him, came out to him with a great company of knights, and when he saw him, went to him with outstretched arms and said to him,

“Friend, be you very welcome, for we have desired you greatly.”

Amadis knelt before him and said,

“Sire, may God keep you in honor and joy.”

The king took him by the hand and said,

“So help me God, I consider you the greatest knight in the world.”

"Sire," said he, "with more reason one could say that you are the most worthy king in the world; but, tell me, is the lady acquitted?"

"Yes," said he, "and she ought be as grateful to you for your coming as for the battle you fought, for she would not leave this town until she had brought you here."

"Sire," said Amadis, "all that you do you do rightly; but do believe that the lady never knew who fought the battle until now."

They all marveled greatly at the extreme good looks of this Amadis and at how, being so young, he was able to overcome Dardan, who was so valiant and strong that in all Great Britain they feared and stood in awe of him. Amadis said to the king,

"Sire, since your will is carried out and the lady released, to God be you commended, and you are the one king in the world whom I would prefer to serve."

"Ah, friend," said the king, "do not make this departure so soon if you do not wish to give me very great sorrow."

He said,

"God keep me from this; rather, so help me God, I intend to serve you if I were such as to deserve to."

"Since that is the way it is," said the king, "I beg you to remain here today."

He agreed without showing that it pleased him. The king took him by the hand and conducted him to a beautiful chamber where he had him disarm and where all the other knights of great importance who came there, disarmed; for this was the king who in the whole world most honored them and who had most knights in his household. And he had him given a robe to put on; and calling King Arban of North Wales and the Earl of Gloucester, he said to them:

"Knights, bear this knight company, for the accompaniment of nobles is appropriate for him."

And he went to the queen and told her he had in his household the good knight who had won the battle.

"Sire," said the queen, "it gives me great pleasure. And do you know his name?"

"No," said the king, "for according to the promise I made, I have not dared ask it."

"By chance," said she, "is he perhaps the son of King Perion of Gaul?"

"I do not know," said the king.

"That squire," said the queen, "who was talking with Mabilia, goes in search of him and says he has discovered news to the effect that he was coming to this land."

The king ordered him called and said,

"Come with me and I shall ascertain whether you recognize a knight who is in my palace."

Gandalin went with the king and as he knew what he was to do, as soon as he saw Amadis, he knelt before him and said,

"Ah, Sir Amadis, for a long time I have been in quest of you."

"Friend Gandalin," said he, "be you welcome. And what news is there from the King of Scotland?"

"Sir," said he, "very good news, and from all our friends."

He went and embraced him, and said,

"Now, my lord, it is not necessary to conceal yourself, for you are that famous Amadis, son of King Perion of Gaul, and your recognition of each other came when you killed in battle that esteemed King Abies of Ireland, through which you restored King Perion to his kingdom which already he had almost lost."

Then more than before everybody approached to have a look at him, since now they knew him to have done such feats at arms as no one else could do. Thus they passed that day with all doing him much honor; and night having fallen, King Arban of North Wales took him with him to his dwelling on the advice of the king, who had told him to try hard to have him remain in the King's household. That night Amadis lodged with King Arban of North Wales very well served and to his pleasure. King Lisuarte spoke with the queen, telling her how he could not detain Amadis and that he was very desirous that a man so distinguished in the world should remain in his household, for with such men princes were greatly honored and feared, and that he did not know how he should set about detaining him.

"Sir," said the queen, "it would be counted against such a great man as you that such a knight, on coming to your house, should depart without your granting him whatever he might ask."

"He demands nothing of me," said the king, "and I would grant him everything."

"Then I'll tell you what: plead with him to stay or have someone do it on your behalf; and if he will not do so, tell him to come to see me before he departs, and I shall beg him along with my daughter Oriana and her cousin Mabilia, who have known him well since the time he was a page and served them; and I shall tell him that all the other knights are yours, and we wish him to be ours for whatever we may require."

"You speak most reasonably," said he, "and with that approach he will undoubtedly remain; and if he should not do so, we could rightly judge him to be more lacking in good breeding than great in strength."

King Arban of North Wales spoke that night with Amadis, but he could not obtain from him any hope that he would remain. And next day they both went to hear mass with the king; and after it was said, Amadis went to bid farewell to the king, and the king said,

"Certainly, friend, your departure grieves me greatly and because of the promise I made you I do not dare to demand of you anything, for I do not know whether it would irk you; but the queen eagerly desires to see you before you go."

"I shall see her very willingly," said he.

Then he took him by the hand and went where the queen was and said to her,

"Behold here the son of King Perion of Gaul."

"So help me God, sir," said she, "I am very pleased and be he very welcome."

Amadis sought to kiss her hands; but she made him sit beside her, and the king returned to his knights, many of whom he had left in the patio. The queen spoke with Amadis about many things, and he responded very sagaciously. The duennas and damsels were very astonished to see how handsome he was; and he could not lift his eyes without beholding his lady, Oriana, and Mabilia came and embraced him as if she had not seen him. The queen said to her daughter,

"Receive this knight who served you so well when he was a page, and will serve you now that he is a knight, unless he is

lacking in courtesy; and all of you ladies help me to beg for what I shall ask of him."

Then she said,

"Sir knight, the king my lord very much had wanted you to remain with him, and he has not been able to accomplish it; now I wish to see how much greater influence women have on knights than men do. And I beg you to be my knight and my daughter's and the knight of all these ladies whom you see here. In this you will be signifying submission and respect and you will free us from any imposition on the king in demanding of him the services of any knight for our needs; for if we have you, we can exempt all of his knights."

And then all came to entreat him, and Oriana nodded to him that he should agree. The queen said to him,

"Well, sir, what will you do with regard to our request?"

"Madam," said he, "who would do aught else but your bidding, for you are the best queen in the world, not to mention all these ladies? I, madam, am staying on account of your request and your daughter's, and secondarily on account of that of all the others; but I tell you I shall be your knight only. And if I serve the king in something it will be as your knight and not as his."

"Thus I and all the other ladies accept you," said the queen.

Then she sent word of it to the king, who was very happy, and he sent King Arban of North Wales to bring Amadis to him, and so he did; and when he came into his presence, embracing him with great affection, the king said,

"Friend, now I am very happy in having accomplished this which I so much desired, and I certainly should like you to receive thanks from me."

Amadis took it as a signal favor on his part. In this way, as you have heard, by command of his lady Amadis remained in the household of the king.

Here the author ceases to tell of this, and the narrative again speaks of Don Galaor.

Don Galaor, having departed from the household of the Duke of Bristol, where the Dwarf had occasioned him so much trouble, went on through that forest called Arnida and traveled until about

the hour of vespers without knowing where he was or finding any town. And at that hour he overtook an elegant squire who was riding a very fine-looking hackney — and the knight Galaor, who bore a very great and terrible wound which one of the three knights whom the dwarf brought to the boat had given him, and which as a result of his working his will on the damsel had become much worse, said to him,

“Good squire, would you be able to tell me where I could be treated for a wound?”

“I know of one place,” said the squire, “but those such as you dare not go there, and if they do go, they leave as laughing-stocks.”

“Never mind that,” said he, “would there be there anyone who would care for my wound?”

“Rather do I believe,” said the squire, “that you will find one who will inflict others upon you.”

“Show me where it is,” said Galaor, “and I shall see what you want to frighten me with.”

“I shall not do that if I don’t want to,” said he.

“Either you will show it to me,” said Galaor, “or I’ll make you show it, for you are so base that anything done to you, you rightly deserve.”

“You can’t do a thing,” said he, “that would make me give pleasure to a knight so bad and so devoid of virtue.”

Galaor grasped his sword in order to frighten him and said:

“Either you will guide me there or you will leave your head here.”

“I will guide you,” said the squire, “to where your folly will be castigated and I avenged for what you do to me.”

Then he went along the road and Galaor behind him but off the road, and after going as much as a league they arrived at a beautiful fortress, which was in a valley covered with trees.

“Here you see,” said the squire, “the place I told you about; let me go.”

“Go,” said he, “for I am but little pleased with your company.”

“You will be even less pleased with it,” said he, “before long.”

Galaor went on toward the fortress and saw that it was newly built; and on reaching the gate, he saw a knight well armed on his horse and with him five foot soldiers also armed, and they said to Galaor:

“Are you the one who brought our squire along as a prisoner?”

“I do not know,” said he, “who your squire is, but I forced to come here a man in every way the worst and with the most evil disposition I ever saw in any man.”

“That may well be,” said the knight, “but you, what do you want here?”

“Sir,” said Galaor, “I am traveling sorely wounded from a blow and I should like to have my wound cared for.”

“Enter then,” said the knight.

Galaor went forward, and the foot soldiers attacked him from one side and the knight from the other, and one churl went for him, and Galaor, snatching from his hands a battle-axe, turned to the knight and hit him with it such a mighty blow that he was beyond medical help; and he used it on the churls in such a fashion that he killed three of them and the other two fled to the castle keep, and Galaor after them; and his squire said to him,

“Sir, take your arms, for I hear a great commotion in the citadel.”

He did so, and the squire took a shield and an axe from the dead men, and said,

“Sir, I shall help you against the churls, but I shall not lay a hand on any knight, for I would lose forever the chance to be a knight.”

Galaor said to him,

“If I find the good knight that I am looking for, I shall quickly make you a knight.”

And then they went forward and saw two knights and ten churls coming, and they turned to the two that were fleeing; and the squire who had guided Galaor there was at a window shouting:

“Kill him! Kill him! But keep the horse and it will be mine.”

When Galaor heard this, his anger mounting, he charged at them and they at him, and they broke their lances, but from the one that Galaor encountered there was no need to take away his arms; and he turned to the other with his sword in hand with great courage and with the first blow he gave, he knocked him down from his horse and turned very quickly to the churls and saw that the squire had killed two of them, and he said to him:

“Let them all die, for they are traitors.”

And so they saw to it that none escaped. When the squire who was looking out the window saw this, he went and climbed a stairway to a tower in great haste, shouting,

“Sir, arm yourself, or you die.”

Galaor went toward the tower, and before he got there, he saw a knight coming fully armed, and at the foot of the tower a horse was being held for him and he was about to mount. Galaor, who had dismounted from his horse because it could not enter under a little gateway, reached him and laying hold of his rein, said,

“Knight, don’t mount, for I have no surety from you.”

The knight turned his face to him and said,

“Are you the one who has killed my cousins and the people of this castle of mine?”

“I do not know whom you are referring to,” said Galaor, “but I tell you that here I have found the worst and most treacherous people I have ever seen.”

“By my good faith,” said the knight, “those you have killed are better than you and you will pay dearly for it.”

Then they rushed at each other on foot just as they were and had their very cruel fight, for the knight of the castle was very good, and everyone who saw the fight marveled; and thus they continued striking each other for quite a bit. But the knight, not being able any longer to withstand Galaor’s great blows, began to flee, and he after him, and thus he went under a little doorway, intending to jump from a window to a scaffolding, and with the weight of his armor he was not able to jump to where he intended, and it was so high that he was smashed to bits; and Galaor, who saw him fall thus, turned back cursing the castle

and its inmates. At this juncture, he heard a voice in a room that said,

"Sir, for mercy's sake, don't leave me here!"

Galaor reached the door and said,

"Well, open up."

And the other said,

"Sir, I cannot, for I am imprisoned in chains."

Galaor kicked the door and knocking it down, entered and found a beautiful lady who had a heavy chain around her neck, and she said to him,

"Sir, what happened to the lord of the castle and the other people?"

He answered,

"They are all dead." And that he had come there to find someone to attend to his wound.

"I shall minister to you," said she, "and do get me out of this captivity."

Galaor broke the chain lock and took the lady from the room; but first she took from a small coffer two little boxes that the lord of the castle had there together with other things for treating wounds, and they went to the gate of the castle and there Galaor found the first one with whom he had fought, who still was stirring, and he trampled him for a bit with his horse, and they went out of the castle. Galaor glanced at the lady and saw that she was wondrously beautiful and said to her,

"Lady, I freed you from prison, and I am fallen into it unless you succor me."

"I shall succor you," said she, "in all that you command, for if I did otherwise, I would be ungrateful, in view of the great tribulation out of which you took me."

With these amorous words of good will and with the wiles of Don Galaor and with those of the lady, which fortunately were in agreement with them, they undertook that which not without great embarrassment is to be put in writing; at last that night they lodged in the forest with some hunters in their tents. And there the matron took care of his wound and of the passionate desire he had for her, and related to him how, she being the daughter of Lelois the Fleming, to whom King Lisuarte at that

time had given the County of Clare, and of a lady whom he had kept as his mistress; "and being with my mother there," said she, "in a convent which is near here, that arrogant knight whom you killed demanded me in marriage, and because my mother scorned him, he waited one day while I was frolicking with some other damsels and seized me and carried me away to that castle, and putting me under that very harsh confinement, he said to me,

"You have rejected me for a husband, whereby my reputation and honor have been quite discredited, and I tell you that you will not leave here until your mother and you and your relatives beg me to take you as my wife.' And I who hated him more than anything in the world, took as my best remedy, trusting in the mercy of God, to remain there in that hardship for some time rather than to endure it forever by being married to him."

"Well, lady," said Galaor, "what shall I do with you, for I am going a long way and on such a matter as probably to make it irksome for you to wait for me."

"Take me," said she, "to the convent where my mother is."

"Then guide me," said Galaor, "and I shall follow you."

Then they entered upon their way, and before the sun had set they arrived at the convent, where the young lady and Galaor were received with great pleasure and even more as soon as the former told them the extraordinary things Galaor and his squire had performed at arms. There Galaor rested at the request of those ladies.

The author here ceases to tell of this, and again speaks concerning Agrajes and of what happened to him after he came from the war in Gaul.

CHAPTER XVI

CONCERNING WHAT AGRAJES SAW AFTER HE CAME FROM THE WAR IN GAUL, AND SOME OF THE THINGS HE DID.

Agrajes, having returned from the war in Gaul at the time that Amadis had killed in battle King Abies of Ireland and had become acquainted with his father and mother, as has been related; having prepared to cross to Norway where his lady Olinda was, went hunting one day, and being on a rocky hill overlooking the sea coast, suddenly there came up a hail storm with a very high wind, so that it caused the sea to become very rough; on which he saw a ship, buffeted many times by the force of the waves, in danger of being sunk. Moved to great pity, with night approaching, he kindled large fires in order that their warning might cause the people on the ship to be saved; he awaiting there meanwhile the outcome of that great peril. Finally the force of the wind, the prudence of the sailors, and above all the mercy of our true Lord, caused that boat, which many times was thought to be lost, to make port safely. From it some damsels greatly perturbed over their present danger, having been taken off, were delivered over to Agrajes, who on the crags was shouting to his beaters to help them diligently. He sent them to some country houses near his own lodging.

The crew, having left the ship and having been lodged in those houses, after having supped around the great fires that Agrajes had ordered them to make, slept very soundly. In the meantime, the damsels, having been lodged by his command in his very own chamber in order that they receive more honor and service, had not yet been seen by him. But the crew now being

quieted down, as a young knight desirous of seeing women more to serve and honor them than to subjugate his heart in any quarter other than where it already was enthralled, he endeavored to look through the doors of the chamber at what they were doing; and seeing them around a fire talking with great pleasure about their relief from the past danger, he recognized among them that beautiful princess Olinda his lady love, daughter of the King of Norway, because in the kingdom of his father as well as in that of hers, he had performed many feats at arms — Olinda, that princess who, when his heart was free, had captivated and subjugated it with such force that its strength was weakened, being tormented by great anguish and cares, bringing to his eyes very many tears. Then moved by such a sight and remembering the great danger in which he had seen her and the place where he was looking without her, as if out of his mind he said,

“Oh Holy Mary, save me, for this is the lady of my heart!”

This outcry having been heard by her and not suspecting what it was about, she ordered a damsel of hers to find out. Then the latter, on opening the door saw Agrajes there as though enraptured; who making himself known to her and she telling her lady, the latter, becoming no less joyous than he was, commanded him to enter, where after many amorous advances took place between them, as the culmination of their great desires they spent that night with great pleasure and to the great joy of their hearts. And that group remained there in great repose for six days, until the sea became calm, and all of these days, Agrajes spent with his lady, without any person's being aware of it, except her maids. Then at that time he learned that Olinda was going to Great Britain to live in the household of King Lisuarte, where her father was sending her; and he told her how he was prepared to go to Norway where she was, and that since God had given him such happiness, that his journey's destination would be changed to where hers was, in order to serve her and to see his cousin Amadis, whom he thought he would find there. Olinda was very grateful to him for this, and begged and commanded that he do so.

This having been agreed upon, at the end of six days the sea being in such a calm that they could sail without any danger, they all betook themselves to the sea and bidding farewell to

Agrajes, they went on their way, and without any obstacle to hinder them, reached Great Britain; where having left the sea, they arrived at the town of Windsor, where King Lisuarte was. Olinda, judged to be of such high estate and abundant beauty, was very well received both by the king and queen, and by their daughter and all the other duennas and damsels.

Agrajes, who had remained on the seashore gazing at that ship in which that greatly beloved lady of his was traveling, when it had been lost to his view returned to Briantes, that town where King Languines, his father, was; and finding there his uncle Don Galvanes Lackland, he said to him that it would be good to go to the court of King Lisuarte, where so many good knights lived, because there in that land, more than anywhere else, they could win honor and fame, which would be all wasted in Scotland, where they could not exercise their valor except with people of little worth at arms. Don Galvanes, who was a good knight desirous of winning honor, and not being impeded by having to rule any seignior, because he only had one castle, considered it a good thing to make that journey that Agrajes his nephew had suggested to him; and they bidding farewell to King Languines, entering upon the sea with only their arms and horses and squires for each of them, the favorable weather brought about their arrival in a short space of time in Great Britain at a town called Bristol; and on leaving there and traveling through a forest, on the way out they met a damsel who asked if they knew whether that road went to the Rock of Galtares.

"No," said they, "But why do you ask?" said Agrajes.

"To ascertain," said she, "whether I shall find there a good knight who will remedy a great sorrow that I carry with me."

"You are mistaken," said Agrajes, "for in that Rock that you speak of, you will not find any other knight but that fierce giant Albadan, who, if you carry sorrow, judging by his evil deeds, will double it."

"If you knew what I do," said she, "you would not consider it an error, for the knight whom I seek fought with that giant and killed him in single combat."

"Certainly, lady," said Galvanes, "you tell us wonders, that any knight should take on any giant, especially that one who is

the fiercest and harshest one that there is in all the islands of the sea, unless it were King Abies of Ireland who fought with one, he armed and the giant unarmed, and he killed the latter; and even so, it was considered the most insane exploit in the world."

"Sirs," said the damsel, "this other that I am talking about did it more in the manner of a good knight."

Then she told them about the battle and they were amazed; and Agrajes asked the lady if she knew the name of the knight who had attacked with such courage.

"Yes, I know it," said she.

"Then I beg of you," said Agrajes, "please tell us the name."

"I tell you," said she, "that his name is Galaor and he is the son of the King of Gaul."

Agrajes trembled all over and said,

"Ah, lady, you tell me news that makes me the happiest man in the world by finding out about that cousin that I considered dead rather than alive."

Then she told Don Galvanes what she knew of Galaor, how he had overcome the giant, and that up to then she had not had any news of him.

"Certainly," said Galvanes, "his life and that of his brother Amadis have been nothing short of wondrous, and also the beginning of their deeds at arms, to such an extent that I doubt if one can find any others in the world to equal them."

Agrajes said to the damsel,

"My dear, what do you want of this knight you are seeking?"

"Sir," said she, "I wish him to help a maiden who is imprisoned on account of him; and it was a traitorous dwarf, the most false creature in all the world, who caused her to be seized."

Then she related to them all that had happened to Galaor with the dwarf, just as it has already been told; but of that relating to his lady love Aldeva, she told them nothing.

"And, sirs, because the maiden does not wish to assent to what the dwarf says, the Duke of Bristol swears that he will have her burned ten days from now, and the great worry of the other duennas is whether the maiden through fear of death may be willing to condemn some one of them by saying that that one

brought Galaor there for that purpose. And four of the ten days have passed."

"Since that's the way it is, don't go on any farther, for we shall do what Galaor would do; if not by force it will be voluntarily; and now guide us in God's name."

The maiden returned to the road along which she had come and they followed her, and they reached the house of the duke the day before the maiden was to be burned, and at the time that the duke was sitting down to dine; and dismounting they entered thus armed where he was. The duke greeted them and they him, and he told them to eat.

"Sir," said they, "first we shall tell you the reason for our coming."

And Don Galvanes said,

"Duke, you have a maiden imprisoned because of false and evil words that a dwarf spoke to you, and we earnestly beseech you to order her released, since she is not to blame; and if it be necessary to fight about this, we shall defend her against any two other knights who may want to take up the duel."

"You have said a great deal," said the duke.

And he gave orders to call the dwarf, and said to him,

"What do you say to this which those knights say: that you made me seize the damsel with lies and that they will support it by combat? I tell you it is necessary for you to have someone to defend you."

"Sir," said the dwarf, "I shall have someone to demonstrate the truth of what I say."

Then he called a knight, his nephew, who was so strong and husky that he did not appear to be related to him, and said,

"Nephew, you must maintain my right against these knights."

The nephew said,

"Knights, what are you saying against this loyal dwarf who sustained great dishonor from the knight who brought the maiden here? By chance is it you? And I would prove to you that he wronged the dwarf and that the false maiden ought to die, because she put him in the duke's chamber."

Agrajes, who was most impatient, said,

"Certainly, he is neither one of us, although we should like to appear to answer for his deeds, nor in him was there any wrong, and I shall fight it out with you at once; and as for the maiden, I say that she should not die, and that dwarf was disloyal to her."

"Then let the battle be fought at once," said the dwarf's nephew.

And asking for his arms, he armed himself and mounted a good horse, and said to Agrajes:

"Knight, now would that God might decree that it be you who brought the maiden here, for I would make him pay for his immoderate act."

"Certainly," said Agrajes, "he would consider himself demeaned to fight with two such as you, for whatever reason, even more so over this, in which he would be maintaining the right."

The duke stopped eating and went with them and put them in a field where a few other trials by battle had already been fought, and he said to them,

"The maiden that I have imprisoned I do not permit to be judged by your battle, since the wrong which the dwarf received does not concern her."

"Sir," said Agrajes, "you imprisoned her because of what the dwarf said, and I say he told you a falsehood; and if I overcome this knight who maintains his right, by rights you will give her up to us."

"I have already told you my position," said the duke, "and I shall do nothing more."

And coming forth from among them, they went and attacked each other at full speed of their horses and struck each other fiercely with their lances, which were immediately broken; and the bodies of their horses and their shields having come into close contact, they fell in different directions. And each one got up angrily and with the great rage that they had, they grasped their swords and attacked each other on foot, giving each other such great, hard blows that all who watched them were amazed. The swords were sharp and the knights of great strength, and in a short time their arms were rendered in such condition that there was not much defense in them; their shields were hacked in many

places and their helmets dented. Galvanes saw his nephew carry on skillfully with agility and more aggressively than the other, and he was very happy; and if he esteemed him before, now he did much more. And Agrajes was so astute that although at the beginning he showed himself to be very lively, whereby it seemed that he would be very soon tired, he maintained his strength in such condition that at the end he showed himself to be much more agile and aggressive, so that in some places he was held in such low esteem at the beginning that at the end he achieved victory in the battle; thus watching him, Galvanes saw how the nephew of the dwarf drew aside and said to Agrajes:

“We have fought enough, and it seems to me that the knight for whom you fight is not to blame nor is my uncle the dwarf, for otherwise the battle would not have continued so long; and if you so desire, let it be concluded, declaring the knight and the dwarf of good faith.”

“Certainly,” said Agrajes, “the knight is of good faith and the dwarf is false and evil, and I shall not leave you until your mouth says so; and strive to defend yourself.”

The knight showed his power, but it availed him but little, for he was already sorely wounded. And Agrajes was dealing him mighty and frequent blows. And the knight had no thought except to cover himself with his shield. When the duke saw him thus at the point of death, he was very sad, for he loved him very much, and kept going towards his castle so as not to see him killed; and he said,

“Now I swear I shall not give a knight errant aught except gross insults.”

“You have undertaken a crazy war,” said Galvanes, “in picking on the knights errant who wish to right wrongs.”

At this moment the knight fell at the feet of Agrajes, and the latter jerked off his helmet and gave him heavy blows on the face with the hilt of his sword, and said,

“You have got to say that the dwarf wronged the knight.”

“Ah, good knight,” said the other, “do not kill me! I say of the knight for whom you fought that he is good and loyal and I promise to free the maiden from prison; but in heaven’s name!

don't try to make me say of the dwarf, who is my uncle and who reared me, that he is false."

All those who were watching round about heard this. Agrajes felt sorry for the knight and said,

"For the dwarf I would not do anything, but for you, whom I hold to be a good knight, I shall do so much that I shall consider you free of any obligation if you free the maiden from being held in your power."

The knight agreed to it. The duke who heard none of this, was already near the castle, and Galvanes took his horse by the rein and showed him the nephew of the dwarf at the feet of Agrajes and said,

"That one is either dead or vanquished; what do you say about the maiden?"

"Knight," said the duke, "You are more than mad if you think I shall do anything to the maiden except what I have agreed upon and sworn."

"And what did you swear?" said Galvanes.

"That I would burn her tomorrow," said the duke, "if she didn't tell me who put the knight in my palace."

"What!" said Galvanes, "you won't give her to us?"

"No," said the duke, "nor don't you remain any longer in this place, otherwise I shall order something else to be done."

Then many of his company approached and Galvanes snatched his hand away from the rein and said,

"You threaten us and do not free the damsel, as rightly you should; I challenge you, therefore, for myself and for all the knights errant who may wish to help me."

"And I challenge you and all of them," said the duke, "and they will go about on my land to their own detriment."

Don Galvanes returned to where Agrajes was and told him what he had experienced with the duke and how they had been challenged by him, at which he was very furious and said,

"Such a man as this, from whom justice cannot be obtained, should not be a feudal lord."

And mounting his horse, he said to the nephew of the dwarf:

"Remember what you promised me in regard to the maiden and comply with it at once to the best of your ability."

"I shall do all I can," said he.

It was now close to vespers, for at that time the battle was concluded; and immediately they left there and entered a forest called Arunda, and Galvanes said,

"Nephew, we have challenged the duke; let us wait here and seize him and any other, as soon as he passes by."

"All right," said Agrajes.

Then they left the road and plunged into a thick undergrowth, and there they dismounted and sent their squires to the town to bring them what they needed; thus they lodged that night. The duke was angrier at the maiden than before, and had her come before him and told her to prepare her soul, for next day she would be burned if she did not tell them the truth about the knight; but she did not want to say anything. The nephew of the dwarf knelt before the duke and told him the promise he had made, begging him for heaven's sake to give the maiden up to him; but this was futile, for he would rather have lost his entire estate than to break his oath.

It grieved the knight sorely because he had wanted to discharge his feudal obligation to Agrajes. Then the next morning the duke ordered the maiden to be brought before him and said,

"Choose either the fire or to tell me what I ask you, for you cannot escape from making one of these choices."

She said,

"You will do your will, but not what is right."

Then the duke ordered twelve armed men and two armed knights to take her with them, and he mounted a big horse with only a staff in his hand, and went with them to burn the maiden at the edge of the forest; and having arrived there, the duke said,

"Now set fire to her and let her die with her stubbornness."

Don Galvanes and his nephew saw all this very well, for they were on the watch, not for it, but for any other thing they could do to enrage the duke; and since they were armed, they quickly mounted and commanded a squire to concern himself only with taking the maiden and putting her out of harm's way. And setting out thither, they saw the fire and how they already were about to throw the maiden into it; but she was so frightened that she said,

"Sir, I shall tell the truth."

And the duke, who was approaching to listen to her, saw Don Galvanes and Agrajes as they came on the field shouting,

"You have got to set the maiden free."

The two knights came at them and they struck each other with their lances very fiercely. But the knights of the duke both fell to the ground, and the one that Galvanes overthrew was beyond any need of a physician. The duke threw his escort between himself and them. And Galvanes said to him,

"Now you will see the war that you have undertaken."

And they let themselves go at him; and the duke said to his men,

"Kill their horses and they will not be able to leave."

But the knights hurled themselves into their midst so fiercely, striking in all directions with their swords and trampling them with their horses, that they scattered them over the field, some dead and others crippled; and those who remained fled at full speed. When the duke saw this, he was uncertain and began to go toward the town as fast as he could, and Galvanes went after him for a bit, saying,

"Stop, sir duke, and you will see what sort of person you have taken to hating."

But he only fled and shouted for help; and Galvanes and his nephew on turning back found that the squire had the maiden on his palfrey and he on a horse of one of the dead knights, and they went with her toward the forest. The duke armed himself with his whole company and reaching the forest did not see the knights, and he distributed his own men throughout it in groups of five; and he went with five others along a highway and made a tremendous effort to hasten along until being above a valley, he looked down and saw them as they were going along with the maiden, and the duke said,

"Now at them and don't spare them."

And they went at full speed of the horses. Galvanes, who saw them thus, said,

"Nephew, let your prowess in knowing how to defend yourself be shown, for this is the duke and those of his company; they are

five in number, but let not cowardice be felt in us on that account."

Agrajes, who was very courageous, said,

"Certainly, uncle, being with you, I would give little for five of the members of the duke's retinue."

At this juncture the duke arrived and said to them,

"It's unlucky for you that you dishonored me, and it bothers me that even by killing such as you I shall not be avenged."

Galvanes said,

"Now at them."

Then they charged at each other and struck each other with their lances on their shields so hard that they were immediately shattered, but the two held steadfast so well that they could not budge them from their saddles; and grasping their swords they struck each other mighty blows, as they well knew how to do. And the duke's men attacked them fiercely, so that their battle with swords was harsh and cruel. Agrajes went and attacked the duke with great fury and struck him under the visor of his helmet; and the blow was so heavy that cutting through the helmet, he cut his nose to cheek level. And the duke, considering himself a goner, began to flee as fast as he could, and Agrajes after him; and not being able to overtake him, he turned about and saw how his uncle was defending himself from the four, and said to himself,

"Oh, God, protect such a good knight from these scoundrels!"

And he went and attacked them fiercely, and Galvanes struck the one in such wise that he made his sword fall from his hand; and as he saw him with his shield on his arm, he took him by the boss of the shield and jerked him so hard that he knocked him to the ground, and he saw that Agrajes had overthrown one of the others, and Galvanes charged at the two who were attacking him; but they did not wait, for he could not overtake them as they fled through the forest; and returning to where the maiden was, he asked her if there was some populated place nearby.

"Yes," said she, "for there is a fortress of a knight by the name of Olivas, who on account of being an enemy of the duke, because the latter had killed one of his brothers, will welcome you gladly."

Then she guided them until they arrived at the fortress; the knight gave them a good welcome, and a much better one when

he learned what had happened to them. Then next day they armed themselves and were resuming their journey, but Olivas took them aside and said to them,

“Sirs, the duke killed a brother of mine, a good knight, deceitfully, and I wish to denounce and challenge him before King Lisuarte; I ask of you advice and help as from knights who go about exposing themselves to great dangers in order to maintain trustworthiness and to force those to maintain it who without fear of God and of their own shame violate it.”

“Knight,” said Galvanes, “you are obliged to seek satisfaction for this slaying that you mention, if it was done shamefully, and we to help you if it be necessary, since you have a just cause, and so we shall do if the duke wishes to put several knights into the combat, because like you we hate him and have been defied by him.”

“I thank you very much,” said he, “and I wish to go along with you.”

“In God’s name,” said they.

Then they armed themselves and set out on the way to Windsor, where they thought to find King Lisuarte.

CHAPTER XVII

HOW AMADIS WAS VERY WELL LIKED IN THE COURT OF KING LISUARTE,
AND THE NEWS HE LEARNED CONCERNING HIS BROTHER GALAOR.

It has been related to you how Amadis remained in the household of King Lisuarte as knight of the queen at the time that he killed that haughty and brave Dardan in battle, and there he was greatly beloved and honored by the king as well as by all others; and one day the queen sent for him in order to speak with him, and while he was in her presence, a damsel entered by the gate of the palace and kneeling before the queen, said,

“Lady, is there a knight here who bears arms with a lion device?”

She understood then that the damsel was speaking about Amadis, and said,

“Damsel, what do you want?”

“Madam,” said she, “I bring a message from a novice knight who has made the most eminent and greatest beginning in knighthood that any knight has ever made in all the islands.”

“You are saying a great deal,” said the queen, “for there are many knights in the islands, and you do not know about all of them.”

“Madam,” said the damsel, “That is true; but when you learn what this one did, you will agree with what I say.”

“Then I beg of you,” said the queen, “to tell it.”

“If I were to see,” said she, “the very good knight whom he esteems more than all others, I would tell him this and many other things that he directs me to say.”

The queen, who was desirous of learning about it, said,

"You may see here the good knight whom you seek, and I tell you truly that it is he."

"Madam," said the maiden, "I believe it, for such a good lady as you would tell only the truth."

Thereupon she said to Amadis:

"Sir, the handsome young man whom you dubbed knight before the castle of Baldoyd when you overcame the two knights of the bridge and the three of the causeway, and seized the lord of the castle and took out by force of arms Urganda's friend, sends his regards to you as to the one whom he regards as his overlord; and he sends word to you that he will strive to be a good knight or otherwise he will pay with his own death; and that if he be good in prowess and in chivalric honor, he will tell you concerning your affairs more than you now know; and that if it turns out that you ought not to esteem him, he will remain silent."

At this juncture Amadis remembered immediately that it was his brother, and the tears came to his eyes, which all the duennas and maidens who were there noticed, and his lady more than everyone else, for she was greatly surprised at it, wondering whether on account of her such emotion could come upon him as to make him weep, for that had come about not from grief but from great joy. The queen said,

"Now tell us of the beginnings of the knight that you praise so much."

"Madam," said the maiden, "the first place where he undertook a quest was on the Rock of Galtares, fighting with that brave and strong Albadan, whom in the field, in single combat, he overcame and killed."

Then she related how the battle took place, and what she had seen and the reason it took place.

The queen and all the others were greatly astounded at such a rare thing.

"Damsel," said Amadis, "do you know where the knight went when he slew the giant?"

"Sir," said she, "I left him after he won the fight, and I left him with another damsel who was to guide him to her lady who had sent her there, and I cannot tell you any more."

And she left there.

The queen said,

“Amadis, do you know who that knight was?”

“Madam, I know, although I am not acquainted with him.”

Then he told her that he was his brother, and that the giant had carried him away as a child, and what Urganda had said of him.

“Certainly,” said the queen, “your upbringing and his are two rare wonders. And how could it be that you should not know of your family, nor they of you? And it would greatly please me to see such a knight in the household of the king, my lord.”

They were talking thus, just as you hear, for a long while. But Oriana, who was some distance from them, did not hear anything, and was very angry because she had seen Amadis crying. And she said to Mabilia:

“Call your cousin and we shall find out what it was that happened to him.”

She called him. And Amadis went to them, and when he saw himself before his lady, he forgot everything in the world; and Oriana said with an angry and troubled countenance,

“At the damsel’s news, of whom were you reminded that it made you weep?”

He related to her everything just as he had told it to the queen. Oriana lost all of her anger and became very happy, and said to him,

“My lord, I beg you to pardon me, for I suspected what I should not.”

“Ah, madam!” said he, “There is nothing to pardon, for anger toward you has never entered my heart.”

Besides this he said to her:

“Madam, may it please you that I go to look for my brother and bring him here into your service, for otherwise he will not come.”

And Amadis said this for the sake of bringing him, for he much desired it, and because it seemed to him that Galaor would gladly rest up without looking for adventures in which he might win glory and honor.

Oriana said to him:

"So help me God, I would be very happy for such a knight to come here and that you both might dwell together, and I agree to your departure; but tell the queen and let it appear that you go at her command."

He thanked her humbly and went to the queen and said,

"Madam, it would be well for us to have that knight in the company of the king."

"Certainly," said she, "I would be very glad of it if it could be done."

"It can be," said he, "by giving me, madam, permission to look for him and to bring him, for in no other way shall we have him here without much time elapsing while he wins more honor."

"In the name of God," said she, "I grant you permission to leave, provided that on finding him you return."

Amadis went away very happy, and bidding farewell to her and to his lady and all the others, went to his lodging; and the next morning, after having heard mass, he armed himself and mounted his horse accompanied only by Gandalin, who carried his other weapons, and started on his way. He traveled until night, when he lodged in the house of an old nobleman; and the next day, continuing on his way he entered a forest; and after going through it for two-thirds of the day, he saw coming toward him a duenna who was bringing with her two maidens and four squires, and they were bearing a knight on a litter and they were all weeping bitterly. Amadis went up to her and said,

"Madam, What are you carrying in that litter?"

"I carry," said she, "all of my sorrow and sadness, which is a knight to whom I was married, and he is so badly wounded that I think he will die."

He approached the litter and raised the cloth that covered him and saw inside a knight quite tall and well built; but of his good looks nothing was apparent, for his face was black and swollen and bruised in many places; and reaching out his hand to him, Amadis said:

"Sir knight, from whom did you receive this bad treatment?"

He did not answer but turned his head away a little; then Amadis said to the duenna:

"From whom did the knight receive such harm?"

"Sir," said she, "from a knight who guards a bridge down this road a bit; who, not wanting us to pass, said that first he had to tell him whether he was from the household of King Lisuarte, and my lord asked why he wished to know that. The knight said to him:

"'Because no one who is Lisuarte's shall pass here whom I don't kill.' And my lord asked him why he hated so much the knights of King Lisuarte.

"'I hate him very much and would like to have him in my power in order to take vengeance on him.' He replied asking again why he hated him so much. He said:

"'Because he has in his household the knight who killed that mighty Dardan; and because of this he will receive dishonor from me, and from many others.' And when my husband heard this, irked at those words that the knight spoke, he said to him:

"'Know you that I am his man and his vassal, for I would not deny it on account of you or anyone else.'

"Then the knight of the bridge, with the great anger that he felt for him, took up arms as quickly as he could and they began their fight, which was very harsh and wondrous fierce, and finally my lord was as battered as you, sir, now see; and the knight believed he was dead and bade us carry him to the house of King Lisuarte the third day."

Amadis said,

"Madam, give me one of these squires to point out to me the knight, for since he received this harm out of regard for me, it is more fitting that I avenge him than that anyone else do so."

"What," said she, "are you the one on account of whom he hates King Lisuarte?"

"That I am," he said, "and if I can, I shall see to it that he not hate him or anyone else."

"Ah, good knight," said she, "may God lead you on a good journey and give you strength!"

And on her giving him a squire to go with him, they took leave of each other. And the lady continued on her way as before and Amadis on his. He traveled until they reached the bridge, and he saw how the knight was playing backgammon with another,

and immediately the knight stopped playing and came toward him on horseback completely armed, and said,

"Stop, knight; do not enter the bridge unless you swear first."

"And what shall I swear?"

"Whether you are of the household of King Lisuarte; and if you are, I shall cause you to lose your head."

"I don't know about that," said Amadis, "but I tell you that I am of his household and a knight of the queen's, his wife, but this has not been for long."

"How long have you been her knight?" said the knight of the bridge.

"Since a challenged lady came there."

"What!" said the knight, "Are you the one who fought for her?"

"I caused her right to be upheld," said Amadis.

"By my head," said the knight, "may I make you lose yours if I can, for you killed one of the best of my family."

"I did not kill him," said Amadis, "but made him withdraw the arrogant demand that he made, and as an evil heretic he killed himself."

"That doesn't help you any," said the knight, "for he was killed by you and not by any other, and you shall die for him."

Then he moved against him at the full speed of his horse, and Amadis toward him; and both struck each other on their shields with their lances, and they were at once shattered, but the knight of the bridge fell to the ground without any delay, whence he was very much astounded that Amadis had overthrown him so easily. And Amadis, whose helmet he had knocked askew on his head, straightened it; and meanwhile the knight had the opportunity to get up on his horse, and he gave him three blows with the sword before Amadis grasped his own; but seizing it, he went for the knight and struck him a downward blow on the edge of his helmet and cut from it a piece, and the sword reached his neck and cut it so much that the head was not able to support itself and remained dangling over his chest, and immediately he died. When those of the bridge saw this, they fled. The squire of the duenna was frightened by two such blows, one with the lance and the other with the sword. Amadis said to him,

"Now go and tell your lady what you saw."

When he heard this, he went on his way at once, and Amadis crossed the bridge without being stopped there any more; and he traveled along the road until he came out of the forest and entered a very beautiful, wondrously large fertile plain, and he liked very much the green grass that he saw all around, as one who was flourishing in the verdancy and sublimity of a love affair; and he looked to his right and saw a dwarf of very misshapen appearance who was riding along on a palfrey, and calling him, he asked him where he came from. The dwarf answered him and said,

"I come from the house of the Count of Clare."

"By chance," said Amadis, "did you see there a novice knight by the name of Galaor?"

"No, sir," said the dwarf, "but I know where there will be three days from now the best knight that ever entered this land."

Hearing this Amadis said,

"Ah, dwarf, by the faith that you owe to God, take me there and I shall see him."

"Yes, I shall take you," said the dwarf, "on condition that you grant me a boon, and you shall go with me to where you may seek him out."

Amadis, with the great desire he had to know about Galaor, his brother, said,

"I grant it to you."

"In the name of God," said the dwarf, "be our departure; and now I shall guide you to where you shall see the very good knight, very courageous at arms."

Then said Amadis,

"I beg you out of regard for me to take me by the highway that we may traverse most quickly."

"I shall do so," said he.

And they then left that road, and taking another, journeyed all that day without encountering any adventure, and night overtook them near a fortress.

"Sir," said the dwarf, "here you may lodge, where there is a duenna who will serve you."

Amadis reached that fortress and found the duenna, who lodged him very well, giving him his supper and a very comfortable bed in which to sleep; but he did not do so, for his meditation about his lady was so great that he slept almost not at all that night; and next day, having said farewell to the duenna, he started out under guidance of the dwarf and went until noon. And he saw a knight who was fighting with two others; and coming up to them he said,

“Stop, sirs, please, and tell me why you are fighting.”

They drew aside, and one of the twain said,

“Because he says that he alone is as able to perform a great deed as the two of us together.”

“Certainly,” said Amadis, “the cause is petty, for the bravery of anyone does not occasion the loss of it by someone else.”

They saw that he spoke with sound judgment, and they gave up the fight and asked Amadis if he knew the knight who had fought for the duenna at the court of King Lisuarte, where Dardan, the good knight, was slain.

“And why do you ask?” said he.

“Because we should like to find him,” said they.

“I don’t know whether you speak with good or evil will. But I saw him not long ago at the court of King Lisuarte.”

And so he left them and proceeded on his way.

The knights conversed together, and spurring their horses they went after Amadis; and he, who saw them coming, took his arms, and neither he nor they carried lances, for they had broken them in their jousts. The dwarf said to him:

“How about it, sir, don’t you see there are three knights?”

“I don’t care,” said he, “for if they attack me without cause, I shall defend myself if I can.”

They arrived and said,

“Knight, we wish to ask a boon of you, and grant it to us; if not, you shall not leave us.”

“Rather I shall grant it to you,” said he, “if I can rightly do so.”

“Then tell us,” said the one, “as a loyal knight, where you think we shall find the knight by whom Dardan was killed.”

He who could only tell the truth said,

"I am he, and if I had known that such was the boon, in order not to be praised for it I would not have granted it to you."

When the knights heard him, they all said,

"Ah, scoundrel, you die!"

And grasping their swords they charged at him very furiously. Amadis grasped his sword, as a stout-hearted man, and rushed at them very angrily on account of having given them quittance for their battle and because they were attacking him so evilly. And he struck one of them on top of his helmet such a blow that he landed it on the shoulder in such wise that his coat of mail with the flesh and bones was all cut, to the point of the sword's reaching down to his side; thus with his arm dangling he fell from his horse. And Amadis charged at the two who were furiously attacking him and gave one of them such a blow on the helmet that he made it fly from his head, and the sword came down on his neck and cleaved it almost through, and the knight fell. The other, who saw this, began to flee whence he had come. Amadis, who saw that he was riding a fast horse and that he was putting distance between them, stopped following him and returned to Gandalin. The dwarf said to him:

"Certainly, sir, I have a better surety for the boon you promised me than I expected, and now let us go on."

So that day they went and lodged at the house of a hermit, where they had a very poor supper. In the morning Amadis returned to the road along which the dwarf was guiding him and traveled until the hour of tierce; and then the dwarf showed him in a beautiful valley two lofty pines and under them a knight fully armed on a big horse, and two knights who were pursuing their horses, which were running away through the countryside because the knight of the pine had unseated their riders; and beneath the other pine lay another knight resting on his helmet and with his shield beside him, and more than twenty lances around the pine tree, and nearby two saddled horses. Amadis, who saw them, said to the dwarf:

"Do you know these knights?"

The dwarf said:

"Do you see that knight stretched out under the pine?"

"I see him," said he.

"Well that is," said the dwarf, "the good knight whom I was to show you."

"Do you know his name?" said Amadis.

"Yes, I do, sir, for his name is Angriote d'Estravaus, and he is the finest knight that I would be able to show you almost anywhere."

"Now tell me why he has so many lances there?"

"That I shall tell you," said the dwarf. "He is in love with a lady of this land and she is not in love with him, but he laid such siege to her that her relatives forcibly put her in his power. And when he had her in his power, he said he considered himself the richest man in the world. She said to him, 'You shall not consider yourself urbane to hold thus a lady by force; you can easily hold me, but never will you have my love given willingly, unless you do one thing for me first.' 'Lady,' said Angriote, 'Is it a thing I can do?' 'Yes,' said she. 'Then command me for I shall carry it out until death.' The lady, who hated him intensely, thought to put him where he would die or gain so many enemies that with them she would defend herself from him; and she gave orders that he and his brother should guard this valley of the pines from all the knights errant who might pass through it, and that they should make them promise by force of arms that, appearing in the court of King Lisuarte, they would grant that the lady love of Angriote was more beautiful than any of their own ladies; and if by chance this knight, Angriote's brother, whom you see on horseback, were conquered, that it not be possible to fight any more for this reason, and all the quest devolves on Angriote alone; and they should guard the valley for one year. And so the knights guard it by day, and at night they lodge in a castle that lies behind that knoll that you see. But I tell you that it has been three months since they began, and never has Angriote laid hands on a knight, for his brother has overcome them all."

"I believe," said Amadis, "that you are telling me the truth, for I heard at the court of King Lisuarte that there had been a knight there who had conceded that lady to be more beautiful than his own lady love, and I believe her name is Grovenesa."

"That is true," said the dwarf; "and, sir, since I have complied with your request, stick to what you promised me, and go with me where you are to go."

"Very willingly," said Amadis. "Which is the right road?"

"Through the valley," said the dwarf, "but I don't want us to go through it, because it has a certain obstruction."

"Don't worry about that," said he.

Then he pushed onward, and at the entrance of the valley he found a squire who said to him:

"Sir knight, you do not pass any further unless you concede that the lady love of that knight lying under the pine is more beautiful than yours."

"If it is God's will," said Amadis, "I shall never concede such a great falsehood unless by force you make me say it or you take my life."

When the squire heard this, he said,

"Then turn about; if you do not, you will have to fight with them."

Said Amadis,

"If they attack me, I shall defend myself if I can."

And he went forward without any fear whatever.

CHAPTER XVIII

HOW AMADIS FOUGHT WITH ANGRIOTE AND WITH HIS BROTHER AND OVERCAME THEM, WHO WERE GUARDING A PASS INTO A VALLEY AT WHICH THEY WERE MAINTAINING BY FORCE OF ARMS THAT NO ONE HAD A MORE BEAUTIFUL LADYLOVE THAN ANGRIOTE HAD.

As soon as the brother of Angriote saw him, he took up his arms and kept advancing toward him, and said,

“Certainly, knight, you have done a very mad thing not to concede what has been demanded of you, for you will have to fight with me.”

“This gives me more pleasure,” said Amadis, “than to agree to the greatest falsehood in the world.”

“And I know,” said the knight, “that you will concede it in another place where greater shame will be yours.”

“I do not think so,” said he, “God willing.”

“Defend yourself then,” said the knight.

Then they went at each other at the full speed of their horses, and they struck each other on the shields, and the knight pierced the shield of Amadis, but was stopped by the coat of mail and his lance broke. And Amadis struck him so hard that he hurled him over his horse's haunches to the ground; and the knight, who was very brave, pulled at the reins so hard that he broke them; and clutching them in his hands, he struck the ground on his neck and back, and was so badly injured as to lose all consciousness of what was going on. Amadis got down to him and took his helmet from his head and saw him so out of his senses that he was speechless. And taking him by the arm, he drew him up, and

the knight came to and opened his eyes; and Amadis said to him:

“You die unless you yield yourself up as a prisoner.”

The knight, who saw the sword over his head, fearing death quickly agreed. Then Amadis mounted his horse, for he saw that Angriote was mounting and was taking his arms, and was sending him a lance by his squire. Amadis took the lance and went for the knight, and the latter came toward him at top speed; and they struck each other with their lances on the shields, so that they were broken, without doing any other harm, for as very handsome knights they passed by each other, such knights as would not frequently be found elsewhere. Amadis grasped his sword and turned his horse toward him, and Angriote said,

“Stop, sir knight, do not hurry to do battle with the swords, for you might well fight it, and I believe that it would be to your detriment.”

He said this because he thought there was no knight in the world a better wielder of the sword than he was.

“And let us joust until those lances fail us and one of us fall from his horse.”

“Sir,” said Amadis, “I have things to do elsewhere and cannot stop so long.”

“What?” said Angriote, “do you think to part from me so easily? I do not think so, but I beg you fervently that before using our swords, we joust again.”

Amadis agreed to it, since it pleased him, and then they both went and took lances, the ones that best satisfied them; and moving away from each other, they charged and struck each other with the lances very violently; and Angriote fell to the ground and his horse on top of him; and Amadis who passed by, collided with Angriote's horse and fell with it on the other side, and one fragment of the lance which had gone through his shield with the force of the fall, pierced his coat of mail and through his flesh, but not much. He quickly got up, like one who did not want shame for himself, the more so because it involved his lady; and he quickly drew out of himself the fragment of the lance, and grasping his sword, rushed at Angriote, whom he saw with his sword in hand. And Angriote said to him,

"Knight, I consider you a good youth, and I beg of you before you receive any further harm that you concede that my ladylove is more beautiful than yours."

"Be silent!" said Amadis, "for such a falsehood will never come out of my mouth."

Then they went forward to attack and strike with their swords such powerful blows that they frightened those who were looking on just as they did themselves who received them, while wondering to themselves whether they could endure them. But this fight could not last long, for Amadis fought because of the beauty of his lady, whence he would have preferred to be dead rather than to fail one iota in what he owed her, and he began to deliver blows with all his strength so hard that neither his great knowledge nor his great vigor of sword play was of any benefit to Angriote, for in a short time Amadis drained him of all his strength, and so many times caused his sword to descend on Angriote's head and his body that from more than twenty places the blood was already flowing. When Angriote saw himself in danger of death, he stepped aside as far as he was able, and said,

"Certainly, knight, you are a better man than one would think."

"Surrender immediately," said Amadis, "and it will be to your advantage, for you are so badly injured that were it a finish fight your life would be finished also, and I should be sorry about it, for I esteem you more than you think."

He said this because of Angriote's great skill at arms and for the courtesy that he had used with the duenna when he had her in his power. Angriote, who could do no more, said,

"I concede myself to be your prisoner, as that of the finest knight in the world, and thus should all those who bear arms concede; and I tell you, sir knight, that I do not consider it a mere discredit, but rather a great loss that today I lose the thing that I love most in the world."

"You shall not lose," said Amadis, "if I can be of avail, for it would be very unreasonable if that great restraint which you used with that lady you mention did not bring out the satisfaction and reward that it deserves, and you shall have it, if I can accomplish it, more quickly than before. This I promise as a loyal

knight as soon as I return from a quest on which I am going."

"Sir," said Angriote, "Where shall I find you?"

"In the court of King Lisuarte," said Amadis, "for there I shall return, God willing."

Angriote would have liked to bring him to his castle, but he did not want to leave the way that he had pursued previously; and taking his leave of them, he placed himself under the guidance of the dwarf in order to give him the boon that he had promised him; and he journeyed five days without encountering any adventure; at the end of these the dwarf showed him a very beautiful and marvelously strong castle, and said to him:

"Sir, in that castle you are to give me the boon."

"In the name of God," said Amadis, "I shall give it to you if I can."

"I have that confidence," said the dwarf, "and even more since I have seen your great deeds. Sir, do you know what this castle is called?"

"No," said he, "for I have never entered this land."

"Know you," said the dwarf, "that it is called Valderin."

And talking thus, they arrived at the castle; and the dwarf said,

"Sir, take your arms."

"How is that," said Amadis, "will they be needed?"

"Yes," said he, "for they do not allow those who enter there to leave so easily."

Amadis took his arms and pushed forward, and the dwarf and Gandalin behind him; and when he entered the gate he looked to one side and the other, but saw nothing, and said to the dwarf,

"This place seems to me to be deserted."

"By heavens," said he, "to me also."

"Well, why did you bring me here, and what boon do you want me to give you?"

The dwarf said,

"Certainly, sir, I saw here the most valiant knight and the strongest at arms that I think I shall ever see, and he killed there at that gate two knights, and the one of them was my lord, and the latter he killed so cruelly, as one who never had mercy; and I should like to request of you the head of that scoundrel who

killed him, for already I have brought other knights to avenge him, and, alas, some of them received death and others cruel imprisonment."

"Certainly, dwarf," said Amadis, "you are loyal, but you shouldn't bring knights, unless you tell them beforehand with whom they must fight."

"Sir," said the dwarf, "the knight is very well known as one of the fiercest in the world, and if I mentioned him, there would be no one so bold as to dare come with me."

"And do you know his name?"

"Yes, I know it," said the dwarf, "for he is called Arcalaus the Enchanter."

Amadis looked everywhere and did not see anyone, and he dismounted and waited until vespers, and said,

"Dwarf, what do you wish me to do?"

"Sir," said he, "night is coming on, and I do not consider it good to lodge here."

"Certainly," said Amadis, "I shall not leave here until the knight comes, or someone who can tell me about him."

"By heaven, I shall not stay here," said the dwarf, "for I am very much afraid, for Arcalaus knows me and knows that I am striving to have him killed."

"Nevertheless," said Amadis, "here you shall remain, and I do not want to free myself from granting the boon even if I can."

And Amadis saw a courtyard beyond and entered it, but he saw no one, and he saw a very dark place, with some steps that went underground; and Gandalin brought along the dwarf so that he would not flee, for he was very much afraid, and Amadis said,

"Let us enter down these steps and see what there is there."

"Ah, sir," said the dwarf, "mercy, for there is nothing which would induce me to enter such a fearful place; and by heavens, let me go, for I am very frightened at heart."

"I shall not let you go," said Amadis, "until you have the boon that I promised you or you see how I do all I can."

The dwarf, who was quite frightened, said,

"Let me go, and I free you from the obligation of the boon, and I consider myself content without it."

"In so far as I am concerned," said Amadis, "I command you not to release me from the boon, and that you not say afterwards that I failed in what I had the obligation to do."

"Sir, I give you your release and consider myself satisfied," said he, "and I wish to wait for you outside where we came in until I see whether you come out."

"Good luck go with you," said Amadis, "and I shall remain here tonight, until morning waiting for the knight."

The dwarf went his way and Amadis descended the steps, and went ahead, for he saw nothing, and he went down them until he found himself on a level; and it was so dark that he did not know where he might be, and so he went forward and bumped into a wall, and rubbing his hands along it he touched an iron rod on which was hanging a key; and he unlocked a padlock of the metal cage, and he heard a voice that said:

"Oh, Lord God, how long will this great distress last? Ah, death, why do you delay where you would be so necessary!"

Amadis listened a while and heard no more, and he went farther into the cellar, his shield on his neck and his helmet on his head and his drawn sword in his hand; and then he found himself in a beautiful hall where there was a lamp which illuminated it; and he saw on a bed six armed men sleeping, and they had near them shields and battle axes. He came and took one of the axes and went forward and heard more than a hundred loud voices that cried:

"Lord God, send us death, so that we suffer not such grievous distress."

He was greatly astounded to hear them, and at the sound of the voices, the men who were sleeping awoke and one said to another:

"Arise and take a whip and make those wretched people be quiet, for they do not let us enjoy our sleep."

"That I shall do willingly," said he, "and let them pay for the dream from which they awakened me."

Then he quickly got up, and taking the whip he saw Amadis coming toward him, whom he was very surprised to see there, and said,

"Who goes there?"

"I go," said Amadis.

"And who are you?" said the man.

"I am a foreign knight," said Amadis.

"Well, who let you in here without any permission?"

"No one," said Amadis, "for I entered by myself."

"You," said he; "this was your bad luck, for it will be necessary that you be placed under that same duress as are those captives who shout so."

And turning he quickly closed the door and awakening the others, said:

"Comrades, you see here an unfortunate errant knight who entered here of his own free will."

Then one of them, who was the jailer and was excessively large and strong, said,

"Now leave me with him, for I shall put him with those who lie yonder."

And taking a battle axe and a shield, he came toward him, and said:

"If you fear death, put down your arms, and if not, await it, for from my battle axe you will quickly have it."

Amadis was furious to hear himself threatened and said,

"I wouldn't give a straw for you, for no matter how big and brave you may be, you are evil and of evil blood, and your heart will fail you."

And then they raised their axes and each attacked the other with them; the jailer hit him on top of the helmet and the axe went part way through it; and Amadis struck him on the buckler so that it went through it, and the other, who stood aside, caught the axe on his buckler; and Amadis grasped his sword, and rushed at him and cut off the shaft of his axe; the other, who was very brave, thought to put him under himself, but it came about otherwise, for in Amadis there was more strength than in any one else who might be found at that period; the jailer seized him in his arms and struggled to throw him down, and Amadis hit him on the face with the hilt of his sword so that he broke one jaw-bone and hurled him down in front of him stunned, and struck him on the head in such a way that he was beyond any need of

a physician; the others who saw them shouted not to kill him, otherwise Amadis would be killed.

"I don't know how it will come out," said Amadis, "but of this man I shall make sure."

And putting his sword in its scabbard, he pulled the axe out of his buckler and went at them, for they all together were coming at him to attack him, and they dealt him blows as hard as they could; but he struck the one and split his head open to the brain, bringing him down at his feet; and then struck another, who was harassing him the most, in the side and opened it so that he knocked him down; and he seized another one by his axe so forcefully that he knocked him to his knees on the ground, and so this one as well as the other who sought to attack him, begged mercy, that he not kill them.

"Then put down your arms at once," said Amadis, "and show me these people who are shouting."

They put them down and then went at once ahead of him; Amadis heard groaning and crying in a small chamber, and said, "Who lies here?"

"Sir," said they, "a lady who is very troubled."

"Then open this door," said he, "and I shall look at her."

One of them returned to where the big jailer was lying, and taking from him two keys that he had on his belt, opened the door of the chamber, and the duenna, who thought it was the jailer, said,

"Ah, man, for heaven's sake, have mercy on me and give me death, and not so many torments such as you are giving me." Likewise she said, "Oh, king, on an unfortunate day was I so beloved by you, for your love is costing me so dearly!"

Amadis greatly pitied her, for tears came to his eyes and he said,

"Lady, I am not the one you think; rather I am the one who will take you out of here if I can."

"Oh, Holy Mary!" she said, "who are you who were able to enter here?"

"I am a foreign knight," said he.

"Then what has become of the big cruel jailer and the others who were on guard?"

"What will happen to all the evil ones who do not mend their ways," said he.

And he gave orders to one of the men to bring him a light, and he did so, and Amadis saw the duenna with a heavy chain around her throat and her clothing torn in many places, so that her flesh was showing. And as she saw that Amadis was regarding her with pity, she said,

"Sir, although you see me thus, there was once a time when I was rich, as a king's daughter, which I am, and on account of a king I am in this distress."

"Lady," said he, "do not lament, for such as these are the turns and acts of Fortune, because no one can flee from them or escape them; and if the one on account of whom you suffer and endure this ill is a person who is worth something, your poverty and humble garb will turn into wealth, and your distress into great joy; but we ought to put but little trust in either one."

And he made them cast off her chain and ordered them to bring something with which she could cover herself. And the man who held the candles brought a scarlet robe that Arcalaus had given his jailer. Amadis covered her with it, and taking her by the hand, took her out to the hall, telling her not to fear returning there unless they killed him first; and he bringing her with him, they came to where the big jailer and the other dead men were, at which she was greatly astounded, and said,

"Ah, hands, how many wounds, how many acts of cruelty have you inflicted on me and on others who lie here without deserving it! And although you do not feel the vengeance, that hapless soul in purgatory which sustained you feels it."

"Lady," said Amadis, "as soon as I put you in charge of my squire, I shall return to bring them all out so that no one remains."

Thus they went ahead, and on their reaching the barred cell a man came there and said to the one who carried the candles,

"Arcalaus asks you where the knight is who came in here: whether you killed him or whether he is a prisoner."

He was so frightened that he did not speak and the candles fell from his hands; Amadis took them and said,

"Don't be afraid, knave. Of what are you afraid when you are in my keeping? Go ahead."

And they went up the stairs until they emerged into the courtyard and saw that much of the night was over and the moon was very bright. When the lady saw the sky and the open air, she was wondrously happy, as one who had not seen them for a long time, and she said,

"Ah, good knight, God keep you and give you the reward that you deserve for getting me out of here."

"Amadis took her by the hand and arrived where he had left Gandalin; but he did not find him, and was afraid he had lost him, and said,

"If the best squire in the world is dead, for him will be taken the greatest and most cruel vengeance that was ever taken if I live."

At this juncture he heard shouts, and going in their direction he found the dwarf, who had left him, suspended by a leg from a rafter and under him a fire of ill-smelling things, and saw in another place Gandalin, for even he was being tied up; and when Amadis was about to untie him, he said,

"Sir, help the dwarf first, for he is in great distress."

Amadis did so, for holding him on his arm, he cut the cord with his sword, and put him on the ground and went to untie Gandalin, saying,

"It is certain, my friend, that he who put you here did not esteem you as highly as I do."

And he went to the gate of the castle and found it closed by a portcullis, and when he saw that he could not leave, went over to one side of the courtyard where there was a stone bench, and sat down there with the lady, and took with him Gandalin and the dwarf and the two men from the jail. Gandalin showed him a building where they had put his horse, and he went there, and breaking down the door, found it saddled and bridled, and brought it along; and willingly he would have sought to return for the prisoners, but he was afraid that the lady would be harmed by Arcalaus, since he was already in the castle, and he decided to wait for daybreak. And he asked the lady who the

king was who loved her and for whom she had suffered that great distress.

"Sir," said she, "This Arcalaus being a very great enemy of the king whose beloved I am, and on finding out our relationship, not being able to obtain vengeance on the king, decided to take it on me, believing that this was the greatest harm he could do him. And although he seized me in the presence of many people, he put himself with me in such a dark fog that no one could see me. This was by means of the enchantments that he conjures up; and he put me there where you found me, saying that by my suffering such darkness, and the one who loves me not seeing or having information about me, his heart would take delight in that vengeance."

"Tell me," said Amadis, "if you please, who that king is."

"Arban of North Wales," said the lady, "I do not know whether you know of him."

"Thanks be to God!" said Amadis, "for he is the knight whom I love the most in the world; now I have not so much pity for you as before, for you have suffered for one of the best men in the world, for one by whom your will shall be satisfied with doubled joy and honor."

Speaking of these and other things, they were there until bright daylight; then Amadis saw at the windows a knight who said,

"Are you the one who killed my jailer and my men?"

"What!" said Amadis; "Are you the one who unjustly kills knights and imprisons matrons and maidens? Certainly I consider you the most disloyal knight in the world, on account of your being more cruel than good."

"You do not know yet," said the knight, "all my cruelty; but I shall see to it that you know it before long and I shall see to it that you do not strive to correct or annul anything that I do rightly or wrongly."

And he withdrew from the window, and it was not long before he saw him sally forth to the courtyard very well armed and mounted on a large horse; and he was one of the biggest knights in the world exclusive of giants; Amadis stared at him,

believing that in him there was enormous strength by right, and Arcalaus said to him,

“Why are you staring at me?”

“I am staring at you,” said he, “because judging by your appearance, you probably could be a very distinguished man if your evil deeds and the disloyalty that you are desirous of maintaining were not preventing it.”

“To a fine pass,” said Arcalaus, “has fortune brought me if I were to be rebuked by such as you.”

And he went for him with lance lowered, and Amadis likewise, and Arcalaus struck him on the shield and his lance broke into pieces, and they and their horses collided so violently that they fell to each side; but quickly they were on their feet, as knights who were very agile and strong. And they struck each other with their swords in such wise that it became such a cruel, fierce battle between them that no one could have believed it if he had not seen it — a battle which lasted a long time, both being of great strength and courage. But Arcalaus withdrew to one side and said,

“Knight, you are in danger of death, and I do not know who you are; tell me so that I may know, for I am thinking more about killing you than overcoming you.”

“My death,” said Amadis, “is at the will of God, whom I fear; and yours at that of the devil, who is already angry for having supported you and wishes that your body, to which so many evil vices he has given, should perish along with your soul; and since you wish to know who I am, I tell you I bear the name of Amadis of Gaul, and I am Queen Brisena’s knight. And now try to put an end to the combat, for I shall not let you rest any longer.”

Arcalaus took his shield and his sword and they both struck each other very strong, hard blows, so that the ground was littered with fragments of their shields and coats of mail; and it being now the hour of tierce, when Arcalaus had lost much of his strength, he went to deliver a blow on top of Amadis’s helmet, and not being able to hold on to his sword, it flew from his hand and fell to the ground; and when he sought to pick it up, Amadis pushed him so hard that he made him fall on all fours;

and when he arose, he gave him such a blow with the sword on top of his helmet that he befuddled him. When Arcalaus saw himself in danger of death, he began to flee toward a hall from which he had emerged, and Amadis after him, and both entered the hall, but Arcalaus took refuge in a chamber, and at the door of it was a lady who was watching how they fought. Arcalaus, as soon as he was in the room, took a sword and said to Amadis,

“Now come in and fight with me.”

“Let us fight in the hall, which is larger,” said Amadis.

“I do not wish to,” said Arcalaus.

“What!” said Amadis, “you expect to protect yourself in there?”

And putting his shield before him he entered, and raising the sword in order to attack him, he lost his strength in all his limbs, and his senses, and fell to the ground as though dead; Arcalaus said,

“I do not want you to die any other death but this.”

And he said to the lady who was watching,

“Does it seem to you, my dear, that I shall avenge myself well on this knight?”

“It seems to me,” said she, “that you will avenge yourself at your will.”

And then he disarmed Amadis, who was unconscious, and armed himself with those arms, and said to the lady:

“In the name of all that you hold dear, don’t move this knight, and leave him as he is, until his soul has departed.”

And thus armed he went out to the courtyard and everybody thought that he had killed him; and the lady who had come out of the prison mourned loudly, but Gandalin’s mourning was indescribable. And Arcalaus said,

“Lady, look for someone else to take you away from here, for he whom you saw is dispatched.”

When this was heard by Gandalin he fell to the ground as though dead. Arcalaus took the lady and said,

“Come with me and see how that ill-starred one who fought with me died.”

And taking her to where Amadis was, he said,

“What do you think about it, lady?”

She began to weep bitterly, and said,

"Ah, good knight, how much grief and sadness for many good people your death will bring!"

Arcalaus said to the other lady, who was his wife,

"My dear, as soon as this knight is dead, have this lady returned to the cell from which he took her; and I shall go to the court of King Lisuarte and I shall tell there how I fought with this man, and that of his own free will and mine it was agreed to undertake this combat, on condition that the victor chop off the other's head, and that he go and relate that decapitation within two weeks. And in this way no one will have any right to challenge me for this death, and I shall remain with the greatest glory and supremacy at arms that any knight in all the world may have, by having overcome this one who had no equal."

And returning to the courtyard, he had Gandalin and the dwarf put into the dark prison. Gandalin wished him to kill him and was shouting:

"Scoundrel, for you have killed the most loyal knight ever born!"

But Arcalaus ordered his men to carry him away dragging him by the leg, saying:

"If I killed you, I would not be giving you any hardship; inside there you will have it much greater than death itself."

And mounting Amadis's horse, and taking with him three squires, he set out on the way to where King Lisuarte was.

CHAPTER XIX

HOW AMADIS WAS ENCHANTED BY ARCALAUS BECAUSE HE SOUGHT TO DISENCHANT AND TAKE LADY GRINDALAYA OUT OF PRISON, AND HOW HE ESCAPED FROM THE SPELL UNDER WHICH ARCALAUS HAD PUT HIM.

Grindalaya, for this was the name of the imprisoned lady, so sorely grieved over Amadis that it was pitiful to hear her, saying to the wife of Arcalaus and to the other duennas who were with her,

“Oh, my ladies! Don't you see what knightly good looks and at what a tender age he was one of the greatest knights in the world? Cursed be those who know enchantments which so much evil and harm can do to good men! Oh, my God, who art willing to permit this!”

The wife of Arcalaus who, to the same degree that her husband was inured to cruelty and evil, was inured to virtue and piety, was heartsick over what her husband was accustomed to do, and always in her prayers prayed God to reform him, consoled the matron as much as she could. And at this juncture, two damsels entered the gate of the palace carrying in their hands many lighted candles, and they put some of them in the corner of the room where Amadis was lying; the matrons who were there were unable to speak to them or move away from where they were; and one of the damsels took out a book from a coffer that she was carrying under her armpit and began to read from it; and a voice answered her from time to time; and reading in this wise a bit, many voices finally responded in unison inside the chamber, and they appeared to be more than a hundred. Then they saw a book rolling along over the floor of the chamber as

if a wind were carrying it; and it stopped at the feet of the damsel; and she took it and divided it into four parts, and went and burned them in the corners of the chamber where the candles were burning; and she turned to where Amadis was, and taking him by the right hand said,

“Sir, arise, for you have lain in distress for a long time.”

Amadis got up and said,

“Holy Mary! How was it that I had almost died?”

“Certainly, sir,” said the damsel, “a man such as you ought not to die thus, for rather, God will desire others to die at your hands who deserve it more.”

And both damsels returned to where they had come from without saying any more; Amadis asked what had become of Arcalaus; and Grindalaya told Amadis how he had been enchanted, and all that Arcalaus had said, and how he had gone on horseback armed with Amadis’s armor to the court of King Lisuarte to tell him how he had killed him. Amadis said,

“I felt it all right when he disarmed me, but all seemed to me like a dream.”

And then he returned to the chamber and armed himself with the arms of Arcalaus, and left the hall and asked what they had done with Gandalin and the dwarf. Grindalaya told him they had put them in the prison. Amadis said to the wife of Arcalaus:

“Guard this lady for me as you would your own head until I return.”

Then he went down the stairway and went out to the courtyard. When Arcalaus’s men saw him thus armed, they fled and scattered in all directions; and he went at once to the jail; and he entered into the hall where he had killed the men, and from there reached the dungeon in which the prisoners were; and the place was very cramped in space and the prisoners many; and it was in length more than one hundred cubits and in width one and one half; and it was as dark as any place where neither light nor air could enter; and there were so many prisoners that there no longer was enough room for them. Amadis entered through the door and called Gandalin, but he was as though dead; and when he heard his voice he trembled and did not think it was

he, for he considered him dead, and thought he himself was under a spell. Amadis made a greater effort and said,

"Gandalin, where are you? Ah, heavens, what ill you do in not answering me!"

And he said to the others,

"Tell me, in heaven's name, whether the squire whom they put in here is alive."

The dwarf, who heard this, recognized that it was Amadis and said,

"Sir, here we lie and we are alive, although we have earnestly desired death."

He was very happy to hear him, and took candles that were at the side of the hall lamp, and lighting them, returned them to the dungeon, and saw where Gandalin and the dwarf were, and said,

"Gandalin, come out, and after you, all that are here, for let no one remain." And they all said,

"Ah, good knight! May God give you a good reward for having rescued us."

Then he took Gandalin, who was the rearmost one, from the chain, and after him the dwarf and all the others who were captives there, one hundred fifteen in number and the thirty knights; and they all followed after Amadis, and went out of the cellar, saying,

"Ah, very fortunate knight! Thus did our Savior Jesus Christ go forth from hell when he took out his servants; may He give you thanks for the kindness you do us."

So they all came out to the courtyard, where on seeing the sun and the sky, they dropped to their knees with hands held high, giving many thanks to God, who had given such strength to that knight to take them out of such a cruel and harsh place. Amadis looked at them, feeling great sorrow to see them so maltreated, for they seemed in their faces more dead than alive; and he saw among them one quite tall and well built, although his impoverishment was a disguise. This man came to Amadis and said,

"Sir knight, who shall we say freed us from this cruel jail and frightful gloom?"

"Sir," said Amadis, "I shall very willingly tell you. Know you that my name is Amadis of Gaul, son of King Perion, and I am of the court of King Lisuarte and a knight of Queen Brisena, his wife; and as I was coming in search of a knight, a dwarf brought me here, on account of a boon that I promised him."

"Well," said the knight, "I am of his court, and well known to the king and to his knights there, where I saw myself with greater honor than I now have."

"You are of his court?" said Amadis.

"Yes, I certainly am," said the knight, "and I came from there when I was placed in this bad situation from which you have extricated me."

"And what is your name?" said Amadis.

"Brandoyvas," said he.

When Amadis heard it, he was very much pleased, and went and embraced him, and said,

"Thanks be to God, for wishing me to have the opportunity to extricate you from such cruel hardship, for many times I have heard King Lisuarte and all those of his court speak of you, while I was there, praising your virtues and chivalry, and having great regret in never ascertaining any news of you."

So all the prisoners came before Amadis and said to him:

"Sir, here we are at your disposal; command us what to do, for we shall do it willingly, since there is so much reason for us to do so."

"Friends," said he, "may each one of you go wherever he please and where it be most advantageous for him."

"Sir," said they, "although you do not know us, nor do you know from what land we are, we all know you and wish to serve you, and when it be time to help you, we shall not wait for your command, for without it we shall hasten to wherever you may be."

With this each went his way as fast as possible, for they needed to do so. Amadis took Brandoyvas with him along with two squires of his who had been imprisoned there, and went where the wife of Arcalaus was together with other women, and found Grindalaya with her, and said,

"Madam, for your sake and for that of these your women I abstain from burning this castle, which the cruel wickedness of your husband gave me reason to do, but one must desist because of that reverence that knights owe to matrons and damsels."

The lady said to him weeping,

"God is witness, sir knight, to the pain and sorrow that my spirit feels for what Arcalaus my lord does; but I can only obey him as my husband and pray to God for him; it is for you at your volition to do against me whatever, sir, you may wish."

"What I shall do," said he, "is what I have said, but I beg of you to give some fine clothing to this lady, who is of high rank, and some arms to this knight, for here his own were taken from him, and a horse; and if you feel this a burden, it will not be demanded, except that I shall bear the arms of Arcalaus for mine and his horse for mine; and indeed I tell you that the sword that he took from me, I would want more than all this."

"Sir," said the matron, "what you demand is just, and even though it were not, knowing your moderation, I would do it willingly."

Then she gave orders to bring the same arms of Brandoyvas and had him given a horse; and she took the lady to her chamber and clothed her with some very good clothes of hers, and she took her into Amadis's presence and begged him to eat before he departed; he agreed; then the lady had them give him the best that could be had. Grindalaya could not eat; rather, she was eager to go away from the castle, at which Amadis and Brandoyvas laughed heartily, and much more at the dwarf, who was so frightened that he could neither eat nor speak, and had lost his color. Amadis said to him:

"Dwarf, do you want us to wait for Arcalaus, when I'll give you the boon from which you released me?"

"Sir," said he, "this one is costing me so dearly that never as long as I live shall I ever ask for a boon from anyone else; and let us go from here before the devil sends him back here, for I cannot bear standing on this leg by which I was hung up and with my nostrils full of the sulphur that he put under me, for I have done nothing since but sneeze and even something else worse."

Great was the laugh that Amadis and Brandoyvas, and even the matrons and damsels, had over what he said; and as soon as the table was cleared, Amadis bade farewell to the wife of Arcalaus and she commended him to God and said,

“May God put agreement between my lord and you.”

“Certainly, lady,” said Amadis, “although I do not have it with him, I shall have it with you who deserve it.”

Now there was a time when this promise that he made there was of great advantage to the matron, as will be related in the fourth Book of this story. Then they mounted their horses and the lady a palfrey, and leaving the castle, they traveled all that day together until night, which they spent in the house of a nobleman who dwelt five leagues from the castle, where great honor and service was done them; and next day after hearing mass, having taken leave of their host, they took to the road, and Amadis said to Brandoyvas:

“Good sir, I am going in search of a knight as I have told you, and you are weary; it will be well that we part.”

“Sir,” said he, “I must go to the court of King Lisuarte, and if you command, I shall wait for you.”

“I thank you very much,” said Amadis, “but I have to go alone to escort this lady to the place where she may wish to go.”

“Sir,” said she, “I shall go with this knight to where he is going, for there I shall find that one on whose account I was imprisoned, who will have pleasure at seeing me.”

“In the name of God,” said Amadis, “and to God may you go commended.”

So they parted just as you hear; and Amadis said to the dwarf:

“Friend, what will you do with yourself?”

“Whatever you command,” said he.

“What I command,” said Amadis, “is that you do whatever pleases you most.”

“Sir,” said he, “since you leave it to me, I should like to be your vassal to serve you, for I do not now perceive anyone with whom I could better live.”

“If it pleases you,” said Amadis, “it does me, and I receive you as my vassal.”

The dwarf kissed his hand. Amadis traveled along the road as Fortune guided him, and it was not long before he encountered one of the damsels who had come to his aid, crying bitterly, and he said to her:

“Damsel, why are you weeping?”

“I am weeping,” said she, “for a coffer that that knight who goes yonder took from me, and it is of no use to him, although by what is in it, the best knight in the world was saved from death, not three days ago, and I weep for another maiden my companion, whom another knight is taking away by force in order to dishonor her.”

This maiden did not recognize Amadis because of the helmet that he had put on when he had seen the knights from a greater distance; and when he heard that, he passed her and overtook the knight, and said to him:

“Certainly, knight, you are not very courteous in making the maiden behind you cry. I advise you to stop acting outrageously and return her coffer to her.”

The knight began to laugh, and Amadis asked him:

“Why are you laughing?”

“I am laughing at you,” said he, “for I consider you a fool to give advice to one who does not ask for it nor will do anything that you tell him.”

“It might be,” said Amadis, “that it will not turn out well for you; and give her her coffer, since it is of no use to you.”

“It seems,” said the knight, “that you are threatening me.”

“Your great arrogance is threatening you,” said Amadis, “for it sets you at forcing one whom you should not.”

The knight put the coffer in a tree and said,

“If your boldness is as great as your words, come for it and give it to its owner,” and he turned the head of his horse toward him.

Amadis, who was now enraged, went toward him and he came at full speed to attack him, and he struck him on his shield, which he penetrated, but he did not pierce his coat of mail, which was strong, and he broke his lance. And Amadis met him so forcibly that he threw him to the ground and his horse on top

of him, and he was so injured that he was unable to rise. Amadis took the box and gave it to the maiden, and said,

“Wait here while I help the other girl.”

Then he went as fast as he could to where he had seen the knight, and in a short while he found him among some trees where he had his horse and the damsel’s palfrey tethered; and the knight was with her, and using force in order to violate her, and she was making great outcry, and he was dragging her by the hair to a thicket, and she was saying in great distress:

“Ah, scoundrel, my enemy! May you soon die a bad death for what you are doing to me, in seeking thus to violate me, for I haven’t done you any harm!”

At this juncture, Amadis arrived shouting and telling him to let go of the damsel; and the knight, who saw him, went at once to take up his arms. And he mounted his horse and said:

“At an inopportune moment you hinder me from exercising my will.”

“May God confound such a will,” said Amadis, “that thus makes a knight lose his sense of decency.”

“Certainly if I didn’t avenge myself on you,” said the knight, “I should never bear arms.”

“The world would lose very little,” said Amadis, “in your abandoning them, since with such villainy you use them, by ravishing women, who ought to be protected by knights.”

Then they attacked, each at the full speed of his horse, and they met so violently that it was a wonder; and the knight broke his lance, but Amadis knocked him over the top of his saddle-cantle and he landed on his helmet on the ground, and as the whole weight of his body was on his neck, he twisted it in such a way that he was left more dead than alive. And Amadis, who saw him thus injured, rode his horse over him and said:

“Thus you lose your indecent passion.”

And he said to the damsel:

“My friend, no longer will you fear this man.”

“So it seems to me, sir,” said she, “but I fear for the other maiden, my companion, from whom they took a coffer, lest she receive harm.”

"Have no fear," said Amadis, "for I made him give it back to her, and you see her coming with my squire."

Then he took off his helmet and the maiden recognized him, and he, her, for she was the one who brought him, when he was coming from Gaul, to Urganda the Unknown when he rescued her friend by force of arms from the castle of Baldoyd. And getting off his horse, he went and embraced her, and did likewise with the other damsel as soon as she arrived. And they said to him:

"Sir, if we had known that we had such a defender, we would have feared little being ravished, and you can say indeed that if we rescued you, it was because you deserve it, for you have rescued us."

"Ladies," said Amadis, "I was in major danger, and I beg you to tell me how you found it out."

The maiden who had lifted him up by the hand said:

"Sir, my aunt Urganda ordered me a good ten days ago to try to arrive there at that hour in order to free you."

"May God thank her for it," said he, "and I shall requite her for it in whatever she may command and desire, and do the same for you, who have carried out her order so well; and do see whether I am needed further."

"Sir," said they, "return to your journey which you left for us, and we shall go our way."

"God be with you," said he. "Give my best regards to your mistress, and tell her to understand that I am her knight."

The damsels went their way, and Amadis returned to his; whence there will remain to be told what Arcalaus did.

CHAPTER XX

HOW ARCALAUS CARRIED THE NEWS TO THE COURT OF KING LISUARTE THAT AMADIS WAS DEAD, AND CONCERNING THE GREAT WEEPING DONE FOR HIM THROUGHOUT THE COURT, ESPECIALLY ORIANA'S.

After he left Amadis enchanted, Arcalaus on Amadis's horse and wearing his armor, traveled so fast that in ten days he arrived at the court of King Lisuarte one morning as the sun was rising; and at this time King Lisuarte had ridden forth with a very large retinue and was going along between his palace and the forest, and saw Arcalaus as he came toward him. And when they recognized the horse and also the arms, they all thought it was Amadis, and the king went toward him very happily. But when they were closer, they saw it was not the one they thought, for he had his face and his hands unarmed, and they were astonished. Arcalaus went before the king and said,

"Sire, I come to you because I made a compact to appear here to relate how I killed in combat a knight, and certainly I come with shame because by others rather than by myself I would like to be praised; but I cannot do anything else, for the agreement between him and me was that the victor should cut off the head of the other and present it before you on this day; and I was very sorry when he told me he was a knight of the queen. And I told him that if he killed me, that he killed Arcalaus, for that is my name. And he told me his name was Amadis of Gaul; so he thus received death, and I remained with the honor and glory of the combat."

"Oh, Holy Mary be of avail!" said the king, "dead is the finest and most courageous knight in the world; Oh, Lord God! Why

did it please you to make such a good beginning for such a knight?"

And he began to weep many bitter tears, and so did all the others who were there. Arcalaus returned to where he had come from, quite angry, and those who saw him cursed him, beseeching and petitioning God to give him quickly a bad death; and they themselves would have given it to him, except that according to his story there was no reason to do so. The king went off to his palace very pensive and extraordinarily sad. And the news was reported everywhere until it reached the house of the queen; and the ladies who heard Amadis was dead began to weep, for he was held in great affection and loved by them all. Oriana, who was in her chamber, sent the damsel from Denmark to find out what was the cause of that weeping that was going on. The damsel went out, and when she learned the reason, returned, striking her face with her hands and weeping very bitterly, looked at Oriana and said to her:

"Ah, lady, what sorrow and what great grief!"

Oriana trembled all over and said,

"Oh, Holy Mary, what if Amadis is dead!"

"Oh, unfortunate one, he is dead!"

And her heart failing, Oriana fell to the floor in a swoon. The damsel, who saw her thus, stopped crying and went to Mabilia, who was showing very great grief by tearing her hair, and said to her:

"Lady Mabilia, help my lady, for she is dying."

She turned her head and saw Oriana lying on her dais as if she were dead. And although her distress was very great and could not have been greater, she sought to render the aid needed, and gave orders to the damsel to close the door of the chamber so that no one would see Oriana thus, and went and took her in her arms and had cold water thrown on her face, with which at once she revived somewhat; and when she was able to speak, she said weeping:

"Ah, my dears, in heaven's name, do not prevent my death if you wish peace for me, and do not cause me to be so disloyal as to live a single hour without that one who not with my death, but with his desire for me, would not have been able to live so

much as one hour." Furthermore she said, "Ah, flower and mirror of all chivalry! So oppressive and strange is your death to me, that on account of it not only shall I suffer, but the whole world, in losing its great leader and captain, both at arms and in all the other virtues from which those who live in it could derive a moral lesson; but if some consolation gives comfort to my sad heart, it is only that since it is not able to suffer such a cruel wound, by taking leave of it goes away to your heart; for although its dwelling place is in the cold earth where our two hearts will be consumed and destroyed in that great fire of love which, though separated in this life, sustained them so fondly; much more in the life to come by their being together, if it be possible for them to be vouchsafed permission will they be sustained."

Then she fell into such a deep swoon that they all thought she was quite dead, and those very beautiful tresses of hers were lying in disorder on the floor and she was clasping her hands over her heart where ravenously death was overtaking her, and she was suffering to an excessive degree that cruel sorrow; for until then she and Amadis had had pleasures and delights in their love affair, just as happens continually in similar situations of deep love. Mabilia, who truly thought she was dead, said,

"Oh, Lord God! May it not please you that I live any longer, since the two beings I loved most in this world are dead."

The damsel of Denmark said to her:

"For heaven's sake, my lady, let not your discretion fail you at such a time, and apply yourself to what can be remedied."

Mabilia, taking courage, got up; and they, picking up Oriana, put her in her bed. Oriana sighed then, and moved her arms from one side to another as if her soul was being snatched away. When Mabilia saw this, she took some water and again threw it over her face and breasts, and it made her open her eyes and to a further degree recover consciousness. And Mabilia said to her:

"Oh, my lady! What little intelligence you show to let yourself die thus at such insubstantial news as that knight brought, not knowing it to be true; he either by demanding those arms or that horse of your lover, or perhaps by having stolen them from him, was able to obtain them, and not in the way that he said; for God did not make your lover so hapless as to take him out of the

world so quickly; what you will be doing, if anything is known of your great sorrow, will be to ruin you both forever."

Oriana exerted herself somewhat more and held her eyes fixed on the window where she spoke with Amadis at the time that he first came there; and she said in a very weak voice, like a woman who had lost her strength:

"Ah, window, what sorrow for me is that beautiful conversation which at you was carried on; I well know that you will crumble into dust before at your sill two other people have such a genuine and disillusioned conversation!" Furthermore she said: "Ah, my lover, flower of all knights, how many have lost help and protection by your death, and what sorrow and pain it will be for all of them, but to me much greater and more bitter, as to one who much more than her own was yours; for just as in you was all my joy and happiness, so without you it is turned into the reverse, namely, into grave and unbearable torments; and my spirit will be very much fatigued until death, which I so much desire, comes upon me, which for me will be the occasion for my soul to unite with yours in much greater repose than in my afflicted life!"

Mabilia with simulated anger, said:

"Do you think, my lady, that if I believed this news, I would have the strength to console anyone? The love that I have for my cousin is not so small or so fickle; rather, so help me God, if I were able to believe it right, not to you nor to all those in the world who have regard for him, would I concede superiority in what one should show or do because of his death; so what you are doing is without any benefit, and could cause much harm, since with it very quickly one could reveal what we keep so concealed."

Oriana, hearing this, said,

"About this I already have little worry, for now sooner or later it won't be long in being evident to all, even though I may try to hide it; for whoever has no desire to live can fear no danger, even though it should come."

They were on this subject that you hear all that day, the damsel of Denmark saying to everyone that Oriana did not dare to leave Mabilia, lest she kill herself, so great was her sorrow;

but night having come, they spent it with more fatigue, for Oriana frequently fainted — so frequently that they thought that they would never bring her through to daybreak, so great was the pensiveness and distress that she had in her heart. Then next day at the hour that they were about to set the king's table, Brandoyvas entered by the gate of the palace, leading Grindalaya by the hand, as one who had affection for him, which gave much joy to those who knew him, because a long time had passed since they had ascertained any news of him. And both knelt before the king. The king, who held him in high regard, said thus:

“Brandoyvas, welcome, why have you delayed so long, for greatly have we desired you?”

To this which the king said to him he answered, and said:

“Sire, I was thrown into such a huge prison from which I could not get out in any way except with the help of the very good knight, Amadis of Gaul, who through his courtesy brought me and this lady and many others out, performing at arms what no one else could have done, and the traitor Arcalaus would have killed him by the greatest deception ever seen; but he was helped by two maidens, who must have esteemed him not a little.”

The king when he heard this got up quickly from the table and said:

“Friend, by the faith that you owe to God and to me, tell me if Amadis is alive.”

“By that faith, sire, that you speak of, I say that it is true that I left him alive and well not ten days ago; but why do you ask?”

“Because Arcalaus came to tell us last night that he had killed him,” said the king. And he told him how Arcalaus had related it.

“Oh, Holy Mary!” said Brandoyvas. “What an evil scoundrel, for the combat came out worse for him than de thought!”

Then he related to the king all that had befallen them with Arcalaus, omitting nothing, just as you have already heard it. The king and all those of his court when they heard it were so happy that they could not be more so, and he gave orders that they take Grindalaya to the queen and that she tell her the news about her knight. Grindalaya by her, just as by all the other ladies, was received with much love and great joy on account

of the good news that she told them. The damsel of Denmark, who heard it, went as quickly as she could to tell it to her lady, because Mabilia wanted to speak to her, and immediately she ordered her to go to the queen and to send to them the matron, because Mabilia wanted to speak to her, and immediately she did so, for Grindalaya went to Oriana's chamber and told her all the good news that she brought. They did her much honor, and wanted her to eat nowhere except at their table, on account of its affording an opportunity to learn more in detail about that which gave such great joy to their hearts, which had been so sad; but when Grindalaya came to relate how Amadis had entered the prison, and how he had killed the jailers and had taken her from where she was in such distress, and the battle he had with Arcalaus, and all the other things that had happened, she moved her friends to great pity. Just as you are hearing they were engaged in dining, with their great sadness turned into great joy. Grindalaya bade them good-bye and returned to where the queen was, and found there King Arban of North Wales, who loved her very much, who was going about in search of her, knowing she had come there. The pleasure both had could not be adequately described to you. There it was agreed between them that she remain with the queen, since she would not find anywhere another court so honorable. And Arban of North Wales told the queen how that lady was the daughter of King Adroyd of Serolis, and that all the evil that she had received had been because of him, and that he was begging of her the favor of taking her with her, since she wanted to serve her. When the queen heard this, she was very much pleased to receive her in her household, as much for the good news she brought of Amadis of Gaul as for being a person of such an exalted station. And taking her by the hand, as a king's daughter, which she was, she had her seated in her presence, asking her pardon for not having paid her so much honor, for the cause of it was not knowing her. Also the queen learned how this Grindalaya had a very beautiful sister, Aldeva by name, who had been reared in the house of the Duke of Bristol, and the queen gave orders that they bring her to her at once to live in her household, because she wanted very much to see her. This Aldeva was the sweetheart of Don

Galaor, the one on account of whom he received much offense from the dwarf, as you have already heard.

Just as you hear, King Lisuarte and all his court were very happy, and were desirous of seeing Amadis, for that bad news about him that had been told them had greatly shocked them. The story will cease to talk of them, and will tell of Don Galaor, for it has been a long time since anything has been said or brought up about him.

CHAPTER XXI

HOW GALAOR ARRIVED AT A MONASTERY SORELY WOUNDED AND STAYED THERE TWO WEEKS, AT THE END OF WHICH HE WAS HEALED, AND WHAT HAPPENED TO HIM AFTERWARDS.

Don Galaor was for two weeks wounded in the monastery to which the damsel who had gotten him out of prison brought him; at the end of which being disposed to take up arms, he left there and traveled along a road where chance guided him, for his will was to go no more in one direction than in another; and at noon he found himself in a valley where there was a fountain, and he found at the side of it an armed knight, but he had no horse or any other animal, at which Galaor was surprised and said to him:

“Sir knight, how did you come here on foot?”

The knight of the fountain answered him:

“Sir, I was going through this forest to a castle of mine, and I encountered some men who killed my horse, and I had to come here on foot very weary, and thus I shall have to return to the castle, for they know not of me.”

“You shall not return except on that palfrey of my squire.”

“Many thanks,” said he, “but before we go I want you to know the great virtue of this fountain, for there is in the world no poison so strong as to withstand this water; and often some poisoned beasts happen to drink here, and immediately they are relieved by breaking wind, so that all the people of this region come here to treat their illnesses.”

“Certainly,” said Don Galaor, “what you say is marvellous and I wish to drink of such water.”

"And who would do here otherwise?" said the knight of the fountain, "for if you were somewhere else, you ought to seek for it."

Then Galaor dismounted and said to his squire:

"Dismount and let's drink."

The squire did so and leaned the arms against a tree. The knight of the fountain said:

"Go and drink, for I shall hold the horse."

He went to the fountain to drink, and while they were drinking he laced on the helmet and took the shield and the lance of Galaor, and mounting the horse said,

"Sir knight, I am going, and stay you here until you deceive someone else."

Galaor, who was drinking, lifted his face and saw that the knight was going away and said:

"Certainly, knight, you not only have deceived me, but have done me great treachery, and this I shall prove to you if you wait for me."

"Let this wait," said the knight, "for when you have another horse and other arms with which to fight."

And putting the spurs to the horse, he went on his way.

Galaor remained greatly enraged and after a short while during which he was thinking, he mounted the palfrey on which his arms had been carried and went along the way that the knight went, and arriving where the road forked, he remained there a little while, for he did not know which way to go. And he saw coming along one road a damsel hurrying along on a palfrey, and he awaited her until she reached where he was, and on her arrival he said:

"Maiden, have you, by chance, seen a knight who is riding a bay horse and carrying a white shield with a bright red flower device?"

"And why do you want him?" said the maiden.

Galaor responded,

"Those arms and that horse are mine, and I should like to recover them if I could, for he took them from me so basely."

"How did he take them from you?" said the maiden.

He told her everything just as it had happened.

"Well, what would you, thus disarmed, do to him?" said she, "for as I believe, he didn't take them from you in order to return them."

"I should like," said Galaor, "to make contact with him."

"Well, if you grant me a boon," said she, "I shall put you in contact with him."

Galaor, who wanted very much to speak with the knight, granted it to her.

"Now follow me," said she.

And turning back towards where she had come from, she went along the road and Galaor behind her; but the maiden went a little bit ahead, for the palfrey of Galaor was not going so fast because it was carrying him and his squire, and he went a good three leagues without seeing her. And on passing a grove of dense trees, he saw the maiden coming toward him, and Galaor went up to her; but the maiden was acting deceitfully, for the knight was her lover and she had gone to tell him she was bringing Galaor so that he could seize the other arms that he was carrying. He had stationed himself in a tent, all armed as he was, and had told the maiden to bring Galaor there, for he would be able to kill him or render him ridiculous without danger. Then by traveling along just as you have heard, Galaor and the damsel reached the tent, and the damsel said,

"There is the knight you seek."

Galaor dismounted and went towards the tent, but the other, who was at the door, said:

"You are not welcome here, for you will have to give up these other arms, or you will be killed."

"Certainly," said Don Galaor, "I do not fear anything from such a base knight as you."

The knight raised his sword to attack him; and Galaor, safe from the blow — for being very agile and of such great strength, he was equal to the situation, and the other's blow missed its target — gave him on top of the helmet such a hard blow that he went down on his knees. So Galaor took him by the helmet and jerked it so hard that he snatched it from his head and made him fall outstretched. The knight shouted to his mistress to help

him; and she, who heard him, came as fast as she could to the tent, saying in a loud voice:

"Hold up, knight, for this is the boon I asked of you."

But Galaor, with the rage that he felt, had wounded him in such a way that he was beyond needing a physician. When the damsel saw him dead, she said:

"Oh, wretch that I am, I delayed too long, and thinking to cheat another, I cheated myself!" Then she said to Galaor:

"Alas, knight, may you die a bad death! For you have killed what I loved most in the world; but you will die for it, for the boon that you promised me I shall demand of you in a place where you will not be able to flee death, even though you are stronger. And if you do not give it to me, you will be publicized and vilified by me everywhere."

Galaor answered, saying:

"If I had thought that it would distress you so greatly I would not have killed him, although he well deserved it; and you should have come to his aid sooner."

"I made the mistake," said she, "and I shall make amends for it, for I shall cause your life to be given for his."

Galaor mounted his horse and the squire took the arms, and he left there; and having gone ahead as much as a league, he turned his face to the right and saw that the damsel was coming behind him, and when she reached him, he said to her:

"Maiden, where do you want to go?"

"With you," said she, "until we arrive where you may give me the boon that you have promised me and I cause you to die an evil death."

"It would be better," said Don Galaor, "to take other amends of me, some such thing that you might desire most, rather than what you mention."

"Other amends," said she, "there will not be, except for you to give your soul for his or remain traitorous and false."

Thus Galaor went on his way and the maiden with him, and she did nothing but insult him. And at the end of three days they entered a forest by the name of Angaduza.

The author here leaves off speaking of this in order to relate it in its proper place. And he returned to Amadis, who having

parted from Urganda's damsels, as we have already told you, traveled until noon; and leaving a forest through which he was journeying, he found himself on a plain, on which he saw a beautiful fortress and saw going along the plain a cart, the largest and most beautiful he had ever seen, and twelve palfreys were pulling it, and it was covered on top with a bright red cloth of silk, so that one could not see anything of what was inside. This cart was guarded on all four sides by eight armed knights. Amadis, when he saw it, went toward it with the desire to find out what all that was; and as he drew near, a knight came out to him, who said,

"Withdraw, sir knight, and do not dare to come near there."

"I do not come with evil intentions," said Amadis.

"However that be," said the other, "do not make any effort in the matter, for you are not such a one as ought to see what is going on there; and if you persist in it, it will cost you your life, for you will have to fight with us; and here are such knights as would keep you from it with a single one of their number, not to mention all of them together."

"I know nothing of their excellence; but still, if I can, I shall see what rides in the cart."

Then he took his arms, and the two knights who were riding in front, charged him, and he them. One struck him on the shield in such a way that he broke his lance, and the other missed his blow. Amadis overthrew the one who met him, without any delay; and turning to the other who had passed by him, he met him so violently that he threw him and his horse to the ground; and on trying to go toward the cart, two other knights came toward him at full speed, and he charged them and struck one so hard that the coat of mail the latter wore was of no use to him; and he gave the other on top of his helmet with the sword such a blow that he made him clasp the neck of his horse, for he lost his senses. When the four saw their companions overcome by a single knight, they were very much frightened to see such a rare thing, and they moved together and with great wrath toward Amadis in order to attack him; but before they arrived he had knocked the other to the ground. And they struck him thus angrily, some on his shields and the others failing to

clash with him; but toward the one who came in front went Amadis to attack him with the sword, and the other came on so hard that they met with the shields and the helmets so fiercely that the knight fell from his horse so completely stunned that he fainted; and the three knights turned on him and struck strong blows, and with regard to one of them who carried a lance, Amadis loosed the sword from his own hand and laid hold of him by the lance so forcibly that he took it from his hands, and went and gave with it one of them such a blow in the throat that the iron and the wood came out through his neck, and he struck him down dead. And then he charged as hard as he could at the other two, and struck one of them on the helmet with all his strength so hard that he knocked it from his head. And Amadis saw his face, which was very old looking, and he was sorry for him and said,

“Certainly, sir knight, now you should give up this in which you are engaged, for if you haven’t won honor until now, from here on your age exempts you from winning it.”

The knight said,

“Dear sir, rather it is the contrary, for it is necessary for youths to win honor and glory, and for the old to maintain it as long as they are able.”

Amadis, having heard the reasoning of the old man, said:

“I consider what you say, knight, better than what I said.”

They being engaged in this conversation, Amadis raised his head and saw that the other knight who remained was going as fast as he could in flight to the castle; and saw the others who could get up going after their horses; and he went to the cart, and lifting up the cloth, put his head inside, and saw a tomb of marble and on its cover a sculptured image of a king with a crown on the head and dressed in royal garments, and he had his crown split down to his head, and his head down to his neck; and he saw a lady sitting on a bed and a girl beside her, and the girl seemed more beautiful than any other he had ever seen in all his days, and he said to the matron:

“Madam, why does this image have its face split thus?”

The lady looked at him and saw he was not one of those accompanying her, and said:

"What is this, knight? Who ordered you to look at this?"

"I," said he, "who wished to see what was going by here."

"And our knights, what did they do yonder?" said she.

"They did me more harm than good," said he.

Then the matron raising the cloth saw some dead and the others who were going after their horses, whereupon she was very disturbed, and said:

"Ah, knight, cursed be the hour in which you were born, to commit such devilish acts!"

"Madam," said he, "your knights attacked me; but if you please, tell me what I ask you."

"So help me God," said the matron, "you never will learn of it from me, for I am made a mockery by you."

When Amadis saw her so angry, he left there and resumed his journey. The lady's knights put the dead in the cart; and they with great shame mounted and went toward the castle. The dwarf asked Amadis what he had seen in the cart. Amadis told him, for he had not been able to learn anything from the lady.

"If she had been an armed knight," said the dwarf, "she would have told you quickly."

Amadis was silent and went ahead; and when he had journeyed a good league he saw coming behind him the old knight whom he had overcome, and he shouted for Amadis to stop. Amadis stood still, and the knight came up unarmed and said:

"Sir knight, I come to you with a message from the lady whom you saw in the cart, who wishes to make amends for the discourtesy with which she spoke to you, and begs that you lodge in the castle tonight."

"Good knight," said Amadis, "I saw her with so much passion because of what happened to me with you that the sight of me would give her more anger than pleasure."

"Believe me, sir," said the knight, "you would make her very happy with your return."

Amadis, who considered the knight at such an age that he would not lie, and the insistency with which he besought him, turned back, chatting meanwhile with him, asking him if he knew why the image of stone had its head thus split; but the latter did not want to tell him this; however, as they drew near the

castle, he said that he would like to go ahead so that the lady might know of his arrival. Amadis went more slowly and arrived at the gate, over which was a tower; and he saw at a window of it the lady and a beautiful girl, and the lady said:

“Enter, sir knight, for we thank you very much for coming.”

“Madam,” said he, “I am very happy to give you pleasure rather than anger.”

And he entered the castle; and going forward he perceived a great uproar of people in a hall, and then armed knights and other people on foot came out of it, and they came saying:

“Halt, knight, and surrender; if not, you are a dead man.”

“Certainly,” said he, “I shall not willingly become a prisoner of such deceitful people.”

Then he laced on his helmet and was not able to take his shield because of the way they rushed him, and they began to attack him from all sides; but he as long as his horse lasted, defended himself very fiercely, hurling down at its feet those on whom he landed good blows; and as he saw himself very hard pressed, the people being many in number, he was going toward a shed that was in the courtyard, and positioned there, he performed miracles in defending himself; and he saw how they seized the dwarf and Gandalin, and he plucked up more courage than he had before to defend himself; but as the people were many and they attacked him from all sides with such blows that at times they made him sink to his knees on the ground, he no longer would have been able to escape in any way being killed; for they would not have taken him to prison, because he had killed six of his opponents, and others were badly wounded. But God and his own great loyalty succored him very well and in the following manner. For the girl who was watching the battle and saw him perform such marvelous deeds, had great pity on him, and calling to a damsel, said:

“My dear, the great valor of that knight has moved me to such great pity that I would wish that all these people of ours should die rather than he alone; and come with me.”

“Madam,” said the damsel, “what do you want to do?”

“To let loose my lions,” said she, “to kill those who hold the best knight in the world in such straits; and I command you as

my vassal to set them free, since no one else but you would be able to do so; for the lions are not acquainted with anyone else and I shall exempt you from blame."

And she returned to the lady. The damsel went to set free the lions, which were two in number, very fierce and chained up, and they came out into the courtyard; and she shouted to the people to protect themselves from them, saying that they had been set free; but before the people could flee, the lions tore to pieces with their sharp and strong claws those they could reach.

Amadis, who saw the people fleeing to the wall and the towers, and himself free from them, while the strong lions were surfeited with those they had before them, went at once as fast as he could to the gate of the castle, and going outside closed it behind him, so that the lions remained inside; and he sat down on a rock very weary, as one who had fought very well; his bare sword in his hand, a third of it broken off. The lions were going from one side of the courtyard to the other and rushed to the gate in order to get out; the people of the castle did not dare to come down, nor did the damsel who took care of the lions, for they were so infuriated and enraged that they obeyed no one, so that those inside did not know what to do; and they agreed that the damsel should ask the knight to open the gate, believing that he would do it for her rather than for anyone else; but she, thinking about the excessively great outrage she had perpetrated against him, did not dare to ask him any favor. But not expecting any other help, she placed herself at the window and said:

"Sir knight, although we have made a very bad mistake with you without knowing you, may your humble courtesy prevail against our guilt, and if you please, open the gate to the lions because by their going outside, we shall be without fear and free of danger, and along with this there will be made to you all the amends that one is obligated to make for the error that we made and committed with respect to you; although I wish to say to you also that my intention and will was only to have you imprisoned in a stout jail."

He answered with very gentle speech:

"That, lady, did not have to be in the way you did it, for willingly would I have been your servant, just as I am of all the duennas and maidens that have need of my service."

"Then, sir," said she, "you will not open the gate?"

"No, so help me God," said Amadis, "you shall not have this courtesy from me."

The lady withdrew weeping from the window; the beautiful girl said:

"Sir knight, here there are people who have no guilt for the harm that you have received; rather they deserve thanks for that which you do not know about."

Amadis was very much attracted to her and said,

"My fair friend, would you like me to open the gate?"

"I should be very grateful to you for it," said she.

Amadis went to open it, and the child said:

"Sir knight, wait a moment and I shall tell the matron that you made a truce with those who are over there."

Amadis esteemed her highly and considered her discreet, since the matron gave assurance and said that she would immediately yield up Gandalin and the dwarf. And the old knight, whom you have heard about already, told Amadis to take a shield and a mace because with it he would be able to kill the lions as they went out of the gate.

"This I wish," said Amadis, "for another purpose, and may God not help me if I do ill to those who helped me so much."

"Certainly, sir," said the knight, "you greatly esteem loyalty in men, inasmuch as you have it for wild beasts."

Then they threw the mace and the shield to him, and Amadis put in the sheath what remained of his sword and grasped his shield, and with the mace in hand he went and opened the gate. The lions, when they saw him open the gate, hastened there and in a rush went out to the countryside, and Amadis remained withdrawn to one side and he entered the castle; and then the matron and all the other people came down from the upper stories and came to him and he went to them, and all received him very well, and they brought Gandalin and the dwarf to him. Amadis said to the lady,

"Madam, I lost here my horse, if you order that I be given another in exchange for it, all right; if not, I shall leave on foot."

"Sir," said the lady, "disarm yourself and you shall rest here tonight, for it is late. And you shall have a horse, since it would be very outrageous for such a knight to go on foot."

Amadis considered it all right, and immediately was disarmed in a chamber, and they gave him a robe to cover himself, and took him to the windows, where the lady and the young girl awaited him. But when they saw him thus, they were greatly astonished at how handsome he was, and at his doing things so wondrous at arms when at such a tender age. Amadis gazed at the young girl, who moreover seemed to him very beautiful; furthermore he said to the lady:

"Tell me, madam, if you please: why did the figure that I saw in the cart have its head split open?"

"Knight," said she, "if you agree to do about it what you ought to, I shall tell you; if not, I shall desist from it."

"Lady," said he, "it is not right to promise to do what a man does not know; but knowing it, if it is a thing that pertains to a knight and which one should rightly take on, it will not be abandoned by me."

The lady said that he spoke very well, and gave orders for all the matrons and maidens and the other people to withdraw. She took the young girl beside her and said:

"Sir knight, that figure of stone that you saw was made in remembrance of this beautiful girl's father, who lies placed in the tomb which is in the cart. He was a crowned king, and being in his royal chair at a festival, a brother of his arrived there, and telling him that that crown would not look less well on his head, since both were of one ancestry, and drawing a sword that he was wearing under his mantle, he struck him on top of his crown and split his head open just as you have seen depicted; and as he had planned that treason beforehand, he brought with him many knights so that the king once dead, and there remaining no other son or daughter of his, except this girl, he quickly acquired the kingdom, which he holds in his power; and at the time he had in custody the old knight who caused you to come here to this girl; and he fled with her and brought her to me

at this castle because she is my niece; and afterwards I obtained the stone image of her father and each day I put it in the cart and go with it through the countryside, and I have sworn not to show it except to the one who through force of arms might see it; and although he sees it, I shall not tell him the reason for it unless he agrees to avenge such great treason; and if you, good knight, on account of what reason and virtue obligate you to do, wish to employ in such a just cause that great valor and strength of heart that God implanted in you, once I have you, I shall continue my custom until I find two other knights that I need so that all three fight with that traitor and two sons of his over this cause; for there exists an agreement among them not to leave one another; rather, to be together in combat, if it be demanded of them."

"Lady," said Amadis, "you do right to try to find a way for the greatest treason I have ever heard of to be avenged; and certainly he who committed it cannot last long without being brought to shame, for God will not suffer it. And if you could bring it about that they came to the battle one by one, with the help of God, I would take it on."

"They will not do this," said the lady.

"Well, what are you pleased to have me do?" said he.

"That you be here," said she, "a year from today, if you are alive and with full vigor; and by then I shall have the two knights and you will be the third."

"Very willingly," said Amadis, "will I do this, and don't put yourself to any trouble looking for them, for I intend to bring them by that deadline and they will be such as will uphold very well all justice."

And he said this because he believed he had already found for it his brother Don Galaor and Agrajes, his cousin, for with them he would indeed dare to undertake a mighty deed.

The lady and the girl thanked him very much, telling him to try to find very good ones, because such they had to be; for he should regard it as certain that that evil king and his sons were among the valiant and courageous knights that there were in the world. Amadis said to them:

"If I find one knight whom I am looking for, I should not be troubled much about a third one, even if the opponents are more vigorous."

"Sir," said the matron, "Where are you from, and where shall I look for you?"

"Lady," said Amadis, "I am from the court of King Lisuarte and a knight of Queen Brisena, his wife."

"Then now," said she, "let us go dine, for after such an agreement it will do us good."

Then they entered a very beautiful hall, where they were given a well-planned meal; and when it was time to sleep, they took Amadis to a room where he might lodge, and only the maiden who set free the lions stayed with him; and she said to him:

"Sir knight, here is one who helped you, although you do not know it."

"And why was that?"

"It was," said she, "to save you from the death, which you had very close at hand, by means of the lions, which through the order of that beautiful girl, my mistress, I set free, she having pity because of the harm they were doing you."

Amadis marveled at the prudence of a person of such a tender age, and said:

"Certainly, damsel, I believe that if she lives, she will have in herself two very extremely unusual qualities, which will be: to be very beautiful and of great intelligence."

Amadis said also:

"It certainly seems so to me, and tell her that I thank her very much, and to regard me as her knight."

"Sir," said the damsel, "what you tell me gives me great pleasure, and she will be very happy as soon as she learns of it from me."

And she leaving the room, Amadis remained in his bed; and Gandalin and the dwarf, who lay in another bed at the feet of their master, heard well what they were talking about; and the dwarf, who did not know of the affair between his lord and Oriana, thought that he was in love with that very beautiful girl, and because he had taken such a liking to her he had

bound himself to her as her knight; with the result that this understanding did not help Amadis, since because of it there was the period during which Amadis came very close to a very cruel death, as will be related further on. That night having passed and morning come, Amadis arose and heard mass with the matron. Then he asked the names of those whom he would have to fight. She said:

"The father is called Abiseos, the elder son Darasion, and the other Dramis, and all three are of great prowess at arms."

"And the land," said Amadis, "what is it called?"

"Sobradisa," said she, "which borders on Serolis, and on the other side it is bounded by the sea."

Then he armed himself, and mounting the horse that the duenna gave him, as he was about to take his leave, there came the beautiful girl with a fine sword in her hands, which had been her father's, and she said:

"Sir knight, out of regard for me bear this sword as long as it endures, and with it may God help you."

Amadis, laughing, thanked her for it, and said:

"Dear lady, consider me your knight to perform everything that may be for your benefit and honor."

She was very glad about that and showed it clearly in her countenance. The dwarf, who saw all of it, said:

"Certainly, lady, you have gained no little, inasmuch as you have such a knight for yourself."

CHAPTER XXII

HOW AMADIS SET OUT FROM THE CASTLE OF THE DUENNA, AND WHAT HAPPENED TO HIM ALONG THE WAY.

Amadis took leave of the duenna and the girl and started on his way, and journeyed without finding any adventure until he reached the forest which is called Angaduza; the dwarf was going ahead, and along the road that they were following came a knight and a maiden, and when he was near him, the knight took his sword in hand and charged at the dwarf to chop off his head. The dwarf, frightened, dropped from the hackney, saying:

“Help me, sir, for they are killing me!”

Amadis, who saw it, hastened up very quickly, and said:

“What is this, sir knight? Why do you want to kill my dwarf? You are not behaving courteously in laying hands on such a wretched creature; besides its being mine and your not having made on me a rightful demand for him. Do not lay a hand on him, for I shall protect him against you.”

“I regret your protecting him,” said the knight, “but it is still necessary for me to cut off his head.”

“You will have a fight first,” said Amadis.

And taking up their arms, covered with their shields, they moved toward each other at the full speed of their horses; and they struck each other so violently on their shields that they pierced them and their coats of mail also, and the horses came together, and they themselves with their bodies and helmets, in such a way that they fell hard to each side; but immediately they were on their feet and began a battle with their swords, so cruel and so violent that there was not a person who saw it who was

not frightened by it; and so were they both, for never until then did they find anyone who placed his life in such great straits. Thus they kept striking each other very mighty and harsh blows, for a great part of the day, until their shields were split and cut in many places, and likewise their coats of mail, in which now there was very little protection; and their swords had many opportunities to penetrate often and with danger to their flesh, since their helmets were cut and dented all over. And being very tired, they drew to one side, and the knight said to Amadis:

“Knight, do not endure any more toil on account of this dwarf, and let me do with him what I wish; and afterwards I shall make amends to you for it.”

“Do not speak of that,” said Amadis, “for I shall help the dwarf in every way.”

“Well certainly,” said the knight, “either I will die, or that maiden who asked me for it will have his head.”

“I tell you,” said Amadis, “that one of ours will be lost first.”

And taking his shield and sword, he again attacked him with great fury, because thus without cause the knight with such arrogance wanted to slay the dwarf, who did not deserve it; but if he was courageous, he did not find the other weak; instead, he came at him with great daring and they gave each other many strong blows, each one striving to acquaint the other with his courage and valor, so that now they expected only death of each other; however, that knight was badly injured, but not so much that he could not fight with great strength. So being in these great straits that you are hearing about, a knight fully armed arrived by chance where the maiden was, and as he saw the battle, began to make the sign of the cross, saying that since he was born he had never seen such a mighty fight between two knights, and he asked the maiden if she knew who those knights were. “Yes,” said she, “for I made them come together, and therefore I can not leave here except happy, for it would please me very much whichever of them dies, and much more if both did.”

“Certainly, maiden,” said the knight, “That is not a good desire or pleasure; rather, a good desire would be to pray God for two such good men; but tell me, why do you hate them so much?”

"This I shall tell you," said the maiden, "that one who has the less damaged shield is the one man in the world who hates Arcalaus, my uncle, most, and whose death Arcalaus most desires. And his name is Amadis; and this other one with whom he is fighting is called Galaor, and he killed the one man in all the world I love most, and he had promised me a boon, and I was going to ask it of him in a situation where death might come to him; and as I knew the other knight, who is the best in the world, I demanded of him the head of that dwarf; so that this Galaor, who is a very strong knight to give it to me, and the other to defend it, are brought to the edge of death, for which I receive great glory and pleasure."

The knight who heard this said:

"Damned be the woman who planned such a great betrayal in order to cause the two best knights in the world to die!"

And drawing his sword from the scabbard he gave her such a blow on the neck that he caused her head to fall at the feet of the palfrey; and he said:

"Take this reward for your uncle Arcalaus, who held me in the cruel prison, from which that good knight delivered me."

And he went shouting, as fast as his horse could carry him, saying:

"Stop, Sir Amadis, for that is your brother Don Galaor, the one you are looking for."

When Amadis heard this, he let his sword and shield fall to the field and went toward him, saying:

"Oh, brother, good luck be to whoever has caused us to know each other."

Galaor said:

"Oh, wretched, unlucky man that I am! What have I done to my brother and lord?"

And kneeling before him, he begged his pardon, weeping.

Amadis lifted him up and embraced him, saying:

"My brother, I consider well employed the danger that I underwent with you, since it was a false accusation so that I might test your very lofty prowess and excellence."

Then they unlaced their helmets in order to rest, for it was very necessary to them. The knight told them what the damsel had said and how he had killed her.

“Good luck be yours,” said Galaor, “for now I am freed from her boon.”

“Certainly, sir,” said the dwarf, “but I am even more pleased that you are freed from the boon than by the manner that you began it; but I wonder very much why she hated me, for I had never seen her.”

Galaor related what had happened to him with her and her friend, as you have already heard, and the knight said to them,

“Sirs, you are sorely wounded; I beg of you to mount and let us go to my castle, which is nearby, and you will recover from your wounds.”

“May God give you good fortune,” said Amadis, “for what you are doing for us.”

“Certainly, sir, I regard myself as fortunate to serve you, for you took me out of the most cruel and harsh prison man was ever in.”

“Where was that?” said Amadis.

“Sir,” said he, “in the castle of Arcalaus the Enchanter, for I am one of the many who came out from there freed by your hand.”

“What is your name?” said Amadis.

“They call me,” said he, “Balays, and on account of my castle, which is called Carsante, I am called Balays of Carsante; and I earnestly beg of you, sir, that you go with me.”

Don Galaor said:

“Let us go with this knight who esteems us so highly.”

“Let us go, brother,” said Amadis, “since it gives you pleasure.”

Then they mounted as best they could and arrived at the castle, where they found knights and matrons and maidens who received them with great esteem; and Balays said to them:

“Friends, you see that I am bringing all the flower of chivalry in the world; the one is Amadis, the one who took me out of the harsh prison; the other, his brother Don Galaor; and I found them at such a point that if God through his mercy had not

brought me that way, one of them would have died, or perhaps both; serve and honor them as you should."

Then he took them off their horses and brought them to a chamber where they were disarmed and placed in luxurious beds; and there they were cared for by two nieces of Balays' wife, who were well acquainted with the art of healing; but their lady aunt came before Amadis and with great humility thanked him for what he had done for her husband in getting him out of Arcalaus's prison.

Then while they were there, Amadis told Galaor how he had left the court of King Lisuarte in order to look for him, and that he had promised to bring him there, and he begged him to go with him, for in the whole world there was not a court so honored or where so many excellent knights dwelt.

"Sir and brother," said Don Galaor, "all that gives you pleasure, I must follow and do, although I believe I had said to myself that I would not be known there until my deeds should bear witness that in some respect they resembled yours, or I die in the undertaking."

"Certainly, brother," said Amadis, "don't give it up on that account, for there your great reputation is such that mine, if it is anything, was being obscured."

"Oh, sir," said Don Galaor, "by heaven, don't say such a wrong thing, for neither with deeds nor thought thereof would I be able to overtake or equal your great might!"

"Now let us drop this," said Amadis, "for between your accomplishments and mine, according to the great prowess of our father, by rights there ought not to be any difference."

And then he gave orders to the dwarf to go forthwith to the court of King Lisuarte, and paying Amadis's respects to the queen, to tell her on his behalf how he had found Galaor and that as soon as they had recovered from their wounds they would leave for those parts. The dwarf, complying with the command of his lord, set out on the road to Windsor, where the king was at that time, well attended by all his knights.

CHAPTER XXIII

HOW KING LISUARTE, GOING OUT ON A HUNT AS HE WAS ACCUSTOMED TO DO AT OTHER TIMES, SAW THREE ARMED KNIGHTS COMING ALONG THE ROAD, AND WHAT HAPPENED TO HIM WITH THEM.

As King Lisuarte was a great hunter, and would have been a game beater if he had been free from other things more befitting his high estate, he often went out to hunt in a forest that was near the town of Windsor, in which, it being very well protected, there were many deer and other wild animals; and he was always accustomed to wearing hunting clothes, for he took care of each situation in the proper way. And one day, being with his company of game beaters near a main highway, he saw coming toward him three armed knights, and he sent a squire to tell them on his behalf to come to him, of which they having been apprised, leaving the highway, they entered the forest at the place to which the squire guided them; and know you that these were Don Galvanes Lackland and Agrajes, his nephew, and Olivas who was traveling with them in order to challenge the Duke of Bristol to a duel; and they were bringing with them the maiden whom they had saved from death when the attempt was made to burn her. And when they were near the king, he recognized very well Don Galvanes and said to him:

“Don Galvanes, my good friend, be you very welcome.”

And he went and embraced him, saying:

“I am very pleased to be with you.”

And with the same good grace he received the others, for he was the one man in all the world who received the knights who

came to his court with greatest affection and honor. Don Galvanes said to him:

"Sire, here you see Agrajes, my nephew, and I present him to you as one of the greatest knights in the world; and if he were not such, I would not present him to such a great man as you, whom so many good and valued ones serve."

The king, who had already heard the deeds of Agrajes praised highly, was very happy with him and embraced him, and said:

"Surely, good friend, I owe you great thanks for coming, and I even consider myself blameworthy in not having invited you to do so when I knew your great valor."

The king knew Olivas very well, for he was a member of his retinue; and said:

"Friend Olivas, I haven't seen you for a long time; surely, such a good knight as you would not have wanted to be separated from me."

"Sire," said he, "the things that have happened to me against my will have caused me not to have seen or served you, and now I come not so far removed from them as to avoid having to face much danger and hardship."

Then he related to them how the Duke of Bristol had killed his brother, for which the king was very sorry because he had been a good knight; and he said to Olivas:

"Friend, I hear what you say, and tell it to me thus at my court, and a deadline will be given to the duke to come and make answer."

And taking them with him, leaving the chase, he went with them to the town; and on the way he learned how that maiden whom they were escorting they had saved from death, which they wanted to give her because of Don Galaor; and the king told them how Amadis had gone to look for him, and the great fright which Arcalaus had given them by saying he had killed him. Agrajes was much surprised to hear it, and said to the king:

"Sire, do you know for certain that Amadis is alive?"

"I know it for certain," he said.

And he related how he ascertained it from Brandoyvas and from Grindalaya.

"And you must not doubt it, since I in my own mind am satisfied, for I would yield to no one in desiring for him life and honor."

"So we believe," said Agrajes, "for because of his great worth he well deserves of yours to be loved and esteemed with that zeal with which good men desire what is good."

The king having reached his palace with these knights, the news of their arrival was at once learned in the queen's household, at which many ladies were happy, especially the beautiful Olinda, Agrajes's beloved, who loved him as she did herself; after her it was Mabilia, his sister; who, when she learned of his arrival, left the queen's chamber, and on her meeting Olinda, the latter said to her:

"Lady, aren't you very happy at the arrival of your brother?"

"Yes, I am," said Mabilia, "for I love him very much."

"Then ask the queen to have him come, and you shall see him, because a part of your joy will overflow to those who love you very much."

Mabilia went to the queen and said:

"Madam, it will be well for you to see Agrajes my brother and Don Galvanes my uncle, since they come to serve you, and I have a desire to see them."

"My dear," said the queen, "I shall do this with pleasure, for I am very happy to see two such knights at the court of my lord the king."

And immediately she gave orders to a damsel to ask the king on her behalf to send them to her in order that she might see them; the maiden told him, and the king said to them:

"The queen wishes to see you; it will be well for you to go there."

When Agrajes heard him, he was very joyful, because he was hoping to see that lady of his whom he loved so much and on whom his whole heart and desires were focused; also it pleased Galvanes to see the queen and her duennas and maidens, but not because he was in love with any one of them. So they went immediately into the presence of the queen, who received them very well, and having them sit down before her, she talked with them about many things, showing her esteem for them, as one

who assuredly was one of the ladies of the world who most intelligently spoke with good men; because of which she was highly appreciated and esteemed, not only by those who knew her, but even by those who had never seen her, for humanity holds this high preeminence among people of high degree without their expending for it more than that to which virtue and nobility constrains them; and to those who do the opposite, the opposite comes, for in temporal matters it must be considered worst to be hated and abhorred.

Olinda came to Mabilia thinking that Agrajes would hasten there; but he, who was talking with the queen, was not able to take his eyes off that one on whom his heart was. The queen, who thought he was looking at his sister Mabilia with a desire to speak to her, said:

“Good friend, go to your sister, who has greatly desired to see you.”

Agrajes went to her, and they received each other with that true love of brother and sister who love each other very much, which seldom is in accord with the name; and Olinda greeted him much more with her heart than with her countenance, subordinating reason to will, which likewise is hard to do unless great prudence, with which this maiden was endowed, intervenes. Agrajes had his sister sit between him and his beloved in order that while she was there, he might not shift his gaze away from the latter, for the sight of her gave him great comfort and peace. Thus he was talking with them, but since his thought and his eyes were on his lady, his mind understood very little of what his sister was saying to him. So he gave no reply, nor did he pay attention to her questions. Mabilia, who was very understanding, sensed it immediately, knowing that her brother loved Olinda more than her, and Olinda him, according to what she had told her before and his having seated himself with her in order to talk with Olinda; and as she loved this brother as she loved herself, she thought that since she had to try to please him in everything, she would be able to please him in that more than in anything else, and she said to him:

“Sir and brother, call my uncle, for I would truly like to speak with him.”

Agrajes was very pleased at this and said to the queen: "Madam, be so kind as to send to us here that knight, so that his niece may speak to him."

The queen ordered him to come, and Mabilia went to him and sought to kiss his hands; but he withdrew them and embraced her, and said:

"My niece, let us sit down, and I shall ask you how you happen to be in this land."

"Sir," said she, "let us go over to that window, for I do not want my brother to hear my secret."

And Galvanes said, laughing:

"Certainly I am very glad, for he is not such a one as ought to hear such a good secret as yours and mine."

And they went to the window, and Agrajes stayed with his lady as he wanted; and on seeing himself alone with her, he said:

"My lady, in order to carry out what you bade me do, and because elsewhere my heart found no rest, I have come here to serve you, for the sight of you will be for me a reward for the troubles and mortal desires that I suffer continuously."

"Ah, my dear sir!" said she, "of the pleasure my heart feels at your coming, that Lord who knows all is a witness; for if you were absent from me, I would not be able to have any good time or pleasure, even if I had everything in the world I might want. I think that you came to this land only for me, and I must strive to give you your reward for it."

"Ah, madam!" said Agrajes, "all that you do is done in your own interest, for this life of mine will never cease to be placed at your service against all the others in the world, and all those who regard you as their lady my life will consider interlopers."

"Dear sir," said she, "you are the one who will win out over them all, and you will win me who will never fail you, for so help me God, I am very happy when I see all those who bring news of your great deeds praising you."

Agrajes lowered his eyes with embarrassment on hearing himself praised, and she stopped and said,

"My dear, since you are here, what will you do?"

"As you command," said he, "for I come to this land only to carry out your order."

"Then I wish," said she, "you to consort here with your cousin Amadis, whom I know you regard with a great affection; and if he advises you to join the retinue of the king, do so."

"Lady," said he, "you do me a great favor in everything, for except for what relates to you, there is nothing in which I would have greater pleasure than in submitting my concerns for the counsel of my cousin."

As they were saying this which you hear, the queen called them, and both the knights went before her; and the queen well knew Don Galvanes from the time that she was a princess dwelling in the kingdom of Denmark, of which she was a native, for there, as well as in the kingdom of Norway, he had performed many chivalrous deeds, whence he was reputed to be a very good knight. While the queen was talking with Don Galvanes, Oriana spoke with Agrajes, for she knew him and esteemed him very much, as much on account of knowing that Amadis loved and esteemed him, as because she considered herself belonging to his father and mother, who brought her up very honorably at the time that King Lisuarte left her in their custody, as we have told you. And she said to him,

"My good friend, your arrival has given us great pleasure, especially to your sister, who had so much need of it; for if you knew what I went through with her on account of the news of the death of Amadis, your cousin, you would consider it extraordinary."

"Surely, madam," said he, "my sister ought rightly to feel deeply about such a thing; and not only she, but all those who are of her family; since if he died, there would die the principal leader of all of us and the best knight who ever slung a shield on his neck or took a lance in hand, and his death would be avenged or accompanied by many others."

"May that traitor of an Arcalaus die a bad death," said Oriana, "for he knew well how to cause us great sorrow!"

While they were speaking about this, the knights were summoned on behalf of the king, and they went there; and they found that he wanted to dine, and he had them sit at a table where there were other knights of great worth; and the table having been set, two knights entered the gate of the

palace and knelt before the king, and he greeted them. One of them said:

"Sir, is Amadis of Gaul here?"

"No," said the king, "but we should be very pleased if he were."

"Surely, sir," said the knight, "and I would be very happy to find him, as one who through him expects to recover the joy from which I am now separated."

"And what is your name?" said the king.

He responded:

"Angriote D'Estravaus, and this other man is my brother."

King Arban of North Wales, who heard that that was Angriote, rose from the table and went to him, who was still kneeling before the king, and lifting him by the hand, said:

"Sire, do you know Angriote?"

"No," said the king, "for I have never seen him before."

"Certainly, sire, those who know him consider him one of the best knights at arms in all your land."

The king arose and said to him:

"Good friend, pardon me if I did not do you the honor that your worth merits; the reason for it was that I did not know you, and I am very pleased with you."

"Many thanks," said Angriote, "and so would it please me to serve you."

"Friend," said the king, "where did you know Amadis?"

"Sire, I knew him, but not for long; and when I made his acquaintance it cost me dearly, even to being wounded to the point of death. But he who did me the harm, administered to me the medicine that was most suitable for overcoming it, as one who is the one knight in the world of most good will."

Then he related there all that had befallen him with Amadis just as the story set it forth. The king said to Arban to take Angriote with him and he did so, and seated him at the table beside himself; and they having eaten and speaking of many things, Ardian, Amadis's dwarf, entered; and Angriote, who saw him, said:

"Ah, dwarf, be you welcome! Where did you leave your master Amadis, with whom I saw you?"

"Sir," said the dwarf, "wherever I leave him, he esteems and prizes you highly."

Then he went to the king and all fell silent in order to hear what he would say, and he said:

"Sire, Amadis sends you his regards and sends greetings to all of his friends."

When they heard the news about Amadis, they were exceedingly overjoyed. The king said:

"Dwarf, so help you God, tell us where you leave Amadis?"

"Sire," said he, "I have left him where he is sound and in good health, and if you wish to know more of him, place me before the queen, and I shall tell her."

"One shall not be kept from knowing it because of this," said the king.

And he ordered the queen to come there, who came immediately with as many as fifteen of her duennas and damsels; and there were those present who blessed the dwarf because he was the cause of their seeing their beloveds. The dwarf went before her and said:

"Lady, your knight Amadis orders me to pay his respects to you, and he sends me to tell you that he has found Don Galaor, whom he was seeking."

"Is it true?" said the queen.

"Lady, it is true," said the dwarf, "beyond all doubt; but in his recognition of him there would have been great misfortune if God at the time had not brought there a knight by the name of Balays."

Then he related to them all that had happened, and how Balays had killed the maiden who had brought Amadis and Galaor together in order that they kill each other, for which he was highly praised by the king and all the others. The queen said to the dwarf:

"Friend, where did you leave him?"

"I left him in the castle of that Balays."

"What did you think of Don Galaor?" said the queen.

"Lady," said he, "he is one of the handsomest knights in the world; and if you were to see him together with my lord, it would be hard for you to tell which is which."

"Certainly," said the queen, "I should be very pleased if they were here."

"As soon as they are healed," said the dwarf, "they will come, and here I am to await them."

And he related all that had happened to Amadis while he was waiting for him. The king and the queen and all the knights were very happy with this good news; but Agrajes especially was, and he kept questioning the dwarf. The king requested and ordered those who were there not to leave the court until Amadis and Galaor came, because he intended to hold a very special convocation of nobles; and they agreed and praised him very much; and he ordered the queen to send for the most beautiful damsels and of the highest rank that could be had; for besides her being well attended, because of them there would come many knights of great valor to serve her, to whom he would render great honor and many favors and rewards.

CHAPTER XXIV

CONCERNING HOW AMADIS AND GALAOR AND BALAYS DECIDED TO GO TO KING LISUARTE, AND THE ADVENTURES THAT THEREBY CAME TO THEM.

Amadis and Galaor were in the house of Balays until they were healed of their wounds, and they agreed to go to the court of King Lisuarte before they became involved in other adventures; and Balays, who wanted very much to be of that court, especially having acquaintance with two such knights, begged them to take him with them, to which they willingly agreed; and after hearing mass, they all three armed themselves and started straight for Windsor, where the king was; and they traveled so far that at the end of five days they arrived at a crossroads, where there was a huge tree; and they saw under it a dead knight on a very luxurious bed, and at his feet he had a candle burning and another at his head, and they were made in such a way that no wind, however strong it might be, could extinguish them. The dead knight was in full armor and not covered by anything, and there were many bruises on his head, and he had a piece of a lance thrust into his throat, its iron tip protruding from his neck and both hands placed on it as though he wanted to pull it out; they were greatly astonished to see the knight in such wise. And willingly they would have asked about him, but they saw no one or any place around where they might obtain information.

Amadis said:

“This dead knight is not here in such wise without some good reason, and if we were to tarry, some adventure would not be slow in coming about.”

Galaor said:

"I swear, by the chivalric faith that I hold, not to leave here until I ascertain who this knight is or why he was killed, and to avenge him if reason and justice so warrant it."

Amadis, who was making that journey with the hope of seeing his lady, to whom he had promised to return as soon as he found Galaor, was distressed at this, and said:

"Brother, I am very sorry about what you have promised, for I have the fear of its occasioning for you here a long delay."

"The die is cast," said Galaor.

And dismounting, he seated himself beside the bed, and the other two likewise, for they would not leave him alone. This was probably between nones and vespers. And while they were looking at the knight and Amadis was saying that the latter had put his hands there to draw out the piece of lance while still breathing, and on his expiring, it certainly thus had remained, it was not long before they saw coming along one of the roads a knight and two squires; and one of them was bringing a maiden seated in front of him on a horse, and the other was carrying the knight's shield and helmet; and the maiden was weeping bitterly, and the knight was striking her on her head with his lance, which he was carrying in his hand. Thus they passed near the bed where the knight lay dead; and when the maiden saw the three companions, she said:

"Alas, good knight who lies there dead! If you were alive, you would not consent to my being carried off in such a manner, for first your body would have been exposed to every danger, and the death of these three would be worth more than yours alone."

The knight who was bringing her struck her with more rage with the shaft of his lance, so that blood ran down her face; and they passed by so quickly that it was a wonder.

"Now I tell you," said Amadis, "that I have never seen a knight so vile as this one in seeking to strike the maiden in such fashion; and God willing, I shall not let this violence continue." And he said: "Galaor, brother, if I delay, go on to Windsor, for I shall be there if I can, and Balays will keep you company."

Then mounting his horse, he took up his arms and said to Gandalin:

"Come behind me."

And he went as fast as he could after the knight, who already was far ahead. Galaor and Balays stayed there until night closed in. Then there arrived a knight who was coming along the road on which Amadis had gone, and he came moaning from a leg injury and fully armed; and he said to Galaor and Balays:

"Do you know who the knight is who is going on the run along this road that I have come on?"

"Why do you ask?" they said.

"So that he be damned to hell," said he, "for thus he goes so belligerently that it seems all the devils accompany him."

"And what belligerence did he exhibit to you?" said Don Galaor.

"Because he did not want to tell me," said he, "where he was going in such a hurry, I seized his horse by the bridle and told him to tell me or fight with me; he told me angrily that since I was not letting him go on, it would delay him longer to tell me than to free himself from me by combat; and he withdrawing from me, we galloped toward each other, and he struck me so hard that he brought me and my horse to the ground and put my leg in the condition you see."

They began to laugh, and Don Galaor said:

"Another time restrain yourself by not seeking to ascertain anyone's business against his will."

"What!" said the knight, "are you laughing at me? Certainly I'll fix it so that you will be less moved to do so."

And he went to where the horses were and with his sword hit Galaor's on the face so that he made it rear up and break the reins and run away over the countryside; and the knight tried to do the same to Balays's horse, but he and Galaor took their lances and were going toward him, which deterred him from doing it. The knight went away saying:

"If I showed a lack of restraint toward the other knight and paid for it, so shall you pay for laughing at me."

"May God not help me," said Balays, "if you do not give your horse for the one that you turned loose."

And he quickly mounted, saying to Galaor that he would probably be with him the next day if chance did not prevent him.

"Good-bye," said he.

Don Galaor remained alone with the dead knight, for he commanded his squire to go after his horse, and he remained waiting until more than five hours of the night had passed. Then overcome by sleep, he put his helmet at his head and the shield over him. He fell into a doze, and so he remained for quite a long time; but when he awoke, he did not see any light from the candles that were previously burning, nor did he find the dead knight, at which he was greatly disturbed, and he said to himself: "I certainly ought not to strive for what other good men strive for, since I don't know how to do anything except sleep, and therefore I have failed to carry out my promise; but I shall give myself the penalty that my negligence deserves, for I shall have to look on foot for what, if I had remained here quietly, I would have been able to ascertain without any effort."

And thinking how he might be able to follow the trail of those who came there, he heard a horse neighing, and went in that direction; and when he came to the place where he had heard it, he found nothing. But immediately he again heard another horse somewhat farther away, and he kept following that road; and when he had walked for a bit, dawn came and he saw in front of him two armed knights, and one of them was dismounted and was reading some letters that were inscribed on a stone; after which he said to the other:

"They had me come here gratuitously, for this seems to me of little profit."

And mounting their horses, they were both going away; Galaor called them and said:

"Sir knight, could you tell me who took away a dead knight who was lying under the tree at the crossroads?"

"In truth," said one of them, "we know only that after midnight we saw three damsels and ten squires going along carrying a litter."

"Well, which way were they going?" said Galaor.

They showed him the road, and on their leaving him, he went that way; and in a short while he saw a maiden coming toward him, and he said to her:

"Damsel, by chance do you know who carried a dead knight away from under the tree at the crossroads?"

"If you promise to avenge his death, which was a great sorrow to many men and women because of his great worth, I shall tell you."

"I agree," said he, "for according as it seems to you, one can undertake this vengeance justly."

"That is quite certain," said she; "and now follow me and mount this palfrey, and I'll ride on it behind you."

And she had wanted him to ride in the saddle, but he was in nowise willing to do it; and on his mounting behind her, they went where the damsel guided them. And when at some two leagues away from there they saw a very beautiful castle, the maiden said:

"There we shall find what you seek."

And reaching the gate of the castle, the maiden said:

"Enter, and I shall go away; and tell me your name and where I shall be able to find you?"

"My name," said he, "is Don Galaor, and I think that you will find me at the court of King Lisuarte rather than anywhere else."

She went away and Galaor entered the castle, and saw the dead knight lying in the center of the courtyard, and they were lamenting exceedingly over him; and approaching an old knight who was among those who were there, he asked him:

"Who was the dead knight?"

"Sir," said he, "he was such that the whole world should rightly mourn for him."

"And what was his name?" said Galaor.

"Antebon," said he, "and he was a native of Gaul."

Galaor had greater pity for him than before, and said,

"I beg you to tell me why he was killed."

"Gladly shall I tell you," said he. "This knight came to this land, and on account of his excellence he married that duenna

who is weeping over him, who is the lady of this castle, and they had a very beautiful daughter, who was loved by a knight who dwells near here in another fortress; but she hated him more than anything. And the dead knight was accustomed to go out often to the tree by the crossroads, because there many adventures of knights errant always took place, and he had a desire to correct those that happened unreasonably, in which he performed so well at arms that in these lands he was highly praised; and being there one day, by chance that knight who loved his daughter, passed by, and going by him he went to the castle where the maiden had remained with her mother, gamboling with other women in this courtyard. And taking her by the arm, he went out before they could close the gate, and he took her to his castle; the maiden did naught except weep, and the knight said to her:

'My dear, since I am a knight and love you very much, why will you not take me in marriage, since I have greater wealth and a higher rank than your father?'

'Not willingly,' said she, 'rather I shall hold to an oath I made to my mother.'

'And what is the oath?'

'Not to marry or make love except to a knight praised at arms, like that one whom she married, who is my father.'

'You shall not refrain on this account, for I am no less courageous than your father, and before the third day you shall know it.'

'Then he left the castle armed and mounted, and went to the tree at the crossroads, where at the time he found this knight dismounted and with his arms beside him; and going up to him without speaking, he struck him with the lance through the throat as you see, before he could take up his arms, and he fell to the ground, the blow being mortal; and the knight dismounted then and struck him with the sword all those blows that you see he received until he killed him.'

"So help me God," said Galaor, "the knight was killed without any provocation, and everyone would have sorrow for him. And now tell me why they put him in such wise under the tree at the crossroads."

"Because many knights errant pass by there, and they are told what I have told you on the chance that some one of them might avenge him."

"But why do you leave him there alone?" said Galaor.

"There have always been," said the knight, "four squires with him until last night, when they fled from there because the other knight sent word to threaten them, and therefore we brought him away."

"I am very sorry," said Don Galaor, "not to have seen you."

"What!" said the other, "Were you the one who was sleeping there, lying on his helmet?"

"I am," said he.

"And why did you stay there?" said the knight.

"To avenge that death if with justice it could be done," said Galaor.

"Are you still of that resolve now?"

"Yes, certainly," said he.

"Ah, sir!" said the knight, "may God in his mercy permit you to bring it to a conclusion with honor."

And taking him by the hand, he brought him to the bed and made all those who were mourning be silent, and said to the matron:

"Lady, this knight says that he will avenge the death of your husband to the best of his ability."

She fell at his feet and kissed them, and said:

"Ah, good knight! May God reward you; for he does not have in this land any relative or friend who strives to do so, for he is from a foreign land; but when he was alive, many showed themselves to be his friends."

Galaor said:

"On account of his being from the same land as I am, I have greater desire to avenge him, for I am a native of where he was from."

"Friend," said the matron, "perchance are you the son of the king of Gaul who my lord used to say was at the court of King Lisuarte?"

"I never was in his court," said he, "but tell me who killed him and where I shall be able to find him."

"Good sir," said she, "I shall tell you and I shall guide you there; but I am very much afraid, in view of the danger, that you may fear to attack him, as others whom I have sent there have feared."

"Lady," said he, "for this reason the good are set apart from the evil ones."

The matron ordered two damsels to guide him.

"Madam," said Galaor, "I am on foot."

And he told her how he had lost his horse, and said:

"Order me to be given a steed on which to ride."

"I shall do so gladly," said she, "on condition that if you do not avenge him, you will return the horse to me."

"I agree," said Galaor.

CHAPTER XXV

HOW GALAOR AVENGED THE DEATH OF THE KNIGHT WHOM THEY HAD
FOUND FOULLY MURDERED AT THE TREE BY THE CROSSROADS.

They gave him a horse, and he went away with the maidens; and they journeyed until they reached a forest and saw in it a fortress that was on a very high cliff, and the maidens said to him:

"Sir, there you have to avenge the knight."

"Let us go there," said he, "and tell me the name of the one who killed him."

"Palingues," said they.

At this point they arrived at the castle and saw the gate closed. Galaor knocked, and an armed man coming above the gate, said:

"What do you want?"

"To enter there," said Galaor.

"This gate," said the other, "is only for those to leave who are here."

"Then, where shall I enter?" said he.

"I will show you," said the other; "but I am afraid that you will try in vain and not dare enter."

"So help me God," said Galaor, "I should like to be there within already."

"Now we shall see," said he, "if your strength is as great as your desire; and dismount and come on foot to that tower."

Galaor gave the horse to the maidens and stationed himself where they told him; and it was not long before they saw the knight and another large one well armed on top of the tower; and

they began to unwind a windlass and they lowered a large basket fastened with strong ropes; and they said:

"Sir, if you want to enter here, this is the way."

"If I enter the basket," said Galaor, "will you put me up there safely?"

"Yes, indeed," said they, "but afterwards we do not guarantee your safety."

Then he entered the basket and said:

"Then pull, for I trust in your word."

They began to lift it, and the maidens who were watching said:

"Oh, good knight! God protect you from treachery, for certainly in your heart lies great courage."

Thus the knight hauled Galaor up to the top of the tower; and being aloft, he came out of the basket very agilely and came among them on the tower. They said:

"Knight, you have to swear to help the lord of this castle against those who demand reparations for the death of Antebon, or you will not leave here."

"Is one of you the one who killed him?" said Galaor.

"Why do you ask?" said they.

"Because I would like to make known to him the great treachery that he committed."

"Why are you so mad?" said the knights. "You are in our power and you threaten him? Well, now you will pay for your madness."

And taking their swords in hand, they went for him very angrily; and Galaor grasped his sword, and they gave each other fierce blows on top of their helmets and shields, for the two knights were brave and Galaor, who saw himself in danger, endeavored to bring death to them.

The maidens, who were below, heard the blows that were delivered, and said:

"Oh, God! What can become of the good knight who is already fighting?"

And one of them said:

"Let us not depart from here until we see the culmination of this affair."

Galaor fought so fiercely that he frightened the knights greatly; and he rushed at one of them and gave him a blow with all his might on top of his helmet, so that the sword reached his head and penetrated two inches into it; and jerking it back, he threw him to his knees. Furthermore he began to overwhelm him with such hard blows that no matter what wounds that the other might inflict on him, he did not let up until he killed him; and he turned then to the other, who, as he saw himself alone with him, sought to flee; but he caught up with him, and seizing him by the boss of his shield, he jerked him so hard that he threw him down at his feet; and he struck him such blows with the sword that he was beyond any need of a physician. This having been thus accomplished, he put the sword in its scabbard and threw the knights down from the tower, telling the maidens to look and see whether either of them was Palingues; they said:

“Sir, these are too badly disfigured to recognize them; but we really think that neither one is he.”

Then Galaor came down the stairway of the tower, and entering in a hall, saw a beautiful maiden who was saying:

“Palingues, why did you flee if you were so strong as to kill my father in battle, as you say? Pay attention to this knight who is coming.”

Galaor looked ahead and saw a knight well armed with all weapons, who was trying to open a door to another tower, but was not able; and from the words of the beautiful maiden he knew him to be the one whom he was seeking; and he was pleased and said:

“Palingues, it does not behoove you to flee, nor to summon aid, for even though you summon it, you will not escape anywhere.”

Then he went toward him; and the other, who had no other recourse, turned likewise to attack him, and struck a mighty blow on top of the boss of his shield; hence the sword entered for a palm's length, so that he could not draw it out; and Galaor struck him thus exposed on his right arm, and cut through the sleeve of his coat of mail, and his arm near the elbow, and knocked it to the ground. And Palingues sought to flee to a chamber and fell across the doorway. Galaor took him by the leg and dragged

him along, and took his helmet off his head and struck him with his sword, saying:

"Take this for the treachery that you committed in killing Antebon."

And he split his head open down to the teeth; then he put his sword in its scabbard, and the beautiful maiden who heard those words, came to him and said:

"Oh, good knight! God cause you to live in honor, for you have avenged my father and the violence that was done to me."

Galaor took her by the hand and said:

"Certainly, my lovely dear, one ought to be ashamed to cause sorrow to anyone of such beautiful appearance, who, so help me God, merits much more to be served than angered." Furthermore he said: "Dear lady, are there any ones in the castle whom I may fear?"

"Sir," said she, "only serving people remain here, and all will be at your service."

"Then let us go," said he, "and admit the two damsels of your mother who by her command guided me here."

Then he took her by the hand, and reaching the gate of the castle, they opened it and found there the damsels, who were waiting; and one brought him his horse, and they had them enter; and when they dismounted, they embraced their mistress with great joy and they asked her if the death of her father was avenged.

"Yes," said she, "thanks to God and to this good knight who avenged him, something no other had been able to do."

And then they went together to where Galaor was, who had already taken off his shield and helmet, and they saw him so young and so handsome that they were astonished; and the maiden whom he helped became more fond of him than of anyone else she had ever seen, and went and embraced him, saying:

"Dear sir, I ought to esteem you more than any other person; and I would like very much to know, if you please, who you are."

"I am a native," said he, "of the same country as your father."

"Then tell me your name."

"My name is Galaor," said he.

"Thank God," said she, "that my father was avenged by such a knight, for he mentioned you many times and another good knight, your brother, by the name of Amadis; and he said that you are sons of the king of Gaul, whose vassal he was."

At this time the maidens were going about through the castle searching with the other women in order to give them something to eat; and Galaor and the maiden, called Brandueta, were talking alone about what you hear, and as she was very beautiful and he was covetous of such viands, before the meal came or the table was set, both of them rumbled a bed that was in the hall where they were, thus making her a matron who before that was not, satisfying their desires, which, in such a short space of time, each looking at the other's beautiful youthfulness in bloom, had become very great.

The tables having been set and everything prepared, Galaor and the maiden went out to the courtyard, and under a tree that was there they were served; and Brandueta told him there how Palingues, fearful of him and of his brother Amadis, placed such a heavy guard in that castle, thinking that since Antebon, her father, was a compatriot of theirs, that to them rather than to anyone else was given the vengeance for his death. Afterwards they disported with great pleasure, and because Brandueta was eager to leave the castle and to go see her mother, Galaor, considering it a good idea, decided to go there although it was already late, and at once they mounted their palfreys; and having set out on their way, they arrived two hours after nightfall at the house of the matron her mother; who, through one of the damsels, who had gone on ahead, already knew all that had happened; and so she, like all the other people, men and women, was waiting for them in the courtyard where Antebon lay dead, evincing great joy because his death was avenged so fully and honorably. And Galaor dismounted into the embraces of the lady, who was saying:

"Sir knight, this castle is yours, and we shall all do whatever you command."

Then she had him disarm and brought him to a luxurious room where there was a bed with beautiful bedclothing. There he lodged that night much to his joy, because Brandueta, thinking

that if he were left alone, the great honor that he deserved would not be complete, when she saw a suitable time went to him; and at times sleeping and at other times talking and dallying, they were together until near daybreak, when she returned to her bed.

CHAPTER XXVI

WHAT HAPPENED TO AMADIS WHEN HE WENT IN QUEST OF THE DAMSEL
WHOM THE KNIGHT WAS CARRYING OFF BY FORCE AND ABUSING.

Amadis, who was going after the knight who was abducting the maiden by force and kept striking her, traveled a long way in order to overtake him; and before he overtook him, he met another armed knight on horseback, who said to him:

“What trouble of yours is so great as to make you come at such speed?”

“What is it to you,” said Amadis, “if I go fast or slow?”

“If you are fleeing from someone, I will protect you.”

“I do not need your protection now,” said Amadis.

The knight took his horse by the reins and said:

“You have to tell me; otherwise you are in combat.”

“I like that better,” said Amadis, “because I shall delay longer if I tell you about it than if by combat I get rid of you; for judging by your immoderation, I would not be able to tell you enough so that you would not want to know more.”

The knight drew back and came toward him at the full speed of his horse, and Amadis at him, and the knight struck him forcibly on his shield so that his lance was shattered; and Amadis struck him so hard that he fell to the ground and the horse on top of him, and the knight was injured so badly in one leg that he could hardly stand up. Passing by him, Amadis went ahead on his way. And this was the knight who turned Galaor's horse loose. And Amadis made such an effort to hurry that he overtook the knight who was taking away the maiden, and said:

"A while ago you were immoderate, and now I ask you not to be."

"And what immoderate act did I commit?" said the knight.

"The greatest that you could," said Amadis, "for you are abducting the maiden and moreover you beat her."

"It seems," said the knight, "that you seek to admonish me."

"I am not admonishing you," said he, "but I tell you what is for your own good."

"I believe it would be better for you to return to where you came from."

Amadis became furious, and went for the squire and said to him:

"Release the maiden, or you die."

The squire, fearful, put her on the ground. The knight said:

"Sir knight, you have done a very insane thing."

"Now we shall see," said Amadis.

And lowering their lances, they attacked each other in such wise that they were shattered, and the knight went down to the ground; and as soon as he fell he got up quickly, and Amadis went toward him to strike him down in collision with his horse's chest. The other one said:

"Stop, sir, for because of my being immoderate, don't you be, and have mercy on me."

"Then swear," said Amadis, "that you will not force a matron or a maiden against her will to do anything."

"Very willingly," said the knight.

When Amadis came up to him to receive his oath, the other, who had his sword in his hand, struck with it the belly of his horse which caused it to fall with him. Amadis came out from under it immediately, and grasping his sword, charged at him so furiously that it was a marvel. And the knight said:

"Now I shall make you see that you were very unlucky to come here."

Amadis, who was very wrathful, did not answer, but struck him on the helmet below the visor, and cut through it until his sword reached his face; so that he cut off his nose and half his face, and the knight fell; but he, not content, chopped off his head; and putting his sword in the scabbard, went to the maiden

at a time when night had already fallen and the moon was shining bright. She said to him:

"Sir knight, God give you honor for the help you have rendered me, and more if you finish it, which is to escort me to the castle to which I should like to go; for I wouldn't set out on the road at this hour for anything."

"Maiden," said he, "I shall escort you gladly."

At this juncture, Gandalin arrived, and Amadis said to him:

"Give me that horse of the knight, for he killed mine, and you take the maiden on the palfrey, and let us go on to where she may guide us."

So they left that road to take another that the maiden knew. Amadis asked her if she knew the name of the dead knight by the tree at the crossroads. She said she did, and she told him all about him and the reason for his death, which she knew well. At this point they arrived at a river bank. It now being midnight, and because the maiden was very sleepy, at her request they agreed to sleep there a while; and dismounting from the beasts, they put Gandalin's cloak down for her to sleep on; and Amadis, lying on his helmet, stretched out near her and Gandalin on the other side. Then while they were all sleeping, as you hear, there arrived by chance a knight who was coming downstream along the bank; and as soon as he saw them, while mounted he bent over them and put the tip of his lance between the arms of the maiden and woke her; and as she saw the armed knight, she thought it was the one who was protecting her, and getting up sleepily, said:

"Sir, do you want to go?"

"Yes, I do," said the knight.

"In the name of God," said she.

The knight leaned down and taking her by the arm mounted her in front of him and began to go.

"What is this?" said she, "It is better for the squire to carry me."

"He will not carry you," said he, "since you have wished to go with me."

She looked behind her and saw Amadis, who was sleeping soundly, and she shouted:

"Alas, sir, help me, for someone I do not know is taking me away!"

The knight spurred his horse and went away with her as fast as he could. Amadis awoke on hearing the shouts of the maiden, and saw that the knight was taking her away, at which he was greatly distressed; and he quickly called Gandalin to give him his horse, and in the meantime he laced his helmet and took up his sword and lance. And mounting, he went where he had seen the other go; and he had not journeyed far when he found himself among some trees of dense foliage, on account of which he lost his way, for he knew not where to go; although he was the most restrained knight in the world, great fury against himself arose in him, and he said:

"Now I say that the damsel can well say that I brought her as much harm as help; for if I defended her from one ravisher, I have left her in the power of another."

And so he journeyed quite a distance through the countryside, doing his horse more harm than it deserved; and in a short while he heard a horn sounding, and he kept going toward that place, thinking that the knight had come there; and it was not long before he discovered ahead of him a beautiful fortress on a high hill, and it was well guarded; and on arriving at it, he saw its wall to be high and its tower strong, but its gate it had well locked. The watchmen, who saw him, asked him what sort of man he was to go about armed at such an hour.

"I am a knight," said he.

"And what do you seek?" said they.

"I seek," said he, "a knight who took a maiden away from me."

"We have not seen him," said those above.

Amadis went around the castle; and on the other side he found a postern gate open, and he saw on foot the knight who had carried away the maiden; and his men who were unsaddling his horse, which otherwise could not go through the gateway. Amadis thought it was he, and said:

"Sir knight, wait a moment and do pay us heed. First tell me if you are the one who took my maiden away from me."

"If I carried her away," said he, "you protected her poorly."

"You took her from me by deceit," said Amadis, "for otherwise it would not have been so easy to do it; and certainly you were not polite there, nor did you acquire there any knightly honor."

The knight said to him:

"Friend, I have the maiden, who of her own free will wanted to come with me; I maintain that I did not force her."

"Sir knight," said Amadis, "show me her, and if she says that, I shall stop demanding her."

"I shall show her to you tomorrow inside there, if you wish to enter the castle in accordance with its custom."

"And what custom is that?"

"Tomorrow you will be told, and you will not regard it lightly if you risk it."

"If I should wish to see it now, would I be welcomed within?"

"No," said the knight, "because it is night; if you wait until daybreak, we shall see what you will do there."

And closing the gate, he withdrew inside. And Amadis withdrew to the shelter of some trees, where he dismounted and remained talking with Gandalin about many things until morning; and at sunrise, he saw the gate open; and mounting his horse he came up to it and saw stationed there a knight fully armed on a big horse. And the gatekeeper, who was watching, said to him:

"Sir knight, do you want to enter here?"

"I do," said Amadis, "for I come here for that purpose."

"Then first I shall tell you," said the gatekeeper, "the custom so that you may not complain. And I tell you therefore that before you enter, you will have to fight with that knight, and if he overcomes you, you will swear to carry out the commands of the lady of this castle; if you don't, they will throw you in an evil prison, and even though you win, we shall not let you leave, and you will have to go forward where you will find at another gate two other knights. And farther on two more knights, and with them all you have to fight under the same stipulation as at first; and if you are so excellent as to do yourself honor, besides winning great prestige at arms, you will be adjudged in the right in whatever you demand."

"Certainly," said Amadis, "if you speak truly, he who is so adjudged here would pay dearly for it; but however that may be, I still want to see my damsel who is being held here, if I can."

Then he went inside the castle gate, and the knight shouted for him to protect himself, and charged at him, and Amadis at him, they striking each other on their shields with their lances; and the knight broke his lance, and Amadis brought him to the ground so violently that the knight broke his right arm; and Amadis turned back to him, and putting his lance on his chest, said:

"You die, unless you admit defeat."

The knight said:

"Sir, mercy."

And he showed him the broken arm. Amadis passed by him and went forward, and saw at the other gate two armed knights and they said to him:

"Enter, knight, if you wish to fight with us; if not, you will be imprisoned without reason."

"I will surely fight," said he, "rather than surrender."

And covering himself with his shield, he lowered his lance and charged them on the run, and they him; and the one missed his target and the other struck him on the shield so that he pierced it and wounded him in the left arm and broke his own lance into pieces. Amadis struck him so hard that he beat down him and his horse to the ground, and he was so stunned from his fall that he fainted; and he charged at the other one, who had remained on horseback, and he met him with the lance without its tip, which had remained in the other's shield, on his helmet in such wise that he knocked it off his head; and the knight struck him at a slant on the boss of his shield; so that he did not receive the shock and the lance remained there whole. And grasping their swords, they struck each other powerful blows. And Amadis said to him:

"You, knight, are certainly mad to fight with your head unprotected."

"My head," said he, "I shall guard better than you yours."

"Now that remains to be seen," said Amadis.

Then he struck him on top of his shield such a mighty blow that the sword pierced it, and the knight lost his stirrups and would have fallen. Amadis, who saw him thus embarrassed, hit him with the flat of his sword on the head, from which he was quite stunned; and Amadis put his hand on his shoulder and said:

“Knight, you protect your head very poorly, for you would have lost it if the blow had been struck directly.”

The knight let his sword fall from his hand and said:

“I don’t want to risk my body with any more madness, since already you have given it back to me once; and go forward.”

Amadis demanded of him his lance, which lay on the ground, and he gave it to him; and reaching the other gate, he saw within the castle matrons and maidens up on the wall, and heard them saying:

“If this knight passes the bridge in spite of the three, he will have performed the greatest feat of chivalry in the world.”

Then the three knights very well armed and on beautiful, big horses came out to him, and one of them said:

“Knight, surrender or swear that you will do the bidding of the lady of the castle.”

“I shall not surrender,” said Amadis, “as long as I can defend myself; nor do I know what the will of the lady is.”

“Then protect yourself now,” said they.

And all together they went to attack so fiercely that they might have overthrown him with his horse. Amadis struck one of them so hard that he put the iron tip of the lance through his side; and there he broke his lance, just as the others broke theirs on him; and grasping their swords, they attacked each other so fiercely that those who were watching them were greatly astounded, for the three knights were valiant and skilled in arms, and that one whom they had before them did not want shame for himself. The battle was ferocious, but it did not last long, for Amadis, showing his strength, struck them such blows that he caused his sword to reach their flesh and their heads; so in a short time he had them in such shape that they couldn’t stand it, and they fled to the castle and he behind them; and as he was pressing them hard, one of them got off his horse, and Amadis said to him:

"It's no use for you to dismount, for I shall not let you be if you do not concede defeat."

"Certainly, sir, I shall do that gladly," said he, "and all those who fought with you ought to be declared defeated in the light of what you are accomplishing."

And he gave him his sword. Amadis returned it to him and went behind the others, whom he saw enter a great hall; and he saw at its door a good twenty matrons and maidens, and the most beautiful of them said:

"Hold, sir knight, for you have done much."

Amadis stood still and said:

"Lady, let them admit defeat."

"And what difference does it make to you?" said the duenna.

"Because they told me at the gate that it would be necessary for me to kill or to conquer, for in no other way would I obtain my right."

"But they told you," said the matron, "that if you entered here in spite of them, that they would render you justice on what you demanded; and now tell us what will please you."

"I demand," said he, "a maiden that a knight took from me along a riverbank where at night I was sleeping, and he brought her to this castle in spite of her wishes."

"Now, sit down," said she, "and let the knight come and tell us his reason and you, yours, and each one shall have his rights; and dismount for a bit while the knight is coming."

Amadis got off his horse and the matron had him sit beside her, and said to him:

"Do you know a knight called Amadis?"

"Why do you ask?" said he.

"Because all this guard that you see in this castle is placed for him; and indeed I tell you that if he should enter here, he would in no wise leave until he had acquitted himself of a thing that he promised."

"And what was that?" said he.

"I shall tell you," said the duenna, "on condition that with all your power, you make him give up what he promised, whether by force of arms, or in any other manner, since he did not do it with justice."

Amadis said:

"I tell you, madam, that whatever thing Amadis has promised — provided he has — with all my might, I shall make him give up."

She, who did not understand to what end it was said, replied:

"Then now know you, sir knight, that that Amadis of whom I am talking promised Angriote D'Estravaus that he would cause him to win his beloved, and this promise you must make him rescind, since such a union, God and reason desire that, rather than by force, should be accomplished voluntarily."

"Certainly," said Amadis, "you are right, and if I can, I shall make him give it up."

The lady was very pleased. But he was no less happy, because by carrying out his promise he freed himself from it.

"And tell me," said he, "are you by chance, lady, the one whom Angriote loves?"

"Sir," said she, "I am."

"Certainly, madam," said he, "I consider Angriote one of the finest knights in the world, and to my thinking, there is not a lady of such high degree as not to be constrained to take pride in having such a knight, and this I do not say in order not to abide by what I have promised, but I say it because he is a better knight than he who gave the promise."

CHAPTER XXVII

HOW AMADIS FOUGHT WITH THE KNIGHT WHO HAD STOLEN THE MAIDEN
WHILE HE WAS SLEEPING, AND HOW HE DEFEATED HIM.

While they were talking about this, there came to them a knight fully armed except his head and hands. He was tall and muscular and sufficiently well-built to have great strength; and he said to Amadis:

“Sir knight, they tell me you demand a maiden whom I brought here; and I did not use force on you, for she wanted to come with me rather than remain with you; and so I maintain that I don’t have any reason to give her up to you.”

“Then show her to me,” said Amadis.

“I do not have any reason to show her to you,” said the knight, “but if you tell me she should not be mine, I shall prove to you in combat that she should.”

“Certainly,” said Amadis, “I shall prove to anyone that you should not have her by rights, if the maiden does not confirm it.”

“Then you are in battle,” said the knight.

“I am quite pleased,” said Amadis.

Now know you that this knight was called Gasinan, and he was the uncle on her father’s side of Angriote’s lady love and was the relative for whom in the whole world she had most affection. And on account of his being the best knight at arms of his family, she conducted her affairs in accordance with his advice. And they brought this Gasinan a big horse, and he took up his arms. And Amadis likewise mounted his horse and took his arms, and the lady, whose name was Grovenesa, said:

"Uncle, I would praise you if this battle were not to occur, for I would have great sorrow if anything bad should happen to either one of you, for you are the man whom I esteem more than anyone else in the world; and this knight swore to me that he would have Amadis freed from what he promised Angriote."

"Niece," said Gasinan, "How do you think that he or another could dissuade the best knight in the world from carrying out his will?"

Grovenesa said to him:

"So help me God, I consider this one the best knight in the world, and if it were not so, he would not have entered here by force of arms."

"Why," said Gasinan, "do you so esteem him for getting past those who guarded the gates? Certainly he performed well as a knight, but because of that I do not fear him very much; and if there is greatness in him, now you will see it; and may God help me not if I release the maiden as long as I can defend her."

Grovenesa turned away, and they started toward each other at top speed of their horses, with lances lowered, and struck each other on their shields so fiercely that they were broken at once, and they collided with shields and helmets so hard that it was a wonder; and Gasinan, who had less strength, went out of his saddle, and fell hard; but he got up at once like one who was of great strength and courage, and grasped his sword, and kept going toward a stone post that stood high in the center of the courtyard; for there where he was he thought that Amadis would trample him with his horse, and if he should approach him, that he would be able to kill him. Amadis rushed at him to attack him, and Gasinan struck with his sword the face of Amadis's horse, at which Amadis was very angry and endeavored to strike him with all his might, and Gasinan stepped aside and the blow fell on the post, which was of hard stone, so that he cut off a piece of it; but his sword was broken into three pieces. When he saw it thus, he had great concern, as one who was in danger of death and had nothing else with which to defend himself; and he dismounted as quickly as he could. Gasinan, who saw him thus, said:

"Knight, concede the maiden to be mine; if not, you are dead."

"That will not be," said he, "if she does not first say that it pleases her."

Then Gasinan rushed at him and began to strike him all over as one who was of great strength and had the desire to win the maiden. But Amadis covered himself so well with his shield and with such caution that he received most of the blows on it, and others he made him miss. And sometimes he struck him with the hilt of the sword, which remained in his hand, such blows as made him turn back and forth, and often twisted the helmet on his head. Thus they went on a long while with the fight, while the duennas and maidens marveled how Amadis could stand it without having anything with which to strike; but as soon as he beheld holes in his coat of mail in many places and himself at a disadvantage with respect to his shield, he staked everything on a life or death gamble, and rushed with great fury at Gasinan, so quickly that the other could not, or did not, have time to strike him; and they embraced each other, each striving to overthrow the other; and so they continued for a while, for Amadis never let him get loose; and being near the big rock that was in the courtyard, Amadis put forth all his strength, which was greater than anyone would have thought he had, since he was not of large physique, and caused him to fall on top of it so hard that Gasinan was completely stunned, so that he didn't stir hand or foot. Amadis took the sword quickly, which had fallen from his hand, and cutting the laces of the helmet, removed it from his head; and now the knight regained consciousness somewhat but not in such wise as to be able to get up, and Amadis said to him:

"Sir knight, you have caused me much trouble without any right, and now I shall avenge myself for it."

And he raised the sword as if he were about to strike him. And Grovenesa raised a great outcry, saying:

"Alas, good knight, for God's sake have mercy! Let it not be so!"

And she went up to him weeping.

When Amadis saw that it was distressing her so greatly, he pretended even more to be about to kill him, and said:

"Lady, do not beg me to release him, for he has caused me so much distress that in nowise shall I desist from cutting off his head."

"Ah, sir knight!" said she. "In heaven's name, order whatever be your will that we do, so that he not die, and immediately it will be granted."

"Lady," said he, "in the world there is nothing for which I would desist, except for two things, if you wish to do them."

"What are they?"

"Give me the maiden," said he, "and swear to me as a lady of good faith that you will go to the first court that the King Lisuarte holds, and there you will grant me whatever favor I may ask."

Gasinan, who was now more conscious, and saw himself in such great danger, said:

"Ah, niece, have mercy for heaven's sake and don't let me be killed; be sorry for me and do what the knight says!"

She promised what Amadis asked. Then he left the knight and said:

"Lady, I shall comply faithfully as regards the boon that I promised you, and keep to your oath and do not fear that I shall demand anything that might be against your honor."

"Many thanks," said she, "for you are one who will do everything right."

"Then now let the maiden whom I am seeking come forth."

The duenna ordered her to come, and she went and knelt before Amadis and said:

"Certainly, sir, you have endured much anxiety on my account; and although Gasinan took me away by deceit, I know that he loves me well, since he would rather fight than give me up in any other way."

"Dear lady," said Gasinan, "if it appears to you that I loved you, so help me God, great truth is evident to you, and I earnestly beg you to remain with me."

"I shall do so," said she, "if this knight is willing."

"Certainly, lady," said Amadis, "You choose one of the good knights whom you would be able to find; but if this is not agreeable

to you, then tell me and do not blame me for anything that on that account may befall you."

"Sir," said she, "I give great thanks to God because you leave me here."

"In the name of God," said Amadis.

Then he demanded his horse; and Grovenesa had wanted him to stay there that night, but he did not do so; and mounting his horse, having taken leave of her, he ordered Gandalin to bring the pieces of the sword. He left the castle; but first Gasinan begged him to take his sword, and he thanked him very much for it and took it; and Grovenesa had a lance given him; and thus he started out on the direct road to the crossroads tree, for there he thought he would find Galaor and Balays.

CHAPTER XXVIII

CONCERNING WHAT HAPPENED TO BALAYS, WHO WENT IN SEARCH OF
THE KNIGHT WHO HAD CAUSED DON GALAOR TO LOSE HIS HORSE.

Balays of Carsante went after the knight who turned loose Don Galaor's horse, who already was a long distance away; and although he hurried greatly to overtake him, night overtook him first, which was very dark, and he traveled on until midnight. Then he heard some voices in front of him on a riverbank and went thither, and found five thieves who had a maiden whom they were seeking to rape; and one of them was dragging her by the hair to put her among some rocks, and all were armed with battle axes and coats of mail. Balays, who saw it, shouted:

"Churls, base ones, scoundrels; what do you want of the maiden? Let her go; if you don't, you all will be dead."

And he charged at them and they at him; and he struck one with the lance on his chest and the iron of his lance penetrated through to his back, in such a way that the lance was broken and the thief was dead. But the four attacked him in such wise that his horse fell at once among them, and he came out from under it as quickly as he could, like one who was a courageous and excellent knight; and he grasped his sword and the thieves charged at him and struck him from all sides, wherever they best could, and he struck the one whom he found closest at hand, on top of his head, and cleaved it to the neck and struck him down dead; and allowing his sword to hang by its chain, he picked up very quickly the axe, which had fallen from the churl's grasp, and went toward the others, who seeing the mighty blows that he was delivering, took refuge in a quaking bog that had a

narrow entrance; but first he reached and struck one of them with the axe on the back, which he cut, both flesh and bones, down to the loins; and passing over him he went to the two who had sought refuge in the bog, and there was a big fire there, and the thieves placed themselves on the other side, turning their faces toward him, for there was nowhere to flee to. Balays covered himself with his shield and went for them, and the thieves struck him great blows on top of his helmet, to that they made him put one hand on the ground; but he got up bravely, as one who was of great courage, and gave one of them with the axe such a wound that he knocked off half of his head and flung it into the fire. The other one, when he saw himself alone, let the axe fall from his hands, and stock still before him on his knees, said:

"Oh, sir, in heaven's name, mercy! don't kill me, for I have been engaged so long in this evil occupation that I would lose my soul along with my body."

"I leave you alive," said Balays, "since your prudence suffices for you to recognize that in such a life you were damned, so that you may take up that one whereby you will be restored to the opposite category."

This thief did so, for thereafter he was a good man of good life and was a hermit.

This episode over, Balays came out of the bog to where the maiden was, who was very happy to see him uninjured; and she thanked him profoundly for what he had done for her in freeing her from those evil men who were seeking to abuse her; and he asked her how those bad men had taken her.

"In a mountain pass," said she, "which is above this forest, and which they guard; and there they killed my two squires who were traveling with me, and they brought me here to hold me captive in order to do their will."

Balays saw that the maiden was very beautiful, and he became greatly taken with her, and said:

"Surely, madam, if they held you captive in the way your beauty holds me, you never would have gotten away from there."

"Sir knight," said she, "if I, had I lost my chastity the way that the thieves were contriving, would have been rendered

blameless by its having been by force, were I to yield it up to you willingly, how would I or could I be excused? What you have done up to now was the act of a good knight; I beg of you that your strength at arms be accompanied by the restraint and virtue to which you are obligated."

"My good lady," said he, "disregard entirely the words that I spoke to you, for it befits knights to serve and to covet maidens and to want them for wives and mistresses, and it befits maidens to keep from erring as you seek to do; because whereas at the beginning we value highly the attainment of what we desire of them, they are much more highly regarded and esteemed by us when they defend themselves with discretion and virtue by resisting our evil appetites, and by protecting that which, if lost, they would have nothing left worthy of praise."

The maiden bent over to kiss his hand and said:

"To the same degree that one should consider greater this saving of my honor, which you effected, than that of my life, the difference between the two acts is greater."

"Well now," said Balays, "what do you command me to do?"

"That we move away from these dead men," said she, "until day comes."

"How can that be?" said he, "for they killed my horse."

"We shall go," said she, "on this palfrey of mine."

Then Balays mounted and took the maiden behind him, and they went some distance away, where they found a meadow within a bow's shot of a road, and there they took shelter while speaking of various things, and Balays related to her the reason why he came after the knight. And morning having come, he armed himself, they mounted the palfrey and went to the road, but did not see a trace of anyone's having gone along there; and he said to the damsel:

"My dear, what shall I do with you, for I cannot in any way free myself of this quest?"

"Sir," said she, "Let us go along this highway until we find some town; and I remaining there, you will go ahead on the palfrey."

So proceeding onward from there, as you hear, in a short while they saw a knight coming who had one leg on his horse's

neck, and when he came nearer he put it in the stirrup, and spurring the horse he came up to Balays and gave him such a lance thrust on his shield that he hurled him and the maiden to the ground, and said:

“My dear, I am sorry you fell; but I shall take you to where amends will be made, for this man is not worthy to escort you.”

Balays got up very angry and recognized that that was the knight he was seeking, and putting his shield in front of himself, with his sword in hand, he said:

“Sir knight, you were fortunate that I lost my horse, for so help me God, I would have made you pay for the villainous act that you committed last night.”

“What,” said the knight, “were you one of those who were laughing at me? I shall certainly cause the ridicule to fall on you.”

And he rushed at him with upraised lance and gave him such a blow on the shield that he pierced it. Balays severed the lance near his hand; and the knight grasped his sword and went and struck him a blow on top of his helmet that caused the sword to penetrate it a good two inches; and Balays leaned forward and laying hands on his shield, he pulled on it so hard that the saddle turned and the knight fell down in front of him. And Balays bent over him, and taking the laces off his helmet, he gave him on the face and the head heavy blows with the hilt of his sword, so that he stunned him. And as he saw that there was no defense left in him, he took the sword and struck it so many blows on a rock that he broke it to pieces, and put his own in the scabbard; and he took the knight's horse and put the maiden on her palfrey, and went on his way to the tree by the crossroads; and they found on the way some habitation belonging to two matrons who were leading a saintly life; where they took something to eat from their poverty, and these matrons gave many blessings to Balays because he had killed those thieves, who had been doing much harm throughout that land. So they pursued their way until they reached the tree by the crossroads, where they found Amadis, who had just then arrived, and it was not long before they saw Don Galaor coming.

Then together there the three took great joy in having finished their adventures so greatly to their honor, and they agreed to lodge that night in a castle near there of a very honorable knight, who was the father of the maiden whom Balays was bringing, and so they did; and on their arrival at the castle, they were very well received and provided with all that they needed; and next morning, after they had heard mass, they armed themselves, and mounting their horses, leaving the maiden in the castle with her father, they took the direct road to Windsor. Balays gave the horse to Don Galaor, as he had promised it to him; but he would not take it, as much on account of having lost his own only in his efforts to recover it, as for Balays's having already acquired another.

CHAPTER XXIX

HOW KING LISUARTE HELD A CONVOCATION OF NOBLES, AND CONCERNING WHAT HAPPENED THERE.

With the news that the dwarf brought to King Lisuarte about Amadis and Don Galaor, the king was very happy, having the intention of holding the most honorable convocation of nobles and of the greatest number of knights that was ever held in Great Britain, pending the arrival of Amadis and Galaor.

One day Olivas appeared before the king to complain about the Duke of Bristol, who had treacherously slain a cousin of his. The king, having taken counsel with those who knew the most about this, set one month as a deadline for the duke to come and answer, and sent word to him that if perchance the duke should want to put two knights with himself into this duel, Olivas had on his side such knights as to be able with complete equality of lineage and excellence to maintain right and justice. This done, the king gave order that all his high nobles be notified to be with him at a court convocation on Saint Mary's Day, September eighth; and the queen likewise to notify all the ladies and maidens of high rank.

Then everyone being in the palace talking very happily about the things that must be arranged for the court convocation, not knowing or thinking how at such times fickle Fortune wishes to inflict cruel injury by lying in wait, in order that it be well-known by all that men's intentions are not realized with that certainty that they hope for, there happened to enter the palace a strange damsel quite well dressed and an elegant youth who accompanied

her; and dismounting from a palfrey, she asked which was the king; he said:

“Damsel, I am.”

“Sire,” said she, “you certainly seem a king in appearance, but I do not know whether you are at heart.”

“Maiden,” said he, “this you now see, and when for the other you test me, you will know.”

“Sire,” said the maiden, “you respond according to my wish, and may you remember this word that you give me in front of so many nobles, because I wish to test the strength of your heart when I need to; and I have heard that you intend to hold a court in London in September on Saint Mary’s Day, and there where there will be present many nobles, I wish to see whether you are such as rightly ought to be the overlord of such a great realm and of such famous knights.”

“Maiden,” said the king, “since my deeds will prove my power better than my words, the more pleasure I shall have, the more nobles be present there.”

“Sire,” said the maiden, “if your deeds are like your words, I shall consider myself very happy; and may you be commended to God.”

“God be with you, maiden,” said the king.

And thus all the knights greeted her.

The damsel went her way. And the king remained talking with his knights; but I say to you that there was no one there whom what the king had promised did not worry greatly, they fearing that the damsel would want to put his person in some great danger; and the king was such that however great the danger might be, he would not fear it from dread of being put to shame. And he was so beloved by all his people that they would have preferred to be exposed to great danger and shame rather than to see him suffer it; and they did not consider it proper that a prince so great should give as a boon without further thought his promise to a strange woman, being obliged to fulfill it and without assurance concerning what she intended to demand.

Thus having spoken of many things, and the queen being about to retire to her own palace, three knights entered the gate,

two fully armed, and one unarmed, and the latter was tall and well built and his head almost entirely hoary, but for his age ruddy and handsome. He carried in his hands a small coffer; and he asked for the king, and they pointed him out to him; then he descended from his palfrey and went and knelt before him with the coffer in his hands, and said:

"God save you, sire, as the one prince in the world who has made the best promise, if you fulfill it."

The king said:

"And what promise is this, or why do you mention it to me?"

"I have been told," said the knight, "that you were seeking to maintain chivalry at the highest level and honor possible; and because so few are the princes who strive to do so, your activities are to be praised much more than theirs."

"Certainly, knight," said the king, "I shall keep that promise as long as I live."

"May God permit you to carry it out," said the knight, "and because I have heard that you were about to hold court in London with many nobles, I bring to you here what befits such a man as you and such a festive occasion."

Then opening the coffer, he took from it a crown of gold so well wrought and with so many stones and pearl trimmings that all were greatly amazed to see it; and it certainly seemed that it ought not to be placed on any head except that of a very great lord. The king looked at it carefully with the desire to have it for himself; and the knight said to him:

"Believe me, sire, that this creation is such that not one of us many today knows how to work in gold and to set stones would be able to evaluate it."

"So help me God," said the king, "that is my opinion."

"Then," said the knight, "however rare its workmanship and beauty may be, it has intrinsically something else that is to be valued much more highly, and this is that the king on whose head it is placed will always have his honor maintained and enhanced; and so had the one for whom it was made until the day of his death. And since then no king has ever had it on his head; and if you, sire, wish to have it, I shall give it to you as

a thing that will be a protection for my head, which I am in danger of losing."

The queen, who was in the foreground, said:

"Certainly, sir, such a jewel as this greatly befits you; give for it all that the knight may ask."

"And you, madam," said he, "shall buy from me a very beautiful mantle that I am bringing."

"Yes," said she, "very willingly."

Then he drew out of the coffer a mantle, the richest and best made that was ever seen, for besides the stones and pearl ornaments of great value that there were on it, there were depicted on it all the birds and animals in the world, so subtly that it was regarded as a marvel. The queen said:

"So help me God, friend, it seems that this cloth was made by no other hand than that of the Lord who is all-powerful."

"Certainly, madam," said the knight, "you can well believe infallibly that this cloth was made by the hand and advice of man; but it would be very difficult now to find anyone to make another like it." And he said: "Furthermore I tell you that this mantle is more suitable for a married woman than for an unmarried one, for it has such virtue that the day that she has it under her roof there cannot be any hard feelings between her and her husband."

"Certainly," said the queen, "if that is true, it cannot be bought for any price."

"You cannot see the truth of that unless you possess the mantle," said the knight.

And the queen, who loved the king very much, wanted to have the mantle in order that between them anger might be avoided; and she said:

"Sir, I shall give you for this mantle whatever you wish."

And the king said:

"Ask for the mantle and for the crown whatever you please."

"Sire," said the knight, "I am going with great sorrow summoned by that one whose prisoner I am, and I have no time to stop nor to find out how much these gifts are worth; but I shall be with you at the court convocation in London, and meanwhile let the crown remain with you and the mantle with the queen,

on condition that you give me for them what I may demand of you, or else that you return them to me, and you will have them already tried on and tested; for I well know that you will pay me with better grace then than now."

The king said:

"Knight, now believe that you shall have what you may demand, or the mantle and the crown."

The knight said:

"Knights and ladies: Do you hear well what the king and queen promise me, that they will give me back my crown and my mantle or whatever I ask of them."

"We all hear," said they.

Then the knight bade farewell and said:

"May God be with you, for I go to the harshest prison that man ever had."

And one of the two armed knights took off his helmet while he was there, and he seemed quite young and handsome; but the other was unwilling to do so, and held his head somewhat low; he appeared so big and so out of proportion that there was no knight in the house of the king who was his equal by a foot. So all three went away, the mantle and the crown remaining in the king's possession.

CHAPTER XXX

HOW AMADIS AND GALAOR AND BALAYS CAME TO THE PALACE OF KING LISUARTE, AND WHAT HAPPENED TO THEM AFTERWARDS.

Having left the maiden's castle, Amadis and Galaor, and Balays with them, pursued their journey until they arrived at the court of King Lisuarte, where they were received with such honor and joy by the king and the queen, and by all those of the court, as never in any other place were other knights received where they arrived: Galaor, because they had never seen him, and knew of the great feats at arms that he had performed through hearsay; and Amadis, on account of the news of his death that had reached there, for as he was esteemed by all, they did not think they would see him alive. Therefore so many were the people who came out to see them that they could scarcely go through the streets or enter the palace. And the king took all three of them and had them disarmed in a chamber, and when the people saw them disarmed, so handsome and spruce and so young, they cursed Arcalaus, who had sought to kill two such brothers, thinking that the one would not live without the other. The king gave orders to the queen through a page that she receive very graciously those two knights, Amadis and Galaor, who were going to see her. Then he took them with him, and Agrajes, walking with his arms about them, and so happy with them that he could not have been more so, and he went with them to the queen's chamber, and Don Galvanes and King Arban with him; and when they entered the door, Amadis saw Oriana, his lady, and his heart leaped from great pleasure, but no less did she feel, so that whoever was looking on could have

recognized it very clearly; and although she had heard much news about him, she had remained uncertain whether he was alive. And when she saw him healthy and happy, remembering the sorrow and grief she had had for him, involuntarily tears came into her eyes; leaving the queen before her there she paused a bit and wiped her eyes, for no one saw her, because all were intent on looking at the knights. Amadis knelt before the queen, taking Galaor by the hand, and said:

“Madam, here you see the knight whom you sent me to find.”

“I am very happy about it,” said she.

And taking him by the hand, she embraced him, and then Galaor.

The king said:

“Lady, I wish that you share with me.”

“What?” said she.

“That you give me Galaor,” said he, “for Amadis is yours.”

“Certainly, sir,” said she, “You do not ask for little, for never was such a great boon given in Great Britain; but it is only just, for you are the best king that has reigned in it.”

And she said to Galaor:

“Friend, what do you think I should do, for the king my lord asks me for you.”

“Madam,” said he, “I think that everything that such a great lord asks for should be given him if it can be had, and you have me to serve you in this and in all things except the will of my brother and lord Amadis, for I shall not do anything except what he commands.”

“I am very pleased,” said the queen, “to command your brother, for then I shall have a share in you, as well as in him who is mine.”

Amadis said to him:

“Brother, carry out the queen’s mandate, for I beg you to do so, and such is now my pleasure.”

Then Galaor said to the queen:

“Madam, since I am freed from this other’s will — one which has so much power over me — I now put myself at your mercy to do with me whatever pleases you most.”

She took him by the hand and said to the king:

"Sir, I now give you Don Galaor, for whom you have asked me, and I tell you to esteem him for the great excellence that there is in him, for it will not be slight."

"So help me God," said the king, "I think that it would be hard for anyone to esteem him, or anyone like him, so greatly that the esteem would exceed his great excellence."

When Amadis heard this remark, he thought of his lady and sighed, not giving any credence at all to what the king was saying, deeming the love he had for his lady greater than his own excellence or that of all those who bore arms.

Hence, just as you hear, Galaor remained a vassal of the king under such good auspices, that never did he cease to maintain the relationship, on account of anything that later came between Amadis and the king, as we shall subsequently relate. And the king sat down beside the queen and called Galaor to come before them in order to talk with him; Amadis stayed with Agrajes, his cousin; Oriana and Mabilia and Olinda were together, apart from all the other women, because they were the most honored and the ones of highest rank. Mabilia said to Agrajes:

"Brother, bring to us that knight whom we have greatly desired."

They approached the ladies; and as Mabilia knew very well with what medicines their hearts could be assuaged, she placed herself between Oriana and Olinda and put Amadis at Oriana's side and Agrajes at Olinda's, and said:

"Now I am between the four persons whom I love most in this world."

When Amadis saw himself in his lady's presence, his heart palpitated, while guiding his eyes to gaze at what he loved most in all the world; and he came to her with great humility, and she greeted him; and reaching out her hands from under her mantle, she took his hands in hers and squeezed them a bit as the token of an embrace, and said to him:

"My dear, what pain and what sorrow did that traitor cause me who brought the news of your death! Believe me, never was a woman in such great danger as I. Certainly, dear sir, this was with good reason, because never did a person sustain such a

great loss as I would in losing you; for just as I am more loved than all other women, so my good fortune willed that I be loved by the man who is worth more than everyone else."

When Amadis heard himself praised by his lady, he lowered his eyes to the ground, for he did not even dare to look at her, and she appeared to him so beautiful that his agitated feelings inhibited his speech, so that he did not respond. Oriana, who held her eyes fixed on him, immediately recognized the fact, and said:

"Oh, my dear sir, why should I not love you more than anyone else, for all who know you love and esteem you? And I being the woman whom you love and esteem most, it is quite right that I prefer you to every other man."

Amadis, whose agitation was now subsiding, said to her:

"Madam, on that painful death that I suffer each day on account of you I beg that you have pity, for as regards the other death which was mentioned previously, if it were to come to me, I would be placed in great repose and given consolation; if, madam, this sad heart of mine were not sustained by that great desire it has to serve you, which, in opposition to the many bitter tears that flow from it with great force, resists that force, already in them it would be completely undone and consumed, not because it fails to recognize that its mortal desires are satisfied to a large extent by recalling only your memory of them; but as the greatness of its need requires greater mercy than what it deserves in order to be sustained and restored, if this mercy does not come soon, very quickly will it have come to its cruel end."

When Amadis said these words, the tears streamed from his eyes down his cheeks, without his being able to remedy them; for at this time he was so troubled that if that true love that made him so disconsolate had not been consoled with that hope which love is wont in similar straits to infuse in those under its thrall, it would not have been surprising if in the presence of his lady his soul had taken leave of him.

"Ah, my dear! for heaven's sake do not talk to me," said Oriana, "about your death, for my heart fails me, as one who does not hope to live a single hour afterward, and if I have

any liking for the world, I have it because you live in it. This which you tell me, I believe without any doubt for myself, for I am in the same state, and if your sorrow seems greater than mine, it is only because desire being in me as it is in you, and I lacking the power that you do not lack to put into effect what our hearts so greatly desire, much greater in you than in me do love and pain appear. But whatever happens, I promise you that if good fortune or my judgment does not show you some way for relief, my weak daring will find it; for if from it danger befalls us, let it be rather with the disaffection of my father and of my mother and of others, which because of our abundant love might come to us, we being as now in suspense, suffering and enduring such rigorous and cruel desires that each day increase and overtake us."

Amadis, who heard this, sighed deeply and tried to speak, but could not; now she, for he seemed to be completely carried away, took him by the hand and drew him close to her, and said:

"Dear sir, do not grieve, for I shall surely fulfill the promise that I give you, and meanwhile do not leave this court convocation which the king, my father, intends to hold, for he and the queen will ask you not to, because they know how much more the convocation will be honored and exalted by your presence."

Then at this juncture the queen called Amadis and had him sit beside Don Galaor; and the duennas and maidens looked at them saying that God had wrought quite well in both to have made them handsomer than other knights, and better in other fine qualities; and they resembled each other so much that they could hardly be told apart except that Don Galaor was a little more fair, and Amadis had curly blond hair and his face was a little ruddier, and he was somewhat more robust. Thus they remained talking for a while with the queen, until Oriana and Mabilia made a sign to the queen to send Don Galaor to them, and she took him by the hand and said:

"Those maidens want you, for you do not know them, but know you that the one is my daughter and the other your first cousin."

He went over to them, and when he saw the great beauty of Oriana he was quite astounded, for he could not believe that

any woman could attain it so perfectly, and he suspected that in view of the great excellence of Amadis his brother, his fondness for dwelling at that court more than at any other, which he had observed in him, came to him only because it was vouchsafed to him, more than to anyone else, to love a person so distinguished in the world. Mabilia and Oriana greeted and received him with very good grace, saying to him:

“Don Galaor, be you very welcome.”

“Certainly, ladies, I would not have come here for the next five years, if it had not been for that one who has made all who bear arms come, as much on account of his might as because of his good will, for both are found in him more perfectly than in anyone else living today.”

Oriana lifted her eyes, and glancing at Amadis, sighed; and Galaor who saw her, knew his suspicion to be even more true than he had previously thought, — not because he sensed anything else, but because it seemed to him that his brother was more justified in being loved by that lady than was anyone else. Then while he was speaking with them about many things, the king arrived and stood there speaking and laughing with great animation, in order that all might share in his pleasure. And taking the men with him, he went to the great palace hall where there were many men of high degree and knights of great prowess. And finding the tables set, they sat down to dine. And the king ordered Amadis and Galaor and Galvanes Lackland and Agrajes to sit down at one of the tables without any other knights sitting with them; and just as these four knights found themselves together at that dinner, so later they were together in many places, where they underwent great perils and dangers at arms, because these accompanied one another often on account of the great kinship and love they had for each other; and although Don Galvanes had no relationship except with Agrajes, Amadis and Galaor always called him uncle and he called them nephews, which was a great cause for his increasing greatly in honor and esteem, as will be related later.

CHAPTER XXXI

HOW KING LISUARTE WENT TO HOLD HIS CONVOCATION OF NOBLES IN THE CITY OF LONDON.

As God made this Lisuarte king, who had been a prince without inheritance, by His mercy through the death of his brother King Falangriz, King of Great Britain, so did He impel (as may all things be permitted and guided by Him) so many knights, so many royal princesses, and many others from foreign lands of high degree and lineage, to come to serve him with great affection, no one considering himself satisfied in his duties unless he could call himself the king's man; and because such things, according to our weakness, attract great arrogance and with it to a much greater degree the ingratitude and disregard for that Lord who brings them about, by Him was granted to Fortune, that by imposing on him some difficult intervals which might have obscured this very bright glory in which he found himself, his heart would be softened and made completely gentle, so that by pursuing the service of the Giver of rewards rather than the perverted appetite which they bring about, in that high estate and to a much higher degree he might be maintained; and by doing the opposite be tormented with a much lower and more dangerous fall.

Then, this king wishing that the great excellence of his royal state be known to all the world, with the consent of Amadis and Galaor and Agrajes and of other valued knights of his retinue, he ordered that within five days, as previously he had planned and said, all the grandees of his realm should come to a court convocation in London, which at the time, like an eagle

was at the top of most of Christendom, in order to regulate the affairs of chivalry, so that its acts might be upheld and augmented with greater excellence than in the court of any other emperor or king; but there where he thought that everybody would bow before him, there overtook him the first waylaying by Fortune which placed his person and his kingdom in danger of being annihilated, as will now be related to you.

King Lisuarte left Windsor with all the knights and the queen with her matrons and damsels for the court convocation which was to convene in the city of London. The people appeared in such great numbers as would be wondrous to relate. There were among them many young knights richly armed and adorned, and many royal princesses and other maidens of high degree who were greatly beloved by the knights, who for them had held great jousts and festivals along the way. The king had ordered that tents and equipment be brought so that they would not enter any town and would set up camp in the meadows near the rivers and springs with which that land abounded. Thus in every way there was provided for them the happiest and most gracious way of living that they had ever had up to then, so that such very harsh and cruel contrasts coming immediately after so much pleasure might be felt with greater anguish and sadness of mind. Thus then they arrived in that great city of London, where they found so many people that it seemed as if the whole world was there assembled. The king and the queen with their entire retinue went to dismount at their palaces, and there in one part of them, he ordered Amadis and Galaor and Agrajes and Don Galvanes and some others of the most esteemed knights to lodge, and the other people in very good lodgings that the billeters of the king had designated for them in advance. Thus they rested and enjoyed themselves that night and two more days with many dances and games, which were performed in the palaces and outside in the city, at which Amadis and Galaor were so gazed at by everyone and so many were the people who came to look at them wherever they went that all the streets were crowded to such a degree that often they ceased to leave their lodgings.

To this court convocation that you hear, there came a great lord, more so in estate and dominion than in dignity and virtues,

called Barsinan, lord of Sansuena, not because he was a vassal of King Lisuarte, but for the reason that you shall now hear. Know you that when this Barsinan was in his own land, Arcalaus the Enchanter arrived there and said to him:

"Barsinan, sir, if you wished, I would arrange it so that you might be king, without your having great anxiety or trouble about it."

"Certainly," said Barsinan, "I should willingly take whatever hardship might come to me on this account, provided that I could be king."

"You answer wisely," said Arcalaus, "I shall bring it about that you become king if you are willing to believe me and give me the assurance that you will make me your chief major-domo, and that you will not deprive me of it during my whole lifetime."

"This I shall do very willingly," said Barsinan; "and tell me how what you are saying to me can be accomplished."

"I will tell you," said Arcalaus, "Go thou to the first court convocation that King Lisuarte holds, and take a large company of knights, for I shall seize the king in such wise that he cannot be rescued by any of his men; and that day I shall take possession of his daughter Oriana, whom I shall give to you as your wife; and at the end of five days I shall send to the court of the king his decapitated head. Then strive to take the King's crown, for he being dead and his daughter, who is the rightful heiress, in your power, there will be no one who can oppose you."

"Certainly," said Barsinan, "if you do this, I shall make you the richest and most powerful man of all those who may be with me."

"Then I shall do as I say," said Arcalaus.

On account of this which you hear, this great lord of Sansuena, Barsinan, came to the court. The king came out with a large company to receive him, believing his arrival was with sincere good will; and he ordered him and his whole company to be given lodging and all the things that they might need. But I tell you that he, on seeing such a great array of knights, and having learned of the loyal regard they had for King Lisuarte, very greatly repented of having undertaken that enterprise, believing

that no adversity could injure such a man. But since he was already involved, he agreed to remain to the end, because often what seems impossible, by means of unanticipated advice comes to pass more quickly than what seems possible. And speaking with the king, he said:

“King, I heard that you were holding this magnificent court convocation and I come here to pay my respects; for I do not have land from you as overlord, but from God, who gave it freely to my ancestors and to me.”

“Friend,” said the king, “I am very grateful to you, and I shall reward you with what, being relevant to you, may come to hand, for I am certainly very happy to see such an excellent man as you are; and although I have many high ranking men who are nobles, I shall be more pleased to take your vow of allegiance than theirs, believing that with that good will with which you left your land in order to visit me, you will guide your actions and my interests and honor.”

“Of that you may be certain,” said Barsinan, “for that in which I take part will be counselled by me according to the purpose and desire that caused me to come here.”

In this matter he spoke the truth; but King Lisuarte, who attributed it to another purpose, thanked him heartily for it.

Then the king gave orders to set up tents for himself and the queen outside the town in a large field, and left his houses for Barsinan to occupy; and he spoke to him of many of the things that he intended to do at that court convocation, and especially to make known the art of chivalry; and he praised all of his knights highly to him, telling him of their great excellence. But ahead of all others' deeds he put the accomplishments of Amadis and Don Galaor, his brother, as being those of the two best knights that could be found at that time in the whole world. And leaving him in the palace, he went to the tents where the queen was already, and he gave orders to tell his nobles that next day all were to be there with him, for he wanted to tell them the reason he had convoked them. Barsinan and his companions had in abundance all the things they needed; but I tell you that that night he did not sleep peacefully, because of thinking about the great folly he had committed in believing that such a good man

as the king, the possessor of such authority, could be harmed by the great cunning of Arcalaus or the power of the whole world.

The next morning the king put on the regal robe befitting such a day, and he ordered the crown brought to him which the knight had left him, and that the queen be told to put on the mantle. The queen opened the chest in which everything was with the key she always kept in her possession, and did not find anything in it, at which she was greatly astonished and began to make the sign of the cross, and sent word to the king. And when he learned about it, he was much troubled, but he did not show it outwardly, nor let it be known; and he went to the queen and drawing her aside, said to her:

“Madam, why did you guard so poorly a thing of so much importance to us at such a time?”

“Sire,” said she, “I don’t know what to say about it, except that I found the chest locked; and I have held the key, not having entrusted it to any other person; but I tell you this much: that last night it seemed to me that a maiden came to me and told me to show her the chest; and I in my dream showed it to her, and she asked me for the key and I gave it to her, and she opened the chest and took out of it the mantle and the crown, and closing it again she put the key in the place where it was previously; and she covered herself with the mantle and put the crown on her head, they being so becoming to her that I greatly savored looking at her. And she said to me: ‘That man and that woman whose property they will be, will reign before five days in the land of the powerful one who now strives to defend it and to go and conquer the land of others.’ And I asked her ‘Who is that?’ And she said to me: ‘At the time that I say you shall find out.’ And taking the crown and the mantle she disappeared before my eyes. But I tell you that I cannot understand whether this happened to me in a dream or in fact.”

The king considered it a great marvel and said:

“Now let it go at this, and do not speak with anyone else about it.”

And both leaving the tent, they went to another accompanied by so many knights and ladies and maidens that anyone who might have seen it would have considered it something wonderful.

And the king seated himself in a very ornate chair and the queen in another somewhat lower, the two chairs being located on a dais of cloth of gold. And at the side of the king the knights took their places, and by the queen her ladies-in-waiting and maidens. And those who were closest to the king were four knights whom he esteemed the most. One was Amadis and another Galaor, along with Agrajes and Galvanes Lackland. And at his rear was Arban, King of North Wales, fully armed, with his sword in his hand and with him two hundred armed knights.

Then all thus remaining silent, for no one was talking, a beautiful lady richly attired arose and there rose with her upwards of a dozen ladies and maidens all dressed in the same attire as the first, for the ladies of high degree had the custom, and the noblemen also, of bringing their attendants at such celebrations as well dressed as themselves. Then that beautiful lady went before the king and queen with her attendants and said:

“Lord and lady, hear me and I shall tell you of a pact which I have with that knight who is yonder.”

And she extended her hand toward Amadis, and beginning her discourse, said:

“A long time ago I was sought in marriage by Angriote de Estravaus who is present yonder” — and she told all that happened to her with him, and for what reason she had him guard the valley of the pines — “and it happened that a knight by the name of Amadis made him leave the valley by force of arms, and I am told that they being in friendship, Amadis promised him that he would do all in his power to enable Angriote to have me, and I set such a guard in my castle as I pleased, and such as in my opinion no strange knight could pass.” And she told what the custom was there, just as the story has related it. Furthermore she said: “Sire, that knight who is there at your feet has passed all that guard that I am telling you about.” And she was saying this about Amadis, not knowing which one he was. “And as soon as that knight entered my castle, he promised me willingly to have Amadis released from that boon which he had promised Angriote, to the full extent of his loyal ability, either by force of arms or by any other way; and then after this promise that knight fought in the castle with my uncle, who is here.”

And she related for what reason the battle had taken place and what happened to them in it; and then many looked at Gasinan, whom up until then they had not noticed, when they heard her tell that he had dared to fight with Amadis; and when the matron came to tell of the outcome of their battle, she related how her uncle had been defeated and was about to lose his life, and how she had asked the knight as a boon not to kill him.

"And ladies and gentlemen," said she, "at my request he left him, on condition that I come to the first court that you might hold and grant him whatever boon he may demand; and I in order to comply have come to this court, which has been the first one since then, and I say in your presence that he should abide by what he promised me, and I shall fulfill what he demands if it can be carried out."

Amadis then arose and said:

"Sire, the lady has spoken the truth about our promises, which thus were made; and I promise in your presence that I shall free Amadis of what he promised Angriote; and may she give me the boon as she promised."

The lady was very happy about it, and said:

"Now ask whatever you wish."

Amadis said to her:

"What I wish is that you marry Angriote and that you love him just as he loves you."

"Holy Mary, help me!" said she; "what is this that you are saying to me?"

"Good lady," said Amadis, "I tell you to marry such a man as a beautiful woman of high degree such as you are ought to marry."

"Alas, knight," said she; "and how do you thus keep your promise?"

"I did not promise you anything that I am not adhering to with you," said he, "I promised to free Amadis of the promise he made to Angriote; and this I do, for I am Amadis and I give back to you his boon that I granted him; and thus I abide by all that I told you and him."

The lady marvelled greatly and said to the king:

"Sire, is it true that this good knight is Amadis?"

"Indubitably, yes," said the king.

"Alas, wretched woman that I am," said she, "how deceived I was; now I see that neither by scheming nor by guile can one escape the things that are pleasing to God; for I tried as hard as I could to be separated from Angriote, not for any displeasure that I have with him, nor because I fail to recognize that his great valor deserves to be lord of my person, but on account of my purpose being such that while living in complete chastity I came to the decision not to take anyone as my lord and master; and when I think I am farthest withdrawn from him, then I behold myself as close as now you see."

The king said:

"So help me God, my dear, you ought to be happy about this union, for you are beautiful and of noble lineage and he is a handsome knight and young; and if you are very rich in property, he is in excellence and virtue, in arms as well as in all the other good ways that a good knight should possess; and therefore it seems to me that very rightly your and his marriage is appropriate and thus I believe it will seem to all who are at this court."

The lady said:

"And you, oh, queen, whom God made one of the outstanding women of the world in intelligence and goodness, what do you say to me?"

"I say to you," said she, "that since Angriote is praised and esteemed among good men, he deserves to be lord of a great land and loved by whatever lady he loves."

Amadis said to her:

"My good lady, do not believe that I made that promise to Angriote by accident or out of zeal; for if it were so, the making of it ought to be adjudged more out of folly and flightiness on my part than out of virtue; but knowing his great excellence at arms, which might have cost me very dear, and the great affection and love that he has for you, I have considered it right that not only I, but all those who have good understanding, ought to bring it about that he with regard to that passion, and you with respect to the little understanding that you have of him, might be remedied."

"Certainly, sir," said she, "in you there is such excellence that it would not permit you to say anything but the truth before so many noblemen; and since you consider him so good, and the king and the queen my lord and lady do, I would be very foolish if I did not like him, even if he had no such covenant to hold over me; from which I cannot depart rightly. And here you see me; dispose of me at your pleasure."

Amadis took her by the hand and calling Angriote, said to him in front of fifteen knights of his lineage, who came with him:

"Friend, I promised you that by every possible means I would obtain your beloved for you, and tell me if this is she."

"She is," said Angriote, "my lady, whose lover I am."

"Then with respect to her I hand you over," said Amadis, "on condition that you both marry, and that you honor her and love her above all other women in the world."

"Certainly, sir," said Angriote, "concerning this I shall very well believe you."

The king gave orders to the Bishop of Salerno to take them to the chapel and to give them the blessings of Holy Church; and so Angriote and the lady and all those of his lineage went with the bishop to the town, where he performed the marriage ceremony with great solemnity. For we can say that not men, but God, seeing the great restraint which Angriote used with that lady, when he had her in his absolute power, and did not seek to do against her free will that which he desired most in the world; rather did he put himself with great danger to his person at her command where by Amadis he was brought close to death, God — we repeat — decreed that such a great resistance by reason to a will so confused should not remain without the reward so deserved and which Angriote greatly desired.

CHAPTER XXXII

HOW KING LISUARTE, HIS PARLIAMENT OF NOBLES HAVING ASSEMBLED, SOUGHT TO LEARN THE COUNSEL OF THE KNIGHTS ON WHAT WAS PROPER FOR HIM TO DO.

King Lisuarte remained to speak with his nobles, and said to them:

“Friends, since God has made me richer and more powerful in land and people than any of my neighbors, so it is right that while maintaining my service to Him, I should try to do better and more praiseworthy things than any of them; and I wish you to tell me all that your judgment perceives wherein I may sustain you and me in greater honor; and I say to you that I shall do it thus.”

Barsinan, lord of Sansuenia, who was in the council, said:

“Good lords, now you have heard what the king requests of you; I should consider it good, if it should be pleasing to him, that, he leaving you by yourselves without his presence in order that your judgments might be guided in reason without inhibition, you should determine what he asks for, and afterwards his judgment may take that which might be most in conformity with his wishes.”

The king said that he spoke reasonably, and begging him to stay with them, he went to another tent, and they remained in the one where they were. Then spoke Seroloys, the Fleming, who at the time was Count of Clare:

“Sirs, in this matter on which the king commands us to counsel him, it is well known and manifest what is most important in order that his greatness and honor be protected and exalted; in

this way, men in this world cannot be powerful without having great forces of men or great treasure; but since the treasure is for the purpose of seeking and paying the forces, for this is the most appropriate temporal thing on which it should be spent, everything is shown clearly to refer to a large force as the most important thing by which kings and grandees not only are protected and defended, but subjugate and rule over what belongs to others as if it were their own. And therefore, good sirs, I should deem it wise that counsel other than this, the king our lord should not take, searching everywhere for good knights, giving them abundantly of his resources, esteeming them and honoring them; and with this the foreigners from other lands would be moved to serve him, hoping that their work would attain the fruit it deserves; for you will discover if you search back in your memory, that never until today has there ever been any king great or powerful, except those who sought out and held in their company the famous knights, and that with them, by spending their treasure they obtained other, much greater foreign knights."

There was not a man there in the council who did not consider good what the count spoke, and they agreed with him on it. When Barsinan, lord of Sansuenia, saw how all agreed with that, he was heavy of heart because there could come about by that means only with great difficulty what he was intending; and he said:

"Certainly, I have never seen so many nobles agree so foolishly with a speech, and I shall tell you why. If this your lord does what the Count of Clare has said, there will be in your land, before two years pass, so many foreign knights that the king will not only give them what he should give to you, but through his seeking to please and satisfy them as is naturally done for what is new, you will be forgotten and esteemed much less; therefore consider well and with more reflection what you ought to advise, for since I am here, I am not concerned with being well content and satisfied, any more than that my advice be very advantageous to you."

There were some envious and covetous people who heeded this advice, so that then there was immediately discord among

them; whence they agreed that the king should come and with his great wisdom choose what was best. Then he, having come, on hearing in its entirety what they were concerned with, and the dissension that they had, what was right became in his eyes clearly apparent; and he said:

“Kings are not great only for how much they have, but for how much they maintain, for by themselves alone what would they do? Perchance not so much as someone else; or with good fortune, what would be enough? But to govern his state—and now you can understand the problem—would great wealth be powerful enough to free a king from worry? Certainly not; if it were not spent there where it ought to be; then we can indeed decide that the good understanding and effort of men is the real treasure. Do you want to know? Then consider what that great Alexander did with them, that mighty Julius Caesar and that proud Hannibal, and many others who could be cited, who being voluntarily liberal, very rich in money and very exalted in this world with their knights, they kept distributing money among them, according as each one deserved; and even if he acquired somewhat more or less in the process, one can believe that for the most part they accomplished it, since they were served and revered so loyally by most of them. Therefore, good friends, not only do I deem it good to procure and have good knights, but also that you with all concern bring and recruit them for me, for the more I am honored and feared by foreigners, the more you will be honored and protected; and if in me there be some virtue, I shall never forget the old ones on account of the new ones. And do you immediately name to me here all those that you know to be the best of these who at present have come to my court, in order that before they depart they may be induced to remain in our company.”

This was done at once; for the king taking the names down in writing, gave orders to them to call at his tent when he had dined; and there he begged them to offer him their loyal companionship and not to leave his court without his command, and he promised them to love and esteem them and to do them great honor and favor so that by guarding his possessions their states might be maintained by his very own estate. All those who

were there agreed, except Amadis, who on account of being a knight of the queen, with some reason could be excused from voting. This having been done thus, the queen told them to listen to her, if they pleased, for she wanted to speak to them. Then they all drew near and were quiet in order to hear what she would say. She said to the king:

"Sir, inasmuch as you have extolled and honored your knights, it would be advisable for me to do so with regard to my ladies and maidens in waiting, and on their behalf with regard to all women in general wherever and in whatever place they may be; and to this end I beg of you and these nobles to grant me a boon, for at such festivals one should ask for and grant good things."

The king looked at the knights and said:

"Friends, what shall we do in this matter that the queen asks for?"

"That all that she asks be granted her," said they.

"Who will do anything else in the matter," said Don Galaor, "except to serve such a good lady?"

"Then if it so pleases you," said the king, "let the boon be granted, even though it be difficult to do."

"So be it," they all said.

When the queen heard this, she said:

"What I ask of you as a boon is that matrons and maidens always be well protected and defended from whoever does them injustice or outrage. And likewise, if there be a case involving the promise of some boon to a man who asks you for it, and another boon to a matron or maiden, that you be obliged to fulfill hers before his, since she is the weaker vessel and one who has greater need of help. And by your so doing the matrons and maidens will be thereby more favored and protected along the highways which they may traverse, and insolent and cruel men will not dare to do them violence or wrong, knowing that they have such defenders on their side and in their favor."

This having been heard by him, he was very happy about the boon which the queen asked for, and so were all the knights who were in their presence. And so the king commanded this boon to be maintained just as she asked, and thus it was maintained in

Great Britain for a long time, for never did any knight violate it in those times which followed in Britain; but of how it was broken we shall not tell you, since it has nothing to do with the subject.

CHAPTER XXXIII

HOW WHILE KING LISUARTE WAS GREATLY ENJOYING HIMSELF, A MAIDEN CLAD IN MOURNING BOWED BEFORE HIM TO ASK OF HIM A FAVOR SUCH THAT IT WAS GRANTED HER BY HIM.

While King Lisuarte was enjoying himself so much with such companionship as you hear, Fortune now being about to begin her work whereby that great festival might be thrown into confusion, a very beautiful maiden clad in mourning entered the gate of the palace, and kneeling before the king, said:

“Sir, everybody is pleased except me alone, who have worry and sadness, and I cannot lose it except through you.”

“Friend,” said the king, “What is this worry that you have?”

“Sir,” said she, “It is on account of my father and my uncle who are in a lady’s prison from which she will never have them released until they give her two knights as good at arms as the one they killed.”

“And why did they kill him?” said the king.

“Because,” said she, “out of the great pride and arrogance that he had in himself he boasted that he singlehanded would fight the two of them; and he so importuned them that, constrained by overwhelming shame, they had to enter with him into the lists, where the two of them being victors, the knight was killed. This was in front of Galdenda’s castle. She, being owner of the castle, at once gave orders to seize my father and uncle, swearing not to set them free, because they had killed that knight whom she was holding in order that he might fight a duel. My father said to her:

“Lady, do not hold me or this brother of mine, for I will fight that duel.’

“‘Certainly,’ said she, ‘you are not such as to safeguard my justice; and I tell you that you shall not leave here until you bring me two knights, each one of them as excellent and as experienced at arms as the one you killed, in order that with them amends may be made for the harm that came to me from my knight’s death.’”

“Do you know,” said the king, “where the lady intends the battle to be fought?”

“Sir,” said the maiden, “I do not know that. I see only my father and my uncle imprisoned against all justice, where their friends cannot help them.”

And she began to weep very bitterly. And the king, who was very compassionate, was very sorry for her, and said to her:

“Now tell me whether where these knights are imprisoned is very far away.”

“One could probably go and return easily in five days,” said the maiden.

“Then choose here two knights to your liking, and they will go with you.”

“Sir,” said she, “I am a stranger and do not know anyone, and if you please, I shall go to the queen, my lady, for advice.”

“In the name of God!” said he.

She went to the queen and told her her story just as she had related it to the king, and at the end said that he was giving her two knights to go with her, and that she begged the queen as a favor, since she did not know them, by the faith that she owed to God and to the king, to choose for her those who best would be able to remedy her great distress.

“Ah, maiden,” said the queen, “You have besought me in such wise that I shall have to do it, but I regret very much sending them away from here.”

Then she called Amadis and Galaor and they came before her, and she said to the maiden:

“This knight is mine, and this other one is the king’s; and I say to you that these two are the best I know here or any place else.”

The maiden asked their names; the queen said:

"This is Amadis, and the other, Galaor."

"What, sir!" said the maiden, "Are you Amadis, the very fine knight who has no peer among all the others? By heaven, now what I seek can be accomplished as soon as you arrive there with your brother." And she said to the queen:

"Lady, in heaven's name, I beg you to ask him that they make the journey there with me."

The queen asked him to do so, and commended her highly. Amadis looked toward Oriana, to see if she authorized that departure. And she, taking pity on that maiden, let fall her gloves from her hand as a sign that she authorized it, for this signal they had agreed on between them. And when he saw this, he said to the queen that he was pleased to carry out her command. She asked of him that they return as quickly as possible. And she forbade their delaying their coming on account of anything that might be avoided. Amadis came up to Mabilia, who was talking with Oriana, as if he were about to take leave of her, and Oriana said:

"My dear, so help me God, I regret very much having agreed to your going, for my heart feels great distress about it; may God will that it be for the best."

"Lady," said Amadis, "May He who made you so beautiful, always give you joy, for wherever I may be, I am yours to serve you."

"Dear sir," said she, "since it now cannot be otherwise, may you go commended to God, and may He protect you and honor you above all the knights in the world."

Then they left there and went to arm themselves; and having bade farewell to the king and to their friends, they started on their way with the maiden. Thus they journeyed whither the maiden guided them until it was past noon, when they entered a forest called Ill-omened, because a knight errant never entered it who had good luck or fortune, nor did these two leave there without great tribulation; and as soon as they ate something of what their squires brought along, they journeyed again until night, which was brightly moonlit. The maiden was hurrying along very fast without slackening her pace. Amadis said to her:

"Maiden, don't you wish us to rest a while?"

"I do," said she, "but it will be farther on, where we shall find some tents with people whom the sight of you will please very much; and come along at your own pace, and I shall go ahead to see about your lodging."

Then the maiden went on and they slowed their pace somewhat; but they had not gone far when they saw two tents near the road, and they found the maiden and others with her, waiting for them, and she said:

"Sirs, dismount and you shall rest in this tent, for today you have made a long day's journey."

They did so and found servants who took their arms and horses, and took everything outside. Amadis said:

"Why do you take away our arms?"

"Because, sir," said the maiden, "You are to sleep in the tent where they are put."

And they being thus unarmed, seated on a rug awaiting their supper, it was not long before some fifteen men, some of them knights and the rest churls, all well armed, descended upon them; and entered the door of the tent, saying:

"Surrender; if not, you are dead."

When he heard this, Amadis arose and said:

"By Holy Mary, brother! We are brought by deception to the greatest treachery in the world."

Then they stood together and would have defended themselves willingly, but they did not have the wherewithal. The men put their lances at their chests, at their backs, and at their faces. And Amadis was so furious that the blood flowed from his nose and eyes; and he said to the knights:

"Ah, traitors! You see well how it is; for if we had arms, the contest would be ended in another manner."

"That talk doesn't help you any," said a knight, "surrender."

Galaor said:

"If we do, we shall because of great treachery, and this I will prove to the two best of you, and I would even allow three, provided you give me my arms."

"There is no need of proof here," said the knight, "for if you speak any more about this matter, you will receive harm."

"What do you want?" said Amadis, "for we shall be dead rather than be prisoners, and moreover, prisoners of a traitor."

The knight turned to the door of the tent and said:

"Madam, they do not want to be imprisoned; shall we kill them?"

She said:

"Wait a bit, and if they do not do my will, cut off their heads."

The lady entered the tent; she was very beautiful and was very angry, and she said to the knights of King Lisuarte:

"Surrender to me; if not, you die."

Amadis was silent, and Galaor said:

"Brother, now we do not have to fear, since the lady wishes it."

And he said to the lady:

"Order them to give us, lady, our arms and horses, and if your men cannot seize them from us, then we shall place ourselves in your prison, for now by being in it we do nothing for you in view of our present situation."

"I shall not believe you," said she, "this time, but I advise you to be my prisoners."

They promised her, since they saw they could not do more. In the manner that you hear they were conceded her prisoners without the lady's knowing who they were, for the maiden did not want to tell her, because she knew for certain that within the hour she would have them killed; whereupon she would consider herself the most ill-starred maiden in the world, in that because of her two such knights should die; and she would have preferred death to having made that journey; but now she could do no more than keep it secret. The lady said to them:

"Knights, now that you are my prisoners, I want to promote an agreement with you, for if you agree, I shall let you go free; otherwise, believe me, I shall put you in such a strict confinement that for you it will be worse than death."

"Lady," said Amadis, "the agreement can be such that we shall agree to it without much trouble, and such that if it is to our shame, we would rather suffer death."

"About your shame," said she, "I don't know; but if you agree to bid farewell to King Lisuarte on arriving where he is, and say

that you are doing it by command of Madasima, the chatelaine of Gantasi, I shall order you set free;— and that she commands it because he has in his court the knight who killed the good knight Dardan.”

Galaor said to her:

“Madam, if you command this in order that the king be distressed, don’t so regard it, for we are two knights who for the present have only those arms and horses, and as at his court there are many others of great valor who serve him, little will he care whether we stay or whether we go; and that is very shameful for us, so much so that we shall in nowise do it.”

“What?” said she, “you would rather be put in that prison than be separated from the falsest king in the world?”

“Madam,” said Galaor, “what you say does not become you, for the king is good and trustworthy, and there is no knight in the world to whom I would not prove that in him there is not a jot of falsity.”

“Certainly,” said the matron, “to your own detriment you esteem him so greatly.”

And she ordered that their hands be tied.

“I shall willingly do that,” said a knight, “and if you order it, I shall chop off their heads.”

And he seized Amadis by an arm; but the latter jerked him forward and went to strike him on the head with his fist; and the knight turned aside; and reaching his chest, the blow was so hard that it knocked him down at his feet, completely stunned. Then there was a great scuffle in the tent, all coming up to kill him; but an old knight who was there grasped his sword and began to threaten those who were seeking to attack Amadis, and he made them draw back; but before that they gave Amadis a lance thrust on his right shoulder, but it was not serious. And that old knight said to the matron:

“You do the greatest deviltry in the world in holding noble knights in your prison and letting them be killed.”

“Why not kill,” said she, “the craziest knight in the world who inopportunately has committed such folly.”

Galaor said:

"Madam, we shall not consent that our hands be tied except by you, for you are a lady and very beautiful, and we are your prisoners, and it behooves us to observe obedience to you."

"Well, since that's how it is," said she, "I shall do it."

And taking their hands she tied them tight with a strap; and having the tents taken down, putting Amadis and Galaor, thus tied each on a palfrey, and with men to hold their reins, they began to travel; and Gandalin and the squire of Galaor went on foot, tied to a rope; and thus they journeyed all night through that forest. And I tell you that then Amadis wished for his death, not on account of the predicament in which he was, for better than anyone else he knew how to endure such things, but on account of the pledge that the lady demanded of them, for if he did not make it, they would put him where he would not be able to see his lady Oriana; and if he agreed to it, he would likewise be far removed from her by not being able to live at her father's court; and with this he was so overwhelmed that he forgot everything else in the world. The old knight who had rescued him thought he was injured by the blow and felt very sorry for him, because the maiden who brought them there had told him that he was the most valiant and most courageous knight at arms that there was in all the world; and this maiden was the daughter of that knight, and had implored him in heaven's name and for mercy's sake, to try to protect them from death, for she would be blamed by everybody and would be considered a traitress. And she told that that one was Amadis of Gaul and the other Galaor, his brother, who had killed the giant. The knight knew very well for what purpose they had been brought there, and he was very sorry to see them treated in such a manner, since they were fine knights at arms; and he wanted very much to save them from death, if he could, for he saw it so close and near at hand for them; and coming up to Amadis, he said to him:

"Do you feel ill from your wound, or how are you?"

Amadis, when he heard the knight speak thus, lifted his face and saw that it was the old knight who had rescued him in the tent from the other knights who had sought to kill him; and he said to him:

"Kind sir, I have no wound paining me; rather I am grieved about a maiden who escorted us so deceitfully, we coming to her aid, and she committing against us such great treachery."

"Ah, sir," said the knight, "it is true that you were deceived, and by chance I know more about you than you think, and so help me God and protect me from evil, how I would make amends for it if some way could be found! And I wish to give you a piece of advice that will be good, for if you take it, no harm will come to you from it; because if they do recognize your identity, there is nothing but death for you, for in the world there is nothing that will deliver you from it; but now do thus: You are very handsome and you make a good appearance, and I will put you in such close touch with the lady as to tell her that you are the finest knight in the world; and do you seek her hand in marriage, or to have her love in some other way, for she is a woman who has her heart wherever it pleases her, and I believe that on account of your excellence, or your good looks, which you possess to a high degree, you will succeed in one of these two things; and if she should be willing to grant one of them, strive that it be very soon, because she is to send from where we shall go to sleep today; to find out your names; and I want to tell you more that is certain: that the maiden, who has brought you has not been willing to tell her your names, denying that she knows them. In this way and the way in which I shall help you, it would be possible for you to be freed."

Amadis, who was more in awe of his lady Oriana than of death, said to the knight:

"Friend, God can do his will with me, but that never shall be, even though she beg me and I be acquitted thereby."

"Certainly," said the knight, "I consider it a wonder that you are about to die and do not try to have liberty by whatever means."

"Such liberty," said Amadis, "I shall not take if God wills; but speak with that other knight, whom you can praise more rightfully than me."

The knight then went to Galaor and spoke to him in the same way he had spoken to his brother; and he was very happy when he heard him, and said:

"Sir knight, if you arrange that I be united with the lady, we shall always honor you and be at your command."

"Now let me go and speak with her," said the knight; "I think that I shall accomplish something."

Then he went forward and coming to the lady, said:

"Lady, here you are bringing prisoners, and you do not know whom."

"Why do you say that?" said she.

"Because you bring the best knights at arms that I now know, and the most perfect in all good qualities."

"May it be Amadis," said the lady, "whose life I should like so much to take."

"No, madam," said the knight, "for I do not say so except about this man who is coming along here, for besides his great excellence, he is the most handsome young knight I have ever seen, and you are discourteous to him, and don't be, for it is a great impropriety; for even though he be a prisoner, he has never deserved it from you, rather it is on account of the hatred that you have for someone else. Honor him and show him a good countenance, and it may be that in that way you will attract him to what may give you pleasure rather than by any other means."

"Then I wish to await him," said she, "and I shall see what kind of man he is."

"You will see," said the knight, "one of the most handsome knights you have ever seen."

At this time Amadis joined Galaor and said to him:

"Brother Galaor, I see you with great anger and in danger of death; I beg of you that this time you pay attention to my advice."

"I shall do so," said he, "and may God put in you more humility than fear."

The lady held back her palfrey and awaited him and saw him better than she had seen him at night, and he seemed to her the most handsome man in the world; and she said:

"Knight, how are you getting along?"

"Lady," said he, "I am getting along as you would not if you were in my power, as I am in yours, because I would provide

for you great service and pleasure, and I do not know why you would do with me entirely the opposite, I not deserving it of you, for I would be better for you as your knight, both to serve and love you as my lady, than to be thrown in prison, which brings you such little benefit."

The lady, who was gazing at him, was very much taken with him, more than with anyone whom she had seen or dealt with, and she said to him:

"Knight, if I should be willing to take you for a lover and set you free from this prison, would you leave the companionship of King Lisuarte for me and would you tell them that you were leaving it for my sake?"

"Yes," said Galaor, "and I shall make you whatever agreement you demand for it. Likewise that other man, my companion, will do so, for he will not depart from what I command."

"I am very happy about this, and now promise me what you say in the presence of all these knights, and I shall then agree to do your will, and I shall set you and your companion free of prison."

"I am very content," said Galaor.

"Then I wish," said the lady, "that all be agreed to in the presence of a lady where we are going to lodge today, and meanwhile assure me that you will not leave me, and your hands will be untied and you will go free."

Galaor called Amadis and told him that he should promise him not to leave the lady. And he so agreed. And then she ordered them to untie his hands, and Galaor said:

"Then give orders to free our squires, who will not leave us."

And likewise they were set free; and they gave them a palfrey without a saddle on which to ride.

So they went all that day, and Galaor was talking with Madasima; and at sunset they arrived at the castle called Abies, and the lady received them very well, for both ladies loved each other very much. Madasima said:

"Galaor, will you carry out the agreement that we have stipulated?"

"I will gladly," said he, "and grant me what you promised me."

"In God's name," said the lady.

Then she called the chatelaine of the castle and two knights, sons of the latter, who were there with her, and said to them:

"I want you to be witnesses of an agreement that I am making with these knights."

And she said for Don Galaor:

"This knight is my prisoner and I wish to make him my friend; and likewise is the other, his companion; and I have an agreement with them as follows: that they leave King Lisuarte and tell him that they are doing this for me and that I released them from prison leaving them free; and that you and your sons be with them before King Lisuarte and see that they carry out this agreement, and if not, that you say and make public what occurs, so that all may know it; and for this I give them a time limit of ten days."

"Good friend," said the lady of the castle, "I am very pleased to do what you say, as soon as they agree to it."

"So do we agree to it," said Don Galaor; "and may this lady carry out on her part what she says."

"That," said she, "shall be done at once."

So they agreed as you heard. And that night Don Galaor lay with Madasima, who was very beautiful and very rich and noble, but she was not of such a great worth as she should have been; and she was more taken with him than with any other man she had ever seen. And in the morning she ordered them to be given their horses and arms, and setting them free, she went on her way to Gantasi, for thus her castle was called; and they started out on the road to London, where King Lisuarte was, very happy to have escaped thus from such treachery and because they thought to free themselves of their promise much to their honor; and that night they lodged in the house of a hermit, where they had a very poor supper, and next day they continued on their way.

CHAPTER XXXIV

IN WHICH IS SHOWN THE RUINATION OF KING LISUARTE; AND CONCERNING ALL THAT HAPPENED TO HIM BECAUSE OF HIS PROMISES, WHICH WERE IMPROPER.

King Lisuarte and Queen Brisena, his wife, being with many knights and ladies and maidens in their tents on the fourth day after Amadis and Galaor had departed from there, the knight who had left him the mantle and the crown, as you have heard, entered the door and knelt before the king and said to him:

“Sire, how is it that you do not have the beautiful crown that I left you; and you, Madam Queen, the luxurious mantle?”

The king remained silent, for he did not seek to make any reply, and the knight said:

“I am quite pleased that you were not satisfied with them, as I shall be freed from losing my head or the boon that you were to give me for them; and since that is the way it is, give orders that they be given to me, for I can in nowise tarry.”

When the king heard this, he was greatly troubled and said:

“Knight, I cannot give you either the mantle or the crown, for I have lost them both; and it worries me more for your sake, for you need them so much, than for mine, although they were worth a great deal.”

“Ah, wretch that I am, I am as good as dead!” said the knight.

And he began to make such a show of great sorrow that it was a wonder, saying:

“Unhappy me, without luck, I am to die and by the worst death that there ever died a knight who so little deserved it!”

And his tears were falling down over his beard, which was as white as white wool. The king had great pity for him, and said:

“Knight, don’t fear for your head, for everything that I have, you shall have in order to preserve it, for thus have I promised you and thus I shall keep my promise.”

The knight fell at his feet to kiss them, but the king lifted him by the hand and said:

“Now ask for whatever you like.”

“Sire,” said he, “It is true that you were to give me back my mantle and my crown, or whatever I might ask you for them. And God knows, sire, that it was not my intention to demand what I shall now ask; and if there were anything else in the world which would help me, I would not vex you about the matter; but I cannot do otherwise in this; though I well know that it will be very hard for you to give; but it would be just as hard for such a man as you to be remiss in trustworthiness; it will cause you much sorrow to give it to me, and me to receive it.”

“Demand at once,” said the king, “for what I have will not be too precious for you to have.”

“Many thanks,” said the knight, “but it is necessary that you make me a guarantee for as many as now are in your court that they will not do me harm or violence because of my boon, and for you to guarantee me with respect to yourself; for otherwise neither your veracity would be protected nor would I be satisfied if the boon were given me on the one hand and taken away from me on the other.”

“What you ask is reasonable,” said the king, “and thus do I promise and command it to be publicly announced.”

Then the knight said:

“Sir, I would not be able to be released from death except by my crown and my mantle, or by your daughter Oriana, and now give me whichever you wish, for I should prefer what I gave you.”

“Alas, knight!” said the king, “You have asked a great deal of me.”

And all were so distressed that they could not have been more so; but the king, who was the most faithful person in the world, said:

“Do not grieve, for the loss of my daughter is more fitting than failure to keep my word; because the one harms but few and the other, people in general; whence greater danger would result, because if the people were not sure of the veracity of their lords, it would be very difficult to preserve true esteem between them, since where this does not exist, there cannot be anything of much benefit.”

And then he gave the order to bring his daughter there.

When the queen and the ladies and maidens in waiting heard this, they began to express the greatest grief in the world; but the king ordered them to retire to their chambers, and commanded all his men not to weep, under penalty of losing his esteem, saying:

“Now there will come to pass with my daughter whatever God considers good; but my veracity will not be to my knowledge false.”

At this juncture the very beautiful Oriana came, as it were, overwhelmed, before the king, and falling at his feet, she said:

“Father, what is this that you seek to do?”

“I do it,” said the king, “in order not to break my word.”

And he said to the knight:

“Here you see the boon that you ask, do you wish any retinue to go with her?”

“Sir,” said the knight, “I have only two knights and two squires with me — those with whom I came to Windsor — and any other company I cannot take along; but I say to you that there is no need to fear until I place her in the hands of the one to whom I must give her.”

“Let a damsel go with her,” said the king, “if you wish, in order that there be more honor and decorum, and that she go not alone among you.”

The knight agreed. When Oriana heard this, she fell down in a faint; but there was no need of this, because the knight took her in his arms, and weeping, for he seemed to do it against his will, and he gave her to a squire who was on a very large and very fast hackney, and placing her in the saddle, he mounted behind her; and the knight said:

"Hold on to her, don't let her fall, for she is insensible, and God knows that in all this court there is no knight who grieves more than I at this deed."

And the king made the damsel of Denmark come, and he gave orders to put her on a palfrey, and said:

"Go with your mistress and do not leave her, no matter what happens to you, as long as they allow you to be with her."

"Alas, unfortunate woman that I am!" said she, "I never expected to make such a journey."

And then they moved away from the king's presence, and the huge and very muscular knight who in Windsor was unwilling to remove his helmet took Oriana's horse by the rein; and know you that this was Arcalaus the Enchanter. And on leaving the courtyard, Oriana sighed very deeply, as if her heart would break, and said as if she were out of her mind,

"Alas, good friend! Most unfortunately the boon was granted, since on this account you and I are dead."

She said this with reference to Amadis, whose departure with the maiden she had authorized, and the others thought it was said with reference to herself and her father. But those who were conducting her at once entered the forest, traveling with her in great haste until they left that highway and entered a deep valley. The king mounted a horse with a staff in his hand, to assure that none should oppose them, since he had given them safe conduct. Mabilia, who was at a window demonstrating very great grief, saw pass near the wall, Ardian, Amadis's dwarf, who was going by on a big, nimble nag; she called to him out of the great sorrow that she had, and said:

"Friend Ardian, if you love your master, don't rest day or night until you find him and tell him about this misfortune that here is brought about; and if you do not do it, you will be a traitor to him, for it is certain that he would rather know this at once than to have this city for his own."

"By Holy Mary!" said the dwarf, "he shall know of it as quickly as it be possible."

And giving the lash to his nag, he went at full speed down the road on which he had seen his master go.

But now we shall tell you what happened at this time to the king. When he was thus at the entrance to the forest, as you heard, making all the knights who came out there turn back, having with him twenty knights, he saw coming the maiden to whom he had promised the boon while saying that she should test him and that she would know more of the strength of his heart. She was riding a palfrey that was going fast; and she bore suspended from her neck a well-ornamented sword and a lance with a very handsome iron tip and painted shaft; and coming up to the king, she said:

“Sir, may God protect you and give you joy and courage so that you abide by what you promised me in Windsor before your knights.”

“Maiden,” said the king, “I have need of more joy than I have; but however that may be, I well remember what I said to you, and I shall keep my promise.”

“Sir,” said she, “With that hope I come to you as the most trustworthy king in the world; and now seek satisfaction for me from a knight who goes through this forest, who wounded my father by the greatest treachery in the world, and violated me; and enchanted him in such wise that he cannot die unless the most honorable man in the kingdom of London gives him a blow with this lance and another with this sword, and that knight had given the sword to a woman friend of his to keep, thinking that she loved him very much; but it was not so, for she hated him with a deadly hatred; and she gave it to me, and the lance, in order that I take vengeance on him; and I know that if it be not by your hand, for you are the most honorable man, he cannot be killed by the hand of anyone else; and if you make bold to take the vengeance, you are to go alone because I promised to give him today a knight with whom to fight, and for this reason he has come there, thinking that I could not have the sword and the lance; and such is the agreement between us, that if he wins, I renounce to him my complaint, and if he overcome that I may do as I wish with him.”

“In the name of God!” said the king, “I am willing to go with you.”

And he gave orders to bring his arms, and he quickly armed himself and mounted his horse, which he valued highly; and the maiden told him to gird on the sword that she brought. And he, leaving his own, which was the finest in the world, took the other one and hung his shield on his neck; and the maiden carried for him his helmet and the painted lance; and he went with her, issuing to all the prohibition that no one be so daring as to think of going after him; and so they journeyed a while along the highway; but the maiden made him leave it and guided him in another direction near some trees that were where those who were taking Oriana had entered. And there the king saw a knight fully armed upon a black horse, and at his neck a green shield and the helmet likewise. The maiden said:

“Sir, take your helmet, for you see there the knight that I told you about.”

He laced it on at once and taking his lance, said:

“Proud and stubborn knight, now protect yourself!”

And lowering his lance and the knight his, they charged each other as fast as their horses could carry them; and they struck each other with their lances on their shields, so that they were immediately shattered, and that of the king broke so easily that he did not even feel it in his hand, and thought that he had missed his blow. And he grasped his sword, and the knight his, and they struck each other on top of their helmets, and the knight's sword pierced a good half-way through the king's helmet; but that of the king broke immediately near the hilt and the iron blade fell to the ground. Then he recognized that it was treachery. And the knight began to deal him and his horse blows all over. And when the king saw that he was killing his horse, he went and grappled with him, and the other likewise with the king; and they jerked each other so hard that they fell to the ground, and the knight fell underneath, and the king took the sword that the other had lost from his hand and began to give him with it the hardest blows he could. The maiden who saw this shouted, saying:

“Oh, Arcalaus, lend aid, for you are delaying greatly and allowing your brother to die.”

When the king was thus about to kill the knight, he heard a great rumble, and he turned his head and saw ten knights who were coming at him on the run, and one came ahead, shouting:

“King Lisuarte, you die, for you will not reign another day or take a crown on your head.”

When the king heard this he was very frightened and was fearful of being killed; and he said with the great courage that he always maintained and continued to have:

“It may well be that I shall die, for you have such an advantage over me; but all of you shall die on account of me, as the traitors and cowards that you are.”

And that knight, coming forward at the full speed of his horse, gave the king with all his strength such a lance thrust on his shield that, without any delay on the latter's part by further resistance, put his hands on the ground. But at once the king got up like one who was seeking to protect himself until death, which he had very near, and struck such a cruel blow with his sword on his horse's leg that he cut it off, and the knight fell under the horse. Then they all attacked him; and he defended himself furiously, but further defense was useless, for he was put in a bad way by the horses' chests, and the two knights who were on foot grappled with him and took the sword from his hands; then they jerked the shield from his neck and the helmet from his head, and put a heavy chain around his throat, attached to which there were two lead ropes, and they made him mount on a palfrey; and with a knight on each side holding on to one of the lead ropes, they began to go forward with him; and on arriving amidst the trees of a valley, they found Arcalaus, who was holding Oriana and the damsel of Denmark; and the knight who was going ahead of the king said:

“Cousin, here you see King Lisuarte.”

“Certainly,” said he, “this has been a good arrival, and I shall bring it to pass that I may never fear him or those of his court.”

“Ah, traitor!” said the king, “I know well that you would commit complete treason; that I would make you recognize, although I am sorely wounded, if you now would be willing to fight with me.”

"Certainly," said Arcalaus, "of vanquishing such a knight as you, I would no longer boast."

So they moved all together along that highway, which was branching into two, and Arcalaus called a page of his and said:

"Go to London as fast as you can and tell Barsinan to strive to become king, for I shall adhere to what I told him, for everything is now arranged."

The page departed at once, and Arcalaus said to his retinue:

"Go to Daganel with ten of these knights and take Lisuarte and put him in my dungeon, and I shall take Oriana with these four, and I shall show her where I have my books and things in Mount Aldin."

This was one of the strongest castles in the world. Then the ten knights departed with the king, and the five with Oriana, with whom Arcalaus was going, thus giving to understand that his person was worth as much as five knights.

What shall we say here, emperors, kings, and grandees who are placed in high estate? This King Lisuarte in one day thought to rule the world with his greatness, and on this same day, his daughter, heiress apparent to his kingdom, having been lost, he imprisoned, dishonored, enchained, saw himself helpless in the power of an enchanter, evil and cruel. Protect yourselves, protect yourselves, have an understanding of God, who, although He bestows great and high estates, desires that your wills and hearts be very humble and lowly, and not considered so highly that the thanks and the services that He deserves be consigned to oblivion; but that with which you intend to sustain them, which is great pride, excessive covetousness, which is the opposite of what He desires, He will cause you to lose with corresponding dishonor. And, above all, consider His great, secret judgments, for this King Lisuarte being so just, so frank, so gracious, He permitted such cruel reverses to come to him; what then will He do to those who hold contrary qualities? Do you know what? For just as it was His will that Lisuarte was to be miraculously helped in this cruel danger of his, deeming his good works somewhat deserving in the matter; so for those who do not perform good deeds or impose restraints on their wickedness, in

this world their bodies and in the other world their souls will be lost and damned. Since now the very powerful Lord, contented with having given such harsh blows to this king, wishing to show that His strength thus suffices to lower and raise the lofty, provided in the matter the help that you shall now hear.

CHAPTER XXXV

HOW AMADIS AND GALAOR LEARNED ABOUT THE TREASON PERPETRATED,
AND DECIDED TO ACCOMPLISH, IF THEY COULD, THE LIBERATION OF
THE KING AND OF ORIANA.

While Amadis and Galaor were coming along the road to London from where they had incurred no less than the danger of death by being in the prison of the chatelaine of the castle of Gantasi, at two leagues from the city, they saw Ardian the dwarf coming as fast as his steed could carry him. Amadis, who recognized him, said:

“That is my dwarf. I doubt not that he comes in distress about someone, for he is seeking us.”

The dwarf came up to them and told them all the news, how they had carried away Oriana.

“Alas, Holy Mary, help us!” said Amadis, “and which way are those who are taking her going?”

“Near the town is the most direct route,” said the dwarf.

Amadis spurred the horse and began to ride as fast as he could, so beside himself that he could not even talk to his brother, who was going along behind him; thus they both passed near the town of London, as fast as the horses could carry them, for they heeded nothing except that Amadis kept asking those he saw in which direction Oriana was being taken, and they pointed it out to him. As Gandalin was passing under the windows where the queen was with many other women, the queen called to him and threw down to him the king’s sword, which was one of the best that ever a knight girded on; and she said to him:

"Give this sword to your master and may God aid him through it, and tell him and Galaor that the king went from here this morning with a maiden, and he has not returned and we do not know where she took him."

Gandalin took the sword and went on as fast as he could; and since Amadis, with his great distress and grief, did not heed where he was going, in crossing a stream and striving to jump to the other side, his horse, which was tired, was not able to do so, and fell in the mud; Amadis got off and pulled at it by the bridle, and there Gandalin caught up with him, and gave him the king's sword and told him the news about the latter, as the queen had told him. And taking Gandalin's horse, Amadis returned to the road, and Galaor went at his own pace, while Amadis rode along and found a trail along which it appeared mounted men had gone; and he waited for his brother; and leaving the highway, they followed the trail and in a short while they met some wood-cutters; and the latter had seen the whole ill-fortune of the king and that of Oriana, but did not know who they were, nor did they dare approach them; rather they hid themselves in the densest thickets; and one of them said:

"Knights, do you come from London?"

"And why do you ask?" said Galaor.

"Because if there is any knight or maiden missing from there," said he, "we saw here a strange incident."

Then they told all that they had seen of Oriana and the king; and Amadis and Galaor knew then that the king had been made a prisoner through treachery, and Amadis said to them:

"Do you know who they were and who took that king prisoner?"

"No," said he, "but I heard the maiden who brought him here shout for Arcalaus."

"Oh, Lord God," said Amadis, "May it please You to put me in contact with that traitor."

The peasants went and showed them in what direction the ten knights took the king, and the five, Oriana. And the peasant said:

"One of the five was the best knight I have ever seen."

"Ah!" said Amadis, "that one is that traitor of an Arcalaus."

And he said to Galaor:

"Brother, sir, go you after the king, and may God guide me and you."

And spurring his horse, he went the way taken by the five, and Galaor as fast as he could travel on the one along which they were taking the king.

Having left his brother, Amadis made such an effort to travel fast that when the sun was about to set, he had so exhausted his horse that he could not get him to go faster than a walk. And going along greatly distressed, he saw on his right hand beside a road a dead knight, and beside him was a squire, who held by the reins a big horse. Amadis came up to him and said:

"Friend, who killed that knight?"

"A treacherous man killed him," said the squire, "who comes along here bringing by force the most beautiful maidens in the world; and he killed him for no other reason than because he asked who they were; and I can't get anyone to help me carry him away from here."

Amadis said to him:

"I shall leave you this squire of mine to help you; and give me that horse and I promise to give you two better horses for it."

The squire agreed to it. Amadis mounted the horse, which was very handsome, and said to Gandalin:

"Help the squire, and as soon as you put the knight in some populated place, return to this road and come after me."

And leaving there, he began to go along the road as fast as he could; and near daybreak he found himself in a valley where he saw a hermitage, and he went there to find out if anyone was living in it; and finding a hermit, he asked him whether five knights who were bringing two maidens had passed by there.

"Sir," said the good man, "they have not passed, for I would have seen them. But did you see a castle which is over yonder?"

"No," said Amadis, "and why do you ask?"

"Because," said he, "right now a youth, my nephew, is leaving here, and he told me that Arcalaus the Enchanter had lodged there, and was bringing along some beautiful maidens held by force."

"In heaven's name," said Amadis, "I am seeking that traitor."

"Certainly," said the hermit, "he has done much harm in this land, and may God remove such an evil man from the world, or may he make amends for it. But don't you have any other aid?"

"No," said Amadis, "except that of God."

"Sir," said the hermit, "aren't you saying that they are five plus Arcalaus, who is the best knight and the most fearless one in the world."

"Let him be everything that he wishes," said Amadis, "for he is treacherous and arrogant, and so probably are those who guard him, and therefore I shall not fear them."

Then he asked who the maiden was; Amadis told him. The hermit said:

"Ah, may Holy Mary help you, so that such a good lady may not be in the power of such an evil man!"

"Do you have any horse feed," said Amadis, "for this horse?"

"Yes," said he, "and gladly will I give it to you."

Then while the horse was eating, Amadis asked him to whom the castle belonged. The good man replied:

"To a knight called Grumen, first cousin of Dardan, the one who was killed at the court of King Lisuarte, and I think that on that account he would receive there those who hate King Lisuarte."

"Now I commend you to God," said Amadis, "and I beg you to bear me in mind in your prayers, and show me the way that leads to the castle."

The good man showed it to him, and Amadis journeyed until he arrived there; and he saw that it had a high wall and thick towers, and he came up to it; but he did not hear anyone inside, and he was pleased, for he indeed thought that Arcalaus probably had not yet departed. And he went all around the castle, and saw it had only one window; then he withdrew to a distance among some rocks, and dismounting from his horse, he took it by the reins, and remained immobile, keeping his eyes always on the gate, like one who had no desire to sleep. At this time dawn was breaking, and mounting his horse, he moved farther away along a valley; for he was afraid, if he were seen, of

creating suspicion so that they would not leave the castle, thinking there were more people; and he climbed a knoll covered with great dense thickets. Then he saw a knight coming through the gate of the castle, and he climbed another higher hillock. And he scrutinized the terrain in all directions. Afterwards he returned to the castle, and it was not long before he saw Arcalaus and his four companions come out very well armed. And in their midst the very beautiful Oriana, and he said:

“Oh, God, now and always help me, and guide me in protecting her!”

At this, Arcalaus approached so close to him that he passed near where he was; and Oriana was saying:

“My dear lord, I shall never see you, since my death is already approaching.”

The tears came to the eyes of Amadis; and descending the knoll as quickly as he could, he entered with them into a great field, and said:

“Ah, treacherous Arcalaus, it is not fitting for you to conduct such a good lady.”

Oriana, who recognized the voice of her beloved, trembled all over; but Arcalaus and the others charged at him and he at them, and he struck Arcalaus, who was coming in front, so violently that he fell to the ground over the haunches of his horse, and some of them failed in their encounter; and Amadis passed by them, and turning his horse very quickly, struck Grumen, the lord of the castle, who was one of them, in such wise that the iron tip and the wooden shaft of his lance pierced him through and through, and immediately he fell dead, and the lance was broken. Afterwards Amadis grasped the king's sword and charged at the others; and he threw himself among them so fiercely and with such rage that the blows he gave them were a marvel. And his courage and intrepidity so increased by virtue of his being brave and agile that it seemed to him that even if the field were entirely full of knights, they could not endure or make defense against his good sword. While he was working these marvels that you are hearing, the damsel of Denmark said to Oriana:

"Madam, you are rescued, for here is the knight of very good fortune, and look at the wonders he performs."

Oriana then said:

"Oh, my dear, God help and protect you, for there is no one else in the world to help us or to be of more avail."

The squire who had her on his nag said:

"Certainly I shall not wait to take on my head the blows that the helmets and the coats of mail cannot stop or resist."

And putting her down on the ground, he went away, fleeing as fast as he could.

Amadis, who was going about among them bending them to his will, gave one such a slash on the arm that he cut it off, hurling it to the ground; this one began to flee crying out in deadly agony, and Amadis went for another, whose helmet he had already knocked from his head, and clove him down to his neck. When the other knight saw such an annihilation of his companions, he began to flee as fast as he could. Amadis, who was going after him, heard his lady making an outcry, and turning quickly saw Arcalaus, who had already mounted, and seizing Oriana by the arm, had placed her in front of him and was going off with her as fast as he could; Amadis went after him without any delay, and overtook him in that great field. And raising his sword to strike him, forbore giving him a tremendous blow, for his sword was such that he thought it would kill him and his lady, and he struck him on his back but not with all his strength; however he cut off a piece of his coat of mail and a piece of hide from his back. Then Arcalaus, in order to get away more quickly, let Oriana fall to the ground, for he feared death, and Amadis said:

"Ah, Arcalaus; turn back and you will see whether I am as dead as you said."

But he did not wish to believe him; rather, he cast away the shield from his neck; and Amadis caught up to him beforehand and gave him a blow from a distance on his sword belt and cut his coat of mail and into his lower back, and the point of the sword reached the horse in the flank and cut it somewhat; so that the horse with fear began to run so fast that in a short time it put quite a distance between them. Amadis, even though he

hated him intensely and wanted to kill him, did not go on any farther in order not to leave his lady in the lurch, and he returned to where she was; and getting off his horse, he went and knelt before her and kissed her hands, saying:

“Now, may God do with me as He wishes, for never, my lady, did I think I would see you.”

She was in such a state of fright that she could not speak; and she embraced him, for she was quite horrified at the dead knights who were near her. The damsel of Denmark went to take Amadis's horse and saw Arcalaus's sword on the ground, and picking it up, she brought it to Amadis and said:

“Look, sir, what a beautiful sword.”

He looked at it and saw it was the one with which he had been cast upon the sea, and which Arcalaus had taken from him when he enchanted him. And as you hear, Amadis being thus seated beside his lady, who did not have strength to get up, Gandalin arrived, who had traveled all night, and had left the dead knight at a hermitage, whereat they were quite pleased; and very greatly pleased was he to see the strife thus ended. Then Amadis ordered them to put the damsel of Denmark on one of the loose horses, and he put Oriana on the damsel's palfrey, and they moved on from there as happy as could be. Amadis led his lady's steed by the reins, and she was telling him how frightened she was of those dead knights, and that she could not regain her composure; but he said to her:

“Much more frightful and cruel is that death that I suffer on account of you; and, lady, have pity on me and remember what you have promised me, for if up to now I have endured, it is only because I believed that it was not in your hands or power to give me more than you have already given me; but if from now on, while I see you, my lady, in such freedom, you were not to succor me, nothing would suffice any longer to sustain my life; rather it would come to an end from the most maddening expectation with which any person ever died.”

Oriana said to him:

“Forsooth, my dear, never, if I am able, shall you be in that danger because of me. I shall do what you wish, and you see to

it that, although here below it may appear error and sin, it not be so before God."

Thus they journeyed three leagues, until they entered a very dense forest that was about one league from a town. Oriana became very drowsy, as one who had not slept at all the night before, and said,

"Dear, I am so sleepy that I cannot stand it."

"Lady," said he, "let us go to that valley and you shall sleep."

And leaving the road, they went to the valley, where they found a little stream and very fresh green grass. There Amadis helped his lady to dismount and said:

"Lady, the afternoon is starting out to be warm; here you shall sleep until the cool comes. And meanwhile I shall send Gandalin to that town yonder to bring us something to refresh us."

"Let him go," said Oriana, "but who will give it to him?"

Amadis said:

"They will give it to him in exchange for that horse as security, and he will return on foot."

"It shall not be thus," said Oriana, "rather, have him take this ring of mine, which will never be worth so much to us as right now."

And taking it off her finger, she gave it to Gandalin. And as he was leaving, he said in a low voice to Amadis:

"Sir, he who does not take time by the forelock, may never have another chance."

And having said this, he went away at once; and Amadis understood very well why he said it to him.

Oriana lay down on the damsel's mantle; meanwhile Amadis disarmed, for he had certainly needed to do so; and when he was disarmed, the damsel entered a thicket to sleep and Amadis returned to his lady. And when he saw her thus so beautiful and in his power, she having agreed to do his will, he was so distraught with joy and bashfulness that he did not dare even to look at her; so that one could well say that in that green grass, on that mantle, more by the grace and courtesy of Oriana than by any immodesty or boldness on Amadis's part, was the most beautiful maiden in the world made a matron. And thinking thus

to cool their ardent passion, it increasing to a much greater degree, remained more burning and with greater force than ever, as it is wont to happen in sincere and true love affairs. Thus were they together in those acts of love, such that he and she can think and feel that their hearts are wounded by the same Cupid's arrow, until the hindrance of Gandalin's arrival caused Amadis to get up; and calling the maiden, they gave good orders to prepare a meal, for they really had need of it; where, although there were lacking there the many servants, the grand table service of gold and silver plate, that did not take away that sweet and great pleasure that they had from the repast on the grass. Then, just as you hear, these two lovers were in that forest with such a life as never at their pleasure would have been abandoned if they could have maintained it without embarrassment and great shame.

Where we shall leave them enjoying themselves and resting, and we shall tell what happened to Don Galaor in his quest for the king.

CHAPTER XXXVI

HOW DON GALAOR SET FREE KING LISUARTE FROM THE CAPTIVITY IN WHICH HE WAS BEING TREACHEROUSLY TRANSPORTED.

Don Galaor, having left Amadis, his brother, as you have already heard, started along the road over which they were taking the king. And he made haste to go as fast as he could, as one who had a very great anxiety to overtake them, and who was not paying attention to anything he might see except their trail; and thus he journeyed until the hour of vespers, when he entered a valley and found in it the hoof prints where the horses had stopped; then he followed that trail as fast as his horse could carry him, for it seemed to him that they could not go far; but it was not long before he saw in front of him a knight fully armed on a good horse, who sallied forth toward him, and said to him:

“Stop, sir knight, and tell me what concern causes you thus to gallop.”

“For heaven’s sake!” said Galaor, “don’t bother me with your question, for I am being detained by you, whence much ill can result.”

“By Holy Mary!” said the knight, “You shall not go ahead until you tell me about it, or you fight with me.”

And Galaor did nothing about this except to go on; and the knight of the valley said:

“Surely, knight, you flee because of having done something base; and now protect yourself, for I want to know what it is.”

Then he went at him with his lance lowered and his horse at full speed. Galaor turned; but his shield having been placed on his

back, when he saw him near at hand, he quickly guided his horse off the highway and withdrew to one side, and the knight was not able to make contact with him, but instead passed by him quickly, like one who had a spirited and well rested horse; and so he went for a bit in front of Galaor, and he turned, holding high his lance, and said:

“Ah, base and cowardly knight! You cannot protect yourself in any way from telling me what I ask you. If you don’t tell me, you will die.”

Then he went for him very hard. And Galaor, who had the more nimble horse, guarded himself from the encounter and did nothing but go forward as fast as he could. The knight, who could not stop his horse so quickly, when he turned, saw that Galaor had put quite a distance between them and said:

“So help me God, you don’t go away on me like that.”

And he, who knew the terrain well, took a short cut and went and stationed himself in a pass. Galaor, who saw him, was much troubled, and the knight said to him,

“Coward, base one, without courage! Now choose from three things whichever you wish: either fight or turn back, or tell me what I ask you.”

“I am irked at any of the three, but you are not very courteous, for I shall not turn away, and if you fight me, it will not be to my liking; but if you wish to know why I am in such a hurry, follow me and you shall see, because it would take me too long to tell you, and in the end you would not believe me; so great is the misfortune.”

“In the name of God!” said the knight, “go now, and I tell you that you shall not be going without me three days from now.”

Galaor went on, and the knight behind him; and when they were a half league from that place, they saw a knight fully armed going on foot after a horse from which he had fallen, and another knight departing from him, who was going at a slower pace. And the knight who was going behind Galaor recognized the fallen knight, who was his first cousin, and went quickly to catch the horse for him; and he gave it to him, saying:

“What was this, sir cousin?”

He said:

"I was going along thinking of you know what; so that I wasn't even watching out for myself, and I paid no heed until that knight who goes yonder struck me with his lance on my shield, so that my horse went to his knees with me, and I fell to the ground, and my horse ran away; but at once I grasped my sword and called on him to fight, but he would not come; instead he told me that another time I should be more alert in answering when I was called."

"And by the faith you owe to God," said he, "let's go after him, if we can do it, and you will see how I take revenge."

"That I cannot do," said the cousin, "because for three days I have to attend that knight after whom I am going."

And he told him what had happened to him.

"Certainly," said the knight, "either he is the most cowardly man in the world, or he is going to undertake some great deed, because he takes care of himself thus, and I am willing to put off the avenging of my injury in order to see what will come of this affair."

At this point they saw Galaor riding in the distance, for he did nothing but travel, and the two cousins went on behind him. And at this hour it was near nightfall. Galaor went into a forest, and in the darkness he lost the trail, and did not know which way to go. Then he began to pray for God's mercy to guide him that he might be the first to effect that rescue. And thinking that the knights had gone off somewhere with the king to sleep, he journeyed listening through some valleys from one end to the other, but he heard nothing; the two cousins who were following him thought he was going along the road; but as soon as they had traveled about a league, they came out of the forest and did not see him; and believing that he had hidden from them, they went and lodged at the home of a lady who dwelt near there. Galaor went through the forest in all directions. He decided to bypass the forest, since he found nothing in it, and to climb up next day on some high knoll to look over the land; and taking the road that he was previously following, he journeyed until he came out on level ground; and then he saw ahead in a valley a small fire; and going there, he found that muleteers were camping there; and when they saw him thus armed, with fear

they took up lances and axes and went toward him; and he told them not to fear any harm, but he asked them to give him a little barley for his horse. They gave it to him, and there he fed his horse. They asked him if he would eat; he said not, but that he would sleep a little, and that they should awaken him before dawn. At that time two-thirds of the night had already passed; Galaor threw himself down to sleep near the fire thus armed, and when dawn began to break, he got up, for he did not sleep very peacefully, because he had great anxiety over not finding those he was looking for; and mounting his horse, taking his arms, he bade them good-bye. And they, him, for his squire he had not been able to keep with him; and from then on he promised, if God protected him, to give his squire the best horse; and he went straight to a high hillock, and from there began to examine the terrain in all directions. At that time the two cousins, who had lodged in the lady's house, sallied forth. And it was now morning, and they saw Galaor and recognized him by his shield and went toward him; but on moving forward, they saw him descend the hill as fast as his horse would carry him. And the unhorsed knight said:

"He has seen us already and is fleeing; certainly I think that on account of some ill-fortune he keeps fleeing and hiding; and may God help me, provided I can overtake him, if I don't ascertain it to his harm, if he deserves it; and let us go after him."

But Galaor, who was far from thinking of them, had already seen the knights going through a pass at the edge of the forest, and the other five knights were going ahead, and the five behind, and in between them unarmed men were going; and he thought that those were the ones who were taking the king away, and he went toward them as one who already had made an offering of his death in order to save another's life; and when he was near them, he saw the king on the chain, and was so grieved at it that not thinking about death, he ran to the five who were going in front, and said:

"Ah, traitors! To your own harm you laid hands on the best man in the world."

And the five came toward him; but he struck the first on his chest so that the iron with a piece of the shaft came out his back,

and he struck him down dead. And the others struck him so hard that they made his horse go to his knees, and one of them thrust his lance between Galaor's chest and shield; and he losing it, Galaor took it and went and hit another one with it in the muscle of his leg, and he penetrated his armor, and his leg, and the lance went into his horse; so that the knight was transfixed; there he broke his lance, and grasping his sword he saw all the others coming at him, and he rushed into their midst so violently that there is no man who, if he saw it, would not marvel at how he could stand so many and such powerful blows as they gave him. And being in this great press and danger on account of the knights being many in number, God sought to succor him with the two cousins who were following him; who, when they saw him thus, marvelled greatly at such knightly prowess; and the one who was going behind him said:

"We certainly blamed that man for cowardice unjustly; and let us go help him in such a great melee."

"Who would do otherwise in the matter," said the other one, "but succor the best knight in the world? And don't think that he would attack so many men except on account of some extraordinary action."

Then they charged at full speed, and went and struck them very fiercely like men who were very vigorous and experienced in the exercise of arms, for both of them had been knights errant for more than ten years; and I tell you that the first was called Ladasin, the fencer, and the other, Don Guilan the Pensive, the good knight. At this time Galaor already had great need of their help, for his helmet was slashed and dented in many places and his coat of mail rent all over, and his horse wounded and about to fall; but in spite of this he did not stop performing wonders, and giving such mighty blows to those whom he could reach that they hardly dared to await him. And he thought that if his horse were not failing him, they would not maintain themselves against him sufficiently to avoid his killing them in the end. But the two cousins having arrived, as you have already heard, the fight then changed for the better for him, for they fought so well with such great strength that he marvelled greatly; and thus he found himself more free because the blows that he had been enduring

were distributed about. Then he accomplished wonders, for he could attack at his will; and so great was the pressure that he put on them, and the cousins with their help, that in a short time they were all dead or overcome.

When Arcalaus's cousin saw this, he rushed at the king to kill him; and as those who were with him had all fled, the king got down from the palfrey just as he was with his chain around his throat, and took a shield and the sword of the knight who died first; and the other tried to strike him on top of the head. The king raised the shield, on which he received the blow, and it was such that the sword went through the boss for a good span, and reached the king on the head with its point, and cut skin and flesh to the bone. But the king gave the horse such a blow on its face with the sword that he could not withdraw it; and the horse reared and fell on top of the knight. Galaor, who was now on foot because his horse couldn't move, and was going to help the king, went for the knight to cut off his head. And the king shouted not to kill him. The two cousins, who had gone after a knight who was escaping them, and had killed him, when they returned and saw the king, were greatly shocked, for they knew nothing about his being taken captive. And they quickly dismounted, and taking off their helmets, they went and knelt before him, and he recognized them and lifting them up by their hands, said:

"By heaven, friends, you helped me at a good time; and the friend of Don Guilan's lady love does me great evil, for she took him away from my retinue, and on account of her I lose you, Ladasin."

Guilan was very much ashamed and his face turned red; but not on this account did he cease to love his lady, the duchess of Bristol, and she loved him; so that already they had attained the objective of their love that they desired; and always the duke suspected that Guilan had been the one who entered his castle when it was Galaor who went there, as the story has related to you.

But let us leave this and return to the king, and what he did after he was free. Know you that Galaor extricated Arcalaus's cousin from under the horse; and taking the chain away from the king, he put it on him; and taking the horses of the dead knights,

the king took one and Galaor the other, for his own did not stir, and very happy they started out on the road to London. Ladasin told the king all that had happened to him with Galaor; and the king esteemed the latter highly for abstaining from fighting in view of the quest that he was pursuing, and Guilan likewise told him how when he was thinking about his lady love so intently that he did not heed anything else, the knight had overthrown him without saying anything to him. The king laughed mightily at this, saying that although he had heard many things that the enamored do on account of their sweethearts, nothing equalled this; and, said he, "I see that with good reason they call you Guilan the Pensive."

Of these things and of others very agreeable they continued to talk until they reached the house of Ladasin, for he dwelt very near there; and there Galaor's squire overtook them, and Ardian the dwarf, who thought his master was going along that road, to look for him. Galaor related to the king the way he and Amadis had separated, and said that he ought to send word to London, because the wood-cutters would have told the news, whereupon the whole court would be up in arms.

"Since Amadis," said the king, "goes in aid of my daughter, I don't think I shall lose her, if that traitor does not practice some deception upon her by enchantment. And as for what you say, it will be well that the queen learn what has happened to me."

And he gave orders to a squire of Ladasin's who knew his way about the country, to go at once with that news. Then the king lodged there that night, where he was very well served. And next day they resumed their journey, and Arcalaus's cousin told them how all that had occurred had been on the advice of Barsinan, lord of Sansuenia, he intending to be king of Great Britain. Then the king strove to go faster than before in order to find him there.

CHAPTER XXXVII

HOW THE NEWS CAME TO THE QUEEN THAT KING LISUARTE WAS A CAPTIVE; AND HOW BARSINAN CARRIED OUT HIS TREASON, SEEKING TO BE KING, AND FINALLY WAS RUINED AND THE KING RESTORED TO HIS KINGDOM.

The wood-cutters who had seen what had happened to the king, reached the town and told everything. When this was known, the agitation was tremendous; and all the knights armed themselves and they set out in all directions at the full speed of their horses, so that the countryside seemed to be full of them. Arban, the king of North Wales remained speaking with the queen, and his squires arrived there with his arms and horses; and coming in to where he was, a page said to him:

“Sir, arm yourself; what are you doing? Now not a knight of the king’s retinue remains in the town except you, for all are going at top speed of their horses through the forest.”

“And why?” said Arban.

“Because they say,” said the page, “that ten knights are carrying the king away a prisoner.”

“Alas, Holy Mary!” said the queen; “for I have always feared that.”

And she fell in a faint.

Arban left her in the care of the ladies and maidens in waiting, who were lamenting bitterly, and went and armed himself; and mounting his horse, he heard it shouted that they were taking the citadel.

“Holy Mary!” said Arban, “we are all betrayed.”

And he thought that he would do wrong if he left the queen unprotected.

At this time throughout the town there was such a great turmoil as if everyone in the world were there. Arban stopped thus armed at the gate of the queen's palace with two hundred of his knights; and he sent two of them to find out what the tumult was about; and reaching the citadel, they saw that Barsinan was inside with all his company, and he was beheading and killing as many as he could capture, and others he was hurling from the walls; for when he heard of the tumult and the capture of the king, he had no eyes for anything else. And the king's men, not suspecting it, were going without qualms to his aid; and Barsinan had with him six hundred knights and servants well armed. When Arban was informed of it by his knights, he said:

"The king is a captive through the counsel of a traitor."

Barsinan now being in control of the citadel, he left forces there to guard it; and he went forth with the rest to seize the queen and take the king's seat and crown. Those in the town who saw that the contest was going thus, all went to the queen's residence as well armed as they were able. When Barsinan reached the queen's residence, he found there Arban with all his company and a lot of townspeople. And Barsinan said to him:

"Arban, up till now you have been the most sensible young knight that I have seen; and act from now on so that you may not lose your good sense."

"Why do you say that to me?" said Arban.

"Because I know," said he, "that King Lisuarte is in the hands of one who will send me his head without his body within five days; and in this land there is nobody except me who can and should be king, and so it shall yet be; and the land of North Wales which you hold as a fief I grant unto you, because you are an excellent knight and knowledgeable. Stand aside and I shall take the throne and crown; and if you should wish to do otherwise, herewith I challenge you, and I say to you that no one will be against me to take away my land from me whose head I don't order cut off."

"Certainly," said Arban, "you say things for which I shall be against you as long as I live. The first, that you counsel me to

be a traitor against my lord when he is in such great distress. And the other, that you know that they who bear him away will kill him; whence it seems clear that you are a party to the treason. Since I always keep in mind that loyalty is one of the most precious things in the world, and you spurning it, and as an evil man being against it, we could ill come to any agreement."

"What!" said Barsinan, "you think to deter me from being king of London?"

"A traitor will never be king of London," said Arban, "and moreover, never in the lifetime of the most loyal king in the world."

Barsinan said:

"I made an advantageous proposal to you first, rather than to the others, believing you were smarter than they, and now you appear to me lacking in intelligence, and I shall force you to recognize your folly; and I want to see what you will do, for I intend to take the crown and the throne, which I deserve because of my good deeds."

"Concerning that, I shall do as much," said Arban, "as I would if the king my lord were seated on it."

"Now I shall see," said Barsinan.

And he commanded his company to go and attack them. And Arban awaited them with his company, as one who was very courageous and loyal in all things. He was very angry at what he heard about the king his lord; and very fiercely they joined in hand-to-hand fighting with their opponents, everywhere giving each other mighty blows; so that many were killed and wounded, and both sides fought as hard as they could to overcome and kill each other; but Arban did so much that day that more than all others in that struggle he was praised; for he was the defender of all his men, and kept going forward, knocking down and striking, putting his life at the point of death. Thus they continued until nightfall, for they could not overcome each other; and this was caused because the streets were narrow, for otherwise Arban would have seen himself in danger and the queen would have been taken prisoner. But Barsinan took refuge with his company in the citadel, and found a good bit of his force

missing, both dead and wounded, so that it was very necessary for the remainder to rest. And Arban said to his men:

"Sirs, let your loyalty and ardor be exhibited, and do not be disheartened by this bad fortune, for quickly it will be recouped."

Furthermore he arranged his company so that they might protect themselves during the night.

This done, the queen, who was frightened almost to death, gave orders to call Arban; and he came just as he was, armed and wounded in many places; and on arriving where the queen was, he took off his helmet, which was broken, and they saw five wounds on his face and his throat, and his face covered with blood, for he was quite disfigured; but he seemed very handsome to those ladies who, after God, regarded him as their protector. When the queen saw him thus, she was sorely grieved on his account, and said to him weeping:

"Alas, good nephew! May God sustain you and aid you, that you may be able to sustain this loyalty of yours to a conclusion. In heaven's name, tell me: what will become of the king and what will become of us?"

"We," said he, "shall be all right if God wills it, and of the king we shall hear good news; and I tell you, my lady, not to fear the traitors who were planted here, in view of the great loyalty of your vassals who are here with me, who will defend you very well."

"Ah, nephew!" said the queen, "I see you in such a state as to be unable to bear arms, and I do not know what the others will do without you."

"Lady," said he, "do not worry about that, for as long as I have my soul in my body, my arms will never be put down by me."

Then he left her and returned to his company; and thus they passed that night. And Barsinan, although he found his company in bad shape, showed great spirit, and said to them:

"Friends, I do not wish us to fight any more over this, nor have more dead, for I shall bring it to a conclusion without excess or battle, as you shall see later; and now rest without any misgiving."

So they rested that night. And next morning, he armed himself and mounted his horse, and taking twenty knights with him, he went to a short cut that Arban's steward was guarding; and as those at the barricade saw them, they took up their arms in order to defend themselves; but Barsinan told them he was coming to speak with them, and that they be assured of a truce until noon. And the steward then went to tell his master, and he was happy about the truce, for the majority of his company were so badly injured that they could not take up arms; and he went at once with his steward to his camp. And Barsinan said to them:

"I wish a truce with you for five days, if you are willing."

"I am willing," said Arban, "on condition that you do not try to attack anything in the town; and if the king should return, that we do whatever he commands."

"I agree to all of that," said Barsinan, "provided that there be no battle, for I value my followers, and I esteem you people, for you will be mine more quickly than you think; and I shall tell you that the king is dead; and I have his daughter and wish to take her for my wife, and you will see this before the truce comes to an end."

"Now may God not help me," said Arban, "if you ever have a truce with me, being an accomplice in the treason that was done my lord. Now go and do your worst."

And I tell you that before night came, Barsinan attacked them a good three times, and retired outside.

CHAPTER XXXVIII

CONCERNING HOW AMADIS CAME TO THE AID OF THE CITY OF LONDON
AND KILLED THAT TRAITOR OF A BARSINAN AND RESTORED THE WHOLE
CITY TO CALM.

Amadis, lodging in the woods with his lady Oriana, as we told you, asked her what Arcalaus said; she replied:

"That I should not lament, that he would make me queen of London within two weeks and that he would give me Barsinan for my husband, whom he would make king of my father's land, and that he would be his chief steward in exchange for his having given him me and my father's head."

"Oh, Holy Mary!" said Amadis. "What great treason Barsinan's, to pretend to be such a friend of the king! And I am afraid he will wreak some harm on the queen."

"Oh, my dear!" said she, "lend aid in the matter as best you can."

"That I must do," said Amadis, "and I am very sorry; for I would have taken great pleasure in enjoying with you four days in this forest if, my lady, it had been to your liking."

"God knows," said she, "how much I would have liked it; but very great harm might have come of it to the land which, God willing, will be mine and yours."

Thus they took their ease until dawn. Then Amadis arose and armed himself very well; and leading his lady's steed by the reins, he started out on the road to London, and he traveled as fast as he could; and he met some of the knights just as they were leaving in groups of five or ten, and there were probably more than a thousand of these knights; and he showed them where to

go to look for the king, and he told them how Galaor was going ahead to the rescue; and passing by all of them, he encountered at five leagues from London Don Grumedan, the good old man who had served as foster-father to the queen, and with him were twenty knights of his family, who went all night through the forest from one end to the other looking for the king; and when he recognized Oriana, he went to her weeping and said:

"Madam, Oh, heavens! What a good day with your arrivall! But, in heaven's name, what news of the king your father?"

"Certainly, my friend," said she crying, "near London they separated me from him; and it was God's pleasure that Amadis overtook those who were carrying me away and exercised such might that he rescued me from them."

"Certainly," said Don Grumedan, "whatever he couldn't accomplish, let no one else strive to do." Then he said to Amadis: "Dear sir, what has your brother done?"

"There," said Amadis, "where they separated the king from his daughter was when he and I separated; and he followed the king, and I Arcalaus, who was carrying away this lady."

"Now I have more hope," said Don Grumedan, "since such a daring and successful knight as Don Galaor is going to the aid of the king."

Amadis told Don Grumedan of the great treachery of Arcalaus and of Barsinan, and furthermore he said:

"Take Oriana, and I shall go to the queen as quickly as I can, for I am afraid that that traitor will seek to do her harm; and you order the knights that you meet to go back; for if the king is to be rescued by people, so many are going in quest of him that many of them are not needed."

Don Grumedan took Oriana and continued on the road to London as fast as he could, meanwhile ordering all the people that he met to return. Amadis went as fast as his horse could carry him, and as he was entering the town met the squire whom the king had sent to give the news that he was free; and the squire told him how it had occurred. Amadis gave many thanks to God for his brother's successful exploit. And before entering the town, he ascertained all that Barsinan had done; and he went in as secretly as he could. And when Arban saw him, both he and his

men were very happy, and greatly plucked up courage. Arban went and embraced him, saying to him:

“My good sir, what news do you bring?”

“All of it pleasing to you,” said Amadis, “and let us go before the queen and you shall hear it.”

Then they entered where she was, Amadis leading the squire by the hand; and when he saw her, he knelt before her and said:

“Madam, this squire leaves the king safe and sound, and he sends him to you to tell you so; and I left Oriana in the hands of Don Grumedan your foster father, and she will be here at once; and in the meantime, I want to see Barsinan if I can.”

And leaving his helmet and shield and taking another in order that he might not be recognized, he said to Arban:

“Have the barriers torn down, and let Barsinan and his company come; and God willing, we shall make him pay for his treachery.”

And he told him what he knew about Barsinan and Arcalaus. The road blocks were at once demolished; and Barsinan and his men charged in, believing they would win everything without being stopped; and Arban's men received them; so between them there began a very dangerous engagement, where there were many killed and wounded. Barsinan went forward, for as his men were many and the opposing ones but few, they were unable to hold against them; and Barsinan strove to do all he could to take the queen. Amadis saw the fray, went out against them, carrying at his neck a disfigured shield and a rusty helmet, such that it was worth very little, but in the end it was adjudged good; and he went forward through the melee, with the king's good sword girded on. And coming up to Barsinan, he gave him a lance thrust on his shield of such force that it penetrated it and his coat of mail, and the tip went half-way through into his flesh and there broke off; and grasping his sword he struck him on top of his helmet and cut as much skin from his head as he could reach; so that Barsinan was stunned; and the sword cut so delicately that Amadis did not feel it in his hand any more than nothing at all; and he struck him again on the arm with which he was holding his sword and cut the sleeve and the arm with it close to his hand; and the sword descended to his leg and cut off a good

half of it. And Barsinan tried to flee, but could not and fell down immediately; and Amadis went and attacked the others so violently that those whom he reached with a direct blow had no further need of a physician; so that as soon as they recognized him by the marvels that he was performing, they left his way clear, vying with each other in fleeing from death. Arban and those men of his who followed him as leader pressed forward so hard that Barsinan's company, many of them having been left dead or wounded in the street where they fought, took refuge in the citadel. Amadis came up to the gate, and would have started to go inside if it had not been locked against him. Then he returned to where he left Barsinan with many from the town, who were guarding him; and on arriving where Barsinan was, he saw he was still breathing; and he ordered him to be taken to the palace and to be guarded until the king came. And the combat having been concluded just as you hear with some dead and others locked up, Amadis looked at the bloody sword which he held in his hand and said:

"Ah, sword! on a good day was born the knight who acquired you; and certainly you are being rightfully used, for since you are the best sword of the world, the best man in it owns you."

Then he ordered himself disarmed; and he went to the queen, and Arban went to lie down on his bed, for he had great need of it in view of the seriousness of his wounds.

Meanwhile King Lisuarte, who was coming at full speed on his way to London to find Barsinan, met many of his knights who were looking for him, and he had them turn back; and he sent some of them over the highways and through the valleys to have all those whom they might find return, for they were many; and the first ones whom he met were Agrajes and Galvanes, and Soliman and Galdan, and Dinadaus and Bervas; these six were traveling together lamenting bitterly, and when they came before the king, with great joy they sought to kiss his hands; but he embraced them, and said:

"My friends, you were close to losing me, and it would undoubtedly have been so, except for Galaor and Don Guilan and Ladasin, who by great good fortune were united."

Dinadaus said to him:

"Sire, all the people of the town have sallied forth at the news, and they will all be lost."

"Cousin," said the king, "take the best of these knights, those who are most satisfactory to you; and take this shield of mine, so that they obey you with more circumspection, and make them return."

This Dinadaus was one of the best knights of the king's lineage, and very highly esteemed among the excellent ones, both for courtesy and for good deeds of chivalry, and also for his prowess; and he went at once, so that he made many return. The king proceeding, as you have heard, thus accompanied by many knights and other forces and entering the great highway to London, found that very intimate friend of his, Don Grumedan, who was bringing Oriana. I tell you that their mutual pleasure was very great, all the more so because they had given up hope of the possibility of their great tribulation's being remedied. Grumedan told the king how Amadis had gone into the town to the queen. At this point the king reached London, and in his company were more than two thousand knights; and before he entered the town, they told him all that Barsinan had done, and the defense that King Arban made and how with the arrival of Amadis, everything had been settled by taking Barsinan prisoner. So already everything sad was rendered joyous. The king having arrived where the queen was, who can relate to you the pleasure and joy that she and all her ladies and maidens in waiting had with him and with Oriana? Certainly no-one, for it was so overwhelming. The king ordered siege laid to the citadel and he caused to be brought before him Barsinan, who had regained consciousness, and the cousin of Arcalaus, and had them tell why they had plotted that treachery. They told him everything, without any omissions. And he gave orders to have them brought to within view of the citadel, where their men might see them, and that they both be burned to death, which was done at once. Those in the citadel not having provisions or help, after five days threw themselves upon the mercy of the king; and he imposed penalties on some according to his pleasure and released the others. But nothing more will be told about this, except that because of this death of Barsinan there was for a long time great hatred between

Great Britain and Sansuenia; there coming against this same king a son of this Barsinan, a valiant knight, with many companies of soldiers, as the story will relate subsequently.

King Lisuarte, having surcease from his misfortunes, returned to the court convocation as before, with everyone holding very great celebrations both by night in the towns and by day in the countryside. And one day there came there the lady and her sons in whose presence Amadis and Galaor had promised Madasima to leave King Lisuarte, as you have already heard. When they saw her, they went to her to do her honor, and she said to them:

"Friends, I am come here for the purpose that you know; tell me what you will do about it."

"We shall carry out all that was agreed upon with Madasima."

"In the name of God!" said the lady.

"Since today marks the time limit, let us go at once before the king," they said.

"Let us go," said she.

Then they went where the king was; and the lady bowed low. And the king received her with very good will. The matron said:

"Sire, I have come here to see if these knights will keep a promise they made to a lady."

The king asked what the promise was.

"It will be such," said she, "as I think will grieve you and those of your court who esteem them."

Then the duenna told the entire affair just as it had taken place with Madasima, the chatelaine of Gantasi. When he heard this, the king said:

"Ah, Galaor, you have killed me!"

"It is better this way," said Galaor, "than to die; for if we had been recognized, nobody would have saved our lives; and do not worry about this, sire, very much; for the remedy will be soon, more quickly than you think."

Afterwards he spoke to Amadis, his brother:

"You promised me that you would do in this matter just as I do."

"That is true," said he.

And Galaor then told the king and the knights who were present, by what deceit they had been imprisoned. The king was greatly astounded on hearing of such treachery; but Galaor said that he thought the lady would be the one thwarted and deceived in that agreement, as they would see; and in the presence of the duenna he said to the king, for all to hear:

"Sir king, I take my leave of you and your retinue, as I have promised, and so fulfill my promise; and I leave you and your company for Madasima, the chatelaine of the castle of Gantasi; who considered it good to cause you this sorrow and as many others as she can, because she hates you very much."

And Amadis did the same thing. Galaor said to the lady and to her sons:

"Does it seem to you that we have kept the promise?"

"Yes, without fail," said she; "for all that you have agreed to you have fulfilled."

"In the name of God!" said Galaor; "so now when you please, you may depart; and tell Madasima that she did not agree as wisely as she thought; and now you can see it."

Then he turned to the king and said:

"Sire, we have carried out with Madasima what we promised her, not setting any limit to how long a time we were to be separated from you; so that we can without difficulty return every time that it be our will to do so; and let us do so at once, returning to what we were before."

And when the king and those of his court heard this, they were very happy, considering the knights clever. The king said to the lady who had come there to see about the agreement:

"Surely, madam, according to the great treachery that was done these knights through such deceit, they are not obligated further, nor were they even obligated to do what they did, for it is very just that those who seek to deceive be deceived; and tell Madasima that if she hates me so much, she had it in her power to inflict on me the greatest harm and sorrow that could have come to me at this time; but God, who protected them well elsewhere from great dangers, did not wish them to suffer in the power of such a person as she is."

"Sire," said the lady, "tell me, if you please, who are these knights who are so highly esteemed?"

The king said:

"Amadis and Don Galaor, his brother."

"What!" said the matron, "this is Amadis whom she had in her power?"

"Yes, without doubt," said the king.

"Thank God," said the lady, "that they are saved, for it certainly would have been a very great misfortune if two such excellent men had died in such wise; but I believe that she who had them, when she finds out it was they and that thus they escaped from her, the same death that she had ordered given them, she will give herself."

"Certainly," said the king, "that would be the fairest thing to do."

The matron took her leave and went her way.

CHAPTER XXXIX

ABOUT HOW KING LISUARTE HELD HIS CONVOCATION OF NOBLES THAT LASTED TWELVE DAYS, DURING WHICH GREAT CELEBRATIONS WERE HELD BY MANY OF HIGH DEGREE WHO CAME THERE, LADIES AS WELL AS KNIGHTS, MANY OF WHOM STAYED ON THERE A FEW DAYS.

The king held his court there for twelve days, at which many things were done to the great aggrandizement of his honor and veracity; afterwards the convocation was adjourned, and although many people went back to their lands, so many nobles remained with the king that it was marvellous to see them; furthermore the queen had many ladies and maidens of high rank remain with her, and the king took as members of his retinue Guilan the Pensive and Ladasin his cousin, who were very good knights; but Guilan was the better, as in all the kingdom of London there was no one who excelled him in excellence; and likewise he had all the other good qualities that befitted a good knight except that a long interval of inactivity was wont to render him so pensive that men were unable to enjoy his conversation or his company; and the cause of this was love which had him in its power and impelled him to love his lady, for he loved not himself nor any other thing so much; and the one whom he loved was very beautiful, and her name was Brandalisa, sister of the wife of the King of Serolis and married to the Duke of Bristol. Then, just as you hear, King Lisuarte was in London with such knights, his great fame spreading more than that of any other prince in the world. Fortune being content for a long period of time — having placed him, as you have heard, in great danger — not to test him further, believing that ought to be sufficient for a man so

prudent and so upright as he was, not on that account its purpose failing to be changed if the king's purpose were through greed, pride or the many other things with which kings, when not seeking to guard themselves against them, are endangered and their great fame obscured with more dishonor and vilification than if the great things of the past in their favor and to their great glory had not come to them; because one should not account unfortunate anyone who never had good fortune, except those who, having exalted their fortune to the heavens, by their poor intelligence, by their vices and sins attract the attention of Fortune, who to the great pain and anguish of their spirits took it away from them.

The king being as you hear, the Duke of Bristol arrived there at the time for which he had been cited on petition of Olivas by virtue of what the latter had said before the king, and the duke was well received by the king, and said:

"Sire, you ordered me summoned to appear today before you in your court, because of what they said about me, which was a very great lie; and in this matter I shall clear myself as you and those of your court deem right."

Olivas stood up and went before the king, and with him arose most of the knights errant who were there. The king asked them why they all came thus, and Don Grumedan told him:

"Sire, because the duke threatened all the knights errant and we with great reason should deter him."

"Certainly," said the king, "if that is so, he would be undertaking an insane war, for I believe that there is not in the world a king so powerful or so wise as to be able to prosecute successfully such a war; but go hence all of you, for here you will not seek trouble for him, for he will have all his rights without their being diminished by anything I and these nobles who will counsel me may be able to infer."

Then they all went to their places, except Olivas, who remained before the king and said:

"Sire, the duke who is before you killed a cousin of mine without motivation or ever telling him why, and I say to you he is on this account treacherous, and this I shall force him to say, or I shall either kill him or force him to flee from the lists."

The duke said he was lying and that he would comply with whatever the king and his court should order. The king postponed the dispute until the next day. But the duke willingly would have begun the battle were it not for his two nephews who had not yet arrived, for he wanted to put them into it with him if he could, for he esteemed them so highly at arms that he did not think that Olivas would have any knights aiding him who could not quickly be vanquished by himself and his nephews. That day passed, and the duke's nephews arrived at nightfall, for which he was very glad. And next morning they went before the king, and Olivas challenged the duke, and he gave him the lie and promised him the combat, of three against three. Then Don Galvanes who was at the feet of the king, arose and called Agrajes, his nephew, and said to Olivas:

"Friend, we promised that if the duke of Bristol, who is present, should want to put more knights in the battle, we would be in it with you; and so we willingly wish to be, and let the battle be at once without further delay."

The nephews of the duke said that the battle should be at once. The duke looked at Agrajes and at Galvanes, and recognized that they were the ones whom he had insulted at his home, and the ones who had taken away from him the maiden whom he was seeking to burn to death, and who afterwards put him to rout in the forest; and although he esteemed his nephews highly, that time he would not for anything in the world have wished to promise the battle; rather, he would have liked to give one of his nephews to enter into it with Olivas, for he very much feared those two knights, but he could not do otherwise. Then all of them went to arm themselves, and they came into the open square, which was set apart for such fights; some through one gate, and the others through another. When Olinda, who was at the queen's window from where the whole field was in view, saw her beloved Agrajes intending to fight, she had such great sorrow that her courage sank, for she loved him more than anyone else in the world; and with her was Mabilia, sister of Agrajes, who grieved much to see her brother and her uncle Don Galvanes in such danger. And with them was Oriana, who certainly wished to see them successful because of the great love that Amadis had

for them and because of the rearing which she had had with King Languines and his wife, parents of Agrajes. The king, who was there with many knights, when he saw it was time, withdrew from the lists, and the knights went and attacked each other at the full speed of their horses; and none of them missed his blow. Agrajes and his uncle collided with the nephews of the duke, and knocked them out of their saddles over their horses' rumps; and their lances were broken and they went on by them looking very spruce and well mounted. Olivas was wounded in the chest by the duke's lance, and the duke lost his stirrups and would have fallen if he had not embraced the neck of his horse, and Olivas went by him badly wounded, but the duke righted himself in the saddle; and the knight whom Agrajes had overthrown got up as best he could and went up close to the duke and stopped. And Agrajes charged the duke, whom he hated very much, and he began to give him mighty blows on top of his helmet and caused his sword to penetrate through to his head; but the knight who was on foot near him, and saw his uncle in such danger, came up to Agrajes and struck his horse on the flank, so that he put his whole sword into it. Agrajes was not thinking about anything except taking the duke's life, and saw nothing of this; while he was bringing him to a point where he might cut off his head, his horse fell with him. Don Galvanes continued to be so involved with the other knight that he did not see any of this. Agrajes and his horse being on the ground, the one who had killed it struck him great and very heavy blows; and the duke also as hard as he could. At that hour all their friends were sorely distressed, and Amadis especially so, for gladly he would have endeavored to be there where his cousin was, and that the latter not be present, because he was very much afraid of seeing him die in view of his being so hard pressed. And the three maidens already mentioned, who were at the windows watching, were so distraught to see him thus that they were on the point of taking their own lives. But Olinda, his lady love, was more distraught than the others; on seeing her exhibit her great anxiety, those who were watching her were sad. Agrajes, being agile, came out from under his horse very quickly, for no other more ready or stouter of heart than he would be found in all the land,

and he defended himself from the two knights very well with Amadis's good sword, which he held in his hand and with which he was delivering blows. Galaor, who was watching him with great anxiety, said in an undertone with great sorrow:

"Oh, heavens! What is Olivas waiting for that he does not bring help where it is needed? Certainly it would have been better for him never to have borne arms than thus to err with them at such a time."

This Don Galaor said, not knowing of the great trouble Olivas was in, for he was so badly wounded and so much blood flowed from him, that it was a wonder how he could even keep himself in the saddle; and when he saw Agrajes thus, he sighed with great grief, as one who, although lacking strength, was not lacking courage; and raising his eyes to heaven he said:

"Oh, Lord God! I beg you to give me the opportunity, before my soul be departed from my body, to aid that good friend of mine."

Then guiding his horse toward them, he grasped his sword very weakly and went to attack the duke, and the duke, him, and they gave each other strong blows with their swords; for Olivas's fury caused him to recover his strength somewhat, to such a degree that it appeared to all that he was not fighting more poorly than the duke. Agrajes remained alone with the other knight, and they both fought so well on foot that it would be hard to find anyone who would fight better; but Agrajes was striving hard to overcome him, as one who saw his lady watching him, and did not want to make a single mistake, not only in what he had to do then, but even later. So much so that his friends were troubled about him, fearing that at a critical juncture his strength and breath would fail him; but it was ever his way in every place he fought to be always more aggressive than any other knight, and to strive hard to put an end to his battles; and if his strength had equalled his effort, he would have risen to be one of the best knights in the world, and so he was very excellent and much esteemed. And he delivered so many blows on top of the knight's helmet that by cutting through it in four places he rendered it of very little value and less defense; and the knight thought of nothing but defending himself and protect-

ing his head with his shield, for his helmet was of little protection and his coat of mail of much less, for it was rent in many places and the flesh cut in more than ten, which were bleeding. When the knight saw himself in such bad shape, he went as fast as he could to where the duke was, to see if he would find some protection in him; but Agrajes, who kept following him, overtook him before he reached there, and gave him on top of the helmet, which was broken in many places, such a blow that the sword penetrated through it and into his head so far that on pulling his sword out, he laid the knight low at his feet, quivering in his death agony. Agrajes saw what the duke and Olivas were doing, and perceived that Olivas had lost so much blood that Agrajes wondered how he could live, and he went to aid him; but before he arrived Olivas fell from his horse in a faint, and the duke, who had not seen how Agrajes had killed his nephew, and did see Don Galvanes fighting with the other one, left him thus on the ground, and went as fast as he could to Galvanes and gave him heavy blows. Agrajes, considering Olivas dead, mounted quickly on the latter's horse and went to help his uncle, who was in bad straits; and when he reached there, he gave the duke's nephew such a blow that he cut the baldric of his shield and his coat of mail, and caused his sword to penetrate his flesh to the bone. The knight turned his face to see who was attacking him, and Agrajes gave him another blow on the visor of his helmet, and the sword went in so far that he could not draw it out; and on tugging at it, he broke the lacings of the helmet, so that it followed the finally withdrawn sword and fell to the ground. Galvanes, who was enraged at him, leaving the duke, returned and struck him on his bare head; but the other one covered himself with his shield, which he had much used for that function; but as he had his baldric cut, he could not prevent his head's giving satisfaction to Don Galvanes's rage by ending up almost smashed to pieces and its owner on the ground dead. Meanwhile Agrajes was involved with the duke in exchanging mighty blows; but as his uncle came up, they took him on between them, and began to attack him from all sides, for they hated him to the death; and when he saw himself thus between them, he began to flee as fast as his horse could carry him; but

those who hated him followed him wherever he went as fast as they could.

When they saw him thus, all the knights errant were very happy, and Don Guilan more than anyone else, thinking that, if the duke were dead, he would be able to enjoy his lady more at his ease, for he loved her more than anything else. Galvanes's horse was badly wounded, and with the great punishment that he gave it in order to overtake the duke, not being able to endure it any longer, it fell with him; so that Galvanes was very greatly shaken up. Agrajes went to the duke and struck him with his sword on the boss of his shield, and the sword came down to his neck almost a span; and when he pulled on it, he would have unhorsed him but the duke quickly flung the shield from his neck and left it on the sword, and again fled as fast as he could. Agrajes pulled the sword out of the shield and went after him; but the duke turned toward him and struck him a blow or two, and again fled as before. Agrajes cursed him and followed him, and struck him such a blow on his left shoulder that he cut the coat of mail and the flesh and the bones down close to the ribs, so that his arm was left dangling from his body. And the duke uttered a loud cry, and Agrajes took him by the helmet and pulled; and as he was already slightly paralyzed, he knocked him from his horse, leaving one foot in the stirrup, which he could not withdraw; and as the horse fled, it dragged him here and there over the field until it issued from it at a bowshot's distance away. And when they reached him, they found him dead, with his head smashed to bits by the horse's feet. Agrajes returned where his uncle was, and getting down off his horse, he said:

"Sir, how are you?"

"Nephew," said he, "well, God be blessed; and I am very sorry about Olivas, our friend, who, I understand, is dead."

"In good faith, I believe so," said Agrajes; "and I am very sorry about it."

Then Galvanes went where he was, and Agrajes went to cast out of the lists the duke's nephews and all their arms; and he returned to where Olivas lay and found that he was reviving somewhat, and was opening his eyes with great effort, asking for confession. Galvanes looked at the wound and said:

“Good friend, don’t be afraid of death, for this wound is not in a dangerous place, and as soon as the blood has been staunched, you will be on the way to recovery.”

“Alas, sir!” said Olivas, “my heart and limbs are failing me; though already once before I have been badly wounded, never have I felt so weak.”

“The loss of blood,” said Galvanes, “does it, for much has gone from you, but do not be afraid about anything else.”

Then they disarmed him; and when they gave him some air, he was stronger and his bleeding then began to stop. The king sent for a litter on which to carry Olivas to his dwelling; and there physicians came to care for him, and on seeing the wound, although it was deep, they said that they would cure him with the help of God; and the king and many others were very happy about this.

So he remained under the care of the physicians; and the relatives of the duke and his nephews carried their remains away to their own land. And for that battle Agrajes received great honor as a very good knight, and his excellence was better known than it was before. The queen sent word for Blandisa, wife of the duke, to come to her and that she would do her every honor, and to bring with her Aldeva, her niece. Don Guilan was very pleased with this. Don Grumedan, the queen’s foster father, went for them; and before a month was up, he brought them to the court, where they were well received.

Then, just as you hear, the king and the queen were in London with many people — knights, and ladies, and maidens — where within half a year, there having become known throughout other lands the great heights at which chivalry was there maintained, so many knights went thither that it was considered wonderful; these the king honored and greatly rewarded; hoping by means of them not only to defend and protect Great Britain, that great kingdom of his, but also to conquer other kingdoms that in times past were subject and tributary to it, and which through the failure of previous kings who were weak, stingy, addicted to pleasures and delights, but at this time were not. It was thus that ultimately he brought it to pass.

CHAPTER XL

HOW THE BATTLE TOOK PLACE THAT AMADIS HAD PROMISED THE BEAUTIFUL YOUNG GIRL BRIOLANJA IN GROVENESA'S CASTLE TO WAGE AGAINST ABISEOS AND HIS TWO SONS IN REVENGE FOR THE DEATH OF THE KING HER FATHER.

The story has related to you how Amadis was in the castle of Grovenesa where he promised Briolanja, the beautiful young girl, to afford her vengeance for the death of the king, her father, and to be there with her within a year, bringing with him two other knights in order to fight with Abiseos and his two sons; and how at his departure, the beautiful young girl gave him a sword to bear for love of her, seeing that he needed it, because he had broken his own defending himself from the knights who deceitfully sought to kill him in that castle; from which, in addition to God's help, he was freed by the lions that this beautiful young girl had ordered set free, having great pity lest such a good knight be so basely slain. And how this same sword Amadis broke in another castle, belonging to the beloved of Angriote D'Estravaus, by fighting with a knight by the name of Gasinan; and by his command those three pieces of the sword were preserved by Gandalin, his squire; and now you will be told how that promised battle took place, and such great peril came to him because of that broken sword, not through his fault but that of his dwarf, Ardian; who in great ignorance, was mistaken in thinking that his master Amadis was seriously in love with that beautiful girl, Briolanja; because Ardian had seen, being present, how he offered himself as her knight, and wanted to undertake that battle for her.

Now know you that while Amadis was in the court of King Lisuarte, seeing many times that very beautiful Oriana, his lady, who was the end and objective of all his mortal desires, he remembered this battle that he was to undertake and that its deadline was approaching. So it was necessary for him in order to keep his promise to ask very insistently the permission of his lady — although departing from her presence would be as serious for him as separating his heart from his flesh — making known to her what had occurred in that castle and the promise he had made to avenge that girl Briolanja and to restore her in her kingdom, which had been taken away from her with such great treachery. But she with many tears and sadness of heart, as if she foresaw the misadventure that came to them both because of it, considering how remiss he would be if she detained him, agreed to it; and Amadis obtaining permission likewise from the queen in order that it might appear that he was going by her command, the next morning he, taking with him his brother, Don Galaor, and Agrajes, his cousin, armed and mounted on their horses, set out on his way; and having gone about half a league, Amadis asked Gandalin if he was carrying the three pieces of the sword that the beautiful girl had given him; he said no. And he ordered him to return for them. The dwarf said he would bring them, since he was not carrying anything burdensome.

This was the occasion whereby Amadis and his lady Oriana being without blame as was the dwarf, who acted through ignorance, the lovers were both brought to the point of death; cruel Fortune, which exempts no one, wishing to show them the bitter potions which that sweetness of their great love had hidden and contained in itself, as you shall now hear; for the dwarf, having arrived at Amadis's residence and taking the pieces of the sword and stowing them in the skirt of his tabard, then passing near the palace of the queen, heard voices calling to him from the windows; and raising his head, he saw Oriana and Mabilia, who asked him why he had not left with his master.

“Yes, I left; but I had to return for what I am carrying here.”

“What is that?” said Oriana.

He showed it to her; and she said:

“Why does your master want the broken sword?”

"Why?" said he, "because he values it more for the girl who gave it to him than the two best unbroken ones he could be given."

"And who is that girl?" said she.

"The same one," said the dwarf, "for whom he is going to do battle, for although you are the daughter of the best king in the world, and so beautiful, you would want to have gained what she won, more than all the land your father has."

"And what gain," said she, "was that which is so precious? By chance did she win your master?"

"Yes," said he, "for she has his heart completely, and he has remained her knight in order to serve her."

And giving the lash to his hackney, as quickly as he could he overtook his master, whose thought was indeed without worry or blame for this.

The dwarf's statement having been heard by Oriana, and recalling that Amadis had asked permission of her with such great insistence, believing implicitly what the dwarf said, her color deathlike and her heart burning with anger, she began to utter very violent words against him who was wont to think of nothing but serving her, wringing her hands, her heart so hardened that no tears could come from her eyes — tears, which bottled up within her, made her more cruel and with more enduring harshness so that one could compare her with much justice to that strong Medea when she saw her much beloved husband who had repudiated her married to another. Therefore, neither the counsel of that very wise Mabilia, given along the lines of reason and truth, nor that of her maid of Denmark, was of any avail; but she, following what the impassioned minds of women are accustomed for the most part to follow, fell into an error so great that the mercy of the most high Lord was needed for its correction. And the dwarf went on his way until he caught up with Amadis and his companions, who were traveling along slowly until the dwarf returned.

Then they hastened somewhat more; but neither did Amadis ask the dwarf anything of what occurred, nor did the dwarf tell him about it, except that he showed him the pieces of the sword.

So going along just as you hear, in a short while they met a damsel. And after they had greeted each other, she said to them:

“Knights, where are you going?”

“Along this road,” said they.

“Then I advise you,” said she, “to leave this road.”

“Why?” said Amadis.

“Because for a good two weeks,” said she, “no knight errant has gone along there who has not been slain or wounded.”

“And from whom do they receive that harm?”

“From a knight,” said she, “who is the best at arms of any I know.”

“Damsel,” said Agrajes, “Will you show us that knight?”

“He will show himself to you,” said she, “as soon as you enter the forest.”

Then continuing along their way, they and the maiden who was following them were looking everywhere, and from the fact that they saw nothing, they considered her words of no consequence; but on the way out of the forest they saw a great knight fully armed on a beautiful roan horse, and beside him a squire who was holding four lances for him, and he had another in his hand; and as he saw them, he gave an order to his squire, and they did not know what, but he leaned the lances against a tree and went to them, and said to them:

“Sirs, that knight gives orders to tell you that he had to keep guard over this forest against all knights errant for two weeks, during which things turned out so well for him that he has always been the victor; and on account of his liking for jousting he has been here for a day and a half over his time limit; and now, as he was about to leave, he has seen you coming, and commands that you be told that if you care to joust with him, he will do so on condition that the battle with swords not take place, because unintentionally he has done badly in it; and he would not wish to do it from now on if it could be avoided.”

While the squire was saying this to them, Agrajes took his helmet and slung his shield around his neck and said:

“Tell him to be on his guard, for on account of me a joust will not be lacking.”

The knight, when he saw him coming, came at him; and at the full speed of their horses they struck each other with their lances on the shields, so that they were broken at once; and Agrajes went to the ground so easily that he was astonished and very much ashamed, and his horse was loose; Galaor who saw this, took up his arms to avenge him; and the knight of the forest, taking another lance, went at him, and no one failed in the encounter; but the lances having broken, and the horses and the shields of their riders colliding, the impact was so great that Galaor's horse, which was weaker and more tired than that of the other, went down to the ground with his master; and leaving Galaor on the ground, the horse ran away through the countryside. Amadis, who was watching, began to make the sign of the cross, and taking up his arms, said:

"Now the knight can consider himself good against the two best in the world."

And he went against him; and as he reached Don Galaor he found him on foot with sword in hand, calling the knight to battle on horseback and he on foot; and the knight was laughing at him, and Amadis said to him:

"Brother, do not complain, for previously he told us that he would not fight with a sword."

After that he told the knight to be on guard. Then they charged at each other, and their lances flew through the air in pieces; but their shields and helmets collided in a wondrous way, and Amadis and his horse fell to the ground; the horse broke his shoulder, the knight of the forest fell, but held on to the reins and mounted at once very agilely. Amadis said:

"Knight, you must joust again, for the joust is not lost, since we both fell."

"I do not want to joust any more now," said the knight.

"You do me an injustice," said Amadis.

"Arrange it," said he, "when you can, and I, according to what I ordered said to you, am not obligated."

Then he moved from there through the forest as fast as his horse could carry him. Amadis and his companions, who thus saw him go, they being on the ground, considered themselves objects of mockery; and they could not think who the knight might be

who had parted from them with so much glory. Amadis mounted Gandalin's horse and said to the others:

"Mount and come behind me, for I shall regret it very much if I do not find out who that knight is."

"Certainly," said the maiden, "your thinking to find him, however much effort you might devote to it, would be the greatest folly in the world, for if all those who are at the court of King Lisuarte were looking for him, they would not find him this year if they did not have someone to guide them."

When they heard this, it greatly irked them; and Galaor who was angrier than the others, said to the damsel:

"Dear lady, by chance do you know who this knight may be, and where he can be found?"

"If I know anything about him," said she, "I shall not tell it to you, for I do not want to anger such a good man."

"Oh, damsel," said Galaor, "by the faith you owe to God and to the thing you love most in the world, tell us what you know about him."

"It is of no use to entreat me," said she, "for I would not disclose the facts about such a good knight without something in return."

"I ask now," said Amadis, "for whatever it may please you that we can fulfill, and it will be granted you, provided you tell us."

"I shall tell you," said she, "on condition that you tell me who you are, and that you each grant me a boon when I ask you for them."

They, who were very eager to know it, agreed to it.

"In the name of God," said she; "then tell me at once your names."

And they told her.

When she heard that that one was Amadis, she became very happy and said to him:

"Thanks be to God that I ask you."

"And why?" said he.

"Sir," said she, "you will know when it is time; but tell me if you remember the battle that you promised the daughter of

the King of Sobradisa when she succored you with the lions and freed you from death."

"Yes, I remember," said he; "and I am going there now."

"So why do you wish," said she, "to follow this knight who is not so easy to find as you think, and your time limit is approaching?"

"Brother," said Don Galaor, "she speaks truth; you and Agrajes keep the appointment you arranged, and I shall go in search of the knight with this damsel, for I shall never be happy until I find him; and if it can be, I shall return to you at the time of the battle."

"In the name of God," said Amadis, "since it pleases you thus, so be it."

And they said to the maiden:

"Now tell us the name of the knight and where Galaor will find him."

"His name," said she, "I would not be able to tell you, for I do not know it, although there was a period that I watched him for a month, and I saw him perform so well at arms that anyone who had not seen it would scarcely be able to believe it; but to where he will go I shall guide whoever wishes to go with me."

"I am satisfied with this," said Galaor.

"Then follow me," said she.

They commended each other to God. Amadis and Agrajes started out on the road they had been following previously, and Don Galaor departed under the guidance of the damsel. Amadis and Agrajes, after separating from Don Galaor, traveled so far each day that they reached the castle called Torin, where the beautiful girl and Grovenesa were; and on the way, before they arrived there, they performed many chivalrous exploits.

When the lady found out that Amadis was coming there, she was very happy, and came to him with many matrons and maidens in waiting, leading by the hand the beautiful young girl; and when they saw each other, they received each other very well; but I tell you that at this time the girl was so beautiful that she seemed a veritable bright star. So they were very astounded to see her, for in comparison with how she appeared at present, she was as nothing when Amadis first saw her, and he said to Agrajes:

“What do you think of this maiden?”

“I think that if God had a desire to make her beautiful, very fully his will was carried out.”

The lady said:

“Sir Amadis, Briolanja thanks you very much for coming, and for what will ensue from it with the help of God; and disarm yourselves and you shall rest.”

Then they summoned them to a chamber; from where, having left their arms, and each one of them clad in a mantle, they returned to the room where they were being awaited; and while they were talking with Grovenesa, Briolanja was looking at Amadis and he seemed to her to be the most handsome knight she had ever seen; and certainly such he was at that time, for he was not over twenty years of age and had his face stained with armor rust; but considering how becoming to him those blemishes were, and how with them he was rendering fame and honor so clean and bright, they enhanced greatly his bearing and good looks; and he was seen at such a juncture that by that very beautiful maiden who looked upon him with such affection he was so loved that for a very long time she was unable to remove the remembrance of him from her heart; whence constrained by the very great force of love, her spirit not being able to endure it or resist it, having regained her kingdom, as will be told later, he was besought on her part to be master forthwith of it and of her person; but, once this was known by Amadis, he gave her to understand completely that the anguish and suffering with the many tears shed for his lady Oriana, not without great loyalty did he endure them; although Prince Alfonso of Portugal, having pity on this beautiful maiden, ordered the story to be set down differently, he did what was willed by him, but not what was really written of their love affair.

In another way their love affair is related, to which credence may more reasonably be given: that Briolanja, being restored to her kingdom, reposing there with Amadis and Agrajes, who were wounded, she remaining in love, seeing no way for her mortal desires to reach fulfillment with Amadis, speaking aside in great secrecy with the damsel to whom Amadis, Galaor, and Agrajes had each promised a boon if she would guide Don Galaor

to the place where the knight of the forest had gone, (Don Galaor already had returned from that journey) and revealing to her her situation, demanded of her with many tears a relief for her greatly augmented passion; that the maiden, feeling sorry for her mistress, demanded of Amadis in fulfillment of her promise that he not leave a tower until he had begotten a son or a daughter in Briolanja and it had been given to her; and that Amadis, in order not to break his word, had put himself in the tower as was demanded of him; where not being willing to have intercourse with Briolanja, losing appetite and sleep, he was placed in great danger to his life; which fact having become known in the court of King Lisuarte, his lady Oriana, in order to save his life, sent word commanding him to do what the maiden demanded of him; and that Amadis with this permisison, considering that he would not be able to leave otherwise nor could his word be kept except by taking as his mistress that beautiful queen, had by her twin children, a son and a daughter.

But neither version was true, for Briolanja, seeing that Amadis was dying in the tower where he was, gave orders to the maiden to release him from the boon, on condition that he not go away from there until Don Galaor's return; desiring that her eyes might enjoy the sight of that very handsome and famous knight, for if not, they would remain in darkness and obscurity. This has more reason to be believed, because this beautiful queen was married to Don Galaor, as the fourth Book relates.

So both Amadis and Agrajes were in that castle, as you hear, waiting while the things necessary for the journey were being prepared in order to go and fight the battle.

CHAPTER XLI

HOW DON GALAOR WENT WITH THE MAIDEN IN SEARCH OF THE KNIGHT WHO HAD OVERTHROWN THEM, UNTIL HE FOUGHT WITH HIM, AND HOW IN THE GREATEST VIOLENCE OF THE BATTLE HE RECOGNIZED HIM AS HIS BROTHER FLORESTAN.

Don Galaor traveled four days under the guidance of the maiden, who was to show him the knight of the forest; during which time such great fury entered his heart that he did not fight with a single knight to whom he did not exhibit complete animosity, so that most of those he fought with were killed by his hand, thus compensating for the success of one whom they did not know; and at the end of these days he arrived at the home of a knight who dwelt in the highest point of a valley in a beautiful fortress. The maiden told him there was no other place where they could spend the night, except that one, and that they should go there.

"Let us go if you wish," said Don Galaor.

Then they went to the castle, at the gate of which they found men and matrons and maidens, for it appeared to be the house of a nobleman; and among them was a knight of some seventy years, dressed in a leather cape of scarlet, who received them very well, telling Don Galaor to get off his horse, for they would gladly do him great honor and afford him much pleasure.

"Sir," said Don Galaor, "You welcome us so heartily that even though we should find another lodging, we would not leave yours."

And the men taking his horse and the palfrey of the maiden, they all went into the castle, where in a palace hall they gave

Don Galaor and his maiden their supper, at which they showed them special courtesy; and after the tables were cleared, the knight of the castle went to them, and asked Don Galaor in an undertone if he would lie with his maiden, and he said no. Then he had two damsels come who took her with them, and Galaor remained alone in order to sleep and rest in a luxurious bed that was there, and the host said:

“From now on rest at your pleasure, for God knows how much pleasure I have had with you, and I would have with all knights errant; because I was a knight and so are the two sons that I have now badly wounded, for their custom is to seek adventures in many of which they have won great prestige at arms; but last night a knight passed by here who overcame them both in encounters with each one, whence they deemed themselves made laughing stocks; and mounting their horses they went after him and overtook him at a river crossing where he was about to get into a boat, and they told him that since they already knew how he jousts, he should battle them with swords; but the knight, who was in a hurry, was unwilling to do so; but my sons kept after him so hard, telling him that they would not let him enter the boat, that a matron who was in it said to them:

“Certainly, knights, you show us a lack of restraint in detaining our knight with such arrogance.’

“They said that they would in nowise let him go until he proved himself with them at sword play.

“‘Since that’s the way it is,’ said the matron, ‘now he will fight with the better of you; and if he overcomes him, let the other fight be called off.’

“They said that if one of them should win, he would have to test the other also. And the knight said then very angrily:

“‘Come both at once, since I cannot depart from you by any other means.’

“And he grasped his sword and charged at them; and one of my sons went toward him, but could not withstand his fighting, for the knight is not like any other he had seen; and when the other, his brother, saw him in danger of death, he sought to help him by attacking the knight as fiercely as he could; but his help was of little use, for the knight disposed of both of them

in a short time, because he knowked them incapacitated from their horses; and entering the boat, he went his way; and I went for my sons, who were badly wounded; and the better to believe what I have said to you, I wish to show you the strongest and harshest blows that were ever delivered by hand of a knight."

Then he ordered them to bring the arms that his sons had in the battle; and Galaor saw them blood-stained and slashed from such mighty blows of the sword that he was greatly astounded by it; and he asked the nobleman what weapons the knight carried; he told him:

"A bright red shield with two brown lions on it, and on the helmet another such; and he was riding a roan horse."

Don Galaor knew then that this was the one he was seeking, and he said to the host:

"Do you know anything about this knight?"

"No," said he.

"Well, now go to sleep," said Galaor, "for that knight I am looking for; and if I find him, I shall obtain justice from him for myself and for your sons or I shall die."

"Dear sir," said the host, "I would praise you if you took up some other quest and abandoned this very dangerous one, for if my sons fared so badly, their great pride brought it about."

And he went to his own quarters.

Don Galaor slept until morning, and called for his arms, and with his damsel returned to the road, and went on beyond the boat, which you have already heard about; and when they were five leagues from that place, they saw a beautiful fortress, and the damsel said to him:

"Wait for me here, for I shall be back quickly."

And she went to the castle; and not long afterward he saw her coming back, and another maiden with her and ten horsemen; and the maiden, who was wondrously beautiful, said to Galaor:

"Knight, this maiden who is traveling with you tells me that you are looking for a knight with bright red arms and a device of brown lions in order to know who he is; I say to you that if not by force of arms, neither you nor anyone else can ascertain it in any other way for these next three years; and this would be for you very difficult to bring about, because he as-

sured that another such knight would not be found in all the islands."

"Damsel," said Galaor, "I shall not desist from looking for him, even though he further conceals his identity; and if I find him, I should be more pleased that he fight with me than to learn anything about him in any other way."

"Since you have such a desire for it," said the maiden, "I shall show him to you within three days because of my love for this sister of mine, who esteems you and who has earnestly besought me to do so."

"I am greatly in your debt," said Don Galaor.

And starting out on the road, at the hour of vespers they arrived at an arm of the sea that encircled an island; so they would go over the water for a good three leagues without reaching land before they could arrive there; and getting on a boat which they found in the port, swearing first to the one who carried them over that only one knight was crossing, they began to navigate. Don Galaor asked the maiden for what reason they took from them that oath.

"Because it is ordered," said she, "by the chatelaine of the island where you are going, that not more than one knight should be brought across until that knight returns or is slain."

"Who kills or vanquishes them?" said Don Galaor.

"That knight whom you are seeking," said she, "for this lady that I am telling you about has had with her for a good half year the one whom she loves very much; and the reason is that a tournament having been established in this land by her and by another very beautiful lady, this knight, who came from a foreign land, being on her side, has won in it all the honors; and she was so fond of him that she never rested until she had him for her lover; and she has him with her, for she does not permit him to go anywhere; and because he has sought a few times to leave in search of adventures, the lady, in order to detain him, has a few knights who are willing cross over to fight with him; whose arms and horses he gives to his friend; and they bury those who have the ill luck to die; and they expell those conquered. And I tell you that the lady is very beautiful, and is named Corisanda, and the Island Gravisanda."

And Don Galaor said to her:

"Do you know why this knight went to a forest where I found him, and was there two weeks, guarding it from all the knights errant who were in it?"

"Yes," said the damsel, "for he promised a boon to a maiden before he came here, and she asked of him that he guard that forest for two weeks, as you say; and his beloved, although much against her will, gave him the time limit of a month to go and come and guard the forest."

Then while talking about this they reached the island; and a good bit of the night had now passed, but the moon shone brightly; and leaving the boat, they lodged that night on the bank of a small stream, where the damsel had given orders to set up two tents; and there they ate supper and rested until morning. Galaor had sought to spend that night with the damsel, who was very beautiful; but she was unwilling, although he seemed to her the most handsome knight of any she had seen, and she took great delight in talking with him.

Morning having come, Don Galaor mounted his horse armed and prepared to enter into battle; and the maidens and the other men likewise mounted; and they went their way. Galaor all the time kept talking with the damsel, and he asked her if she knew the knight's name.

"Certainly," said she, "there is not a man or a woman in this whole land who knows it, except his mistress."

Then he had an even greater eagerness to know him than before, and to learn for what reason, when he was so highly praised at arms in that way, he should thus seek to conceal his identity; and after a short period of travel, they reached a plain, where they found a very beautiful castle that was located on top of a high hill; around it there was a large, very beautiful meadow, which extended a good league in every direction. The damsel said to Galaor:

"In this castle is the knight you seek."

He evinced very great pleasure at finding what he was seeking; and they went farther and found a column of stone of good workmanship, and on top of it a horn; and the damsel said with pleasure:

"Sound that horn so they hear it, and immediately on hearing it the knight will come."

Galaor did so; and they saw leaving the castle some men, who set up a very beautiful tent in the field; and some ten matrons and maidens came out; and among them came one very richly garbed, hence mistress of the others; and they entered the tent. To Galaor, who was watching it all, the knight seemed to be delaying, and he said to the maiden:

"Why doesn't the knight come out?"

"He will not come," said she, "until that lady commands him to do so."

"Then I beg of you, please," said he, "to go up to her and tell her to order him to come, because I have much to do elsewhere and cannot delay."

The maiden did so. And when the lady heard the message, she said:

"How is it that he holds in such low esteem this knight of ours, and thinks he can leave so quickly to carry out his obligations elsewhere? Well, he will go away more quickly than he thinks, and more to his harm than he thinks."

Then she said to a page:

"Go and tell the foreign knight to come."

The page told him. And the knight came out of the castle armed and on foot, and his men were bringing his horse and shield and lance and helmet; and he went to where the lady was, and she said to him:

"You see there a crazy knight who thinks he can leave you easily; now I tell you to make him recognize his folly." And she embraced and kissed him.

From all of this, greater anger possessed Don Galaor. The knight mounted and took his arms and went down a slope at his own pace, and he looked marvelously fine and spruce. Galaor laced his helmet and took his shield and lance; and when he saw him on the plain, he told him to be on guard; and they both let their horses charge at each other, and with their lances they struck each other on the shields, which they penetrated, and ripped off pieces of their coats of mail. So each one of them was badly wounded and their lances were broken, and they passed

on by each other. Don Galaor grasped his sword and returned to him; but the knight did not draw his out of his scabbard; and said to him:

“Knight, by the faith that you owe to God and to what you love most, let us joust again.”

“You entreat me so earnestly,” said he, “that I shall do so; but I regret that I do not bring such a good horse as you, for if it were, I would not stop jousting until one of us fell, or until we broke all the lances you might have.”

The knight did not answer; rather he ordered a squire to give him two lances; and taking one he sent the other to Galaor; and they charged again striking each other with such force on their shields that it was a marvel, and Galaor’s horse went to its knees and almost fell; and the foreign knight lost both his stirrups and had to cling to the neck of his horse. Galaor spurred his horse hard and grasped his sword, and the foreign knight stood up in his saddle and was quite ashamed; afterwards he grasped his sword and said:

“Knight, you want the combat with swords, and I certainly feared it more on your account than on mine; if you didn’t believe me, now you will see.”

“Do all in your power,” said Galaor, “for I shall do likewise until dying or avenging those whom you maltreated in the forest.”

Then the knight looked at him and recognized that he was the knight who called him to combat on foot; and he said to him very angrily:

“Come on if you are able, although I rather believe that you will suffer one discredit on top of another.”

Then they attacked each other so fiercely that there is no man who on seeing them would not have been greatly affrighted. The matrons and all those of the castle thought, according to the ferocity of the joust, that they were seeking to come to an understanding; but on seeing the battle of the swords, it indeed seemed to them more cruel and savage so that they might kill each other; and they struck each other so frequently with such deadly blows that they knocked each other’s heads down to their chests in spite of themselves, cutting from their helmets the steel

arches with part of their flaps, so that the swords came down to their mail coifs and they felt them on their heads, for they were cutting their shields to shreds, with which the field was littered, as it was with the meshes of their coats of mail; in this obstinacy they persisted for a long while, so that each one was astounded that he did not overcome the other. At this time Don Galaor's horse began to tire and falter, for it was unable any longer to go to and fro, whence he was greatly angered, because he really thought that the default of his horse was taking victory from him so late in the fight; but the foreign knight was dealing him great blows and escaped from his every time he wished, and whenever Galaor reached him, he would strike him so hard that he caused him to feel the sword in his flesh; but Galaor's horse was staggering blindly and about to fall. There he feared more his death than in any other confrontation, unless it was in the battle he had with Amadis his brother, from which he never thought he would come out alive; and after that he esteemed this knight more highly than any other of those he had tested, but not to such a degree as not to have expected to vanquish him if his horse had not hindered him. And when he saw himself in these straits, he said:

"Knight, either let us fight on foot, or give me a horse with which I may be aided; if not, I shall kill yours, and yours will be the guilt for this base deed."

"Do all you can," said the knight, "for our battle shall not be delayed further, because it is a great shame that it is lasting so long."

"Then, guard your horse now," said Don Galaor.

And the knight went to attack him, and with fear lest he kill the horse, he crowded him. Galaor who struck him on the shield and saw him so close, threw his arms around him, pressing as hard as he could, and struck his own horse with the spurs, pulling so hard at his opponent that he jerked him from the saddle. And they both fell to the ground locked in an embrace. But each one had a very strong sword, and thus they were rolling about on the field for quite a bit, until they let go of each other, and they got to their feet. And they started to fight so fiercely and so cruelly that it seemed as if they had just begun; and if the

first fight, on horseback, seemed strenuous and harsh to all, this second was much more so; for they were able to come to grips and strike each other more without hindrance; they did not rest a moment, but fought continually. But Don Galaor, who because of the great weakness of his horse, up until then had not been able to attack at will, and now was coming to grips with him every time he wished, gave him such mighty and such heavy blows that he was with ferocity causing him to lay down his arms, but not in such a way as not to defend himself courageously. When Galaor saw that he was improving a great deal and his opponent was indeed weakening, he withdrew to one side and said:

“Good knight, stop a moment.”

The other, who had great need of it, stood quite still, and Galaor said:

“Now you see that I have the better of the combat; and if you wish to tell me your name and why you hide your identity thus, I shall receive great pleasure. In return, I shall leave you free, and otherwise I shall by no means let you off.”

On hearing this the knight said:

“Nor am I by any means pleased to stop the battle in this way, because never was my temperament such; because I have never had a greater inclination to enter into battle than now; because I have never found myself so courageous as now for entering into combat; and may God command that I be not known to a single knight except to my special glory.”

“Don’t be stubborn,” said Don Galaor, “for I swear to you by the faith I have in God, not to leave you until I know who you are and why you conceal yourself thus.”

“Now may God not help me,” said the knight, “if you learn it from me, for I would rather die in battle than tell it, particularly through force of arms, except to two alone whom I know not, for to these as a courtesy or by force no one would not be able nor ought to refuse this if they seek to ascertain it.”

“Who are these whom you value so highly?” said Galaor.

“You shall not find out that or any other thing from me, for it seems to me it would please you.”

"By Holy Mary!" said Galaor, "either I shall find out what I ask you, or one of us shall die, or both."

"Nor do I wish anything else," said the knight.

Then they went and attacked each other with such fury that they forgot past wounds, and their weakened strength was revived; but neither strength nor courage that the unknown knight put forth had availed him anything, for Galaor struck him so fiercely that he pulverized his armor along with part of his flesh so that he lost much blood, which stained the field red. When the lady of the island saw her friend at the point of death, he being the one in the world she loved most, her heart could not endure more and she went there on foot as if crazed, and the other matrons and maidens behind her. And when she was near Don Galaor, she said:

"Hold, knight; would that the boat that brought you here were broken to bits, for you have caused me such sorrow."

"Lady," said Galaor, "if it grieves you for me to take vengeance for myself, and for another who is worth more than I, for the harm that we received from him, I have no blame."

"Do not harm the knight," said the lady, "for you will die for it by the hand of one who will have no mercy on you."

"I do not know how it will come about," said he, "but I shall in nowise leave him if first I do not find out what I am asking him."

"And what do you ask him?" said she.

"That he tell me his name," said he, "and why he so hides his identity, and who the two knights are whom he values more than all those in the world."

"Alas," said the lady, "cursed be the one who showed you how to attack, and you who learned it thus. I am willing to tell you what you wish to know. I tell you that this knight of ours is named Florestan, and he conceals his identity thus on account of two knights who are in this land, his brothers, of such great prowess at arms that although his be so excellent, as you have learned by experience, he does not dare to make himself known to them until he has done so well at arms that without fear he can join his prowess with theirs; and he is quite right in view of their great valor; and these two knights are at the court of

King Lisuarte, and the one is named Amadis and the other, Don Galaor, and they are all three sons of King Perion of Gaul."

"Oh, Holy Mary help me!" said Don Galaor, "What have I done?"

Afterwards he handed over his sword, and said:

"Good brother, take this sword and the honor of the combat."

"What," said he, "am I your brother?"

"Yes, indeed," said he, "for I am your brother, Don Galaor."

Don Florestan knelt before him and said:

"Sir, pardon me, for if I wronged you in fighting you, not knowing of it, it was not because of any other thing except to be able to call myself your brother, as I am, without shame, by approaching somewhat your great valor and great prowess at arms."

Galaor took him by the hands and raised him up, and took him in his arms for a moment, weeping with pleasure at having made his acquaintance, and with pity to see him so injured with so many wounds, thinking his life was in great danger. When the lady saw this, she was very happy, and said to Don Galaor:

"Sir, if you put me into great anguish, with double joy you have set matters right."

And taking them with her, she led them to the castle, where she made them lie down in a beautiful chamber on two beds with luxurious bed clothing; and as she knew how to heal wounds, she took great care to restore them to health, considering that on the life of either one of them depended the life of both, because of the great love they had shown for each other, and that her own would be in jeopardy if any danger should befall her very beloved lover, Don Florestan. So just as you hear, the two brothers were in the custody of that beautiful and rich lady Corisanda, who was as much concerned for their lives as for her own.

CHAPTER XLII

WHICH RELATES OF DON FLORESTAN HOW HE WAS A SON OF KING PERION, AND HOW HE WAS ENGENDERED IN A VERY BEAUTIFUL DAMSEL, DAUGHTER OF THE COUNT OF ZELANDIA.

Concerning this brave and courageous knight Don Florestan, I want you to know how and in what land he was begot and by whom. Know you that when King Perion was a youth, with his courageous and valiant heart looking for adventures in many foreign lands, he dwelt two years in Germany, where he performed so many great deeds at arms, that were recounted as marvels among all the Germans. Then returning now to his land with much glory and fame, he happened to lodge one night in the house of the Count of Zelandia, who was very happy with him, because just like King Perion, he enjoyed pursuing the exercise of arms, and with them he had attained much praise and glory; and as through experience he was familiar with all the anxieties, labors, and anguish good knights had to undergo in order that the measure of what they were obligated to do be full, he highly esteemed this Perion, as one who was at the pinnacle of the fame and glory at arms in which he was established; and he rendered him great honor and service to the limit of his ability. And as soon as they had supped and talked about some things that they had experienced, King Perion was called to a chamber, where he lay down on a luxurious bed; and as he had arrived weary from travel, he fell asleep at once, and it was not long before he found himself embraced by a very beautiful maiden, and her mouth pressed against his, and as he awoke he tried to pull away, but she held him and said:

"What is the matter, sir; won't you enjoy yourself better with me in this bed, than alone?"

The king looked at her by the light that there was in the room and saw that she was the most beautiful woman he had ever seen and said to her:

"Tell me, who are you?"

"Whoever I may be," said she, "I love you deeply, and I wish to give you my love."

"That cannot be, unless first you tell me."

"Alas!" said she, "How much I regret that question, lest you consider me worse than I am; but heaven knows that it is not in me to do otherwise."

"It is still necessary," said he, "that I know it, or I shall do nothing."

"Rather, I will tell you," said she, "Know you that I am the daughter of this count."

The king said to her:

"A woman of such high rank as you ought not to commit such folly; and now I tell you that I shall not do a thing at which your father would be so angry."

She said:

"Alas! cursed be all those who praise you for goodness, since you are the worst man in the world and the most insolent! What excellence can you have when you reject a person so beautiful and of such high rank?"

"You shall do," said the king, "whatever may be to your honor and mine, but not what is so opposed to them."

"No?" said she, "Then I shall do what will make my father more vexed with you than if you granted my request."

Then she got up and went over to take the king's sword that was beside his shield; and it was the one that later was placed beside Amadis in the ark when he was cast into the sea, as has been related to you at the beginning of this Book; and she drew it from the scabbard and put its tip against her heart, and said:

"Now I know that my father will be grieved at my death more than at anything else."

When the king saw this, he marvelled and made a great leap from the bed to her, saying:

“Stop, for I shall do what you wish.”

And taking the sword from her hand, he embraced her lovingly and carried out her desire that night, from which she became pregnant, without the king's seeing her any more; for daybreak having come, he parted from the count, continuing on his way; and she concealed her pregnancy as well as she could; but the time of the birth having come, she could not do so; however she contrived that she and a damsel of hers should go see one of her aunts who lived nearby, where sometimes she was accustomed to go for diversion; and going through an area of the forest, the birth pangs came upon her so insistently that on dismounting from her palfrey she gave birth to a son. The maiden, who saw her in such great peril, put the baby at her breasts and said to her:

“Lady, that courage that you had in erring, now maintain to help yourself, until I come back to you.”

And then she mounted her palfrey, and as fast as she could reached the castle of the aunt and told her the situation just as it had come to pass; and when she heard it she was very sad, but on that account did not fail to help her; and then she mounted her horse and ordered a litter to be brought, in which, to protect herself from the sun, she sometimes went to see the count; and when she arrived where her niece was, she dismounted and wept with her and had her put on the litter with her son; and they returned by night so that no one saw them, except those whom she brought with her, and they were admonished to keep that secret very carefully.

In short, the maiden was there succored and returned to the count her father without anyone's finding out anything about this; and the child was reared until it reached eighteen years of age, and it seemed very excellent of body and strength, more so than anyone in the whole region. The lady, who saw him with such an aptitude, gave him a horse and arms and took him with her to the count his grandfather to be knighted; and he did so without knowing it was his grandchild; and she returned with her foster-child to the castle; but on the way she told him that he for certain should know that he was the son of King Perion of Gaul and grandson of the one who knighted him, and that he

ought to go to acquaint himself with his father, who was the finest knight in the world.

“Certainly, madam,” said he, “I have heard that many times, but never did I think he was my father; and by the faith that I owe to God and you who have reared me, I swear never to make myself known to him or to anyone else, if I can, until people say that I deserve to be the son of such an excellent man.”

And bidding her farewell, taking two squires with him, he went his way to Constantinople, where it was reliably reported that a cruel war had broken out in the empire. He was there four years, during which he performed so many exploits at arms that he was considered the best knight they had ever seen there; and as he saw himself at such heights of honor and fame, he decided to go to Gaul to his father and make himself known; but on coming near that land, he heard about the great fame of Amadis, who then was beginning to do wonders, and likewise about Don Galaor, so that his intention was changed on thinking that his accomplishments were as nothing in comparison with theirs; and for this reason he intended to begin anew to win honor there in Great Britain, where there were knights esteemed more highly than in any other place, and to conceal his identity until his deeds should make it manifest to his satisfaction; and thus he spent some time performing many deeds of chivalry, excelling in them to his honor, until Don Galaor his brother fought with him, as you have heard, and they came to know each other as aforementioned.

Amadis was five days in the castle of Grovenesa, and Agrajes with him; and the things needed for travel having been prepared, they left there, Grovenesa and Briolanja taking only two damsels and five men on horseback to serve them, and three palfreys led by the halter bearing their very fine apparel; but Briolanja was wearing only black garments, and she was to dress in black until her father was avenged. Then having gone as much as a league, Briolanja asked a boon of Amadis, and Grovenesa another from Agrajes, and these having been granted by them without their investigating or thinking what it was all about, they demanded of them that they not interrupt their journey for anything that they might see, without their permission, so that they might not

concern themselves with any other affair of honor except the one which they had on their hands.

It grieved them much to agree, and they experienced great shame because in some places there had been much need of their help, which could have been employed with great justice; but they did not do so, and therefore they were ashamed. And traveling as you hear, in twelve days they entered the land of Sobradisa. And it was pitch dark; then they left the main highway, and by a short cut they journeyed a good three leagues; so that a great share of the night having passed, they reached a small castle, which belonged to a matron who had been reared by Grovenesa's father and was named Gabalumba, and she was very old and very discreet. They having knocked at the gate and the members of the household coming out — for the lady and all her household were greatly pleased — they opened the door and welcomed them inside where they gave them supper and beds on which to sleep and rest. And the next morning Gabalumba asked Grovenesa what her journey was about. She told her that Amadis had promised Briolanja to avenge the death of her father, and that she should believe without any doubt that he was the finest knight in the world; and she related how in order to see the cart in which she and Briolanja were traveling, he overcame eight very good knights that she was bringing along for her protection; and likewise what she had seen him do in the castle to her men, when he had been rescued by the lions. The matron marvelled at such knightly prowess and said:

“Since he is so excellent, his companion is probably worth something, and he will indeed be able to accomplish this deed, which so rightly they are undertaking. But I am afraid lest that traitor work some deceit whereby he may kill them.”

“On that account I come to you,” said Grovenesa, “so that you may counsel me.”

“Now,” said she, “leave this matter to me.”

Then she took ink and parchment and wrote a letter, and sealed it with Briolanja's seal; and she spoke privately for a bit with a maiden, and giving her the letter gave her instructions as to what she was to do.

The maiden left the castle on her palfrey and went until she reached that great city called Sobradisa, from which the whole kingdom because of this took that name; and Abiseos was there, and his sons Dorasion and Dramis; these were the ones with whom Amadis was to do battle; for that Abiseos had killed Briolanja's father, his elder brother, out of a very eager desire that he had to take the kingdom from him, as he did, for from then on until that hour he reigned unopposed more by force than by the free will of those of his land.

Well, the maiden, having arrived, went at once to the palace of the king, and entered the gate riding on horseback and very richly garbed. And the knights came up to help her dismount, but she told them that she could not alight until the king saw her and ordered her to dismount, if he were pleased to do so. Then they took her horse by the reins and put her in a hall where the king was with his sons and many other knights; and he commanded her to get down off the palfrey if she wished to say something. The maiden said:

"I shall do it on condition that you take me under your protection against receiving ill-treatment for anything I may say here against you or against anyone else."

He said he took her under his protection and with his royal word of honor, and that she could say without fear what she had come for. Then she was taken off the palfrey, and she said:

"Sire, I bring you such a message as requires you to be in the presence of all the chief nobles of the kingdom; order them to come and you will hear it at once."

"I understand," said the king, "that they are here assembled as you wish, for I had them come a good six days ago for matters of importance."

"I am very glad," said the maiden, "then order them to assemble here."

The king gave orders to call them, and when they were assembled, the maiden said:

"King, Briolanja, whom you keep disinherited, sends you this letter; have it read before these people and give me the answer as to what you will do."

When the king heard his niece Briolanja mentioned, he was much ashamed, considering the wrong he had done her; but he ordered the letter read; and he said only that they should believe what that damsel of Briolanja's would say on the latter's behalf. The natives of the kingdom who were there, when they saw that message from their sovereign lady, had great pity in their hearts on seeing her so unjustly disinherited, and silently prayed to God to help her and not to permit such great treason to endure for such a long time. The king said to the damsel:

"Tell what they ordered you to, for you will be believed."

She said:

"Sir king, it is true that you killed the father of Briolanja and you keep her deprived of the inheritance of her land, and you have said many times that you and your sons will maintain by force of arms that you did it justly; and Briolanja orders you to say whether you abide by it, for she will bring here two knights who concerning this right will do battle on her behalf, and they will make you acknowledge the disloyalty and great arrogance that you have displayed."

When Darasion, his eldest son, heard this, he was very angry, for he was quite irascible in his ways; and standing up, he said without his father's approval:

"Damsel, if Briolanja has those knights and they wish to fight for such a right, I promise right now a battle by me and my father and my brother; and if I do not have this done, I promise before these knights to give my head to Briolanja so that she may order it chopped off in retaliation for her father's."

"Certainly," said the maiden, "Darasion, you answer like a knight of great courage, but I do not know whether you do it out of rage, for I see you to be greatly angered; but if you execute with your father what I now tell you, I shall believe that you will fight with the excellence and courage that is within you."

"Damsel," said he, "what is it that you will say?"

She said:

"Have your father give a truce to our knights with all those of this land to the effect that on account of any ill-fortune that may come to you, they not receive harm except from you; and

if you give this assurance, on the third day from now the knights will be here."

Darasion knelt before his father and said:

"Sire, now you see what the maiden asks for and what I have promised; and since my honor is yours, let it be granted by you, for otherwise they would be victors without affront, and you and we at great fault, having always proclaimed that if any charge to your integrity in the past be imputed, by battle of all three of us it is to be purged; and even if this had not been promised, we ourselves ought to take up this challenge, because according to what I am told, these knights are some of the madmen of the court of King Lisuarte, whose great pride and little sense, while they hold their own concerns in great esteem, cause them to scorn those of others."

And the king, who loved this son more than himself, although the death of his brother that he had brought about rendered him culpable and he was very doubtful concerning the battle, granted safe-conduct to the knights just as the maiden demanded; the hour now having arrived, permitted by the most high Lord, in which his treason was to be punished, as you shall hear later. The damsel, on seeing her mission thus effected, said to the king and his sons:

"Prepare yourselves, for tomorrow those with whom you are to fight will be here."

And mounting her palfrey, she traveled so fast that she arrived at the castle and related to the ladies and to the knights how completely she had succeeded in her mission; but when she said that Darasion considered them madmen because they were of the court of King Lisuarte, Amadis was roused to great fury and said:

"Well even in that court there are those who would deem it a small matter to break his pride and even his head."

But he saw that anger was dominating him, and he was sorry for what he had said. Briolanja, whose eyes did not leave him, and who heard it, said:

"My lord, you cannot say or do so much against those traitors that they do not deserve more, and since you know about the death of my father and the period of time that they have kept

me disinherited so without justice, have pity on me, for I entrust all my fortunes to God and to you."

Amadis, whose heart was ruled by virtue and rendered completely gentle, felt sorry for that beautiful maiden, and said to her:

"My good lady, the hope you have in God, I have that tomorrow before it be night your great sadness will be turned into the great brightness of joy."

Briolanja so bowed before him that she sought to kiss his feet; but he with much embarrassment stepped aside and Agrajes lifted her by the hands.

Then it was at once agreed that leaving there at dawn of the next day, they would go to hear mass in the hermitage of the three fountains, which was a half league from Sobradisa. So they took their ease that night very comfortably and to their pleasure. And Briolanja, who had spoken with Amadis a great deal, was often tempted to propose marriage to him; but she was fearful that such insistent thoughts and the tears which were sometimes seen on his cheeks were not caused by any weakness of his strong heart but by his being tormented, subjugated and afflicted by another woman for whom he felt that passion that she suffered for him; so that reason, curbing her desire, made her desist. She left him, so that by sleeping and resting in peace he would be able to rise at the aforementioned hour.

Then morning having come, Amadis and Agrajes taking with them Grovenesa and Briolanja with their retinue, at the first hour of the day were in the hermitage of the three fountains, where they heard mass from a cleric hermit. And those knights with great devotion asked God to help them in that battle through His mercy, since He knew them to have right and justice on their side. And then they armed themselves with all their arms, with only their faces and hands bare; and mounting their horses, and the ladies their palfreys, they continued on their way until they arrived at the city of Sobradisa, at whose approaches they encountered King Abiseos and his sons, who with a large company of people, knowing already that they were coming, were awaiting them. All moved close to where Briolanja was coming, with Amadis leading her horse by the reins; and they loved her with

heart-felt love, considering her their rightful and natural sovereign. And when Amadis came with her into the crowd of people, she took off her veil for all to see her beautiful face; and when they saw her with tears falling from her eyes, and turning her face toward them, with great love in their hearts they blessed her, praying God not to continue her disinheritance any longer.

For Abiseos, who saw before him his niece, his cupidity and wickedness were not of sufficient avail to prevent his feeling great shame on remembering the treachery that he had committed against the king, her father; but as with the long period of time he was hardened to it, he thought that Fortune was not yet angry about that great pinnacle on which she had placed him; and sensing what the people felt on seeing Briolanja, he said:

“Wretched hapless people, I see indeed the pleasure that this maiden with her appearance gives you; and this causes you to lack good sense; for if you had any, you ought to be more contented and honored with me, a knight, for your alleviation and defense than her knight is with her, she being a weak woman; if not, behold what strength or favor is hers, for after so long a time she has not been able to obtain more than these knights who with such great self-deception, coming to receive either death or dishonor, cause me to have pity for them.”

Hearing this, Amadis was moved to great fury, so much that blood seemed to flow from his eyes, and he said to Abiseos, raising himself in his stirrups so that all heard him:

“Abiseos, I see that you are quite worried at the coming of Briolanja, on account of the great treason that you committed when you killed her father, who was your elder brother and natural lord. If there were in you sufficient virtue and understanding to yield up to her what is her own, desisting from this very great wickedness, I would afford you the opportunity by releasing you from the combat, in order that, asking God for mercy for your sin, you might do such penance that just as in this world you have your honor lost, so in the other where you are to go, your soul, through its salvation, might make amends.”

Darasion came forward very angrily before his father could reply, and said:

"Certainly, mad knight of the court of King Lisuarte, I never thought that I would be able to endure from anyone all that you have just said in my presence; but I do it because if you dare to keep to what is arranged, my fury will be soon avenged; and if, with your courage failing you, you try to flee, you will not be any place where I cannot seize you and order you punished in such wise that all those who watch it will grieve for you."

Agrajes said:

"Since you so wish to support the treason of your father, arm yourself and come to the battle as per agreement; and if your luck be such that the death you all three have crowning your list of accomplishments to be memorialized is brought to life, all right; if not, you, Darasion, will have the kind of death, and they with you, that your evil deeds deserve."

"Say what you wish," said Darasion, "for it won't be long before that tongue of yours without its skin will be sent to the court of King Lisuarte, so that on seeing this penalty, those like you restrain themselves in their follies."

And then he began to ask for his arms, and his father and brother likewise; and they armed themselves and mounting their horses, they placed themselves in an open square which in former times was enclosed for combats; Amadis and Agrajes, lacing their helmets and taking their shields and lances, placed themselves with them in the field. Dramis, the middle brother, who was a valiant knight, so much so that no two knights of that land held the field against him, said to his father:

"Sir, where you and my brother were, I used to find it unnecessary to speak, but now I do so deem it for carrying on with that great courage that I had from God and from you; leave me with that knight who spoke ill of you, and if I do not kill him with my first lance thrust, I never more wish to bear arms; and if such be his good fortune that I do not hit him with a direct blow, the same will I do with my first sword stroke."

Many heard what this knight said, and they reflected on it, not holding in high esteem that wild boast of his nor doubting that he would be able to bring it about, according to the great feats of arms they had seen him perform. Then at this juncture,

Darasion looked at them and saw that they were only two, and shouted:

“What is this? I know that you are to be three; I believe that the other one lacked courage; call him to come quickly so as not to delay us.”

“Don’t worry,” said Amadis, “about the third one, for indeed there are here those who exempt him; and I trust in God that not much time will pass before you would wish to see the second man out.

And he said:

“Now protect yourselves!”

Then the knights, very well protected, let their horses run against one another as fast as they could, and Dramis went straight for Amadis, and they struck each other so fiercely on their shields that they shattered them, and the lances reached their sides; and Dramis broke his lance; but Amadis struck him so ferociously that without his coat of mail’s being rent anywhere, his heart within his body was disabled, and he struck him dead to the ground in such a great fall that it seemed as if a tower had fallen down.

“In the name of God!” said Ardian, the dwarf, “my lord is free already; and his deeds appear to me more certain than the other’s threat.”

Agrajes went for the two and clashed with Darasion, and their lances were broken, and Darasion lost one stirrup, but neither of them fell; Abiseos missed his target; and when he turned his horse about, he saw his son Dramis dead, for he was motionless, at which Abiseos was greatly distressed, but he did not think that he was quite dead yet; and he charged with great fury at Amadis, like one who was intending to avenge his son; and he tightly grasped the lance under his arm and struck him so hard he pierced his shield, so that he thrust the iron tip of the lance through his arm and the lance broke in such a way that everybody thought that he would not be able to maintain himself any longer in the combat.

That Briolanja was sorrowful about this, is not to be questioned, for certainly her heart and her eyesight failed her, and she would have fallen from her palfrey if she had not been aided.

But that one, who was not frightened by such blows, grasped firmly the hilt of the good sword that he had taken from Arcalaus a little before, and went and struck Abiseos such a mighty blow on top of his helmet that he caused the sword to descend to his shoulder and cut it, and he had cut through his head to the bone; and Abiseos was so overwhelmed by the blow and so stunned that he could not stay in the saddle, and he fell, for with difficulty could he have held on. Those who saw how Amadis with two blows had thus stunned two such strong knights, were quite astounded, for they really believed that there were no better ones in the world. And Amadis charged at Darasion, who was fighting so fiercely with Agrajes that it would be hard to find two others who would fight better, and said:

“Certainly, Darasion, I well believe that you would rather see the second one out than the third coming in.”

And Darasion did not reply, but he covered himself well with the shield; and Agrajes stopped in front of Amadis, who was going to attack Darasion, and said:

“Sir cousin, you have done enough; leave me with this one who threatened me with such arrogance to pull out my tongue.”

But Amadis, who was in a state of great rage, did not understand very well what Agrajes said to him; and went by him and gave Darasion such a great blow on the shield that everything that he reached went to the ground, and the sword went down to the saddlebow and cut down into the neck of the horse; and on passing, Darasion did so in such wise that he found the opportunity to thrust his sword into the belly of Amadis's horse; and when it felt itself wounded it began to flee with Amadis unable to rein it in; but he pulled so hard on the reins that they were left in his hand; and as he saw himself helpless, and that the horse would take him from the field, he struck it such a blow with his sword between its ears that he split its head in two, and it fell to the ground dead, in such wise that Amadis was quite shaken up. But he got up very quickly, although with great effort, and with his sword in hand went to Abiseos, who had already risen and was going to help his son; and at this moment Agrajes gave Darasion such a mighty blow with his sword on top of his helmet that he could not withdraw it; and Darasion carried it

imbedded there, and began to deal him heavy blows with his own sword; and then when Agrajes saw himself without a sword, he betrayed no weakness; but rather, he went in close, past his sword, so quickly that the other had no opportunity enabling him to attack him, and he threw his armas around him as one who was very quick; and Darasion threw his sword away and seized him in a strong grip, and with both of them tugging, they pulled each other from their saddles and fell to the ground; and being thus locked in each other's arms, for they were not relaxing their grip, Abiseos came up and attacked Agrajes with heavy blows, and if he had had somewhat more time he would have killed him. But Amadis who saw him thus, hurried over as fast as he could; and Abiseos, who was lifting up the skirt of Agrajes's coat of mail in order to thrust his sword into him, came up to him, and with the fear he had, left him and covered himself with his shield, and Amadis struck him on it such a great blow that he knocked it against his helmet, so that he stunned him and he was about to fall.

When Agrajes saw his cousin beside him, he made a greater effort to stand up, and Darasion also, so that each one decided to let go of the other; and as they got to their feet, Agrajes, who saw the other's sword on the ground, took it; and Darasion laid hands on the one he had in his helmet, and pulled until he drew it out, and went close to his father; but Agrajes was losing so much blood from a wound that he had on his throat that all of his armor was red with it. When he saw him thus, Amadis was terribly grieved, for he thought the wound was mortal, and said to him:

"Good cousin, rest and leave me with these traitors."

"No, sir," said he, "I do not have such a wound as to cause me to stop aiding you, as you now see."

"Then at them," said Amadis.

Then they went to strike them with very harsh blows. But because Amadis thought that Agrajes was in peril from his wound, with his great worry, his anger increased and with it his strength in such wise that both of them in a short time he put in such shape that their armor was hacked to pieces and their flesh little less. So that no longer being able to withstand his many hard

blows, they went fleeing hither and you, trembling with their great fear of death. In this distress and misfortune that you hear, Abiseos and his son Darasion suffered until the hour of tierce; and as Abiseos saw that his death had arrived, he took his sword in both hands and rushed with great fury at Amadis, and struck him so hard on top of his helmet that it did not seem a blow from a man so badly wounded; he wounded him, knocked off the rim of his helmet, and the sword went down to the left shoulder and cut off a piece of the coat of mail with a piece of flesh. Amadis really felt this blow and did not delay long in giving him the payment for it, and struck him such a deadly blow with all his might on the unfortunate arm with which he had killed his brother the king, his natural lord, that cutting it off close to the shoulder he hurled it to the ground. When Amadis saw him thus, he said:

“Abiseos, you see here the arm which treasonably put you in great pleasure and a high place, and which now will put you in death and the depths of hell.”

Abiseos fell down with the fear of death; and Amadis looked around for the other one and saw that Agrajes had him on the ground and had cut off his head. Then all those of the land went very happily to kiss the hands of Briolanja, their sovereign.

COUNSEL

Take heed, covetous ones, those of you to whom are given by God great dominions to govern, who not only failing to remember to give thanks for his having placed you at such great heights; but against His commands losing the fear due Him, not being content with those estates that He gave you, and which fell to you from your ancestors; by murder, fires, thefts foreign to those who uphold God's law, you seek to usurp and seize, always withdrawing your thoughts from turning your fury and cupidity against the infidels in which everything would be better employed, not wishing to enjoy that great glory that our Catholic Sovereigns in this world and in the next enjoy and will enjoy because by serving God with much labor they have done so. Then remember that great estates and riches do not satisfy covetous

and depraved appetites; rather for the most part they enkindle them. And you of lower rank, those to whom fortune gave so much power and position, by your being placed in their councils to guide them, just as the rudder guides and governs the large ship, counsel them faithfully, esteem them, for in so doing you serve God, you serve everything in general; and even though you do not obtain from this world the satisfaction of your desires, you will attain what is of the other world, which is without end; and if you do the opposite for the sake of yielding to your passions, your greed, in quite the opposite way will everything come to you, with great sorrow and anguish of your souls; for with much justice, one must believe that nearly everything is in your charge; because the heads of state, either on account of their tender age or of enmity, could err in judgment or array themselves without any recollection of good sense against the sharp points of swords, considering that to be best; so that their fault would have some excuse, especially if they committed it on your advice; but you who are free, who see the error before your eyes, and esteeming more highly the favor of mortal man than the anger of the most high Lord, not only do not restrain and try to remove them from that great error; but hoping to be to a greater degree esteemed, more benefited, forgetting what is spiritual, you embrace the things of this world, not remembering how many counselors of men in high places have suffered the cruel death that those same ones to whom they gave bad advice, caused them to be given because, although at present mistaken things, being in accordance with harmful desires, may give much contentment, afterwards when that dark cloud is removed and true understanding remains clear, to a greater degree such things are abhorred along with those who advised them.

Then all of you take warning from the case of that king, whose unruly greed stirred his heart to such great treachery, killing that brother, his king and natural lord, seated on the royal throne, splitting his head and his crown into two parts, he remaining to rule that kingdom by great force and in his opinion with much glory, believing he had fickle fortune underfoot. Well, what fruit did he derive from such blossoms as these? Certainly no other save that the Lord of the world, sufferer of many offenses,

merciful pardoner of them, provided there be due recognition of them and repentance, but a cruel avenger when the same are absent, permitted that there come there that harsh executor, Amadis of Gaul; who, by killing Abiseos and his sons, avenged that very great treachery that was done to that noble king; and if their hearts experienced very great duress in the battle on seeing their armor rent, their flesh cut to bits, as a result of which they suffered cruel death, do not believe that by that they paid and expiated their guilt; rather, their souls, with very little understanding of that One who created them, accomplices in their errors and sins, in cruel Hell in burning flames, without any separation will be perpetually damned.

Then let us leave those perishable things that by many others were ill-gotten through great effort and with great sorrow abandoned, paying for what they sinned in order to keep them, and by us likewise they will be abandoned, and let us strive for those which promise glory without end.

The story again relates the action under way. This battle having been won by Amadis and Agrajes, in which Abiseos and his two sons died, as you have already heard, having cast them out of the field, Amadis did not seek to disarm, although he was wounded, until he found out if in the meantime there was anything occurring that might hinder Briolanja in recovering the kingdom; but there came at once there a great and very powerful lord of the kingdom, Goman by name, with as many as a hundred men of his lineage and house, who at the time were with him; and that man assured Amadis that that realm, not being able to do otherwise, for such a long time had been under the domination by that man who with great treachery had killed his natural lord, and that since God had provided such a remedy, he should not fear or think aught except that they all participated in that loyalty and vassalage which they owed that sovereign of theirs, Briolanja.

With this, Amadis and all his retinue went to the royal palace, where they had not spent a week, before all those of the kingdom, with much delight and happiness of spirit, came to swear allegiance to Queen Briolanja. There was Amadis lying in his bed, where that beautiful queen, who loved him more than herself,

never left his presence, except to sleep. And Agrajes, who was very dangerously wounded, was placed under the care of a man who knew a great deal about his profession, keeping him indoors to prevent him from speaking with anyone; for the wound was in his throat, and so it was necessary to do that.

All that is said in addition to this in this first Book concerning the love affair of Amadis and this beautiful queen, was added, as has already been told you; and therefore, as superfluous and vain, will not be related, since it is not pertinent; rather, this untrue material would contradict and damage what more rightly this great story will recount to you later.

CHAPTER XLIII

ABOUT HOW DON GALAOR AND FLORESTAN, BEING ON THEIR WAY TO THE KINGDOM OF SOBRADISA, MET THREE MAIDENS AT THE FOUNTAIN OF THE ELMS.

Don Galaor and Florestan were in the castle of Corisanda, as you have heard, until they were healed of their wounds; then they agreed to leave in order to look for Amadis, whom they understood that they would find in the kingdom of Sobradisa, wishing that the battle that was to be there had not taken place until they should arrive and take part in the danger and the glory, if God granted it to them. When Florestan bade farewell to his sweetheart, her anguish and grief were so excessive, and with so many tears, that they pitied her very much; and Florestan consoled her by promising her that they would return to see her as quickly as could be. Having taken leave of her, armed and mounted and their squires with them, they went and got on the boat in order to be transported to terra firma and on their way to Sobradisa; and Florestan said to Don Galaor:

"Sir, grant me a boon, please."

"Will it irk my lord and good brother?" said Don Galaor.

"No, it will not," said he.

"Then ask for what I can in good conscience grant without shame, for I shall gladly grant it."

"I ask of you," said Don Florestan, "not to do combat on this trip on account of anything that may befall, until you see that I am helpless."

"Certainly," said Don Galaor, "I am sorry about what you request of me."

"Don't be sorry," said Florestan, "for if I value anything, it is your honor to the same extent as my own."

And it so happened that in the four days that they journeyed along that road they never found any adventure worth mentioning; and the last day they arrived at a tower at such a late hour that it was time to find lodging, and at the gate of the courtyard they found a knight who with good grace invited them, and they were pleased to stay there that night; and disarming them and taking their horses in order to care for them, they gave them each mantles to don, and they walked about there talking and enjoying themselves until they took them inside the tower and gave them a very good supper.

That knight whose guests they were was tall and handsome and well-spoken; but they saw him turn sometimes so sad and full of care that the brothers noticed it, and were talking to each other about what might be the cause; and Don Galaor said:

"Sir, it seems to us that you are not as happy as need be, and if your sadness is for something in which our help may be useful, tell us so and we shall do your will."

"Many thanks," said the knight, "for I understand that you will be doing so as good knights; but the power of love causes my sadness; and I shall not tell you any more now, for it would be to my great embarrassment."

And while they were speaking of other things, the hour for sleep arrived; and the host going to his own lodging, they remained in quite a handsome chamber, where there were two beds on which they slept and rested that night; and in the morning they were given their arms and horses, and they took up their journey; and the host with them unarmed on a big, swift horse to keep them company and to see what they would encounter on ahead; so he was guiding them, not along the right road, but along another one he knew, where he wanted to see if they were such at arms as their appearance indicated; and they journeyed until they reached a fountain that there was in that land, called the Fountain of the Three Elms, because there were three big, tall elms there. Then, having reached there, they saw three maidens who were beside the fountain; they appeared very beautiful and well dressed, and atop the elms they saw a dwarf

seated. Florestan went forward to the maidens and greeted them very politely, as one who was circumspect and well reared. One of them said:

"God give you health, sir knight; if you are as courageous as you are handsome, God was very good to you."

"Maiden," said he, "if you like good looks so much, even better you will like courage if you need it."

"You speak well," said she, "and now I wish to see if your vigor will suffice to take me away from here."

"Surely," said Florestan, "for that, only a little excellence would suffice; and since you desire it, I will take you."

Then he ordered his squires to put her on a palfrey that was tied there to the branches of the elms. When the dwarf who was up in the elm tree saw that, he shouted:

"Come out, knights, come out, for they are taking your lady friend away from you."

And at these shouts, a knight fully armed on a big horse came out of a valley and said to Florestan:

"What is this, knight; who told you to lay hands on my damsel?"

"I don't consider her to be yours, since she of her own free will asked me to take her away from here."

The knight said:

"Although she agrees to it, I shall not permit you to do so, for I have defended her from other knights better than you."

"I do not know how," said Florestan, "it will be; but if you don't do any more than speak these words, I shall take her."

"First you will find out," said he, "of what stuff are the knights of this valley and how they defend those ladies whom they esteem."

"Then be on your guard right now," said Florestan.

Then they let their horses run toward each other, and with their lances they struck each other on the shields, and the knight broke his lance, and Florestan caused him to be struck on the helmet with the boss of his own shield, which snapped the lacing and knocked the helmet from his head, and he could not hold himself in the saddle, so that he fell on his sword and broke it into two pieces; Florestan passed by him and lifted high his

lance and returned to the knight, and saw him apparently dead; and putting the lance to his face, he said:

"You die."

"Alas, sir, mercy!" said the knight; "You see already that I am as good as dead."

"That will not get you anywhere," said he, "unless you agree the maiden is mine."

"I agree to it," said the knight, "and cursed be she and the day that I saw her, for she has made me commit so many follies, until now I have lost my life."

Florestan left him and went to the damsel, and said:

"You are mine."

"You have won me properly," said she, "and you can do with me what you like."

"Then let us go now," said he.

But another of the maidens at the fountain said:

"Sir knight, you have broken up a good company, because for a year we have traveled together, and we are very sorry to be thus separated."

Florestan said:

"If you wish to go in my company, I will take you, and thus you two will not be separated from each other, for otherwise it cannot be, because I would not leave behind here a maiden as beautiful as this one."

"She is indeed beautiful," said she, "nor do I consider myself so ugly that some knight ought not to undertake a great deed for me; but I do not believe you will be one of those who would dare do it."

"What!" said Florestan, "Do you think I am leaving you out of fear? So help me God, it was only for the sake of not contravening your will, and now you will see."

Then he ordered her to be put on another palfrey; and the dwarf shouted as he did the first time, and immediately another knight came out of the valley, very well armed on a good horse, and very elegant in appearance, and behind him a squire, who was carrying two lances; and he said to Florestan:

"Sir knight, you have won one maiden and not content, you take the other. Now you will have to lose them both, and your

head along with them, for it is not proper for a knight of such a lineage as yours to have in your keeping a woman of such high rank as the maiden is."

"You boast too much," said Florestan, "for there are two knights of my lineage, either one of whom I would wish to come to my aid, rather than you alone."

"Because those of your lineage you value so greatly," said the knight, "I do not on this account regard you more highly; for I consider you and them as nothing at all. But you won one maiden from one who did not have the power to aid her, and if I overcome you, the maiden is mine; and if I be conquered, you take with her this other one that I am protecting."

"I am satisfied with that agreement," said Florestan.

"Well now protect yourself if you can," said the knight.

Then they charged each other at the full speed of their horses, and the knight struck Florestan on the shield, which his lance pierced, and it was arrested by his coat of mail, which was strong and well made, and the lance broke; and Florestan missed in his encounter and passed on beyond him. The knight took another lance from the squire who was carrying them; and Don Florestan, who was ashamed and very angry because in front of his brother he missed the blow, let himself go at him and struck him so forcibly on the shield that he broke it and the arm on which he was carrying it, and the lance penetrated to the cuirass; he pushed him so hard that he lifted him off the saddle and on to the haunches of the horse; which, when it felt him there, kicked so violently that it threw him to the ground, which was hard, in such a mighty fall that he stirred neither hand nor foot. Florestan, who saw him thus, said to the maiden:

"You are mine, for this friend of yours will defend neither you nor himself."

"So it seems to me," said she.

Don Florestan looked at the other maiden, who remained alone at the fountain, and saw her very sad and said to her:

"Maiden, if it does not cause you sorrow, I would not leave you there alone."

The maiden looked toward their host and said to him:

"I advise you to go away from here, for you well know that these two knights are not enough to defend you against the one who will come now; and if he overtakes you, there is no other thing except death."

"Still," said the host, "I wish to see what will happen, for this horse of mine is a good runner and my castle very close, so that there is no danger."

"Oh," said she, "be careful, for you are only three, and you unarmed, and well you know that against him, that is as nothing at all."

When Don Florestan heard this he was even more eager to take away the maiden for the sake of seeing that one of whom they were speaking so highly. And he had her mount another palfrey just as he had the others; and the dwarf who was above in the elm, said:

"Sir knight, at a bad time you are so daring, for now will come one who will avenge himself and the others."

Then he shouted:

"Help, sir, for you are very late."

And then there came out of the valley whence the others had come, a knight who was wearing armor striped in gold, and he came on a bay horse so big and spirited that it would have sufficed for a giant. And the knight was also very tall and muscular, for there was quite apparent in him the existence of very great strength and valor. And he came completely armed, lacking nothing; and behind him came two squires armed with armor and capeline half-helmets, and each one carried a big and very sharp battle axe in his hand, by which the knight set great store for striking; and he said to Florestan:

"Hold, knight, and don't flee, for it will do you no good; for nevertheless you have to die; therefore die as a man of courage and not as a coward, for you cannot escape through cowardice."

When Florestan saw himself threatened by death and vilified as a coward, he was so furious that it was a wonder, and he said:

"Go to, you devilish monstrosity! So help me God, I fear you as I would a great beast without courage or heart."

"Oh!" said the knight, "how I regret that I shall not be avenged by anything that I may do to you; and would that God

might arrange for me right now that the four of your lineage that you esteem most highly might be here, so that I might cut off their heads along with yours."

"Defend yourself from me alone," said Florestan, "for I shall bring it to pass with God's help that they be exempted."

Then they let themselves charge at each other with lances lowered, and well protected by their shields, and each one was in a great rage at the other. Their encounters were so violent on the shields that they pierced them, and also the coats of mail were unmeshed with the great force of their attack; and the huge knight lost both stirrups, and would have left the saddle if he had not clasped the neck of his horse; and Don Florestan, who passed by him, went to one of the squires and seized from him the battle axe he had in his hand, and jerked it so hard that he overthrew him and his beast and went to the knight, who, straightening himself in the saddle, had taken the other axe, for the one who had it was quick to put it into his hands, and both the axes were upraised, and they struck each other on top of their helmets, which were of fine steel, and they penetrated through them to a depth of more than three fingers' breadth, and Florestan was battered down by the blow, so that it caused his cheeks to sink to his chest, and the huge knight was so dazed that the axe, leaving his hand, remained stuck in Florestan's helmet, and he did not have enough strength to raise his head above the level of his horse's neck, and Florestan returned to attack him, and as he had him bent over so low, he struck him thus unprotected between his helmet and the gorget of his cuirass such a blow that he quickly cut off his head, casting it at the feet of his horse. This done, he went to the maidens, and the first said:

"Certainly, good knight, there was a time when I did not think that ten such as you would win us, as you alone have, and it is right that you have us as your damsels."

Then their host, who was a young knight and handsome as you have already heard, came up to him and said:

"Sir, I love this maiden with a deep love, and she loves me; and it had been a year that that knight whom you killed had held her by force without letting me see her, and now that I can have

her through you, I shall be very grateful to you if you are not irked thereby."

"Certainly, host," said he, "if it is just as you say, in me you will find a good helper; but against her desire I would not agree to it with you or anyone else."

"Oh, sir!" said the maiden, "I am pleased, and I beg of you to give me to him, for I love him very much."

"In the name of God!" said Florestan, "I set you free to do as you wish."

The maiden went away with the host, being very happy. Galaor gave orders to seize the huge bay horse, which he thought was the most beautiful he had ever seen, and he gave the host the one he had brought; afterwards they started on their way, and the maidens with them, and I tell you they were young and beautiful, and Don Florestan took the first for himself, and said to the other:

"My dear, do for that knight whatever he pleases, for I bid you do so."

"What," said she, "Do you seek to give me to this one who saw you in such a predicament and did not help you? I really believe that the armor he wears is more for someone else than for him, judging by the spirit of the one who wears it."

"Maiden," said Don Florestan, "I swear to you by the faith that I have in God, that I am giving you the finest knight that I know of in the world, except for Amadis, my lord."

The maiden looked at Galaor. And she saw him so handsome and so young that she wondered about what she had heard concerning him; and she granted him her love; and the other hers to Don Florestan; and that night they went and lodged in the home of a beautiful matron, a sister of their host from whom they had parted; and she rendered them all the service that she could as soon as she learned what had happened to them. There they rested that night, and in the morning they resumed their way; and they said to their girl friends:

"We are to travel through many foreign lands, and it would be very hard on you to follow us; tell us where you will be content for us to take you."

"Since such is your pleasure," said they, "At four days' journey from here, on this road that you are following, is a castle of a lady, our aunt, and there we shall remain."

So they continued on their way. Don Galaor asked his maiden:

"How did that knight hold you?"

"I will tell you," said the maiden. "Now know you that that big knight who died in the combat loved very much the maiden that your host took with him; but she hated him with all her heart, and loved the one to whom you gave her more than anything in the world. And the knight as he was the best in these lands took her by force without anyone's opposing him in the matter; and she never of her own free will was willing to give him her love; and as he loved her so much, he avoided angering her, and said to her:

"My dear, in order that quite rightly I may be esteemed and loved by you, as the best knight of the world, I shall do for love of you this which you shall hear: know you that a knight who is famous everywhere as the best that ever was who is called Amadis of Gaul, at the court of King Lisuarte killed a cousin of mine, who had the name, Dardan the Proud; and I shall search for this man and I shall cut his head off. Thereby all his fame will be diverted to me; and while this is being done I shall put with you two maidens, the most beautiful of this land, to watch over you, and I shall give them as male friends two of the best knights of my lineage, and we shall take you each day to the Fountain of the Three Elms, which is passed by many knights errant, and if they wish to take you, there you will see beautiful jousts and what I shall do in them; thus by your own free will I shall be much beloved by you just as I love you."

"This said, he took us and gave us to those two knights who were conquered, and kept us at that fountain for a year, where they have performed many great exploits of chivalry until now, when Don Florestan settled the strife."

"Certainly, my dear," said Don Galaor, "the intent of that knight was quite grandiose, if he had been able to carry it out as he said. But first I believe he would have undergone great danger if he had met that Amadis whom he wanted to look for."

"So it seems to me," said she, "according to the superiority you recognize that he has over you."

"What was the name of that knight?" said Galaor.

"Alumas," said she; "and be certain that if his great arrogance had not corrupted him, he would have been of very high repute at arms."

Talking about this and other things, they journeyed until they reached the castle of the aunt, where they were well served, the lady learning how Don Florestan had killed Alumas and had overcome his companions, who had been holding her niece by force very dishonorably and without cause or reason. Then leaving the damsels there, they mounted the next day and traveled until, after four days, they were in a town of the kingdom of Sobradisa; and there they found out how Amadis and Agrajes had killed in combat Abiseos and his sons and had made Briolanja queen without delay, at which they had great pleasure and delight, and they gave many thanks to God. And leaving there, they arrived at the city of Sobradisa and went directly to the palace, without anyone's recognizing them; and dismounting from their horses, they came in where Amadis and Agrajes, who were now healed of their wounds, were with the new and beautiful queen.

When Amadis saw them thus, for he had already recognized the maiden as the one who had guided Galaor, and saw Don Florestan so tall and handsome, of whose great excellence he had already had information, he went to him, tears of joy falling from his eyes, and Don Florestan knelt before him to kiss his hands; but Amadis raised him, embracing and kissing him, and asking him in very great detail about the things that had happened to him; and afterwards he spoke to Don Galaor, and they to their cousin Agrajes, for they loved him very much.

When the beautiful queen saw in her house four such knights, she having been for so long a time disinherited and imprisoned with such fear in a single castle, where almost out of pity she was kept, and who now was being reinstated in her honor and her kingdom with such a great turn of the wheel of Fortune, and who not only had the means to defend it, but even to conquer realms of others, she knelt down after having received with much affection those two brothers, giving sincere thanks to the very

powerful Lord, who in such a way and with such great compassion remembered her; and she said to the knights:

“Believe for certain, sirs, such rotations and changes as these are wonders of the very high Lord; which when we see them, appear very great, and yet compared with His great power should rightly be considered as nothing.”

Then let us now regard these great dominions, these riches, which cause us so many sorrows, cares, feelings of anguish, in order to attain them and, once attained, to keep them; would it be better to leave them and abominate them as superfluous and cruel tormenters of bodies and even more of souls, seeing that they are not certain or lasting? I certainly say no; rather, I affirm that when won and acquired fairly and with good conscience, and when we in moderation render satisfaction for them to that Lord who gives them, retaining for ourselves such a share that not our desire but our reason be satisfied, we would be able to obtain repose, pleasure and joy in this world, and in the other, eternal world perpetually to enjoy in glory their fruits.

Here ends the first Book of *Amadis*.

This page intentionally left blank

THE SECOND BOOK OF AMADIS OF GAUL BEGINS

BECAUSE THE ABUNDANCE OF GREAT events of Book IV of the *Amadis* was initiated from the Firm Island, just as it is shown in said Book, it is fitting that in this second Book an account be given concerning what this island was like, and who had those enchantments that were in it and the great riches thereof; since this being the beginning of said Book II, it is related in the proper place.

There was a king in Greece married to a sister of the emperor of Constantinople, by whom he had two very handsome sons, especially the elder, whose name was Apolidon, for he was unequaled in his own time both in vigor of body and fortitude of heart. This Apolidon then, giving himself over, with his subtle genius, to a mastery of all the arts, though genius is seldom consonant with great valor, attained so much proficiency in them, that just like the bright moon among the stars, he shone more than all those of his time, especially in those arts of necromancy; although through them impossible things seem to be realized. Then this king, the father of these two princes, being very rich in money and poor in remaining alive because of his great age, seeing himself at the point of death, gave orders that his son Apolidon, being the elder, should have the realm; to the other he left his great treasures and books, which were many and were worth a great deal. But the younger brother, not satisfied with this, told his father with many tears that with that bequest he was almost disinherited.

The father wringing his hands, not being able to do any more, was greatly disheartened; but that famous Apolidon, whose heart

was as adequate for virtuous acts as for confronting great danger, seeing the sorrow of his father and the pusillanimity of his brother, said that to console the latter's soul he would leave the kingdom to him, he himself taking the treasures and books; whereby the king his father was greatly consoled and with many pious tears gave him his blessing. Then Apolidon, taking the great treasures and the books, had certain ships fitted out with good, well-chosen knights as well as with provisions and weapons; and going on board, he put out to sea, not to any fixed destination, but to wherever Fortune might guide him. And Fortune, on seeing how this prince was submitting to her authority, willed it that that great obedience to his old father, given with much glory and much grandeur, be rewarded by attracting so favorable a wind that in a short time he arrived in the empire of Rome, where at the time the emperor was called Siudan, by whom he was well received. And as he stayed there for some time, the totality of his great feats at arms accomplished previously in other lands—for which great praise will be exalted to high esteem by virtue of the feats he accomplished there in the Roman empire—caused him to be loved inordinately by a sister of the emperor, Grimanesa by name, whose great fame and beauty caused her at that time to be outstanding among women throughout the world; whence it ensued that since he loved her as much as she did him, and since neither one had any hope of their love being consummated in any other way, with the consent of both lovers Grimanesa left the palace of the emperor her brother and went aboard a ship of her lover Apolidon's fleet. Sailing over the sea, they reached port at the Firm Island, which was ruled by a mighty giant. Apolidon, not knowing what land it was, ordered a tent set up with a fine dais on which his lady might rest, for she was quite seasick.

But immediately without any delay the fierce giant came to them armed, greatly startling them. With him, in accordance with the custom of the island, in order to save his lady, himself and his company, Apolidon fought. And by overcoming him with his excellence and valor and leaving him dead on the field, Apolidon was free of the overlord of that same island; for after having seen his great fortress, he not only did not fear the emperor of

Rome, who was angry at him for thus having carried off his sister, but also was unafraid of the whole world. On the island, because the giant was so base and arrogant, he had been greatly hated by all; but Apolidon, after becoming known, was very much loved.

The Firm Island having been won by Apolidon, as you have heard, on it with his mistress Grimanesa he dwelt sixteen years with so much pleasure that their hearts found satisfaction for those mortal desires that they had experienced for each other. In the Firm Island at that time were built very fine buildings, not only with Apolidon's great wealth but also out of his abundant knowledge — buildings so fine that any emperor or king, however rich he might be, would have had great difficulty in completing them.

At the end of those years, the emperor of Greece, having died without issue and the Greeks knowing the excellence of this Apolidon and that he was on his mother's side of the emperor's blood and lineage, unanimously chose him, sending to him there where he was on the island their messengers, through whom they made known to him their desire that he be their emperor. Apolidon, on seeing himself offered such a great empire, although he could obtain on that island all the pleasures that one could find, and knowing that from great dominions fatigue and travail, rather than delights and pleasures, are attained, and that if there are some of the latter, they are mixed with bitter potions, true to the nature of mortal men, which is not content or satisfied with its ever insatiable desires, he reached an agreement with his mistress that leaving that island where they were, they should take the empire that was offered them; but she, having a strong sentimental feeling about a thing as outstanding as that island was, where so many and such great things remained — an island possessed by her great lover, the best knight at arms to be found in the world, and by her, who likewise was praised above all those women of her time for her great beauty — and together with this their being loved by each other to that very perfection attainable by love, implored Apolidon that before their departure, out of his great knowledge he make provision so that in the future that place might be ruled only by a person who both in strength

at arms and in constancy of love, and also in overwhelming good looks, would resemble them both. Apolidon said:

“My lady, since that is your pleasure, I shall do so in such a way that here no lord or lady can live, except those who are most distinguished in what you have said.”

Then he made an arch at the entrance to a garden in which there were trees of all kinds, and furthermore there were in it four vaulted chambers richly wrought; and the garden was fenced in such a way that no one could enter it except under the arch. On top of the latter he put a copper image of a man with a horn in his mouth as if he were about to blow it; and inside one of those rooms he placed two figures, one in his own semblance and the other in that of his mistress, so contrived that they seemed alive, with their faces and figures the same as his and hers, and beside them a very bright stone of striped marble; and he caused a column of iron five cubits in height to be set up, at half the distance of a crossbow shot from the arch, in a large field that was nearby; and he said:

“From now on no man or woman will pass ahead if they have wronged those whom they first began to love; because the image that you see blowing that horn, with such an awful sound, amid smoke and flames of fire, will cause them to be paralyzed; and almost like dead they will be thrust forth from this place. But if there come here such knights, matrons or maidens as be worthy of completing this adventure by reason of their great fidelity, as I have said already, they will enter forthwith and the image will make such a sweet sound that it will be delightful for those to hear who are present; and the latter will see our images and their own names inscribed on the marble, not knowing who inscribed them.”

And taking his mistress by the hand, he had her enter beneath the arch, and the image made the sweet sound, and he showed her the images and their own names inscribed on the marble. And on going outside, Grimanesa had a desire to test them and she asked some matrons and maidens of hers to enter; but as the image produced the frightful sound, great smoke and flames of fire, they were at once paralyzed and insensible, and were expelled from the enclosure and the knights likewise; whereupon Grimanesa,

being certain of the absence of danger, laughed at them with great enjoyment, thanking very much her beloved lover Apolidon for what he had done to satisfy so greatly her desire. She then said to him:

“My lord, what then will happen to that luxurious chamber in which we had such great pleasure and delight?”

“Now,” said he, “let us go there and you will see what I shall do in it.”

Then they went where the chamber was; and Apolidon gave orders to bring two columns, one of stone and the other of copper; and the one of stone he had placed at five paces from the door of the chamber, and the one of copper another five somewhat to one side; and he said to his mistress:

“Now know you that in this chamber no man or woman can enter in any way or at any time until there come here such a knight as may surpass me in excellence at arms or a woman surpassing you in beauty; but if such come as do excel me at arms and you in beauty, they will enter without hindrance.”

And he put some letters on the column of copper which read:

By here will pass the knights in whom there may reside great excellence at arms; each one in proportion to his worth will pass beyond.

And he placed other letters on the column of stone which read:

Beyond here will pass only the knight who surpasses Apolidon in excellence at arms.

And over the door of the chamber he put some letters that read:

He who surpasses me in excellence will enter the luxurious chamber and be lord of the island. And thus will matrons and maidens approach, so that none will enter within if she does not excel you in beauty.

And out of his learning he wrought such an enchantment that no one could come within twelve paces of the chamber from any direction, nor did it have any other entrance except by way of the columns as you have heard. And he gave orders that in that island there was to be a governor to manage it and to collect the income from it and that this income was to be kept for that knight who would have the good fortune to enter the chamber

and to be lord of the island; and he gave orders that those who failed in the test of the lovers' arch should be thrown out without any honor being done them and that those who completed it should be rendered service; and furthermore he said that the knights who underwent the test of the chamber and were unable to reach the column of copper should leave their arms there; and that from those who passed somewhat beyond the column only their swords should be taken; that from those who reached the column of marble, only their shields; and if such come as could pass beyond this column and could not enter, only their spurs. And that from the maidens and matrons nothing should be taken, but that after they told their names, these names should be put on the castle door, together with information concerning how far within each one had penetrated. And he said:

“When this island has a lord, the enchantment for knights will be ended, for freely they will be able to pass by the columns and enter the chamber; but it will not be ended for the women until there comes that woman who by virtue of her great beauty will end the adventure and occupy the luxurious chamber in company with the knight who will have won the seigniory.”

This having been done thus, Apolidon and Grimanesa, entrusting the Firm Island to such protection as you have heard, left there in their ships and went to Greece, where they were emperor and empress, and had sons, who succeeded them in the empire after their days.

But now desisting from speaking any more about this, there will be related to you what Amadis and his brothers, and Agrajes, his cousin, did after they had departed from the house of the beautiful queen Briolanja.

CHAPTER XLIV

HOW AMADIS WITH HIS BROTHERS AND AGRAJES, HIS COUSIN, LEFT FOR WHERE KING LISUARTE WAS; AND HOW THEY CHANCED TO GO TO THE ENCHANTED FIRM ISLAND TO TEST ITS HAZARDS, AND WHAT HAPPENED TO THEM THERE.

Amadis and his brothers and his cousin Agrajes were with Queen Briolanja in the kingdom of Sobradisa, where they were highly honored by her and were very well served by all those of the kingdom. As Amadis kept thinking about his lady Oriana and her outstanding beauty, his heart was tormented by great anguish and by great grief. So many tears did he shed sleeping and awake, that however much he wished to conceal them, they were manifest to all; but not knowing the cause of them, they interpreted them in various ways; because just as the situation was serious, so with great discretion was the secret of them kept by Amadis, as one who had locked in his strong heart everything of virtue; but that afflicted heart no longer being able to endure such suffering, he asked permission of the very beautiful queen for himself and his companions and set out on the road to where King Lisuarte was, not without occasioning great sorrow and anguish for that lady, who loved him more than herself.

Then after he had journeyed for a few days with burning desire, Fortune, because such was her pleasure, with a greater delay than he had wished or intended sought to hinder him, as you now will hear; for on encountering a hermitage on their way and entering it to say a prayer, they saw a beautiful damsel and two other maidens, and four squires who were protecting them. The damsel who had already come out of the hermitage and was

waiting for them on the road, asked them when they reached her where they were going. Amadis said to her:

"Maiden, we are going to the court of King Lisuarte, and if you would like to go, we shall accompany you."

"I should be most grateful," said she, "but I am going elsewhere, and because I saw you go armed as knights seeking adventure, I decided to await you to see whether any of you would like to go to the Firm Island to behold its strange things and its wonders, for I am going there, and I am the daughter of the governor who now has the island."

"Oh, Holy Mary!" said Amadis, "By heaven, many times I have heard of the marvels of that island and I have wanted to see them, but so far I have made no plans to do so."

"Good sir, don't worry about having delayed," said she, "for many others have had that desire, and when they put it into execution, they did not leave there as cheerfully as they entered."

"You are right," said he, "according to what I have heard about it; but tell me, would we go much out of our way if we were to go by there?"

"You would go two days' journey out of your way," said the maiden; "this Firm Island is on this side of the great sea."

He said:

"Where the enchanted arch of loyal lovers is, where no man or woman can enter if he or she has made any mistake since first beginning to love?"

"That is it, certainly," said the maiden, "for that arch is in it, as well as many other things at which to marvel."

"Then," said Agrajes to his companions, "I do not know what you will do; I wish to go with this maiden and see the things of that island."

She said to him:

"If you are so faithful a lover that you can enter under the arch, there you will see the beautiful images of Apolidon and Grimanesa and your own name engraved on a stone, where you will find two other names engraved and no more, although it has been a hundred years since that enchantment was made."

"May you go with God," said Agrajes, "for I shall test whether I can be the third."

Amadis, who with heartfelt desire was no less hopeful of success in that adventure, said to his brothers:

"We are not in love; but I consider it good to wait for our cousin, who is in love and is of gallant heart."

"In the name of God!" said they, "May it please Him that it turn out well."

Then all four, together with the maiden, started on their way to the Firm Island. Don Florestan said to Amadis:

"Sir, do you know anything about this island? For, although I have gone through many lands, I have heard nothing about it until now."

"I have been told by a young knight," said Amadis, "whom I greatly esteem, who is Arban, King of North Wales, a man who has entered upon many adventures and has previously spent four days on this island, that he had tried to see these adventures and marvels that are on it, but that he could not finish any of them, and that he left there with great shame. But this maiden can tell you about it very well, for she dwells there; and according to what she says, she is the daughter of the governor who holds it."

Don Florestan said to the maiden:

"Dear madam, I beg of you, by the faith that you owe to God, to tell me all that you know about this island, since the length of our journey affords us the opportunity for it."

"That I shall do gladly, as I learned of it from those in whose memory it remained."

Then she told him all that the story has related to you, without leaving out anything, at which they were not only astounded to hear of such strange things, but also very desirous of testing them, as men whose strong hearts were satisfied only when they tried those things at which others had failed, for without fearing any danger they desired to finish them.

Then, just as you hear, they traveled until sunset; and on entering a valley, they saw in a meadow tents set up and people beside them who were resting; but among them was a knight richly attired, who seemed to them to be the leader of them all. The damsel said:

"Good sirs, the one you see there is my father, and I wish to go to him in order that he may do you honor."

Then she left them, and on her telling the knight of the quest of the four knights, he came on foot with his company to receive them; and as soon as they had greeted each other, he asked them to disarm in one of the tents and told them that the next day they would be able to go up to the castle to try those adventures. They approved this; hence having disarmed and dined, being very well served, they rested there that night; and early the next day with the governor and others of his retinue they went to the castle, which dominated the whole island, for to the island there was only that one entrance, which was at about a bowshot's distance from the mainland. Everything else was surrounded by the sea, although the island was seven leagues long and five leagues wide. And because of its being mostly an island and the slight amount of terra firma, they called it Firm Island.

Then having arrived there, on entering by the gate, they saw a large palace with the doors open and many shields in it placed in three ways, for a good hundred of them were leaning against some stone ledges and above them were ten higher up, and on another ledge, above the ten, were two, and one of them was more than half again higher than the other. Amadis asked why they had placed them thus, and they told him that thus was the order of excellence of each one whose shield was there, who had sought to enter into the forbidden chamber; and that those who did not reach the column of copper were the owners of shields on the ground, and the ten who reached the column were higher, and of the two the lower one passed the column of copper but could not reach the other column; and the one that was highest reached the column of marble but did not pass beyond. Then Amadis went up to the shields to see if he would recognize any of them, for on each one there was a label indicating whose it was. And he looked at the ten and among them was one much higher, and it had a black field and a lion likewise black, but the lion had white claws and its teeth and mouth were bright red, and he recognized that that one was Arcalaus's. And he looked at the two shields that were highest, and the lower one had a blue field and a giant depicted on it, and beside it a knight who was cutting off its head, and he knew it to be that of King Abies of Ireland, who came there two years before he fought with Amadis.

And he examined the other and it also had a blue field and three golden flowers on it; and that one he could not recognize, but he read the letters that were on it, which said: "This shield is Don Cuadragante's, brother of King Abies of Ireland"; and it had not been more than twelve days before that he had attempted that adventure and had reached the column of marble, at which no other knight had arrived, and he had come from his land to Great Britain to fight with Amadis in order to avenge the death of King Abies, his brother. As soon as Amadis saw the shields, he greatly feared that adventure, since such knights had not completed it. And they left the palace and went to the arch of faithful lovers, and on reaching the place where entrance was forbidden, Agrajes reached the marble and dismounting from his horse and commending himself to God, he said,

"Love, if I have been loyal to you, remember me."

And he passed the enclosure and when he came under the arch, the image that was on top emitted a melody so sweet that Agrajes and all those who heard it felt great delight. And he reached the palace where the images of Apolidon and of Grimanesa were, which seemed to them all quite alive; and he looked at the marble and saw there two names inscribed and also his own. And the first that he saw stated:

"Madavil, son of the Duke of Burgundy, finished this adventure."

And the other stated:

"This is the name of Don Bruneo of Bonamar, son of Valladas, the Marquis of Troque."

His own read:

"This is Agrajes, son of Languines, King of Scotland."

And this Madavil loved Guinda the Fleming, a lady of Flanders. And it had not been more than a week since Don Bruneo had finished that adventure; and the one whom he loved was Melicia, daughter of King Perion of Gaul and sister of Amadis.

When Agrajes entered under the arch of the loyal lovers as you hear, Amadis said to his brothers:

"Will you try this adventure?"

"No," said they, "for we are not so subject to this passion of love as to deserve to complete it."

"Since there are two of you," said Amadis, "keep each other company; and if I can, I shall go with my cousin Agrajes."

Then he gave his horse and his arms to his squire Gandalin and went forward as quickly as he could without any fear, as one who felt he had been true to his lady not only in deed but also in thought. And as he went under the arch, the image began to make a melody much more outstanding in sweetness than it had made for the others, and through the mouth of the trumpet it cast very beautiful flowers that gave off a fine perfume and fell in thick clusters to the ground, so that never was the like of it done for any knight who entered there. And he went on to where the images of Apolidon and Grimanesa were located, and stood looking at them very fondly, for they seemed to him very beautiful and as fresh as if they were alive. And Agrajes, who knew something of his love affair, came to him from where he was walking through the garden looking at the strange things there were in it, and embracing him, said:

"Sir cousin, it is not right that from now on we conceal our love affairs from each other."

But Amadis did not answer him; and he having taken him by the hand, they kept on looking at that place, which was very pleasant and delightful to behold. Don Galaor and Florestan, who were waiting for them outside, on seeing that they were tarrying, decided to go see the forbidden chamber, and they asked Ysanjo, the governor, to show it to them. He told them he would be very pleased to do so, and taking them with him, went with them and showed them the chamber from the outside and the columns that you have already heard about. And Don Florestan said:

"Sir brother, what do you wish to do?"

"Nothing," said he, "for I have never had the desire to go against enchanted things."

"Then rest," said Don Florestan, "for I wish to see what I can do."

Then commending himself to God, and putting his shield in front of him and with his sword in his hand, he went forward; and entering the defended area, he felt himself struck from all

sides with lances and swords such mighty and frequent blows that it seemed to him that no man could stand it; but he, since he was strong and valiant of heart, did not cease to go ahead, striking with his sword to right and left; and it seemed to him from the way his hand felt that he was striking armed men and that his sword was not cutting. Thus he passed the column of copper and reached the column of marble, and there he fell and could not go any farther, so deprived of all his strength that he had no more feeling than if he were dead; and then he was thrown out of the place, as had been done to the others. Don Galaor, who saw him thus, was quite worried about him, and said:

“Even though my desire for this proving was very different, I shall not fail to take my share of the danger.” And ordering the squire and the dwarf not to leave and to throw cold water on his face, he took his arms, and commending himself to God, went toward the door of the chamber. And they attacked him immediately from all sides with very hard and mighty blows, and with great effort he arrived at the column of marble and embraced it and stopped for a bit. But when he took a step forward, he was so beset with blows that not being able to stand it, he fell to the ground just like Florestan, so befuddled that he didn’t know whether he was dead or alive; and then he was thrown out just as the others had been. Amadis and Agrajes, who had gone a long distance in the garden, returned to the images and saw Amadis’s name engraved there on the striped marble stone, and it read:

“This is Amadis of Gaul, the faithful man in love, son of King Perion of Gaul.”

And while they were reading the inscription with great pleasure, Ardian, the dwarf, arrived at the enclosure shouting:

“Sir Amadis, help; for your brothers are dead!”

And when he heard this, he came out of there quickly and Agrajes behind him, and asking the dwarf what it was he said, he replied:

“Sir, your brothers were testing themselves in the chamber and did not finish and have remained as though dead.”

Then they mounted their horses and went where the brothers were, and they found them as battered as you have heard,

although now semiconscious. Agrajes, as he was of great courage, got off his horse quickly, and as fast as he could run went with his sword in hand to the chamber, striking right and left; but his strength was not enough to withstand the blows given and he fell between the column of copper and the one of marble, and was carried out paralyzed like the others. Amadis began to curse their having come there and said to Don Galaor, who was now almost completely conscious:

“Brother, I cannot excuse my body from being placed in the same danger as yours.”

Galaor sought to stop him; but he quickly took up his arms and went forward, asking God to help him; and when he arrived at the prohibited place, he stopped a moment and said:

“Oh, my Lady Oriana, from you come to me all my strength and ardor; remember me, lady, at this time when your delightful remembrance of me is essential.”

And then he went ahead and felt himself attacked severely on all sides, and he reached the column of marble. And when he was passing it, it seemed to him that everyone in the world was there to attack him, and he heard a great outcry of voices as if the world were crashing, and the voices were saying:

“If you turn back this knight, there is no one now in the world who can enter here.”

But he, despite his anxiety, did not cease to go ahead, falling at times on his hands and at others to his knees, and the sword with which he had given many blows he had lost from his hand and it was hanging by a strap in such wise that he could not seize it again. Thus he reached the door of the chamber and saw a hand that took him by his own hand and led him inside, and he heard a voice which said:

“Welcome to the knight who, surpassing in excellence the one who made this enchantment and in his own time had no peer, will be lord here.”

That hand seemed to him large and hard, like that of an old man, and on the arm was a sleeve of blue samite; and as they went inside the chamber, the hand, which he saw no more, released its hold on him and he remained refreshed and again in possession of all his strength. And taking off the shield from his

neck and the helmet from his head, he put his sword in its scabbard and thanked his lady Oriana for that honor which he had won because of her.

At this time, all those of the castle, who had heard the voices granting him dominion and saw him inside, began to say in loud voices:

“Sir, we have accomplished, praise be to God, what we had so greatly desired.”

The brothers, who were more completely conscious and saw how Amadis had completed what they had failed in, were joyful because of the great love they had for him, and just as they were, they ordered themselves brought to the chamber, and the governor with all his men came up to Amadis and in acknowledgment of him as their lord they kissed his hands. When they saw the priceless objects of art and needle work that there were inside the chamber they were astounded at the sight; but this was nothing compared to the private room contrived there, in which Apolidan and his mistress dwelt; and this was so formed that not only would no one be able to succeed in reproducing it, but would not even be able to understand how it could be constructed; and it was contrived in such wise that being inside, they could see clearly what was being done outside, and those outside would in no wise see anything within. There they all were for quite a bit with great pleasure: the knights because in their family they had such a knight who surpassed in excellence all those in the world at present and for a hundred years past; those of the island for having gained a lord with whom they hoped to be fortunate and to rule from there many other lands. Ysanjo, the governor, said to Amadis:

“Sir, it will be well for you to eat and rest, and tomorrow all the nobles of the land will be here and will pay homage to you, receiving you as their lord.”

Whereupon they left, and entering a great palace, they ate what was prepared, and rested that day, then the following one most of those of the island came there and gathered together for great games and festivities. Being his vassals, they took Amadis for their lord with those safeguards that in that time and land were customary.

Just as the story has related, the Firm Island was won by Amadis at the end of a hundred years after that handsome Apolidon left it with those enchantments, which were true testimony that in all that intervening time never did a knight reach port there who surpassed his excellence. Then whether from this he attained such glory and fame, let those judge who have attempted great exploits with arms, both conquerors and conquered, the first experiencing what this knight Amadis was enabled to feel, and the others, hopeful of a victory, but when it was converted into defeat, weeping for their misfortune. Then, from these two extremes, which shall we deem the better? Surely, I say, that the first, according to human weakness, which has no measure, can attract great sins with its pride, and the second, great despair. Who will set himself up to choose which of the two is better? That reasoning capacity to judge given by the true Lord to mankind over all other living things, for He knows the prosperous and the adverse are not lasting; by His ruling and strengthening hearts to subdue both, these hearts would probably be able to attain the happy medium. Then will Amadis of Gaul take this method in what fickle Fortune now prepares for him, showing the narcotic henbane and the other poisons that are concealed in the midst of such joys as these and of this high estate? I think not; rather, since without stint favorable things up to now have happened to him, without any pause or any struggle with Fortune; so without comparison his heart and discretion will be conquered and subdued by her, he not being favored or aided by his stout armor, the delightful memory of his lady or the great bravery of his heart; but by the great compassion of that Lord who in order to help sinners and the afflicted came into the world, as now what is sad and afterwards what is happy will be told to you.

As has already been told previously in the first part of this great story, Oriana being, because of the words that she heard from the dwarf about the pieces of the sword, dominated by anger and fury and moved to such great agitation that neither Mabilia nor the maiden of Denmark obtained good results from the honest advice that was given by them, it now will be told what she did about this from that day on, always permitting her

passion to grow, with her usual inclination, which was to be in the company of those ladies, transformed, and withdrawing with much aloofness, most of the time she remained alone, thinking how she would be able in vengeance for her fury, to give the penalty that he deserved to that one who had caused it. And she decided that, since his presence was withdrawn, in his absence all of her feeling should be manifested in writing. And finding herself alone in her room, taking ink and parchment from her coffer, she wrote a letter that read thus:

THE LETTER WHICH LADY ORIANA SENT TO HER LOVER AMADIS

My rabid complaint accompanied by abundant reason, causes my weak hand to declare what my sad heart cannot conceal from you, false and unfaithful knight Amadis of Gaul, since already the infidelity and scant steadfastness are known that to me, the most unhappy and unfortunate woman in the world, you have shown in discarding your love for me who above everything loved you, by bestowing it on one whose discretion, in view of her age, does not suffice for love or understanding. And since my subjugated heart cannot take any other vengeance, I wish to withdraw from you all the excessive and ill-placed love that I had for you. For it would be a great mistake for me to love one who has ceased to love me, whereas I had ceased to esteem everything else on account of loving and esteeming him. Oh, how badly did I use and subjugate my heart, since in payment for my sighs and passions I have been deceived and cast aside! And since this deceit is now manifest, do not appear before me nor at any place where I may be, for be assured that the very burning love I had for you is deservedly transformed into a very rabid and cruel hate; and with your broken faith and learned deceits, go and deceive another wretched woman like me, for thus I was vanquished by your deceitful words, for which no solemn promise nor excuse will be accepted; rather, without seeing you I shall accept, lamenting with tears, my disastrous ill fortune and with those tears accept putting an end to my life and terminating my sad plaint.

The letter having been finished, she closed it with Amadis's very well-known seal, and put into the outside inscription: "I am the maiden wounded by the tip of the sword through the heart, and you are the one who wounded me."

And speaking secretly with a page named Durin, brother of the maiden of Denmark, she ordered him not to rest until he arrived at the kingdom of Sobradisa, where he would find Amadis, and to give him that letter, to watch his face while he was reading it, and to attend him that day, not taking any reply, even though he might wish to give one to him.

CHAPTER XLV

HOW DURIN LEFT WITH ORIANA'S LETTER FOR AMADIS, AND HOW AMADIS, HAVING SEEN THE LETTER, ABANDONED ALL THAT HE HAD UNDERTAKEN AND IN DESPAIR WENT SECRETLY TO A FOREST.

Then Durin, carrying out Oriana's order, left at once on a very swift palfrey so that at the end of ten days he arrived in Sobradisa, where the beautiful queen Briolanja was. When he arrived in her presence, she seemed to him the most beautiful woman, next to Oriana, that he had seen; and having learned from her that two days before he arrived Amadis and his brothers and his cousin Agrajes had left there, he, following their trail, journeyed so fast that he reached the Firm Island at the time that Amadis was entering the arch of the loyal lovers. And he saw that the image had done for Amadis more than it had done for the others; and although when Amadis came out from there because of the news he was given about his brothers, and Durin saw him with Gandalin, he did not give him the letter, nor afterwards, until he entered the forbidden chamber and was received by all those of the island as lord; and this was on the advice of Gandalin, who knowing the letter to be from Oriana, feared what might come in it, whether happy or sad, and that before his master received that sovereignty, some other emotional crisis or non-lucid interval might overtake him; for he was very certain that he would leave not only that but also the world, were it his, in order to comply at once with whatever she might order him to do. But after things were quieted down, Amadis ordered Durin called in order to ask him for news of the court of King Lisuarte. And he having come by Amadis's orders, and the latter strolling with him through a

very delightful garden, and having withdrawn somewhat from his brothers and all the others who were there, he asked Durin if he came from the court of King Lisuarte and to tell him the news that he had learned there. Durin answered and said:

“Sir, I left the court as it was when you left it; but I come to you with a message from my Lady Oriana, and you will see the cause of my coming by reading this letter.”

Amadis took the letter, and although his heart felt great joy at the moment, considering that Durin knew nothing of his secret, he concealed it as much as he was able; because his sadness could not restrain him — for once he had read the strong and fearful words that came in it, his strength and judgment were not enough — from plainly showing that he had arrived at cruel death, with so many tears, with so many sighs that his heart seemed to be broken to bits, he remaining so faint and swooning as if his soul had already left his flesh. Durin, who was completely without any suspicion of this, when he saw him weeping very bitterly cursed himself and his luck, and even death, because it had not come to him before he arrived there.

Amadis, not being able to stand, sat down there on the grass and took the letter that had fallen from his hands and when he saw the inscription which said, “I am the maiden wounded by the tip of the sword through the heart, and you are the one who wounded me,” his grief was so excessive that for a time he was in a faint, so that Durin was quite frightened and wanted to call his brothers; but as he perceived the secrecy required in such a situation, he was afraid that it would greatly anger Amadis. But the latter, having now revived, said very sadly:

“Lord God! Why have you been pleased to kill me undeservedly?” And afterwards he said: “Ah, Fidelity, what a poor reward you give to one who has never failed you! You have caused my lady to fail me, knowing that I would endure death a thousand times over, rather than disregard her commands!” And again taking the letter, he said: “You are the cause of my grievous end; and so that it may come upon me more quickly, you will go with me.”

And he put it in his bosom and said to Durin:

"Were you ordered to tell me anything else?"

"No," said he.

"Then you will bear my message," said Amadis.

"No, sir," said he, "for I was forbidden to bring any."

"And what about Mabilia or your sister? Didn't they tell you anything to say to me?"

"They did not know," said Durin, "of my coming, for my lady ordered me to conceal it from them."

"Alas, Holy Mary, save me!" said Amadis, "now I see that my misfortune is without remedy."

Then he went to a stream that came out of a fountain and bathed his face and eyes, and told Durin to call Gandalin and that they should come alone. This he did; and when they came to him, they found him motionless as though dead, and thus he remained meditating for a long while; and when he emerged from his meditation, he told them to call Ysanjo, the governor. And when he came, he said to him:

"I desire that as a loyal knight, you promise me that until tomorrow after my brothers have heard mass, you will not tell anything of what you now see."

He so promised; and another such guarantee Amadis took from those two squires; then he commanded Ysanjo to have the gate of the castle kept secretly open and that Gandalin bring out his horse and arms without anyone's knowing it.

They went to carry out his orders, and he remained thinking about a dream that he had dreamed the night before: that he seemed to find himself on top of a hillock covered with trees, on a horse and armed, and around him many people who were evincing great joy, and that there arrived among them a man who said to him:

"Sir, eat of this that I carry in this case!" And he made him eat of it, and he seemed to taste the bitterest thing that ever could be found. And feeling thereat very faint and disconsolate, he loosed the rein of his horse and it went wherever it wished; and it seemed that the people who before were happy, became so sad that it pained him; but the horse carried him far away from them and brought him under some trees from where he saw

a place formed of rocks surrounded by water. And leaving the horse and the arms, he went to this place as though thereby he was hoping for repose; and an old man dressed in monastic garb came to him and took him by the hand. Drawing him close and showing pity, he said to him a few words in a language that he did not understand, and with this he awoke.

And it seemed to him that no matter how groundless he had previously considered it, he now found it to be true. And when he thought about this for a while, taking Durin with him, speaking with him while hiding his face from his brothers and from the other people in order that they might not perceive his emotion, he went to the gate of the castle, where he found the sons of Ysanjo, who had the gate open, and Ysanjo, who was outside. And Amadis said to him:

“Go with me and let your sons remain and have them say nothing of this.”

Then they both went to the hermitage that was located at the foot of the cliff, and Gandalin and Durin were already accompanying them there.

Amadis was sighing and groaning with such anguish and grief that those who saw him were thereby moved to sorrow. And calling for his arms, he armed himself and asked Ysanjo of what saint that church was; he told him that it was of the Virgin Mary, and that there many times miracles were performed; he entered and kneeling on the floor, he said weeping:

“Holy Virgin Mary, consoler and helper of the afflicted, to you, Lady, I commend myself that you may intercede for me with your glorious Son that he may have pity on me; and if it is your wish not to help my body, have mercy on this soul of mine in this my last hour; for I hope only for death!”

And then he called Ysanjo and said to him:

“I want you as a loyal knight to promise me to do what here I shall tell you.”

And turning to Gandalin, he took him in his arms weeping bitterly, and thus he held him a while without being able to speak, and he said to him:

“My good friend Gandalin: You and I were as one and nourished from the same milk, and all our lives we have always

been together, and I have never been in any anxiety or danger which you did not share, and your father pulled me out of the sea when I was such a tiny thing as to have been born that same night, and your parents brought me up as a good father and mother would rear a much beloved son, and you, my loyal friend, have thought only to serve me, and as I was expecting that God would give me some fief whereby I might satisfy somewhat your merit, this great misfortune has come to me, which I consider more cruel than death itself; whence it is necessary that we part, and I have nothing to leave to you except only this island, and I command Ysanjo and all the others, by the homage they have done me that as soon as they learn of my death, they take you for their lord. And although this seigniorie be yours, I command that your father and mother enjoy it during their lifetime, and that afterward it remain freely yours. This in return for all the rearing they gave me, for my fortune has not permitted me to come in time to give them the satisfaction that they deserve and that I have desired."

Then he told Ysanjo that from the rents or income of the island that he had in his keeping, to take enough to establish a monastery in honor of the Virgin Mary in that hermitage, in which thirty friars could live well and to give them an income to sustain them.

Gandalin said to him:

"Sir, you have never had a worry in which I was separated from you, nor shall I be now for anything, and if you die I don't wish to live, for after your death may God never give me a fief or a seigniorie, and this one which you would give to me, give to one of your brothers, for I shall not take it, nor do I need it."

"Be silent, for heaven's sake!" said Amadis, "Don't speak such madness or cause me worry, for you have never done so, and carry out my wishes, for my brothers are so fortunate and of such great prowess at arms that they will be well able to win great lands and seigniories for themselves, and even some to give to others."

Then he said:

"Alas, Ysanjo, my good friend, I am very sorry not to be enabled at this time to honor you as you deserve; but I leave you among those who will fulfill for me my desire."

Ysanjo said weeping:

"Sir, I beg you to take me with you, and I shall undergo what you undergo, and this I ask in payment for this good will you have for me."

"My friend," said Amadis, "I hold the opinion that you would do so; but this sorrow of mine no one but God can help, and I desire of Him that He guide me with His compassion without my taking any other companion."

And he said to Gandalin:

"Friend, if you wish to be a knight, be so immediately with these arms of mine, for since you have taken such good care of them, they ought rightly to be yours, because they are of little use to me now; if it is not your wish to be knighted at once, let my brother Don Galaor make you a knight and have Ysanjo tell him so for me; and serve him and protect him instead of me, for you know that I love him always above all others of my lineage and for him I bear great sorrow in my heart, more than for all the others, and this is right because he is worth more and was always very humble to me; whereby he now doubles my sadness; and tell him that I commend to him Ardian, my dwarf, and that he take him with him and not abandon him, and tell the dwarf to live with him and serve him."

When they heard this from him, they grieved bitterly, without replying anything in order not to anger him. Amadis embraced them, saying:

"I commend you to God, for I never expect to see you again."

And forbidding them to follow him by any manner of means, he spurred his horse without remembering to take his helmet or shield or lance, and very quickly he plunged into the deep forest, without destination except where the horse wanted to take him. And so he journeyed until after midnight without being aware of anything, until the horse happened upon a little stream of water that flowed out of a spring, and with its thirst it went up the stream until it arrived at a place to drink from it. And the limbs

of the trees having brushed Amadis on the face, he recovered his senses and looked from one side to the other, but saw nothing but thick brush, and was quite pleased to think that he was very secluded and hidden. And while his horse drank, he dismounted, and tying it to a tree, he sat down on the green grass to grieve; but he had wept so much that his head was giddy and he fell asleep.

CHAPTER XLVI

HOW GANDALIN AND DURIN TRAILED AMADIS, BRINGING TO HIM THE ARMS THAT HE HAD LEFT BEHIND; AND HOW THEY FOUND HIM AND HOW HE FOUGHT WITH A KNIGHT AND OVERCAME HIM.

Gandalin, who had remained in the hermitage with the others as you have heard, when he saw Amadis leave thus, said while shedding many tears:

“I shall continue to follow him, although he has forbidden me to do so, and I shall bring him his arms.”

And Durin said to him:

“I wish to keep you company this night, and I should be quite pleased if we were to find him with a better resolution.”

And then mounting their horses, they bade farewell to Ysanjo and started out on the road that Amadis had taken; and Ysanjo went to the castle and threw himself down on his bed with very great sorrow. But Gandalin and Durin, who went into the forest, journeyed everywhere, and chance guided them near where Amadis was; his horse, which heard the other horses, neighed and then they knew he was there, and they went through the underbrush very quietly so that he would not hear them, for they did not dare appear before him. And when they were nearer, they got off their horses, and Gandalin went very cautiously and reached the fountain, and saw that Amadis was sleeping on the grass; and taking his horse, he returned with it to where Durin was; and taking off the bridles, they left the horses to graze and to nibble the green boughs; and they remained quiet. But it was not long before Amadis awoke, for with the great shock to his heart, his sleep was not restful; and he stood up and saw that the

moon was disappearing from view and that there still was a good share of the night remaining, and the woods being thick, he remained quiet; and sitting down again, he said:

“Alas, Fortune, you human thing devoid of a source! Why did you exalt me to such a great height among knights, and then bring me down from there with such ease? Now I see indeed that your mischief can do more harm in one hour than your favor can benefit in a thousand years, because if you gave me delights and pleasures in past times, now by cruelly robbing me of them, you have left me in what is much more bitter than death itself; and since, Fortune, you were pleased to do so, you ought to have balanced the one with the other, for if some pleasure and repose you have granted me in the past, you well know that it was mingled with great anguish and grief; therefore in this cruelty with which you now torment me, at least you might have retained some hope whereby this troubled life of mine could have taken refuge in some tiny nook. But you have made use of that function for which you were created, which is contrary to the thoughts of us mortal men, who considering certain and lasting those honors, splendid displays, and vainglories — all of them perishable — that come to us from you, take them to be enduring, not remembering that besides the torments that our bodies receive in maintaining them, our souls are finally placed in great danger and risk with respect to their salvation. But if, with that clear vision for comprehension that the Lord on high gave us when our own vision was obscured by our passions and affections, we should seek to look at your fickleness, we ought to consider adversity much better than prosperity, because since prosperity is in conformity with our qualities and appetites, we while embracing what ahead of us appears gratifying, finally fall irretrievably into the depths of bitterness. And the adverse being the opposite, not of reason but of desire, if we rejected what desire covets, we would be raised from the depths to the heights into eternal glory. But I, a sad unfortunate being, what shall I do? for neither my judgment nor my weak forces suffice to resist such a great temptation, for if everything in the world were mine and you had taken it away from me leaving only my lady’s love for me, this would have been enough to sustain me at a blissful

height; but lacking this, not being able to bear life without her, I say that your cruelty to me is unparalleled. I beg of you in payment for my having been such a loyal servant to you, that I not be tolerating death for every moment of the day: if it is granted you to take life by torments, then take my life from me, having pity for what you know that I suffer by living.”

And after he had said this, he became silent and was stupefied for a while from much weeping, for he was not conscious; and then he said:

“Oh, my Lady Oriana! you have brought me to death by the prohibition that you impose on me that I must not disregard your command; since by observing it I do not protect my life, I receive this death unjustly; whence I am greatly grieved, not for receiving it, since with my death your desire is satisfied, for as long as I live I would not be able to deny that for the least thing that pertained to your pleasure my life should be exchanged for death a thousand times over. And if this anger of yours had been aroused justifiably with my deserving it, I would suffer the penalty, and you, lady, would have peace of mind in having vented your anger justly, and this would make you live such a happy life that my soul, wherever it might go, would feel great peace because of your pleasure. But as I am without blame, it being known by you that the cruelty that is inflicted on me is more from passion than with reason, from now on, for the little time that I may endure in this life, and afterwards in the next one, I begin to lament and grieve over the affliction and great sorrow that will come to you because of me, and much more because there will be no remedy remaining for your sorrow once I have departed from this life.”

And moreover he said:

“Oh, King Perion of Gaul, my father and lord, what little reason have you, not knowing the cause of my death, to grieve about it! Rather, according to your great worth and that of your esteemed sons, you ought to take consolation that when obligated to imitate your lofty prowess, abhorred, despairing, as an unhappy knight who cannot resist the harsh blows of Fortune, I myself take death as consolation and remedy; but if you knew the reason for it, I am sure that you would not blame me; but may it please

God that you not know, since your grief cannot help mine; rather, since I would regret it, my grief would be very greatly increased."

Having said this, he was silent for a short while; but then with great weeping and loud groans, he said:

"Oh, good and loyal knight, my foster father Gandales! For you I bear deep sorrow, because my contrary fortune does not permit me to reward that very great beneficence that I received from you; for you, my good foster father, pulled me out of the sea, when I was such a tiny thing, just born that night. You gave me life and rearing as your own son; and if just as my first days were increased in your lifetime, my last days might come to an end with you, very gladly my soul would part from this world; and if it is not able to do so, I shall always be greatly desirous of your coming."

And likewise he spoke of his loyal friend Angriote of Estravaus and of King Arban of North Wales, and of Guilan the Pensive and other great friends of his, and finally he said:

"Oh, Mabilia, my lady cousin, and you, good maid of Denmark! where did your help and aid tarry so long that you have left me thus to be killed? Certainly, my good friends, I would not have delayed in aiding you, if you had had need of my help. Now I see very well since you have forsaken me, that everybody is against me and all are involved in bringing about my death."

And he became silent, for he said no more; and Gandalin and Durin, who were listening, manifested great grief, but they did not dare appear before him.

Then at this juncture, there passed along a road that was near them, a knight who was singing, and when he came near where Amadis was, he began to say:

"Love, oh Love, I must thank you very much for the good that comes to me from you and for the great height to which you have elevated me over all other knights, leading me always from good to better, for you made me love the very beautiful Queen Sardamira, believing I had wonderfully won her heart with the honor that I shall carry from this land; and now, in order to render me much more fortunate, you cause me to love the daughter of the best king in the world, and this is that

beautiful Oriana, who has no equal anywhere. Love, this lady you have caused me to love and you give me strength to serve her."

And as soon as he had said this, he went under a large tree that was near the road, for there he intended to wait until morning; but it turned out otherwise for him, for Gandalin said to Durin:

"Stay here, and I intend to go and see what Amadis will want to do."

And going to where he was, he found him already up and going about looking for his horse, which he had not found, and as he saw Gandalin:

"What man are you, who goes there? please tell me."

"Sir," said he, "I am Gandalin, for I wish to bring you your horse."

He said to him:

"Who told you to come to me after my prohibition? Know you that you have caused me great sorrow; and here give me, give me my horse and go on your way; don't tarry here longer; if you do tarry, you will force me to kill you and myself."

"Sir," said Gandalin, "By Heaven, stop this and tell me if you heard the nonsense that a knight said who is over yonder?"

And he told him this in order to arouse his fury so that it would cause him to forget the other thing. Amadis said:

"Indeed I heard what he said, and for this reason I want my horse on which to go away from here, for I have tarried too long."

"What?" said Gandalin, "Aren't you going to do any more against the knight?"

"And what must I do?" said Amadis.

"Fight with him," said Gandalin, "and make him acknowledge his folly."

And Amadis said to him:

"How foolish you are in what you say! Don't you know that I have neither brains, nor heart, nor spirit, that all is lost when I lost the favor of my lady, for from her and not from me came everything. And so she has taken it away, and you know that I am worth no more for fighting than a dead knight, for in all of

Great Britain there is not so unfortunate, nor so weak a knight as not to kill me easily, if he were to fight with me, for I shall tell you that I am the most defeated and desperate of all those in the world."

Gandalin said:

"Sir, I am very sorry that at such a time your courage and great excellence should fail you, and, by Heaven! speak softly, for there is Durin, who heard the lamenting you did and all that the knight said."

"What?" said Amadis, "Durin is here?"

"Yes," said he, "for we both came together, and I think he comes to see what you are doing, in order to find out what to tell the person who sent him here."

Amadis said to him:

"I am sorry about what you have said to me."

But knowing that Durin was there, his courage and spirit grew, and he said:

"Now give me my horse and guide me to the knight."

Gandalin brought him the horse and the arms, and he mounted and took up his arms; and Gandalin went to point out the knight, and it was not long before they saw him under a tree, and he was holding the horse by the reins, and Amadis approached him and said:

"Knight, you who are resting must needs rise that we may see whether you know how to maintain the love within you which you praise so highly."

The knight got up and said:

"Who are you who ask me such a thing? Now you will see how I defend love if you dare to fight with me, for I shall put fear into you and all those who are forsaken by love."

"Now we shall see," said Amadis, "for I am one of those forsaken by love, and I alone am the one who had ever put trust in it, because with all the great services I did for it, it gave me a poor reward, which I did not deserve. To you, knight in love, I shall say more: never did I find in it so much truth that I did not find seven times more falsehoods. Now come and defend its rights, and let us see whether it won more in you than it lost in me."

And when he said this, he became enraged as one whom his lady had abandoned against all reason. The knight mounted and took up his arms, and said:

"You, knight, despairing of love and scornful of all good, about which you ought ont to speak; for if love abandoned you, it had good reason for it, for such as you were not for accompanying or serving it, and it, seeing that you were unworthy, separated you from itself; and now go away at once, and don't stay here any longer, for by merely looking at you I become very angry; and whatever arms I might use on you, I would therefore despise."

And he sought to leave. And Amadis said to him:

"Knight, either you want to defend love only with words, or you go out of cowardice."

"And what, O knight!" said he, "I was leaving you, because of not esteeming you, and you think that it was through fear; you are insistently asking for injury to yourself; now protect yourself if you can."

Then they raced their horses at each other at full speed as hard as they could, striking each other with their lances on their shields so that they pierced them and the lances were arrested by their coats of mail, which were very strong. But the knight who was in love fell to the ground without any delay, and on falling, held the reins in his hand and mounted at once on his horse like one who was valiant and agile. And Amadis said:

"If you don't defend love any better with the sword than with the lance, the good reward it has given you is ill used."

The knight did not answer, but grasped his sword very angrily and went for him. And Amadis, who already had his sword in hand, moved against him and they both struck each other; and the knight hit him on the boss of his shield, so that the blow was at a slant and he thrust a palm's length of the sword through it, and when he tried to withdraw it, he could not do so; and Amadis grasped his sword, and raising himself in his stirrups, gave him such a mighty blow on top of his helmet that it cut all that it reached and some of the coif of mail; and he cut his head down to the skull, and the sword went down and hit the neck of the horse and cut half of it; thus both went down and the horse

died at once, and the knight was so dazed as to be insensible. Amadis, who saw him remain quiet, waited a moment to see if he recovered his senses, for he thought he was dead; and when he saw him somewhat recovered, he said to him:

“Knight, may whatever love gained in you and you with it be yours and its, for I intend to leave.”

And leaving him, he called Gandalin and saw Durin who was with him and had witnessed all that had occurred, and he said to him:

“Friend Durin, in me, abandonment has no equal, nor is my sorrow and loneliness bearable, and I must die; and may it please God that it be quickly. And death would be now a relief to me, since I am tormented by this very keen and cruel anguish. Now go you in good fortune and give my sincere greetings to Mabilia, my good cousin and to the good maiden of Denmark, your sister, and tell them to grieve for me, for I am going to die on account of the greatest injustice that ever in the world a knight died for; and tell them of the great sorrow I carry in my heart for them, who loved me so much and did so much for me, without receiving from me any reward.”

He said this weeping very bitterly. And Durin was standing in front of him weeping so that he could not reply. Amadis embraced him and commended him to God, and Durin kissed the skirt of his cuirass and bade him farewell. Then dawn broke, and Amadis said to Gandalin:

“If you wish to go with me, do not deter me in anything that I may do or say; otherwise, go away from here at once.”

He answered that he would obey, and giving him his arms, he told him to draw the sword out of the shield and give it to the knight and to follow behind him.

CHAPTER XLVII

WHICH RELATES WHO THE KNIGHT CONQUERED BY AMADIS WAS, AND THE THINGS THAT HAD HAPPENED TO HIM BEFORE HE WAS OVERCOME BY AMADIS.

That wounded knight of whom we already have told you, was named Patin, and he was a brother of Don Sidon, who at the time was emperor of Rome, and was the finest knight at arms in those parts, so that by all those of the empire he was greatly feared. And the emperor was very old and had no heir, so that everybody thought that this Patin would succeed him in ruling. He loved a queen of Sardinia named Sardamira, who was a very elegant and beautiful maiden, who, because she was a niece of the empress had been reared in her house, and served her so well that she was constrained to promise her that if she were to marry, it would be with Patin rather than with anyone else. Patin, hearing this, taking greater pride in himself than he had by nature, which was no little, said to her:

“My dear, I have heard that King Lisuarte has a daughter; throughout the world she is lauded for her great beauty, and I wish to go to his court and I shall say that she is not as beautiful as you are and that I shall fight the two best knights who would say the contrary, for they tell me there are some there very highly esteemed at arms; and if I do not overcome them in one day, I want that king to order my head cut off.”

“That you shall not do,” said the queen, “for if that maiden is very beautiful, it does not take away from me the part that God gave me, if any, and in something else more reasonable and less prideful you can show your excellence; for this quest on

which you set forth, besides not being proper for a man of such eminence as you have, since it is unreasonable and presumptuous, you ought not to expect a happy conclusion."

"No matter what happens," said he, "this which I tell you I carry out in your service and for the great love that I have for you, as a token that just as you are the most beautiful woman in the world, you are loved by the finest knight that could be found in it."

And so he bade her farewell; and with his fine arms and ten squires he journeyed to Great Britain and immediately went to where he knew King Lisuarte was; who, as he saw him thus accompanied, thought he was probably a circumspect man and received him very kindly; and as soon as he was disarmed, all gazed at him with admiration as he was large of body and they considered that by rights he really must be very valiant. The king asked him who he was. He told him:

"King, I shall tell you my name, for I do not come to your court to conceal my identity, but to make myself known to you. Know you that I am Patin, brother of the Emperor of Rome; and as soon as I see the queen and her daughter Oriana, you will know the cause of my coming."

When the king heard he was a man of such high estate, he embraced him and said:

"Good friend, we are quite pleased with your arrival, and you shall see the queen and her daughter, and all the other ladies of my court, whenever you please."

Then he seated him with himself at table, where they dined in a way appropriate to the table of such a great man. Patin gazed about, and as he saw so many knights he marvelled to see them, and considered less than nothing the court of the emperor his brother, and every other court that he had seen. Don Grumedan took him to his lodging by order of the king and paid him high honor.

Next day, after having heard mass, the king took Patin and Don Grumedan with him and went to see the queen, who had already found out who he was from the king. He having been received by her, she had him sit down before her and next to her daughter, who was much diminished in the beauty that she

was accustomed to have, because of her anger that you have already heard about. When Patin saw her, he was thunderstruck and said to himself that all those who praised her spoke not half the truth about how beautiful she was; so that his heart was changed with respect to what he came for, and with all its force was set on having her. And he thought that since he was of such high rank and so excellent as a person and heir to the empire, if he were to ask for her in marriage, she would not be denied him; and taking the king and queen aside he said to them:

“I have come to your court to marry your daughter, and this is on account of your excellence and her beauty, for if I had desired other ladies I would find some of such great rank in accordance with what I am and what I expect to have.”

The king said:

“We thank you very much for what you have said, but the queen and I have promised our daughter not to marry her against her will, and we shall have to speak with her before answering you.”

The king said this in order that Patin not be rendered antagonistic to him, but he did not have it in his heart to give her to him or to any other who would take her out of that land where he would be lord. Patin was very happy with this reply and waited there five days expecting to succeed in getting what he so much desired, but neither the king nor the queen, considering it a wild idea, said anything to their daughter. But Patin asked the king one day how the matter of his marriage was progressing. He said to him:

“I am doing as much as I can, but it is necessary that you speak with my daughter and ask her to carry out my command.”

Patin went to Oriana and said to her:

“Lady Oriana, I wish to ask something that would be much to your honor and advantage.”

“What thing is it?” said she.

“That you carry out a command of your father,” said he.

She, who did not know why he said it to her, replied:

“That I shall gladly do, for I am certain that I shall gain these two things that you mention, honor and advantage.”

Patin was very happy at such a reply, for he indeed thought that he had already won her, and he said:

"I wish to go through this land seeking adventures, and before long you will hear things said of me such as more rightly will cause you to agree to what I desire."

And so he said to the king that he wanted to leave at once in order to see the wonders of that land of his. The king said to him:

"That is up to you; but if you believe me, you would forego it; for you will find great adventures and dangers, and very strong, robust knights trained at arms."

"I am greatly pleased with all that," said he, "for if they are strong and bold, they will not find me weak or languid, a fact which my deeds will confirm to you."

And having taken leave of him, he went on his way very happy with Oriana's reply; and therefore he was going along singing, as you have already heard, when his contrary fortune guided him to that place where Amadis was mourning. This is the reason why this knight came from a land so distant.

So now, returning to the subject matter, after Durin left Amadis, it being already bright daylight, he passed by where Patin remained wounded, and the latter had taken from his head what was left of his helmet and his face and neck were covered with blood; and when he saw Durin, he said to him:

"Good youth, tell me, as you hope that God may make you a good man, whether you know of some place near here where one could have this wound cared for."

"Yes, I do," said he, "but in those who are there sadness is so excessive that they will not pay heed to anything else."

"Why is that?" said the knight.

"On account of a knight," said Durin, "who, having won that seigniory and seen Apolidon's and his mistress's images and secret things, which no one until now has been able to see, has now departed from there with such great sorrow that nothing short of his death is expected."

"It appears to me," said the knight, "that you are talking about the Firm Island."

"That is true," said Durin.

"What!" said the knight. "Does it already have a lord? By Heaven I am sorry, for I was going there to test myself and win the seigniory."

Durin smiled and said:

"Certainly, knight, if you do not bring some of your prowess concealed, as regards what you have shown here, you would have little advantage, and rather I believe that it would be to your dishonor."

The knight stood up then as well as he could and tried to grasp the reins of Durin's horse; but Durin drew back from him, and as he could not seize them, he said:

"Youth, tell me who was the knight who won the Firm Island?"

"Tell me first who you are," said Durin.

"You shall not wait long for that," said he. "Know you that I am Patin, brother of the emperor of Rome."

"Thank God!" said Durin, "you are of higher lineage than of excellence at arms or in restraint; now know you that the knight you ask about is the one who departed from you, and from what you saw of him you will be able to believe that he deserved to be worthy of what he won."

And leaving him, he went on his way and took the direct road to London very eager to tell Oriana all that had happened to Amadis.

CHAPTER XLVIII

HOW DON GALAOR, FLORESTAN, AND AGRAJES WENT IN SEARCH OF AMADIS, AND HOW AMADIS, HAVING ABANDONED HIS ARMS AND CHANGED HIS NAME, RETIRED TO A SOLITARY LIFE WITH A GOOD OLD MAN IN A HERMITAGE.

How Amadis departed in great sorrow from the Firm Island has already been told to you—for it was so secret that Don Galaor and Don Florestan, his brothers, and his cousin Agrajes were not aware of it—and how he took assurance from Ysanjo that the latter would not tell of his departure until the next day after mass. Ysanjo complied, for having heard mass, they asked for Amadis, and he told them,

“Arm yourselves and I shall tell you his message.”

And after they were armed, Ysanjo began to weep bitterly and said:

“Oh, sirs, what sorrow and what pain have come upon us in our lord’s remaining with us so short a time!”

Then he related how Amadis had left the castle, and the sorrow and grief that he had manifested, and all that he had ordered him to say, and what he told them to do with that land, and how he begged them not to come after him, for they could not in any way bring help to him or give him comfort, and that, in God’s name, they should not grieve on account of his death.

“Oh, Holy Mary, help us!” said they; “the finest knight in the world is going to die; it is necessary that, disregarding his order, we go look for him, and if with our lives we cannot give him comfort, it will be our deaths in company with his.”

Ysanjo told Don Galaor how he begged him to make Gandalin a knight, and to take with him Ardian, the dwarf. And Ysanjo told them this while weeping bitterly and they likewise; Galaor took in his arms the dwarf, who was loudly mourning and striking his head on a wall, and he said to him:

“Ardian, come with me as your lord commanded, for whatever becomes of me, it will become also of you.”

The dwarf said:

“Sir, I shall serve you, but not as my master until I have definite news of Amadis.”

Then they mounted their horses, and with Ysanjo pointing out to them the road that Amadis had taken, all three started out on it and journeyed all day without meeting anyone to interrogate. And they reached the place where Patin lay wounded and his horse dead and where his squires were, who had come and were going about cutting wood and branches on which to carry him, for he was very faint from the great amount of blood that he had lost and unable to say anything to them; and he made signs to them to leave him, and they asked the squires who had wounded that knight. They told him they knew only what he told them on their arrival: that he had jousting with a knight who was coming from the Firm Island and who easily had overthrown him at their first encounter, and immediately had remounted, and with a single blow of the sword had given him that wound and had killed his horse; and as soon as he left him, he had found out — he said — from a maiden that that knight was the one who won the lordship of the Firm Island. Don Galaor said to them:

“Good squires, did you see in which direction that knight went?”

“No,” said they; “but before we arrived there we saw a knight going through this forest armed on a big horse, weeping and cursing his luck; and a squire behind him who was carrying his arms; and his shield had a field of gold and two purple lions on it; and the squire likewise was going along weeping very bitterly.”

They said:

“That is he.”

Then they went in that direction at full speed; and on leaving that forest, they found a broad countryside in which there were many roads on which there were tracks leading in every direction, so that they were not able to find his; then they decided to separate and that in order to know what each one had sought out in that quest and the lands through which he had journeyed, they should come together on Saint John's Day at the court of King Lisuarte; and if until then their luck should be so adverse to them that they had found out nothing about him, that they would make another agreement there. And then they embraced each other weeping and parted, carrying very firm in their hearts the resolve to undergo all the hardships that might befall them on their quest, until they concluded it. But this was in vain; for although they journeyed through many lands, in which they experienced great adventures and many dangers at arms, as those who were of strong and brave hearts, and enduring great hardships, it was not their luck to find out any news of him. Their exploits will not be related here, because they failed in their quest; and the cause of it was that Amadis departed from where he left Patin wounded, journeyed through the forest, and on the way out of it found an open area in which there were many roads, and he turned aside from it so that from there they might not pick up his trail, and set out through a valley and over a mountain, and he was going along thinking so hard that the horse went wherever it chose; and at noon the horse reached some trees that were on the bank of a stream that came down from the mountain, and with the great heat and the toil of the night it stopped there. And Amadis emerged from his preoccupation and looked in all directions and saw no town, at which he was pleased; then he got down and drank some water; and Gandalin arrived, who was going behind him, and taking the horses and putting them out to graze on the grass, he returned to his master, and found him so faint that he seemed more dead than alive; but he dared not disturb him in his preoccupation and he threw himself in front of him; Amadis emerged from his reverie at about sunset, and getting up, kicked Gandalin and said:

“Are you sleeping, or what are you doing?”

"I am not sleeping," said he, "but I am thinking of two things that concern you, and if you want to hear me, I shall tell you of them; if not, I shall abstain from doing so."

Amadis said to him:

"Go saddle the horses, and I shall leave; for I shouldn't want those who might look for me to find me."

"Sir," said Gandalin, "you are in a remote place and your horse, according to his state of weariness and exhaustion, if you don't give him some rest, will not be able to carry you."

Amadis said, weeping:

"Do what you think best, for whether resting or traveling, I shall have no repose."

Gandalin took care of the horses, and returned to him and begged him to eat some meat pie that he brought, but he would not do so. And Gandalin said:

"Sir, do you want me to tell you the two things I was thinking about?"

"Tell what you wish," said he, "for no longer do I care what is said or done, nor would I want to live any longer in the world as soon as I have come to confession."

Gandalin said:

"Still, sir, I beg you to hear me."

Then he said:

"I have been thinking a great deal about this letter that Oriana sent you and about the words that the knight with whom you fought said; and as the constancy of many women is very slight, their desires changing from one man to another, it could be that Oriana has you deceived, and sought, before you found it out, to feign anger against you; and the other thing is that I consider her so good and so loyal that she would not be so moved unless something falsely had been told her about you that she probably considers true, feeling in her heart, which loves you so unswervingly, that you likewise ought to love her; and since you know that you have never deceived her, and if something was said to her, she will find out the truth, in which you will be without blame, whereby she will not only repent of what she has done, but with great humility will ask your pardon and you will return with her to those great delights that your heart

desires. Is it not better that while awaiting this remedy, you eat and take such comfort whereby you may sustain your life? For if you die with such little hope and courage, you lose her and you lose the honor of this world and even the other world that you may have provisionally”

“By Heaven, be silent!” said Amadis, “for such madness and falsehood you have spoken that everyone would be enraged with it; and you tell me in order to comfort me, what you do not believe can be; for Oriana, my lady, has never deceived in anything; and if I die it is right, not that I deserve it, but because thereby I carry out her desire and command; and if I didn’t know that you have told me this in order to comfort me, I would cut off your head; and know you that you have made me very angry, and from now on don’t dare to say to me anything like that.”

And leaving him, he went for a walk along the riverbank below, thinking so hard that he had no awareness of himself. Gandalin slept as one who had gone two days and one night without sleeping; and Amadis on returning, now relieved of his anxiety, and seeing how he was sleeping so calmly, went and saddled his horse and hid Gandalin’s saddle and bridle among some thick underbrush so that he would not be able to follow him. And taking his arms, he plunged into the most heavily wooded part of the mountain with great anger toward Gandalin on account of what he had said to him.

Then he journeyed thus all night and the next day until vespers. Then he entered a broad fertile plain that was at the foot of a mountain, and on it there were two tall trees that overlooked a spring; and he went there to give water to his horse, for that whole day he had gone without finding water; and when he reached the spring he saw a man in holy orders, his head and beard white, and he was watering an ass, and was dressed in a very poor cassock of goat’s wool. Amadis greeted him and asked him if he was a priest. The good man told him that he had been one for a good forty years.

“Thank God!” said Amadis, “Now I beg you to rest here tonight for the love of God, and you must hear me in confession, for I have great need of it.”

"In God's name!" said the good man.

Amadis got off his horse and placed his arms on the ground, and unsaddled his horse and left it to crop the grass; and he disarmed himself and knelt before the good man, and began to kiss his feet. The good man took him by the hand, and raising him up, made him sit beside him and saw that he was the most handsome knight he had ever seen in his life; but he saw him pale and his face and chest bathed in tears that he was shedding, and he was sorry for him and said:

"Knight, it seems that you are very sad; and if it is because of some sin that you have committed, and these tears come to you from repentance for it, you were born into this world with good fortune, but if some temporal things cause your sadness, for according to your age and good looks, you rightly ought not to be very withdrawn from them, remember God and ask of Him mercy to bring you to His service."

And he raised his hand and blessed him and said to him:

"Now tell all the sins that you remember."

Amadis did this, telling him all about himself, leaving out nothing. The good man said:

"According to your understanding and the very high lineage that you come from, you should not kill or ruin yourself for anything that may have happened to you, much less for actions relating to women, who easily are won and lost. And I advise you not to consider any such thing and give up any such folly which you may not be committing out of love for God who is not pleased with such things; and even for mundane reasons one should reject it, for one cannot and should not love someone who does not love him."

"Good sir," said Amadis, "I am wounded to such an extent that I cannot live much longer, and I beg of you, in the name of that powerful Lord whose faith you sustain, that you please take me with you for this short time that I may last, and I shall take counsel with you concerning my soul; since no longer do I need arms or horse, I shall leave them here and go with you on foot, doing that penance that you impose on me; and if you do not do this, you wrong God, for as a lost soul I shall go through this forest without finding anyone to help me."

The good man, who saw him so genteel and so sincere of heart to do good, said:

"Surely, sir, it does not befit such a knight as you are to give up thus, as if everyone had failed him, and much less because of a woman, for women's love is nothing more than what their eyes see and when they hear a few words spoken to them, and when that is over, they forget at once, especially in those false love affairs that are entered into contrary to the service of the most high God; for that same sin that engenders them, rendering them at the beginning sweet and delicious, makes them come out in reverse with such a cruel and bitter fruition as you now have. But as for you, who are so excellent and have land and control over many people and are the loyal advocate and guardian of all men and all women who receive injustice, and are such a maintainer of the right, it would be a great misfortune and great harm and loss to the world if you continued to forsake it. And I do not know who the woman is who has brought you to such a state, but it seems to me that if in one single woman there were all the goodness and beauty that there is in all the others, on account of her such a man as you ought not to be lost."

"Good sir," said Amadis, "I do not ask of you advice in this matter, for I do not need it, but I ask of you counsel for my soul and that you be pleased to take me with you; and if you do not do this, I have no other remedy but to die on this mountain."

And the good man began to weep with the great sorrow that he had, so that the tears were falling on his beard, which was long and white; and he said:

"My son, sir, I dwell in a place very forbidding and difficult to live in, which is a hermitage located a good seven leagues out to sea on a very high cliff, and this cliff is so narrow that no ship can reach it except in summer, and there I have dwelt for thirty years, and anyone who dwells there must leave worldly delights and pleasures; and my sustenance is from alms that those of the land give me."

"All of this," said Amadis, "is to my taste, and I should like to live thus with you during the short lifetime that remains to me, and I beg you, for the love of God, to grant it to me."

The good man agreed to it much against his will, and Amadis said to him:

“Now command me, father, what to do, for I shall be completely obedient to you.”

The good man blessed him and then said vespers, and bringing out a bag of bread and fish, told Amadis to eat, but he did not do so, although three days had already gone by during which he had not eaten; and the priest said:

“You will have to give obedience to me, and I order you to eat; if not, your soul would be in great danger if thus you should die.”

Then he ate, but very little, for he could not free himself from that great anguish in which he was; and when it was time to sleep, the good man threw himself down on his cloak, and at his feet Amadis, who, out of great sorrow, the greater part of the night did nothing but toss and turn and heave great sighs; and now tired and overcome by drowsiness, he fell asleep, and in that sleep he dreamed that he was locked in a dark room that had no view, and not finding any exit, his heart became disconsolate, and it seemed to him that his cousin Mabilia and the maiden of Denmark came to him, and in front of them was a ray of sunshine that took away the darkness and illuminated the chamber, and that they took him by the hands and said:

“Sir, come forth to this great palace”; and it seemed that there was great joy; and on coming forth, he saw his lady Oriana, encircled by a great flame of fire, and he himself was shouting, saying: “Holy Mary, help her!” And he passed through the midst of the fire, but felt nothing, and taking her in his arms, he put her in a garden, the greenest and most beautiful he had ever seen. And at his great shouts, the good man awoke and took him by the hand, asking him what was the matter with him. He said:

“Sir, I had just now while sleeping such great anxiety that I almost died.”

“So it seemed from your shouts,” said he, “but it is time for us to go.”

And then he mounted his donkey and started out on the road. Amadis was going with him on foot, but the good man by dint of great urging made him ride his horse, and so they went along

together as you hear, and Amadis asked him to grant him a favor in which he would not risk anything. He willingly agreed to it, and Amadis asked him as long as he dwelt with him not to tell anybody who he was or anything about his affairs, and not to call him by his name, but by any other he wished to give him, and as soon as he was dead to notify his brothers so that they might transport him to his own land.

"Your death and life are in God," said he, "and do not talk any more about it, for He will give you help, if you recognize Him and love and serve Him as you should; but tell me, what name would you like to have?"

"Whatever one you consider good," said he.

The good man kept gazing at him, noting how handsome and well proportioned he was and the great distress in which he was; and he said:

"I wish to give you a name that will be in conformity with your person and the anguish in which you are, for you are young and very handsome and your life is in great bitterness and in darkness: I want you to have the name Beltenebros."

Amadis was pleased with that name, and considered the good man understanding in having given it to him so rightly; and by this name he was called as long as he lived with him, and for a long time afterward he was no less praised under that name than under the name of Amadis, in accordance with the great feats that he performed, as will be told later.

Then talking about this and other things, they reached the sea, it being already nightfall, and they found there a boat in which the good man was to be transported to his hermitage. And Beltenebros gave his horse to the sailors, and they gave him an old cloak and a tabard of heavy brown wool; and they got in the boat and went toward the cliff, and Beltenebros asked the good man what his dwelling place was called and what his name was.

"The dwelling place," said he, "is called the Poor Cliff, because no one can dwell there except in extreme poverty, and my name is Andalod, and I was a well educated cleric, and I spent my youth in many vanities; but God, through his mercy, set me to thinking that those who are to serve Him have great

difficulties and obstacles in communicating with the people — for in accordance with our weakness, we are inclined to evil rather than to what is good — and therefore I decided to withdraw to this very solitary place, where thirty years have already passed during which I never had left it until now, when I came to the burial of a sister of mine.”

Beltenebros was very fond of the solitude and ruggedness of that place, and when he thought about dying there, he received some surcease. Thus they went sailing in their boat until they reached the Cliff. The hermit said:

“Go back.”

And the sailors returned to land with their boat; and Beltenebros, thinking about that austere and holy life of that good man, with many tears and groans, not from devotion but out of great despair, thought that along with the hermit, he would endure everything while he lived, which to his way of thinking would not be long.

Thus, just as you hear, Amadis, under the name of Beltenebros, was secluded on that Poor Cliff which was located seven leagues out to sea, forsaking the world, honor, those arms with which he had attained such lofty heights, wasting away his days in tears and endless grief, having no memory of that valiant Galpano, that strong King Abies of Ireland and the arrogant Dardan; nor of that famous Apolidon either, whom in his own time, or for a hundred years afterwards, no knight had ever surpassed in excellence — all save Apolidon being persons who by his own strong arm were overcome and killed, along with many others of whom the story has told you. Then if he were asked the cause of such deterioration, what would he reply? Only that it was the anger and fury of a weak woman, invoking the example of that strong Hercules, that brave Samson, that learned Virgil, not forgetting among them King Solomon, all of whom by this same passion were tormented and subjugated, and many others whom he could mention. With this would her guilt be pardoned? Certainly not; because the mistakes of others are to be remembered, not to be imitated but in order to flee from them and use them as admonishments; then was it right to have pity for a knight so vanquished, so subdued, for such a trivial cause, in order to take him from

there with victories double those of the past? I would say no, unless the things done by him at his own great peril redounded so greatly to the advantage of those who, after God, had no other help but his. So that, having greater pity for these than for that one who having conquered everyone, could not conquer or subdue himself, we shall relate in what form when most without hope, when he had already reached death's door, the Lord of the world miraculously protected him.

But because thus it maintains the sequence of our story, first we must tell you something of what happened in the meantime. Gandalin, who had remained sleeping on the mountain, when Amadis, his lord, left him, on awakening after a long interval and looking all around, saw only his horse; and quickly he arose and began to shout, weeping, and searching through the thick underbrush; but when he did not find Amadis or his horse, immediately he was certain that he had left him, and he went back to mount and go after him, but he did not find his saddle or bridle. Then he began to curse himself and his luck and the day he was born; and while going back and forth, he found them thrust into a very dense thicket. And saddling his horse, he mounted it, and journeyed for five days, lodging in the wilderness and in towns while asking about his lord; but all was wasted effort. And after six days, Fortune guided him to the spring where Amadis had left his arms, and he found beside them a tent set up and two maidens in it; and Gandalin dismounted and asked them if they had seen a knight who was bearing a shield with a device of gold with two lions in red on it. They told him:

"We have not seen such a knight, but we found this shield and all the very good knightly equipment beside this spring, without anyone's guarding it."

When he heard this, he said, tearing his hair:

"Oh, Holy Mary! save me! My lord, the best knight in the world, is dead or lost."

And he began to grieve so deeply that he moved the damsels to great compassion, and he began to say:

"My lord, how poorly have I protected you, for by all those in the world I ought rightly to be hated, and the world ought not to keep me in it, since I failed you at such a time! You, my

lord, were the one who protected everybody, and now you are abandoned by all, for now the world and those who are in it fail you; and I, a wretch more unfortunate than all those ever born, by reason of a lessening of vigilance, forsook you at the time of your sad death."

And he fell face downward on the ground as though dead. The maidens shouted, saying:

"Holy Mary! this squire is dead!"

And they went to him to resuscitate him, but they could not, for many times he was at death's door; but they stayed with him so long, throwing water on his face, that they brought him back to consciousness, and they said to him:

"Good squire, do not despair about what you do not know for certain, for you do no good for your lord, and it is more important for you to search until you find out whether he is dead or alive, for good men with great sorrows must exert themselves and not despairingly let themselves die."

Gandalin was encouraged by those words of the maidens and decided to look for him everywhere until death should overtake him in his search; and he said to the maidens:

"Ladies, where did you see the arms?"

"We shall gladly tell you that," said they; "Know you that we were going in company with Don Guilan the Pensive, who had released us, and more than twenty other maidens and knights, from the prison of Gandinos the Good-for-nothing; for Guilan did so well at arms that overcoming all the customs of Gandinos's castle and finally him himself, he took us all out of prison, and made him swear never more to maintain those customs. And the knights and maidens went where they pleased, and we came with Guilan to this region which we had left, and it has been a good four days since we arrived at this fountain; and when Guilan saw the shield about which you are asking, he was greatly distressed; and dismounting from his horse, he said that it was not fitting that the shield of the finest knight in the world remain thus, and he lifted it from the ground with heartfelt tears and put it on that branch of that tree and told us to guard it while he went to look for the one whose shield it was; and we had these tents set up, and Don Guilan traveled for three days through

all this region and did not find anything, and last night very late he arrived here, and in the morning he gave the equipment to the squires and he girded on the sword and took the shield and said:

“By heaven, oh shield, this is a bad exchange, to leave your lord and go with me!”

“And he said he was going to the court of King Lisuarte to give those arms to Queen Brisena, so that she might order them conserved; and we are going there, and so will all those who were imprisoned, to beg as a favor of the queen that she reward Don Guilan for what he did for us; and the knights, the same of the king.”

“Then God be with you,” said Gandalin, “For I, taking your counsel and advice, am going to look for that most wretched and unfortunate man ever born, in whom is my life and death.”

CHAPTER XLIX

HOW DURIN, ORIANA'S PAGE, RETURNED TO HIS MISTRESS WITH THE REPLY TO THE MESSAGE THAT HE HAD BROUGHT FOR AMADIS, AND CONCERNING THE WEeping SHE DID WHEN SHE HAD THE NEWS.

After Durin left Amadis in the forest where Patin remained wounded, as we have related, he started out on the road to London, where King Lisuarte was, and he hurried his pace in order to acquaint Oriana with that unfortunate news about Amadis, so that, if it were possible, he might help somewhat in the matter in which her letter had done so much harm. And he covered so much distance that in ten days he reached London; and dismounting at his lodging, he went to the palace of the queen. And when Oriana saw him, her heart was so startled that she was not able to calm it; and at once she went to her chamber and lay down on her bed and gave orders to the maid of Denmark to call Durin, the latter's brother, and to be careful that no one see her. The maiden called him and went out to where Mabilia was; Oriana said to him:

"Friend, now tell me where you went and where you found Amadis, and what he did when you gave him my letter, and if you saw Queen Briolanja; tell me everything, and let nothing be omitted."

"Lady," said Durin, "I shall tell you everything, although there is much to relate, for I have seen many marvellous and strange things. And I tell you that I arrived at Sobradisa and saw Briolanja, who is so beautiful and so elegant and with such grace that, excepting you, I believe that in the whole world there is not such a beautiful woman as she. And there I found news of

Amadis and his brothers, who had departed, and by following their trail I ascertained that they turned aside from their route and went with a maiden to the Firm Island to test themselves in the strange adventures that are there. And when I reached there, Amadis was entering beneath the arch of loyal lovers where no one can enter if he has deceived the woman whom first he began to love."

"How," said Oriana, "did he dare to try such an adventure knowing that he could not complete it?"

"It did not seem to me," said Durin, "that it occurred in that way; rather, he completed it with greater fidelity than any other one who had been there, because for him were made at his reception the signals that up until then had never been made."

When she heard this, in her heart she felt great joy in finding out that what was considered sound and so certain was so contrary to her opinion. And likewise he told her how Don Galaor and Florestan and Agrajes, on essaying the adventure of the guarded room were not able to finish it and remained as stunned as if they were dead; and how afterwards Amadis had tried it and completed it, winning the sovereignty of that island, which was the most beautiful in the world and the strongest; and how they had all entered the chamber, which was the rarest and finest that could be found. This having been heard by Oriana, she said:

"Be silent for a bit."

And raising her hands to heaven, she began to beseech God that He through His pity might contrive how she could quickly be in that chamber with that one who through his great excellence had won it. Then she said:

"Now tell me: what did Amadis do when you gave him my letter?"

Tears came to the eyes of Durin, and he said to her:

"Lady, I would advise you not to seek to find out about it, because you have committed the greatest cruelty and act of devilry that any maiden in the world has ever done."

"Alas! Holy Mary! help me!" said Oriana. "What are you saying to me?"

"I tell you," said Durin, "that in rage you have slain, with the greatest possible injustice, the best and most faithful knight

that ever woman had or will have as long as the world endures. Cursed be the hour in which such a thing was imagined, and cursed be death for not having killed me beforehand so that I might never have gone with such a message; for if I had known what I was carrying, I would have gone and lost myself out in the world rather than appear before him! For you in sending it and I in carrying it have been the cause of his death.”

Then he told her what Amadis did and said when he gave him the letter, and how he came away from the Firm Island and what he said in the hermitage, and how there he departed alone from them and plunged into a mountain area and how following him against his prohibition, he and Gandalin found him beside the fountain, not daring to appear before him; and the sorrowful tears he shed there, and how Patin passed by there singing and the words that he spoke, and the fight he had with Amadis; and afterwards the latter left him, telling Gandalin not to prevent his death; otherwise, he should not go with him, so that not a thing remained that he did not tell her just as it had happened and as he had seen it.

When Oriana heard this the rage in her heart was shattered and she was overcome by pity to a greater degree than she had been by anger and fury, that great mastery that truth has over falsehood causing it. So that in her thought her guilt together with the blame for which the one who was without any was suffering, had such force that they left her almost dead without any feeling, without being able to say a single word.

Durin, when he saw her thus, had pity on her, but he saw clearly that she was getting what she deserved; and he went to Mabilia and to the maid of Denmark and said to them:

“Help Oriana, because she really needs help, for it seems to me that if she erred, she admits her share of the wrong.”

And he went to his lodging, and they went to Oriana; and on seeing her so insensible, they closed the door of the room, and by throwing water on her face, brought her back to consciousness. And when she spoke, she said:

“Alas, wretched, hapless woman that I am, for I have killed the thing I loved most in the world! Alas, my lord, I have killed you very wrongfully, and rightly shall I die for you, although your

death will be poorly avenged by mine; for you, my lord, being loyal, will not be satisfied that the disloyal and unfortunate woman should die."

She said this with as much pain and anguish as if her heart were breaking to pieces; but those servants and friends of hers, on sending for Durin and learning all that had happened, wholeheartedly helped with that medicine that both Oriana and Amadis needed for their relief; for after having given her much consolation, they had her write a letter with very humble words and very insistent entreaties — as later will be told with more detail — for Amadis to leave everything and come to her, that she was waiting for him in her castle of Miraflores where amends would be made for her great error. She entrusted the letter to the maid of Denmark, who with much pleasure would undertake every task that might come to her in order to give aid to the two persons she loved most. In order that without any suspicion of anything she might be able better to make that journey, Durin having said that Amadis in his sorrow had made much mention of his foster father, Don Gandales, they, believing that he would be there, rather than elsewhere, decided that the maiden should carry gifts to the queen of Scotland and tell her news of Mabilia, her daughter, and bring to Mabilia news from the queen. Oriana spoke with the queen, her mother, informing her that that maiden was being sent with that message; she considered it good and likewise sent gifts by her.

This having been agreed upon, she taking with her Durin, her brother, and a nephew of Gandales, Enil by name, who had come there recently to look for his lord, and traveling until they arrived at a port called Vegil, which is in Great Britain, they boarded a ship for Scotland, and after seven days of navigation, it arrived in Scotland at a town called Poligez. From there the maid of Denmark went directly to the castle of Gandales, and found that he was out hunting with his squires, and he was sent for and came to her and they greeted each other. And Don Gandales saw by her speech that she was a foreigner and asked her where she was from, and she told him:

"I am a messenger of some maidens who love you very much, who sent me with gifts to the queen of Scotland."

"Good maiden," said he, "tell me, if you please, who are they?"

"Oriana, the daughter of King Lisuarte, and Mabilia, whom you know."

"Lady," said he, "be you very welcome, and let us go to my house, and you shall rest, and from there I shall take you to the queen."

She agreed, and they went together; and speaking of this and that, Gandales asked her about Amadis, his foster son, for she was very sad on observing that he was not there; and in order not to make him worry, she did not tell him that he was lost, but that after he left the court to avenge Briolanja, he had not returned to it.

"Rather, they thought there when I left, that he had come to this land with Agrajes, his cousin, to see you who brought him up and the queen, his aunt; I was bringing him letters from Queen Brisena and from other friends of his, with which he would be pleased."

She said this because if he were hiding, on learning what she said, he would consider it good to see her and talk with her; but Gandales did not know anything about him. There the maiden rested for two days, and she was highly honored and served by all, including the wife of Gandales, who was a very noble lady; and then she went to where the queen was and gave her the letters and the gifts that were sent her.

CHAPTER L

HOW GUILAN THE PENSIVE TOOK THE SHIELD AND THE ARMS OF AMADIS, WHICH HE FOUND AT THE FOUNTAIN OF THE GRASSY PLAIN WITHOUT ANY GUARD, AND BROUGHT THEM TO THE COURT OF KING LISUARTE.

After Don Guilan the Pensive left the fountain where he found the arms of Amadis, as has been told you, he traveled seven days over the road to the court of King Lisuarte, and always wore the shield of Amadis slung from his neck; he never took it off except in two places where he was forced to fight, when he gave it to his squires and took his own. And one was when he met two knights, nephews of Arcalaus, and they recognized the shield and sought to take it away from him, saying they would take it to their uncle or the head of the one who was bearing it; but Don Guilan, on learning that they were of the lineage of such an evil man, said:

“Now I think less of you.”

And then they attacked each other fiercely, for the two knights were young and sturdy; but Don Guilan, although he was older, was more valiant and skilled in arms; and although the battle lasted for quite a while, at the end he killed one of them, and the other fled to the mountain, and Don Guilan remained wounded, but not seriously; and he went on his way as before. And that night he lodged in the house of a knight whom he knew, and who did him great honor, and in the morning he gave him a lance, for his own was broken in the previous joust that he had had, and he went his way until he reached a river called Guinnon; and the water was high and there was a bridge of wood across it, wide enough for two knights to pass each other.

And at the end of it he saw a knight standing, who wanted to cross the bridge, and he had a green shield with a white band on it, and he recognized that he was Ladasin, his cousin; and on the other side was a knight who was defending the passage and was yelling:

“Knight, don’t come on the bridge unless you want to joust.”

“On account of your joust,” said Ladasin, “I shall not fail to cross.”

Then, grasping his shield, he started across the bridge. And the other knight, who was guarding the bridge was on a big bay horse, and on his neck he had a white shield and a brown lion on it, and the helmet likewise, and the knight was large of body and was well mounted. And when he saw Ladasin on the bridge, he let himself go at him at full gallop and they both jousted at the entrance to the bridge, and it so happened that Ladasin and his horse fell from the bridge into the water, and he grasped some willow branches that he saw, and with great effort came out on the bank, for he had fallen from high up, handicapped by the weight of his armor; and he who overthrew him, retraced his footsteps along the bridge and placed himself where he was before. And Don Guilan reached his cousin and he and his squires pulled him from the water and took off his shield and helmet and said to him:

“Certainly, cousin, you would soon have been dead if your great courage had not prevented it by your taking hold of these branches; and all knights ought to fear jousts on bridges, because those who guard them already have their horses trained, and win honor more through them than by their own valor; and as for myself, I would gladly rather go now by a roundabout way; but since it has happened to you thus, it is proper that I avenge you if I can.”

And meanwhile Ladasin’s horse crossed over to the other side, and the knight gave orders to his men to take it, and they put it in a tower, which was in the middle of the river, and was a beautiful fortress, and [from the other side] it was reached by a stone bridge.

Don Guilan took off Amadis’s shield and gave it to his squires, and took his own and his lance and went to the bridge; but the

other knight, who was guarding it, came at once toward him and they ran at each other at the full speed of their horses; and the encounter was with such force that the knight was thrown from his saddle and fell in the river, and Guilan fell on the bridge, and almost would have fallen in the water if he had not held on to the bridge timbers, and the knight who fell in the water seized Guilan's horse, which he found beside him, and pulled it out, and the squires of Guilan took the other man's horse, and Guilan looked and saw that the knight was at the foot of the bridge, holding his horse by the reins while shaking off the water; and he said:

"Order my horse given to me and we shall go."

"What!" said the knight. "Do you expect to leave here with so much?"

"With so much," said Guilan; "for already by crossing we have done what we should."

"That cannot be," said he; "for since we both fell, the battle is not concluded until we come to the swords."

"What!" said Don Guilan. "By force you want me to fight you; isn't the trouble that you have caused sufficient? For bridges are open for all to pass over them."

"I don't care anything about that," said he, "for it still is necessary that you feel how my sword cuts, either by force or willingly."

Then he jumped on his horse without setting a foot in the stirrup, so agile that it was a wonderful thing to see him, and he straightened his helmet very quickly and went to place himself on the road along which Guilan was to pass, and he said to him:

"Sir knight, tell me before we fight, whether you are a native of the land of King Lisuarte or of his household."

"Why do you ask?" said Guilan.

"Now would to God I had King Lisuarte as I have you," said the knight, "for I swear by my head that he never more would reign!"

Don Guilan was very angry about this, and said:

"Certainly, if my lord, King Lisuarte, were here as I am, he would quickly chastise this madness of yours. As for myself, I tell you that I am his subject and a dweller in his court, and from

what you have said, I am desirous of fighting with you, as before I was not; and if I can, I shall bring it to pass that that king of whom you speak not receive offense or disservice from you."

The knight laughed as if in scorn and said:

"I promise you that before noon you will be put in such straits that having been rendered quite ridiculous, you will carry out my orders; and I want you to know who I am and what gifts you will give him on my behalf."

Don Guilan, who with great fury wanted to attack him, restrained himself in order to find out who he was.

"Now," said he, "know you that I have the name Gandalod, and I am son of Barsinan, lord of Sansuenia, the one whom King Lisuarte killed in London, and the presents that you will carry to him are the heads of four knights of his house that I have imprisoned there in my tower — and one of them is Giontes, his nephew — and your right hand cut off and suspended from your neck."

Don Guilan put his hand on his sword and said:

"There is enough in you to be threatening, if I were frightened by threats."

And he went for him, and the other likewise, and they attacked each other with great fury, beginning the fight so fiercely and with such cruelty that it was a wonder to see them; for they struck each other from all sides with such hard and cruel blows, without taking any rest for themselves, that Ladasin and the squires who were watching were frightened and thought that, even though Guilan were victor, neither one of them would be able to survive to escape death. But what helped them was that as both were quite well skilled in arms, they protected themselves very well from the blows and their flesh did not suffer; and when they were continuing thus, thinking only of killing each other, they heard a horn blowing on top of the tower, at which Gandalod was surprised, and he strove hard to finish the fight in order to find out what it could be; and coming to grips with Don Guilan, he threw his arms around him and they seized each other so violently, that pulled from their saddles they fell from their horses to the ground and were grappling a while, tossing around on the field. But each one grasped his sword firmly in his hand

and Don Guilan got loose from Gandalod, rose up first, and gave him two blows; but the other having risen, they began a much stronger and more dangerous battle than before, because, being on foot, they moved closer to each other more easily than on horseback, and they strove mightily to have done; Don Guilan thought that the horn sounded in order to help Gandalod, and Gandalod believed some treachery was afoot in the fortress; so each one without rest or relief tested all his strength against the other; but after they were on foot, Don Guilan began to improve a great deal, at which Ladasin was greatly pleased, as were his squires who were watching him, because Gandalod was no longer able to protect himself well with what he had left of his shield, nor to endure a sword blow that could injure, so tired was he. And Don Guilan, who saw him thus, kept on waiting and gave him when uncovered a blow on the arm which cut it off along with his hand so that he fell to the ground and with him his sword. And Gandalod uttered a great shout and tried to flee to the tower, but Guilan overtook him and jerked his helmet so hard that he pulled it off his head and brought him down at his feet, and he put his sword to his face, saying:

“It is necessary that you go to King Lisuarte with those presents that you indicated to me; but they will be in another manner than what you had thought, and if you don’t do this, your head will be separated from your body.”

“I will do so,” said Gandalod, “for I would rather await the mercy of the king than die now on such an occasion.”

Then he took from him a pledge, and he went to the tower, where he heard a great disturbance, and he mounted his horse and Ladasin with him, and they found that the imprisoned men had set themselves free, and having come out of the dungeon, they had armed themselves in the tower with weapons they found there, and they had sounded the horn; and with one of them remaining, the others had come down and killed as many as they could reach. Then Don Guilan and Ladasin having arrived, they saw their companions on top of the gate and a knight with seven churls who were fleeing from the tower and taking refuge in a forest; and those above told them to kill them, especially the knight. They went at once and in a short while they killed four,

and three escaped from them; but the knight was seized and brought to his companions. Don Guilan addressed them and said:

"Sirs, I cannot stop here, for I am going to the queen, but let my cousin Ladasin stay with you and take these knights to King Lisuarte, to do with them whatever he considers right; see to it that this fortress remains under my command."

"We shall do so," they said.

Then Don Guilan took off his shield, which was not worth much according to the way it was hacked in many places; and weeping he took that of Amadis.

Those knights who recognized the shield and saw him weeping, were astounded, and asked why he was bearing it; he told them of the way that he found it at the Fountain of the Grassy Plain with all the other arms, and how he had searched for Amadis through that whole region and had never been able to learn any news of him; they were much grieved, believing that some great misfortune had happened to him.

With this, he parted from them, and without any hindrance occurring, he arrived where the king was, who already had found out how Amadis had completed all the adventures of the Firm Island and had won the sovereignty of it, and how he had left secretly in great sorrow, but no one knew the cause of it, except those men and women identified to you. When Don Guilan arrived, everyone came to see Amadis's shield and to find out something about him, and the king said:

"By heaven, Don Guilan, tell me what you know about Amadis."

"Sire," said he, "I know nothing, for I heard nothing concerning him; but what happened to me with the shield I shall tell you in the presence of the queen, if it so pleases you."

Then the king took him with him, and on reaching the queen, Don Guilan knelt before her and said weeping:

"Madam, I found at a fountain called the Fountain of the Grassy Plain all of Amadis's arms, at which place this shield of his was abandoned, whereat I was greatly distressed; and putting it in a tree, leaving to guard it some maidens whom I was bringing in my company, I went through all that region looking for

Amadis, and it was not my luck to find him, nor any news of him. And knowing the valor of that knight and that his wish was to put it at your service until death, I decided that since I could not bring him, his arms should give you testimony of how obligated I was to you and to him. Let orders be given to put them in a place where all may see them, so that some who come from many regions to this court of yours, may be able to learn something about their owner, and that those arms may be reminders to those who want to be excellent knights, to emulate that great fame that their master won so supremely with them in his time among so many knights."

"I am very sorry," said the queen, "for the loss of such a man, which will cause such bereavement in the world, and you, Don Guilan, I thank very much for what you have done, and thus I shall thank all those who bear arms, if they try to find that one by whom the order of chivalry and matrons and maidens were so esteemed and protected."

The king and all those of the court were very sorrowful about this news, believing that Amadis had died; but especially so was Oriana, who not being able to remain there with her mother, sought refuge in her chamber; where with many tears, she cursed her luck for having been the cause of such misfortune, from which she expected nothing but death. But all the consoling by Mabilia and the expectation of the coming of her maid, who might bring her good news, gave her some consolation; and at the end of five days there arrived there at the court the knights and the maidens whom Don Guilan had taken out of the prison, and who came to the king and the queen to ask them as a favor to thank him for what he had done for them; and there came the maidens who told of the mourning that they saw Gandalin exhibit, not that they knew his name, but saying that he was a squire who was asking for the owner of the shield and of the arms.

Then there arrived there the knights who were bringing Gandalod as a prisoner, and they told the king about the battle that Don Guilan had with him and for what reason, and all the words that passed between them, and how he held them prisoners and in what manner they were set free. The king said:

"In this place I killed your father for the great treason that he committed against me, and here you shall die, for what you wanted to commit against me."

Then he gave orders to have Gandalod and the knight mentioned above as seeking to flee, both flung down from a tower at the foot of which Barsinan, their father, had been burned, as the first part of our story relates.

CHAPTER LI

WHICH TELLS HOW, WHILE BELTENEBROS WAS ON THE POOR CLIFF, A SHIP ARRIVED THERE IN WHICH CORISANDA WAS COMING IN SEARCH OF HER LOVER, FLORESTAN, AND OF THE THINGS THAT HAPPENED; AND WHAT SHE RECOUNTED AT THE COURT OF KING LISUARTE.

Beltenebros being on the Poor Cliff, as we have already told you, one day the hermit had him sit down beside him on a stone bench that was at the door of the hermitage, and said:

“Son, I beg you to tell me what it is that made you shout so in your dreams when we were at the Fountain of the Grassy Plain.”

“That I shall tell you, good sir, gladly, and I beseech you in heaven’s name to tell me what you make of it, whether it be to my pleasure or my sorrow.”

Then he told him the dream as you have already heard, but not to the extent of telling him the names of the maidens. The good man who heard it, remained for a while in thought and then turned to him laughing and said genially:

“Beltenebros, good son, you have made me very happy and you have given me great pleasure with this which you tell me; and likewise may you be, for you very rightly should be. And I want you to know how I understand it; know you that the dark room in which you saw yourself and which you were not able to leave, signifies this anxiety in which you now are, and all the maidens who were opening the door are some of your friends who are talking about your concerns with the woman whom you love most; and they will take action in such wise as to remove you from here and from this distress in which you now are.

And the ray of the sun that was passing in front of them is a message that they will send you of joyous news with which you will go from here; and the fire in which you saw your ladylove is a sign of the pangs of love which she will be suffering on account of you, just as you are for her, and from that fire, which signifies love, you will extricate her, for she will be freed from her pangs when she sees you; and the beautiful garden into which you carry her, signifies the great pleasure she will have at the sight of you. I well know that, in view of my clerical garb, I should not speak of such matters, but I think that it is a greater service to God to tell you the truth, with which you may be consoled than to remain silent and let your life be in a deadly despair."

Beltenebros knelt before him and kissed his hands, thanking God that in his very great distress and sorrow He had given him a person who knew how to counsel him thus, and he prayed to Him with tears that out of His pity He make the words of that holy man, his humble servant, come true. Then he asked him to tell him what the dream meant that he had dreamed the night before Durin gave him the letter, when he was on the Firm Island. The good man said:

"That clearly shows you that you have already passed through all that: I tell you that that high knoll covered with trees on which you saw yourself, and the many people making merry who were around you, represent that Firm Island which you at that time won, whereby you gave great joy to all the dwellers on the island. And the man who came to you the container of bitter electuary is your ladylove's messenger who gave you the letter, for you know better than anyone, since you tasted it, the great bitterness of her words; and the sadness in which you saw the people who had been joyful, is that of those same people of the Island, who because of you are in great sorrow and loneliness; and the clothing that you stripped from yourself represents the arms that you left; and that rocky place where you hid yourself in the water, stands for this Cliff on which you are; and the man in holy orders who was talking to you in a language you did not understand is I, who spoke to you the holy words of God, which previously you did not know or think about."

"Certainly," said Beltenebros, "you are telling me the absolute truth about this dream, for everything happened to me thus, from which I take great hope for the future."

But it was not so certain nor so great as to free him from that anguish in which the despair that he had concerning his lady had placed him, and he very frequently looked landward, remembering the pleasures and great honors that he had there, and on seeing everything reversed with such cruelty, many times he reached such straits that if it had not been for the counsel of that good man his life would have been in great danger — that good man, who in order to withdraw him somewhat from his very great misgivings and his grief, frequently in the company of two youths, his nephews, whom he had with him, had him go fishing with a rod in a small river that was near there, where they caught plenty of fish.

Just as you hear, Beltenebros was doing his penance with much grief and great misgivings, which he had continually, believing that if God through His pity did not help him with the favor of his lady, he would have death nearer than life, and most nights he spent the whole night under some trees with heavy foliage, which were there in an orchard near the hermitage, in order to grieve and weep without the hermit's or the youths' being aware of it. And recalling the loyalty he always had maintained to his lady Oriana and the great deeds he had performed to serve her, and her having given him such a bad reward, without cause or his having deserved it, he composed this song out of the great rage he had, as follows:

Since victory is denied me
Where rightly it was owed to me,
There where glory dies
It is glory for life to die.

And with this death of mine
Will die all my hurts
My hope, my striving,
Love and its deceits.
But there will remain in my memory
A lament never lost,

For in order to kill my glory
My glory and life have been slain.

After he had composed this song that you hear, it happened that being one night under those trees, as was his wont, grieving deeply, weeping very bitterly, much of the night having now passed, he heard some instruments very sweetly playing near there, so that he had a great desire to listen, and he wondered about it, for he really thought that in that place there was no other company than the hermit and himself and the youths. And getting up, he went stealthily to find out who it was; and he saw two maidens beside the fountain who had the instruments in their hands and he heard them play and sing very delightfully; and after an interval during which he listened, he said to them:

“Good maidens, God be with you, for with your very sweet playing you have caused me to miss matins.”

And they wondered what man it could be, and they said:

“Friend, be kind enough to tell us what place this is to which we have come, and what man you are who speaks to us.”

“Madam,” said he, “this place is called Hermitage Cliff on account of a hermit and a hermitage that are here, and I am a very poor man who dwells and lives with him, doing great and very harsh penance for my great misfortune and sins.”

Then they said:

“Friend, could we have here some house in which a very sick lady might lodge whom we bring here in order for her to rest two or three days? She is of high rank and moreover rich, and is much abused by love.”

When Beltenebros heard this, he said:

“There is a small house here in which I dwell, and if the hermit gives it to you, in order to please you I will sleep outdoors, as many nights I happen to do.”

The maidens thanked him very much for what he had said, and considered it a great favor. At this juncture, dawn was already breaking, and Beltenebros saw under some trees on a beautiful and very luxurious bed, the matron about whom they had told him, and four armed knights on the beach, who were guarding her and sleeping, and five men lying near them, who did not

have any arms; and he saw a ship in the sea, equipped with everything it required, and it was moored to an anchor, and the lady seemed quite young and very beautiful, so that he enjoyed looking at her; then he went to the hermit, who was dressing to say mass, and said to him:

“Father, we have strangers; it will be well for you to wait for them and delay the mass.”

“I shall do so,” said the good man.

Then they both went out of the hermitage and Beltenebros showed him the ship, and they saw that the knights and the other men were bringing the sick lady up to where they were, and her maidens with her, and they asked the hermit whether there might be some house there where they might put her; he said:

“There are two houses over there, in one of them I dwell, and no woman will ever enter it with my consent; in the other dwells this poor gentleman, who is here doing penance, and I would not take it away from him without his approval.”

Beltenebros said:

“Father, you may indeed give it to her, for I shall lodge under the trees, as I am accustomed to do many times.”

Whereupon they all went into the chapel to hear mass, with Beltenebros, who was looking at the maidens and the knights, and it reminded him of himself, his lady, and his past life, began to weep very loudly and kneeling before the altar, begged the Virgin Mary to help him in that great distress he was in. And the maidens and knights who saw him thus weeping such heartfelt tears, thought he was a man of good life and with respect to his youth and good looks were wondering why he would want to expend all that in such a place for any sin, however grave it might be, since the mercy of God reached everywhere if men are truly repentant. As soon as mass was said, they carried the matron to the chamber and placed her on a very fine bed they had prepared for her. And she wept and wrung her hands out of the great sorrow that was afflicting her.

Beltenebros, on seeing her thus, asked the maidens, who now were taking up their instruments to console her, what was the matter with her or why she was exhibiting such great anguish; they said to him:

"Friend, that lady is very rich and of high rank; and she is beautiful, although her malady now detracts from it; and her worry, although it would not be told to others, will be told you, for you will keep it secret. Know you that it concerns a very great love that torments her, and she goes to look for the one whom she loves at the court of King Lisuarte, and may God grant that she find him there, so that some of her suffering may be appeased."

When he heard mention of the court of King Lisuarte and that the lady was dying of love just as he was, the tears came to his eyes, and he said to them:

"I beg of you, ladies, to tell me the name of the one she loves."

"This knight," said they, "of whom we speak is not of this land, and is one of the finest knights in the world, excepting two only, who are highly esteemed."

"Now I beg of you," said he, "by the faith you owe to God, to tell me his name and the names of those two of whom you speak."

"We shall tell you on condition that you tell us whether you are a knight, for you appear so in all respects, and what your name is."

"I will do so," said he, "in order to find out what I am asking you."

"In the name of God! said they; "now know you that the knight whom the lady loves has the name Don Florestan, brother of the good knight Amadis of Gaul and of Don Galaor, and he is the son of King Perion of Gaul and of the Countess of Selandia."

"Thanks be to God! Now I know that you are telling me the truth about his affairs and his excellence, and I believe you will not praise him so highly that still more praise be not due."

"What!" said they, "do you know him?"

"I saw him not long ago," said he, "in Briolanja's house, and I saw the fight that Amadis and his cousin, Agrajes had with Abiseos and his sons, and I saw the outcome they achieved up to the time that Florestan arrived, and he seemed to me very

modest; and of his great prowess at arms I heard Don Galaor, his brother, speak frequently, for he had fought with him."

"Because of this battle of theirs," said the maidens, "Florestan left there, for in it they recognized each other as brothers."

"What!" said he, "is this the lady of the island where their battle took place?"

"She is," said they.

"I understand," said he, "that she has the name Corisanda."

"You speak the truth," said they.

"Now I do not have such grief over her misfortune," said he, "for I well know that he is so moderate and of such good will that he will always do what she commands."

"Well, tell us now," said the maidens, "who you are."

"Good ladies," he said, "I am a knight and I once had better fortune than now in the vain things of this world, and for this I am now paying; and my name is Beltenebros."

"Thank God!" said they, "now God be with you, and we shall go comfort our lady with these instruments."

And so they did; for entering where she was and having played and sung for a while, they told her all that they heard from Beltenebros about Don Florestan.

"Oh!" said she, "summon him to me right away, for he must be some excellent man, since he saw Don Florestan and knew him."

And one of the maidens brought him with her and the lady said to him:

"These maidens tell me you have seen Don Florestan and have affection for him; I beg of you, by the faith that you owe to God, to tell me what you know about him."

He told her all that he had said to the maidens and that he knew that he and his brothers and his cousin Agrajes had gone to Firm Island, and that afterwards he had seen him no more.

"Now tell me," said Corisanda, "if you please, if you have with him some kinship, for it seems to me you have affection for him."

"Lady," said he, "I am very fond of him for his valor and because his father made me a knight, for which I am much

indebted both to father and sons; and I am very sad on account of some reports that I heard about Amadis before coming here."

"And what is that?" said she.

"When I was coming to this place, I saw a maiden," said he, "in a forest beside the road that I was traveling, and she was singing a song very delightful to hear and I asked her who had composed it."

"A knight composed it," said she, "to whom may God give greater joy than he had at the time that he composed it, for according to its words, he had received great injury from love and he complains a great deal about love in the song." I dwelt with the maiden two days, until I learned it, and she told me that Amadis showed it to her weeping and evincing great grief."

"I earnestly beseech you," said the lady, "that you teach that song to my maidens in order that they may sing it and play it on their instruments."

"I am pleased," said he, "to do so out of regard for you and for the one whom you love most, although now it be not a time when I should be singing or doing anything that smacks of joy or pleasure."

Then he went with the maidens to the chapel and taught them the song, for he had a very marvelous voice and his great sadness rendered it sweeter and more harmonious. The maidens learned the song very well and sang it to their lady, who heard it with great pleasure.

So Corisanda was there four days, and on the fifth she bade farewell to the hermit and Beltenebros and she asked him whether he would be there a long time.

"Lady," said he, "until I die."

Then they entered their ship and continued their voyage to London, where King Lisuarte was, for there, rather than elsewhere, she hoped to learn news about Don Florestan. She was very well received by the king and the queen on their learning that she was a lady of high rank, and they had her dwell in their palace. The queen asked her the purpose of her coming, and said that she would be in favor of the king's helping her if she had come with any need.

"My lady," said Corisanda, "I consider that you do me a great favor, but my purpose is to look for Don Florestan, and because news comes to your court from everywhere, I should like to remain in it for some time until I find out something about him."

The queen said:

"Good friend, you can do that for as long as you please; but up to now, nothing is known about him except that he has gone in search of Amadis, his brother, who for some unknown reason has gone astray." And she told her how Don Guilan had brought his arms and that he could not find out anything about him.

Corisanda, having heard this, began to weep bitterly, saying:

"Oh, Lord God, what will become of my lover and lord, Don Florestan, who according to the way he loves that brother, if he does not find him, he also will be lost, and I shall never more see him!"

The queen comforted her and regretted the news she had given her. Oriana, who was beside her mother, on hearing the lady tell how she loved Don Florestan, brother of Amadis, became desirous of honoring her and keeping her company, and took her to her apartment, where she found out everything about her. Then, while she was speaking with her about many things, Corisanda told her and Mabilia how she had been on the Poor Cliff and had found a knight doing penance who had taught her maidens a song which Amadis had composed at a time when he was full of great sorrow, and that according to the words of the song, it certainly must have been he. Mabilia said to her:

"My good lady and friend, I beg you as a favor to have your maidens sing it, for I shall be very pleased to hear it, because that knight whose cousin I am, composed it."

"I will gladly do that," said she, "for my heart would feel no less joy in hearing it because of the great kinship he has with my lord Don Florestan."

Then the maidens came with their instruments and sang it very sweetly, so that it was great joy to hear insofar as the grace with which it was sung was concerned, but sad for those who listened to it. And Oriana reflected on those words and saw well, since she had wronged him, that Amadis rightly was complaining; and she was heartsick, so that not being able to

remain there any longer, she went to her chamber, ashamed of the many tears that came to her eyes. Mabilia said to Corisanda:

“Friend, you see that Oriana is ailing, and to please and honor you she remains here longer than she should. I intend to go help her, and I beg you to tell me what man that man on the Poor Cliff is, who taught your maidens the song, and whether he knows any news about Amadis.”

She told her how she had found him and all that he had said to her, and that she never had seen a suffering and weak man so handsome and so elegant in his poverty, and that she had never seen a man so young who was so learned. Mabilia at once thought that that man was Amadis, who in his great despair had established himself in such a confined and secluded place, fleeing from every place else in the world. And she went to Oriana, who was in her chamber, very pensive and weeping bitterly, and Mabilia entered laughing genially and said to her:

“Lady, on inquiring, one sometimes finds out more than one expects; know you that according to what I have found out from Corisanda, that suffering knight who is called Beltenebros and is on the Poor Cliff, by all odds must be Amadis, who has withdrawn there from everyone in the world and has sought to fulfill your command not to appear before you or anyone else. Therefore be happy and take comfort, for my heart tells me that it is he without any doubt.”

Oriana raised her hands and said:

“Oh, Lord of the world! May it please you that it be so; and you, my good friend, advise me what to do, for I am in such a state that I have neither judgment nor intelligence; and for Heaven’s sake have pity on me as a wretched, unhappy woman who through her madness and wild anger has lost all her possessions and pleasures.”

Mabilia was sorry for her, so that tears came to her eyes, and she turned her face away so that she would not see them, and said to her:

“Lady, my advice is that we await your maiden, and if she does not find him, you leave the task to me, for I shall devise a way to find out about him, because I am still sure that he is the one who calls himself Beltenebros.”

CHAPTER LII

HOW THE MAID OF DENMARK WENT IN SEARCH OF AMADIS, AND BY LUCKY CHANCE, AFTER MUCH EFFORT, LANDED ON THE POOR CLIFF, WHERE AMADIS, WHO WAS CALLED BELTENEBROS, WAS; AND HOW THEY CAME TO SEE LADY ORIANA.

The maid of Denmark was with the queen of Scotland for ten days, not so much for her pleasure as because she was quite seasick, and moreover because she had not found any news of Amadis in that land, to which she had come with high hopes of obtaining some, believing that the death of her lady would be entailed by the bad report that she carried. And bidding good-bye to the queen, bearing the gifts that she gave her for Queen Brisena, and Oriana, and Mabilia, her daughter, she returned to the sea in order to go back with that unfortunate, fruitless result of her mission, not knowing what more to do. But that Lord of the world, when it seems to people that they are without hope and help, wishing to show something of His power by giving everyone to understand that no one, however wise or prudent he be, can be helped without His aid, changed her voyage, to her great fear and tribulation and that of all those on the ship, giving them final outcome with that joy and good fortune that she was seeking. And the fact was that the sea becoming rough, an unparalleled storm befell them, so that proceeding without a rudder, without any course, the navigator's sense of direction having been completely lost, not having any confidence that they would live, finally one morning at daybreak, they arrived at the foot of the Poor Cliff, where Beltenebros was, which was immediately recognized by those of the ship, for some of them

knew that Andalod the holy hermit was there living in the hermitage above. This they had told the maid of Denmark, and she, as one who had escaped from such danger, being returned thus from death to life, gave orders that she be taken up to the Cliff, in order that while hearing mass from that good man, she might thank the Virgin Mary for that favor that her Glorious Son had rendered them.

At this time Beltenebros was at the fountain under the trees that you have already heard about, where he had lodged that night; and now his state of health was approaching so near the end that he was not expecting to live two weeks, and from his excessive weeping, together with his great weakness, his face was very gaunt and dark, much more so than if it had been disfigured by some great sickness; so that there was no person who could recognize him. And after he had looked a while at the ship and saw that the maiden and the two squires were ascending the Cliff, since his thought was only to seek death, everything with which up to then he had had much pleasure, which was to see strangers, both to make their acquaintance and to help them in their fortunes, those and all similar things were abhorred by him in his great despair; and leaving there he went to the hermitage and said to the hermit:

“It seems to me that people are leaving a ship and are coming to you.”

And he knelt before the altar, saying his prayer, praying God to have mercy on his soul, for which he would quickly be at the point of rendering Him an accounting. The hermit dressed to say mass, and the maiden with Durin and Enil came in through the door, and on saying their prayers, they at once took off the veil that she wore over her face.

Beltenebros having been there a while, got up and turned his face toward them, and looking at them recognized at once the maiden and Durin, and the shock was so great that not being able to stay on his feet, he fell to the ground as if he were dead. When the hermit saw this, he thought that he was already in the last stage of his life and said:

“Oh, almighty Lord! Why have you not been willing to have pity on this man who could have done so much in Your service?”

And tears in abundance fell on his white beard, and he said:

“Good maiden, have those men help me carry this one to his room, for I believe that this will be the last help that can be rendered him.”

Then Enil and Durin, with the hermit, carried him to the house where he lodged and placed him on a very poor bed, none of them recognizing him. Then the maiden heard mass and wishing to dine ashore, for she was quite seasick, by chance she asked the hermit who that man was who was afflicted with such great sickness. The good man said:

“He is a knight who is doing penance here.”

“He must be very guilty,” said she, “since he has sought to do it in such a forbidding place.”

“It is just as you say,” said he, “since he does it more because of the vain and perishable things of this world than in God’s service.”

“I wish to see him,” said the maiden, “since you tell me he is a knight, and some of the things that I carry on the ship, I shall leave for him so that with them he may be somewhat strengthened.”

“Do so,” said the old man, “but I understand that death, to which he is so close, will save you that trouble.”

The maiden entered alone the room where Beltenebros was; who, on thinking what he might do, was unable to make up his mind; for if he made himself known to her, he would be violating the command of his lady; and if not, if that woman, who was the whole restorative of his life, were to go from there, no hope remained for him. Finally, believing it would be much harder for him to anger his lady than to suffer death, he decided by no means to let her recognize him. Then the maiden coming close to his bed, said:

“Good man, from the hermit I have learned that you are a knight, and because maidens are indebted to most knights for the great dangers in which they place themselves in our defense, I have decided to see you and leave here, from the supplies of the ship, everything that may be found in it for your good health.”

He did not answer anything, instead was weeping with great sobs and groans, so that the maiden thought his soul was parting from his body, for which she had great compassion; and because there was but little light in the room, she opened a window that was closed, and approached the bed to see if he had died, and began to look at him, and he at her, still weeping and sobbing, and thus he continued for a while, for the damsel did not recognize him, because her thought was quite unprepared to find in such a place the one she was looking for; but seeing on his face a scar that Arcalaus the enchanter gave him with the tip of his lance when Oriana was taken away from Arcalaus, as has been told you in the first Book, it made her awaken to what she had previously never suspected, and she clearly recognized that man to be Amadis, and she said:

“Alas, Holy Mary, help me! What is this which I see? Oh, sir, you are the one for whom I have undergone great hardship!”

And she fell on her face against the bed, and kneeling she kissed his hands many times, and said to him:

“Sir, now it is necessary to have pity and pardon for the one who wronged you, for if by her evil suspicion she has put you unjustly in such straits, she with great cause and rightly is enduring a life more bitter than death itself.”

Beltenebros took her in his arms and gathered her to him without being able to say anything. She, giving him the letter, said:

“This your lady sends you, and through me informs you if you are that Amadis that you were wont to be, whom she loves so much, that forgetting what is past, be with her at once in her castle of Miraflores, where with great pleasure amends will be made for the pain and anguish that the boundless love she has for you, has caused.”

He took the letter and after kissing it many times, placed it on his heart, and said:

“Oh, afflicted heart, which for so long a time with such great anguish, shedding so many tears, have been able to sustain yourself even unto the straits of cruel death, receive this medicine, for none other could have sufficed for your good health; take away those clouds of great gloom with which until now you were

covered, take courage with which to be able to recompense that lady of yours for the favor she does you in freeing you from death."

Then he opened the letter to read it, and it read thus:

(Letter from Oriana to Amadis)

If the great mistakes that are done through hatred, when transformed into humility are worthy of being pardoned, then what will become of those that are caused by great excess of love? Nor on that account do I deny, my true beloved, that I deserve much punishment, because one must consider that in prosperous and happy situations Fortune lies in wait in order to render one wretched, and rightly I ought to have considered your discretion and your uprightness which have not erred in anything up to now; and especially the great surrender of my sad heart, which came to it only from that subjection, for in it yours is confined; for if by chance some portion of its burning flames had been cooled, and my heart sensing it, some rest for its mortal desires they would have been the cause of bringing about. But I erred like those women who, being very fortunate and very sure of those they love, not being able to contain so much good, through suspicions conceived more willfully than reasonably from the words of innocent or slanderous persons — words of little truth and less virtue — want to obscure that great joy with a cloud of scant tolerance; thus, my loyal lover, as from a guilty person who recognizes her error with humility, may this maid of mine be received, who better than the letter will make known to my lover the extremity that my life is in, for which, not because it deserves it, but for the restoration of yours, one should have pity.

The letter having been read, the joy of Beltenebros was so excessive that just as with his past sadness, so with joy he was swooning with tears falling down his cheeks without his feeling them. Immediately by those present he was brought back to consciousness so that making known to all those who were coming there that the maiden, in God's service was taking him from that place, where there was no provision for his good health, and that within the hour, having returned to the ship, they should reach the mainland, thus this was done. But first, bidding farewell

to the hermit, letting him know how that maiden through God's compassion, by great good luck was carried there for his salvation; and begging him earnestly to take charge of reorganizing the monastery which he had promised to build at the foot of the Cliff of the Firm Island, and this having been agreed to by him, Belte-nebros put out to sea, without being recognized by anyone except only by the maiden.

Then having reached land and the sailors having said farewell to the maiden and she remaining with her companions, he began to travel the road to where his lady was; and finding a village located on the bank of a very pleasant stream amid beautiful trees, in order for the great weakness of Beltenebros to be restored in some way, by her own request the maid of Denmark made him rest. Where, if the longing he had for his lady had not tormented him so much, he would have had the most wondrous life for his good health that there was anywhere in the world, because under those trees, at the foot of which springs gushed forth, he was given his dinners and suppers, they retiring at night to the lodgings that they had in the village. There they both talked about past things. Then the maiden told him about the weeping and lamenting his lady Oriana had done when Durin brought her the report, and how neither she nor Mabilia had known about what she said in the letter she sent him. And Beltenebros likewise told her the vicissitudes he had experienced and the life he had led on the Poor Cliff, and the many and diverse thoughts that came to his memory each day, and how Corisanda, the mistress of his brother Florestan, had come by there, and the great affliction of love that she was suffering on account of him, which was the cause — when he saw how she was dying for her lover and since he himself was without reason ceast aside and abhorred by his beloved — of bringing him more quickly to death's door; and how he taught the maidens the song that he had composed, and many other things that it would take too long to relate; from which, being now free of the cruel death that he was expecting, he received great pleasure, to such an extent that when they had been there for ten days his heart was already commanding him to return to arms. Then he there made his identity known to Durin, and he took Enil, nephew of Don Gandales, his foster father, for his squire

without Enil's knowing who he was or whom he served, but being happy with him on account of his being fair-spoken. And leaving there, after four days of travel, they arrived at a convent of lay sisters that was near a good town, where it was decided that the maiden and Durin should go on, and he, remaining there with Enil, should await the command of his lady. And thus it was done; for the maid of Denmark, leaving Beltenebros as much money as was necessary to obtain arms and a horse and things to wear, along with some portion of the gifts that she was carrying deliberately forgotten so that with them as a pretext Durin might return to him with the reply, went on her way directly to Miraflores where she hoped to find her mistress Oriana, according to what she had heard her say before she left there.

CHAPTER LIII

HOW DON GALAOR AND FLORESTAN AND AGRAJES LEFT THE FIRM ISLAND IN SEARCH OF AMADIS; AND HOW THEY TRAVELED A LONG TIME WITHOUT BEING ABLE TO FIND ANY TRACE OF HIM, AND SO THEY CAME COMPLETELY DISCONSOLATE TO THE COURT WHERE KING LISUARTE WAS.

It has already been related to you how Don Galaor and Don Florestan and Agrajes left the Firm Island on their quest for Amadis, and how they traveled through many lands, each one following a separate route, performing mighty exploits at arms, not only in populated places but also in forests and on mountains, of which, because they did not complete their quest, no mention is made, as we have already said. Then at the end of a year, during which they could find out nothing, they returned to the place which they had agreed upon, which was a hermitage a half league from London, where King Lisuarte was, believing that there rather than elsewhere, because of the many and diverse people who continually came, they would be able to ascertain some news of their brother Amadis. And the first one to arrive at the hermitage was Don Galaor and then Agrajes, and in a short while, Don Florestan and Gandalin with him. When they saw themselves together there, they embraced one another with great pleasure; but learning from each other the scant information that they had found, they began to weep bitterly, considering that having failed in that, when they had been so fortunate in finishing everything else, very little remedy or hope was left them for the future. But Gandalin, who was grieved by the loss of Amadis no less than any of them, encouraged them to stop the weeping, which availed little or nothing, and to return to the search begun, reminding

them what their lord would do for each one of them if he saw them in trouble; and that by losing him, they were losing a brother, the finest knight in the world; so that, considering it a good idea, they agreed first to enter the court, and if they did not find there any report of news, to search through all parts of the world, on land and sea until they found out that he was either dead or alive.

Then with this agreement, having heard the mass that the hermit said for them, they mounted and went on their way to London. This was on St. John's Day, and on approaching the city, they saw ahead of them the king, who riding with many knights was honoring that feast day; as much on account of that saint as because on that same day he had been elevated to the throne. And when the king saw the three knights, he truly thought that they were probably knights errant, and went to them to honor them, as one who honored and esteemed all such; and as they saw him come toward them, they took off their helmets and pointed out to Florestan which one the king was, as he had never seen him before; and coming closer there were many who recognized Don Galaor and Agrajes, but they did not know Florestan, but he seemed to them very handsome, and before they reached them, they were taking him for Amadis; and the king thought so too, for he resembled Amadis in his features more than Galaor did; and when they reached the king, they put Florestan in front in order to honor him. And the king said to Galaor:

"I understand that this is your brother, Don Florestan."

"Yes, he is," said he.

And when he tried to kiss his hands, he did not wish to give them to him; rather, he embraced him with great affection, and afterwards the others; with great joy he joined them and went on to the city. Gandalin and the dwarf, who witnessed that reception, where their lord used to be received and regarded by all with such honor, having lost him, mourned loudly — so much so that they moved both the king and all the others to have great pity for them, and even more for their lord, whom they dearly loved.

The king was asking the three companions if they had found out any news about Amadis, their brother. But they, with tears

in their eyes, told him no, although they had traveled in search of him through broad lands. The king consoled them, saying that worldly things were like that, even for those who with great concern by fleeing affronts and dangers thought to protect their persons from them; even more so for those whose custom and function it was to look for them, a thousand times risking their lives to the point of death; and that they should have hope in God, who had not rendered Amadis so fortunate in all things in order thus to forsake him.

The news of the arrival of these knights was reported in the queen's house, whereupon she and all the other ladies were joyful, especially Olinda, Agrajes' circumspect beloved, who knew already how he had completed the adventure of the arch of the faithful lovers, and Corisanda, mistress of Don Florestan, who was waiting for him there, as has been told you previously. Mabilia, who was very happy at the arrival of Agrajes, her brother, went to Oriana, who was very sad at a window of her room reading a book, and said to her:

"Lady, go to your mother, for Don Galaor will come now, and Agrajes and Florestan."

She responded, weeping and sighing as though her heartstrings would break:

"My dear, where would you have me go? For I am out of my mind, so that I am more dead than alive; and my face and eyes from weeping are in the condition you see. And besides this, how now shall I be able to see those knights, in whose company I used to see my lord and lover Amadis? In heaven's name, do you want to kill me, for it is harder for me than experiencing death."

Moreover she said weeping:

"Ah, Amadis, my good lover! what will this wretched unhappy woman do when she does not see you among your brothers and friends, whom you love so much, with whom she was wont to see you? By Heaven, my lord, my longing for you will be the cause of my death. And this will be with great justice, for I contrived that both of us should die."

And not being able to remain standing, she fell over upon a dais. Mabilia encouraged her as much as she could, suggesting to

her the hope that her maid would bring her good and joyful news. Oriana said to her:

"When these knights so fortunate in their quests, having sought him for such a long time with such great zeal, have not found out anything about him, how could the maiden, who only will go to one place, find him?"

"Don't think about that," said Mabilia, "for the way he was going, he is probably fleeing from all those of the world; and to your maiden he will come out to be recognized by her from wherever he may be hidden, for she is a person who knows all your secrets and his, and can bring a restorative to his life."

Oriana, encouraged and consoled somewhat by this, got up as best she could and washed her eyes and gave orders to call Olinda; then she went with them to where the queen her mother was. And when the three knightly companions saw her, they were quite pleased, and went to her and were graciously received. The king then said to Don Galaor:

"You see how afflicted and very ailing your friend Oriana is."

"Sire," said he, "I am very sorry about it, and it is quite right that we should all serve her in those things that can bring about better health for her."

Oriana said to him laughing:

"My good friend Don Galaor, God is the one who mends illnesses and fortunes, and so, if it should please Him, He will restore mine and yours, for such a great loss has come to you in losing your brother, that, so help me God, it would give me great pleasure that the effort and dangers we are told that you have undergone be somewhat fruitful in what you have desired, as much for your sakes as because the king my lord was always well served by him."

"Lady," said Don Galaor, "I trust in God that quickly we shall have good news of him, for he is not a man who is dismayed by great sorrow; for there is no knight in the world who knows better how to remain firm against all danger."

Oriana was greatly consoled by what she heard from Don Galaor. And taking him and Don Florestan with her, she sat down on a dais and had great enjoyment in gazing at Don Florestan, for he greatly resembled Amadis. But it made her greatly long for

the other, so much so that her heart was breaking. Mabilia called Agrajes, her brother, and had him sit beside her and beside Olinda, his beloved, who was very cheerful and happy on learning that for love of her he had been under the enchanted arch of lovers, which fact she let him know very definitely there by the loving reception that she gave him, demonstrating her very good will. But Agrajes, who loved her more than himself, very humbly thanked her, refraining from kissing her hands so that the secret of their love affair would not be manifest. And while talking thus, they heard some shouts, and a noise being made in the palace, and when the king asked what that was, they told him that Gandalin and the dwarf, having seen the shield and the arms of that famous knight Amadis, were loudly mourning, and that the knights were consoling them.

"What!" said the king, "Is Gandalin here?"

"Yes, sir," said Don Florestan, "for a good two months ago I found him at the foot of the mountain of Sanguin, and he was going about to ascertain some news of his lord. And I told him I had already gone all over the mountain and that I had not found any news; and he considered it good to go along with me, because I asked him to do so."

The king said:

"I consider Gandalin one of the best squires in the world, and it will be right that we console him."

Then he got up and went there where he was. And when Oriana heard them talk about Gandalin and the grief he had, she turned pale, and could not stay on her feet. But Don Galaor and Don Florestan supported her, lifting her by her hands to go with the king. And Mabilia, who knew the cause of her faintness, came to her and put Oriana's arms around her own neck. And Oriana said to Galaor and Don Florestan:

"My good and loyal friends, if I do not see and honor you as I should, put the blame for it, not on my desire, but on the severe illness that I have."

"Madam," said they, "this must be believed with good reason, for as our great desire is to serve you in all things, it would not be right that some reward for us from your great virtue and goodness should not be inferred."

And leaving her, they went away to the king. And Oriana took refuge in her chamber, where stretched out on her bed she tossed about with loud groans and lamentations, with a great desire to learn and understand about that one whom more through desire than through reason or any agreement, she had separated and entirely alienated from herself. Oriana spoke with Mabilia, saying:

“My true friend, since we entered this city of London I have never lacked sorrow and anguish; therefore I should think it a good idea, if so it appears to you, if we were to go to my castle of Miraflores, which is a very delightful dwelling place, for although I am convinced that my sad heart will not have repose anywhere, I am willing to concede that it might find more there than in any place else.”

“Madam,” said Mabilia, “You should do so. As much on that account as in order that, if the maid of Denmark brings you the news that we wish, you may be able without any delay, not only to enjoy the pleasure of it, but to afford it to him who with much reason in view of his past sadness, ought to have it; which, if you were here, you would not be able to enjoy — that is, neither the one thing nor the other.”

“Oh, for heaven’s sake, dear!” said Oriana, “let us go at once without more delay.”

“It is necessary,” said Mabilia, “that you speak to your father and mother, for since they desire your good health, they will do everything to please you.”

This castle of Miraflores was at two leagues from London and was small, but the most delightful dwelling that there was in all that land; for it was situated in a forest at the foot of a mountain and was surrounded by orchards that bore much fruit, and by other large groves, in which there were plants and flowers of many kinds, and it was very wonderfully wrought; and within there were great halls and chambers richly adorned, and in the courtyards many delightful fountains shaded by trees that bore flowers and fruit the year round. And one day the king went there to hunt and took with him the queen and his daughter, and because he saw that his daughter was very fond of that castle on account of its being so beautiful, he gave it to her for her own. And in front of its gate there was at a distance of a crossbowshot

a convent, which Oriana ordered built after the castle was hers. In it were women of good life. And that night she spoke with the king and the queen, asking their permission to stay at the castle a few days — a permission which was gladly granted by them.

Then the king being at table, having beside him Don Galaor and Agrajes and Don Florestan, he said to them:

“I trust in God, my good friends, that we shall quickly have good news about Amadis, because I have sent thirty of the excellent knights of my court to look for him; and if such as they do not bring him, take all those whom you prefer, and go search for him wherever you see that with reason one ought to make the effort. But I urgently request you that this be after a battle takes place for which I have a time set in concert with King Cildadan of Ireland, who is a king highly esteemed at arms, and he was married to a daughter of King Abies, the one whom Amadis had killed; and the battle was to be one hundred against one hundred.”

And the reason for it was a contention over a certain tribute which that king was obligated to give to the kings of Great Britain, and it had been agreed that if Lisuarte should win, the tribute be doubled and King Cildadan would remain his vassal; and if he were defeated, the latter would be freed of all tribute forever; and according to what he had learned about the people who were being prepared to be opponents of his, he would certainly need all his knights and friends.

Because of what those three knights heard from the king, they remained, though much against their will, for they would have preferred to return at once to the quest for Amadis, because they wanted very much to find out about him and quite rightly; but they were very much ashamed not to serve and help the king in a matter so outstanding and involving such a great imperilling of honor. After the table was cleared, Don Florestan told Gandalin to go see Mabilia who had asked for him, and he did so; and when they both saw each other, they could not avoid weeping. And Gandalin said to her:

“Oh, lady, what great wrong Oriana has done to you and to your family, for she has taken from you the finest knight in the

world! Alas! how poorly employed was all your service to her, what great injustice you have received from her, and an even greater one that man who has never wronged her in word or in deed! God ill-employed such beauty and all her other virtues, since in her there was treachery; but as for this harm that she has done, I well know that no one has lost as much as she."

"Ah, Gandalin!" said she, "I beg of you not to say this, nor believe it, for you will make a mistake; because she did it out of great sorrow and anxiety, occasioned by some words which were said to her, from which she could with good reason conceive suspicion, and according to which she was already forgotten by her lord, and he loved another woman with much affection. And although the letter was written and sent in great anger, she did not think that it would do so much harm; and of the mistake she made in this matter, you can then believe that the cause was the excessive and immoderate love she has for him."

"Oh, Heavens!" said Gandalin; "why was the good intelligence of Oriana lacking? And yours and that of the maid of Denmark to think that my lord would do such wrong to that woman at whose slightest angry word heard by him — for such is his great fear of angering her — he would bury himself alive? And what words could be these that would so perturb the keen judgment and virtue of you ladies as to cause the death of the finest knight ever born?"

"Ardian the dwarf," said Mabilia, "thinking that he was enhancing the honor of his lord, has caused it."

Then she told him all that had happened concerning the three pieces of the sword, just as the first Book relates.

"And do not think, Gandalin," said she, "that either I or the maid of Denmark could do more, for the anger of Oriana was so great in thinking that a man whom she loved so much would leave her for another woman, that her heart could never be at ease until she sent that letter without our knowledge — an act which is bringing us all to the point of death. But you can believe that after Durin found out what Amadis did, she has been in such great distress and sorrow that this gives us comfort in the anxiety we must have for Amadis."

To all these words that Mabilia exchanged with Gandalin, Oriana was listening from within one part of her quarters, and she heard everything they said. And when she saw that they were no longer talking about the matter, she came out to them as if she had heard nothing; and when she saw Gandalin, her heart trembled and she could not keep from falling on a dais, and she said weeping so profusely that she could scarcely speak:

"Oh, Gandalin, as you hope that God may protect you and make you happy, do now what you must, and you will be carrying out what you are under obligation to do."

"Madam," said he weeping, "and what do you command me to do?"

"Kill me," said she, "for I killed your lord most unjustly, and you should avenge his death, as he would avenge yours if someone should kill you."

And with this she fell into such a deep swoon that it seemed as if her soul were departing from her. Gandalin was greatly disturbed, and he wished like everything that he had not come there. And Mabilia, taking some water, threw it in her face, so that she brought her back to consciousness sighing and violently wringing her hands. And Oriana said:

"Oh, Gandalin! why do you delay doing what you ought to do? By heaven, your father would not delay doing what he should."

"Lady," said Gandalin, "God protect me from committing such disloyalty; for if I contemplated it, it would be the greatest act of treachery in the world; and not only one but two, you being my lady and Amadis my lord, for I well know for certain that after your death he would not live one hour; and I never thought that I would be so ill-advised by you, madam; especially since my lord Amadis is not dead; because although the sadness and the anguish that he had because of your anger were in his hands to endure, death is not, except when God considers it right; for if He were to give him such an end, He would not have made him in the beginning so favored by fortune; and do you, Madam, so hold, for God will not wish a man as distinguished in the world as this one to die so unjustly."

This and many other things he said to her to comfort her, and his words were really helpful in consoling her somewhat. And she said:

“My good friend Gandalin, I am going tomorrow to Miraflores, where I wish to await life or death according to the news that may come to me; and do you come to see us, for Mabilia will send for you, because you take away much of the sadness that is in my heart.”

“Lady,” said Gandalin, “I shall do so; and everything else that you may command.”

With this he left them; and as he passed by where the queen was, she called him, and had him stand before her, and she remained talking with him for a long time about the matter of Amadis and the great anxiety she had on his account; and tears came to her eyes, and Gandalin said to her:

“Madam, if you grieve for him, it is with great justice, for he is very much your servant.”

“Plus good friend,” said the queen, “and a good defender; and may it please God to bring us good news of him from which we may receive some comfort.”

And while he was there, Gandalin saw in one part of the palace Don Galaor and Florestan sitting and Corisanda very happy between them; and she seemed to him a very beautiful lady, whom he never before then had seen or known who she was; and he asked the queen who that very beautiful lady was who was talking with such pleasure to those two brothers. And the queen told him who she was and why she had come to the court and how she loved Don Florestan, for love of whom she had dwelt there awaiting him for some time. When Gandalin heard this, he said:

“If she loved him, she is to be lauded, for her love is given to one who has complete excellence and circumspection; and she can find but few, even though she traverse the whole world, who are his equals at arms; and lady, if you were to know Don Florestan well you would not esteem any knight more than him, for to a high degree he is distinguished at arms and in all other good qualities.”

“So it appears in him,” said the queen, “for a man who has such a kinship with such noble knights who are such performers at arms, it would be quite illogical not to resemble them, and likewise in view of his temperament.”

Thus was the queen talking with Gandalin, and Don Florestan with his beloved, showing her great affection, for besides being very beautiful and rich, and loving him so much without ever having conferred her love on anyone else, she came from the most noble and highest ranking earls there were in all Great Britain; and there he talked with her in Don Galaor’s presence concerning how she might return to her land, and that he and Don Galaor and Agrajes would escort her on two days of the journey, and that after hearing some definite news about Amadis, and after the battle had taken place for which King Lisuarte had set a date, if he came out alive from it, he would go to her and would dwell in her land for a long time.

“May it please God through His mercy,” said she, “to protect you and to bring good news of Amadis, so you may be able to carry out what you promise, for with it, I am greatly consoled.”

Then they went to the king, and Gandalin with them. Then Oriana asked permission that night from the king and the queen because the next day she wanted to go to Miraflores. They gave it to her, and commanded Don Grumedan to start out at dawn with her and Mabilia and the other matrons and maidens, and to establish them in the castle and then to return, leaving the servants that they needed and the gate-keepers to guard the gates of the castle. Don Grumedan prepared everything as the king commanded, and before daybreak he took Oriana and all the other ladies, and early in the morning he arrived with them at Miraflores; where, when Oriana saw the place so delightful and so fresh with flowers and roses and water in ditches and fountains, her troubled, distraught mind felt great peace, trusting in the mercy of God that there would come that man to revive her life; for without him her cruel death could not be avoided.

Then, having arrived there, she sent to tell Adalasta, the abbess of the monastery, to send her the keys of the castle and of some wickets through which they were wont to go out into a beautiful garden adjacent to it; and giving the keys to the gatekeepers

whom her father had sent there, she told them that each day they should take charge of locking the gates and wickets and give the keys to the abbess to keep at night. When Oriana saw herself in such a delightful place, she raised her hands to heaven and said to herself:

“Oh, Amadis, my dear, this is the place where I want to have you always with me, and from here I shall never depart until I see you. And if this in nowise can be, here my longing for you will kill me; therefore, my dear, may your prudence save me and help me, for I am dying. And if at any time and season you were indeed sent to me and never failed me, now when it is most necessary, I beg and command you to help me and free me from death. And, my good lover, do not delay, for I ask it of you in the name of that sovereignty that I hold over you.”

And thus she remained for a long time half swooning, speaking with Amadis, as if she had him before her; but Mabilia took hold of her hands and had her sit down on a dais that she had had made for her beside a beautiful fountain; and from there she retired to her apartment, in which there were very luxurious chambers and a small patio which was in front of the door of her room with three trees that shaded it entirely so that the sun could not enter. Oriana said to Mabilia:

“Know you that I have given orders to have the keys brought to us by day, because I wish Gandalin to have others made for us, in order that if my luck be such that Amadis should come, we may be able to smuggle him in here through the garden and through the wickets.”

“You have taken a good resolution,” said Mabilia.

Thus they rested and enjoyed themselves that day and night, although they were waiting for the maid of Denmark with great foreboding. Then the next day Gandalin arrived, and the gate-keeper told Mabilia that that squire wanted to speak to her. Oriana said:

“Open it for Gandalin, for he is a very good squire and was brought up with us, and more unfortunate because he is a foster brother of Amadis, whom may God protect from evil.”

"May God do so," said the gatekeeper, "for it would be a great loss and very damaging to the world if such a good and virtuous knight, so skilful at arms, were lost."

"You speak the truth," said Oriana, "and now go at once and have Gandalin enter."

And turning to Mabilia, she said:

"My dear, don't you see how Amadis is loved and esteemed by all and even by common men who have little understanding of things."

"Indeed I do see it," said Mabilia.

"Then what shall I do," said she, "but die for that one who, being so loved and esteemed by all, loved and esteemed me more than himself, and of whose death I was the cause? Accursed was the hour in which I was born, since on account of my folly and evil suspicions I committed such a great injustice."

"Stop that," said Mabilia, "and have good hope, for what you are doing helps very little to remedy the situation."

At this moment Gandalin entered, and was very well received by them. And seating him beside her, Oriana told him how she had sent the maid of Denmark carrying a letter for Amadis, and the words which were in it, and said to him:

"Does it seem to you, Gandalin, that he will be willing to pardon me?"

"Lady, you are speaking in a good cause," said he; "it seems to me you have little understanding of his heart; for by heaven, at the slightest word in the letter, he will put himself alive under ground if you order him to do so, not to mention his coming at your command, especially if the maid of Denmark brings the letter to him. And, madam, I am very happy about what you have said, because if the whole world were to look for him, it would not be as effective in finding him as the maiden alone; for since even from me he tried to conceal himself, I do not believe he would want to show himself to any other person. And you, my lady, with hope of the good news she will bring you, do not fail to live a better life, so that when he comes, he may not see you so far removed from your beauty; otherwise he will start running away from you."

Oriana was quite pleased with what Gandalin said to her, and she said to him laughing:

“What, do I appear so ugly to you?”

And he said:

“If to the same degree you seemed so ugly to yourself, you would go hide where no one would see you.”

“Well for that reason,” said she, “I came away to dwell in this castle of mine, so that if Amadis should come, and should try to start fleeing from me, he would not be able to do so.”

“Would that I might see him in this prison,” said Gandalin, “and free from the other where your love affair holds him.”

Then they showed him the keys and told him to try to have others made like them, so that, with the arrival of his lord, as he was hoping, Oriana might without delay fulfill her message to him to the effect that she would have him there with her. Gandalin took them, and going to London, brought back duplicates, for there was no difference except that the original ones were old and the others new. Mabilia showed the keys to Oriana and said to her:

“Madam, these will be the instrument for uniting with you that man who without you cannot live; and since we have supped and all the people of the castle are quieted down, let us go and try them.”

“Let us go,” said Oriana, “and may it please God, through His mercy that they may mend what my feeble intelligence has damaged.”

And hand in hand they went alone in the darkness to the wickets that opened on to the garden, as you have already heard; and being now near the first one, Oriana said:

“By heaven, dear, I am so dead with fear that I haven’t the strength to go with you.”

Mabilia took her by the hand and said laughing:

“Don’t fear anything; wherever I go, I shall protect you, for I am a cousin of the best knight in the world, and I go in his service; believe in me without fear.”

Oriana could not help laughing, and said:

“Since I go in your care, I must not fear, according to the trust that I have in your great prowess at arms.”

"Since you recognize me for such a one," said Mabilia, "now let us go forward, and now I shall see how I shall conclude this adventure, and if I fail in it, I swear that in this whole year, I shall not sling a shield on my neck or gird on a sword."

And laughingly clasping hands, they reached the first wicket, which without any delay was opened, and so was the other so that they saw the entire garden; Oriana said:

"Well, what will happen? For according to the height of this garden wall, Amadis will not be able to climb over it."

"Don't think about that," said Mabilia, "for I have considered it, and there where the castle wall joins that of the garden a corner is formed, and with a timber placed outside and our giving him a hand, he will climb up without much trouble; but this courage is yours, and you will have the payment for it."

Oriana took her by the headdress and threw it down on the ground, and they were both for a while with great laughter and joy, and they closed the wicket again and went off to bed; and when Oriana was getting into bed, Mabilia said:

"May God be willing, lady, to unite you here with that wretched man who is in despair, since that union is so necessary for him."

Oriana said:

"And may it please Him, through His compassion, to have pity on us and on him."

"About what rests with God," said Mabilia, "have no worry, for He will apply the remedy that may be in His service; eat and sleep in order that your beauty may recoup the great amount it has lost, as Gandalin told you."

With this they slept that night with more calm than in the past; and morning having arrived, after having heard mass they went out to the courtyard of the beautiful fountains and found that Gandalin was just arriving, for by their orders each day he came from London to see them; and taking him with them they retired to the patio of the three beautiful trees, and there they told him that the keys were very good, and the words that Mabilia spoke when she tried them, at which they all laughed a great deal; and he told them what he had experienced with Amadis, when he, in order to comfort him, had spoken ill of Oriana, and

that with the anger he had over it he was close to killing him; and how for that reason when he saw him asleep, he had hidden the saddle and the bridle from him and had left him on the mountain, where never more had he been able to find news of him.

“And, lady,” said he, “just as I told him a big falsehood about you, so did I at once receive the punishment that I deserved, for when I awoke and found that he had gone without me, if I had had any weapon left, without doubt I would have killed myself.”

Oriana said to him:

“Oh, for heaven’s sake, Gandalin! do not tell me more, for I am sure he loves me; without intent you are breaking my heart, for life and death with good news or the opposite that may come to me concerning him I want to receive together, without any more anguish or grief coming to me than I have had in the past.”

CHAPTER LIV

HOW, WHEN KING LISUARTE WAS AT TABLE AFTER EATING, A STRANGE KNIGHT ENTERED COMPLETELY ARMED AND CHALLENGED THE KING AND HIS WHOLE COURT; AND CONCERNING WHAT FLORESTAN DID WITH HIM; AND HOW ORIANA WAS CONSOLED AND AMADIS FOUND.

King Lisuarte being at table after eating, and the table having been cleared, when Don Galaor and Don Florestan and Agrajes were about to bid him farewell in order to escort Corisanda on her way, a strange knight in full armor except head and hands, entered the gate of the palace, and two squires with him; and he was bearing in his hand a letter with five seals, and kneeling he gave it to the king saying to him:

“Read that letter, and afterwards I shall tell you what I come for.”

The king read it, and on seeing that it was a letter vouching for the knight, he said to him:

“Now you may say what you please.”

“King,” said the knight, “I challenge you and all your vassals and friends on behalf of Famongomadan, the giant of Boiling Lake; and of Cartadaque, his nephew, the giant of the Forbidden Mountain; and of Madanfagul, his brother-in-law, the giant of the Vermilion Tower; and for Don Quadragante, brother of King Abies of Ireland; and for Arcalaus the enchanter; and I am ordered to tell you to fear death from them—you as well as all those who call themselves yours; and Famongomadan apprises you that they with all those great friends of theirs will be against you in aid of King Cildadan in the battle for which you

have set a date with him. But if you wish to give your daughter Oriana to Madasima, the very beautiful daughter of the aforementioned Famongomadan, to be her damsel and serve her, that they will not challenge you, nor will they be your enemies; rather they will marry Oriana to Basagante, her brother, when he sees that it is time; and he is such a lord that your land and hers will be well used by him; and now, king, consider what will come out best for you; either peace as they want it, or the most cruel war that can come to you with men who are so powerful."

The king replied laughing, as one who scorned their challenge, and said to them:

"Knight, dangerous war is better than dishonorable peace, for a bad accounting would I be able to give to that Lord who has placed me at such a height, if through lack of courage, with such discredit and such humiliation I were to lower it; and now you may go; and tell them that I would rather desire war with them all the days of my life and at the end to die, than to agree to the peace they demand of me; and tell me where one of my knights will find them so that they may learn through him this reply of mine that is given to you."

"At Boiling Lake," said the knight, "whoever seeks them will find them. This is on the island called Mongaza; there he will find both them and those who with them will be engaged in the battle."

"I do not know," said the king, "in view of the nature of giants, whether my knight will be able to go and return safely."

"Do not have any doubt about that," said he, "for where Don Quadragante is, nothing can be done unreasonably, and I take the responsibility."

"In the name of God," said the king, "now tell me your name."

"Sir," said he, "My name is Landin, and I am a nephew of Don Quadragante, son of his sister; and we have come to this land to avenge the death of King Abies of Ireland, and we regret that we cannot find the one who slew him, nor do we know whether he is dead or alive."

"It may well be," said the king, "but now might it please God that you should find out that he is alive and in good health, for afterwards everything would come out well."

"I understand," said Landin, "from what you say, that you believe that one to be the finest knight of all those you have seen; but whatever I may be, you will find me in the battle between you and King Cildadan, and there my good deeds or the opposite will be made manifest to you by the greatest damage to you of which I am capable."

"I'm very sorry," said the king, "for I would rather have you in my service; but I well believe that you will not lack here opponents with whom to fight."

"Nor they," said the knight, "opponents who will resist until death."

When Don Florestan heard this, he became somewhat angry because that man dared to say that he was seeking his brother Amadis, and he said to him:

"Knight, I am not of this land or a vassal of the king; therefore nothing of this matter that you have been talking about with him arrays me against you, nor do I by reason of it say anything, because in his court there are many others better than I to say and do; but because you say that you are going about looking for Amadis and do not find him, in which matter, I think, I'm not to your detriment, and if you would like to fight with me, who am Don Florestan, his brother, on condition that if you are overcome, you renounce this quest, and if I be killed, some of your anger and dishonor may be satisfied, I shall do so because that feeling that you have for King Abies, that much more augmented Amadis will have for my death."

"Don Florestan," said Landin, "I see indeed that you have a desire for battle; but I fear it to the utmost, because I have to go with the reply to this embassy on a day appointed, and also because those gentlemen exacted a pledge from me that I would engage in no other confrontation; but if I come out of there alive, I shall have a battle with you at a day appointed."

"Landin," said Don Florestan, "you speak like a good and honorable knight; because those who come with such messages have to deny their own desires in order to carry out the will of those whose message they carry; for otherwise although you might be able to satisfy your own honor, their honor by your

delay would be discredited, since everything was in your charge; and therefore I consider it right that it be as you say."

And offering his gloves as a token of battle gage, he gave them to the king, and Landin extended the skirt of his coat of mail; thus with the consent of both, the battle was set for thirty days after that of the kings had taken place. Then the king gave orders to a knight whom he had reared, Filispinel by name, that in company with Landin he should go challenge those who challenged him.

Then these two knights having departed, as you hear, the king remained talking with Don Galaor and Florestan and Agrajes and many others who were in the palace, and he said to them:

"I want you to see something from which you will have pleasure."

Then he gave orders to summon Leonoreta, his daughter, with all her little maids to come and dance as was their wont, a thing which he had never commanded after the news of Amadis's being lost; and the king said:

"Daughter, sing the song that Amadis composed for love of you, when he was your knight."

The little girl, with the others, her little maids, began to sing it; and it went thus:

Leonoreta, delicate little rose
Whiter than all other flowers,
Delicate little rose, let not my love for you
Put me in such distress.

Without fortune
I have gone mad
Out of love for you; it is a madness
That endures,
From which I cannot withdraw;
Oh, beauty without peer,
Which gives me sorrow and sweetness!
Delicate little rose, let not my love for you
Put me in such sorrow.

Of all the ladies whom I see,
 I do not wish to serve
 Any but you;
 Well I see that my desire
 Is madness,
 From which I cannot depart;
 Since I cannot flee
 From being your servant,
 May I not be put, delicate little rose,
 By your love in such sorrow.

Although my plaint seems
 To refer to you, lady,
 Another is the victor,
 Another is the slayer
 Who weakens my life;
 That one has the power
 To wage total war against me;
 That one can bring it about
 Without my deserving it
 That I live dead and buried.

“I want you to know why Amadis composed this carol for this princess Leonoreta. One day he was talking with Queen Brisena, Oriana and Mabilia and Olinda, and they told Leonoreta to tell Amadis that he was her knight and to serve her very well, paying no heed to any other damsel. She went to him and told him so. Amadis and the queen, who heard her, laughed heartily; and taking her in his arms, Amadis seated her on the dais, and said to her:

“Since you want me to be your knight, give me some jewel in acknowledgment that you consider me yours.”

She took from her head a gold barrette set with very precious stones and gave it to him. They all began to laugh on seeing how the child took so seriously what had been told her in fun; and Amadis remaining as her knight, composed for her the carol that you have already heard. And when she and her maids sang it, they were all with garlands and dressed in fine costumes similar to Leonoreta's. And she was quite beautiful, but not to

such a degree as Oriana, for the latter was without a peer in the world; and Leonoreta became in due course empress of Rome, as will be told you later; and those little maidens of hers were twelve in number, all daughters of dukes and counts and other great lords; and they sang that carol so well and so appropriately that the king and all the knights took great pleasure in hearing it. And after they had sung a while, they made a curtsy to the king and went away to where the queen was.

Don Galaor and Don Florestan and Agrajes told the king they wanted to go with Corisanda, to the end that he give them permission to do so, and he drew them to one side of the hall and said to them:

“Friends, in the world there are not another three in whom I have such great strength as in you, and the time limit for the battle is drawing near, for it is to be the first week of August, and you have already heard mentioned the people who are to be against me; and these will bring others very aggressive and strong at arms, as well as those who are naturally and by heredity gigantic; for which reason I earnestly beg you that until that time limit you not take on any other challenges or quests that would prevent your being with me in the battle, for I have deadly major enemies and you would cause me a very great shortage of strength and unjustifiably; because I trust in God that with your great prowess and that of all the others who will serve me, the great valor and strength of our enemies will not be so overwhelming as finally to prevent their being overcome and destroyed and discredited by us.”

“Sire,” said they, “for something so notable and famous everywhere as this will be, your command and request are not necessary, for even if the desire and good will that we have to serve you were lacking, there never would be lacking our great desire to be in such a great confrontation, where our hearts and good will may have that for which they go searching through many lands and strange places of the world, which is to find themselves in situations of greatest danger, because by conquering they obtain the glory that they desire and if conquered they fulfill that destiny for which they were born; and therefore our return will be immediate; and meanwhile cheer and encourage

your knights, because for those who serve with great love and affection, their weak effort becomes strong."

And leaving the king, they, armed and mounted, taking Corisanda with them, left London and went their way. Gandalin, who was there and saw all that, left at once for Miraflores and told Oriana and Mabilia of it and that those three companions ordered him to convey their best regards to them. Oriana said:

"Now Corisanda is quite content, since she has Don Florestan whom she loves so dearly in her company. And may God always keep her so, for she is a very good lady."

And she began to sigh, so that the tears came to her eyes, and she said:

"Oh, Lord God! why do you not want me to see Amadis even for one single day? Oh, Lord! grant me this out of your bounty, or take me from this world and do not let me live in such distress and pain."

Gandalin felt very sorry for her, but pretended to be angry, and said:

"Lady, see to it that I do not appear in your presence, for we are expecting good news which God will send us, and you want to plunge us into despair."

Oriana brushed the tears from her eyes and to him:

"Oh, Gandalin, for heaven's sake do not complain! For if I could do something, gladly would I do it, for even if I display a cheerful countenance, my heart never stops weeping. And if it were not for this hope that I have from the words that you say to me, do believe that I would not have enough strength to rise to my feet; but now tell me what will become of the king my father since he cannot have Amadis for this battle."

"Lady," said he, "My lord cannot be so hidden or secluded that a thing as outstanding as this would not come to his attention, since who doubts that he knowing how much it concerns you, should your father be overcome, would want to come to put his strength at your service? For although on account of the prohibition that you imposed on him, he may not dare to appear before you, he will appear there where he may see that he can be of service and obtain pardon for the mistake that he did not make nor intend to make."

"May it so please God," said Oriana, "that it be as you think."

And as they were talking about this, a girl came running in and said:

"Lady, here you see the maid of Denmark who is bringing you many rich gifts."

Her heart trembled and faltered, so that she could not speak, and she was in complete agitation because from the maiden's arrival she expected life or death, depending on the message she might bring. And Mabilia, who saw her thus, said to the girl:

"Go and tell the maiden to come here alone, because I should like to see her privately."

And she did this so that no one would see the great sorrow or the great joy of Oriana, according as the news might be. And the girl went out and told her what was requested; but as for Mabilia and Gandalin, I tell you they were in great suspense, not knowing what the maiden was bringing. And the maiden came in cheerful and self-assured, and kneeling before Oriana, she gave her a letter she was carrying and said to her:

"Lady, here you see news quite to your liking, and know you, lady, that I have achieved everything that you sent me to do just as you wished; and read that letter and you will see whether Amadis wrote it with his own hand."

She took the letter, but her hands trembled so from the great joy that she let it fall. And as soon as her heart had calmed somewhat, she opened the letter and found the ring that she had sent to Amadis by Gandalin, when he fought with Dardan at Windsor; which ring she readily recognized and she kissed it many times and said:

"Blessed be the hour in which you were made, for you have moved with such joy and pleasure from one hand to another."

And she put it on her finger and when she saw the very humble words contained in the letter and his great gratitude for her having remembered him, and how he had returned from death to life, her heart rejoiced; and raising her hands, she said:

"Oh, Lord of the world, restorer of all things! Blessed be you who at such a time have helped me and delivered me from death, which was so near."

And she had the maiden sit down before her and said to her:

"My dear, now tell me how you found him, and the days you were with him, and where you leave him."

She told her how she had looked for him; and that when she was coming back very sadly without any word, the great storm that came up while she was at sea caused her to arrive at the Poor Cliff, where she found him. And she related all that happened to her there with him and the great pleasure Oriana's letter gave him; and likewise she told her where she had left him and how he was awaiting her command. But when she came to telling how he had come close to death and was so changed that he could only be recognized by the scar that he had on his face and how he had changed his name and it was three days before Durin recognized him, Oriana had great sorrow and compassion for him. And as soon as everything had been told her, Oriana said:

"By heaven, friend, it is necessary that he have our message at once, and tell me how it is to be accomplished."

"I will tell you," said she; "there I left on purpose two of those jewels I was bringing, so that on the pretext of Durin's returning for them he might bring your message."

"You have done very well," said she; "and now give me the gifts you are bringing in the presence of these people who are here, and say that Mabilia's were forgotten by you, as you have said."

Then they told the maiden how Corisanda had told them about him, and that he was called Beltenebros, but she had not recognized him or found out who he was.

"It is true he is so called," said the maiden, "and he says he will not drop that name until he sees you and you tell him what to do."

And also they told her how they had the keys to the garden wickets; and they called Durin and pointed out to him the place to which he was to bring Beltenebros when he came; and they commanded him to go at once and bring him; but they did not have to exert themselves greatly in the matter, because being still quite distressed about the unfortunate news that he had carried to him, whereby he had brought him close to death, and believing

that with the news with which he was now going, everything would be corrected and straightened out, he agreed to it with much joy in his heart, and kissed the hands of Oriana because she had so ordered him. And there it was agreed that Mabilia was to ask him in the presence of everyone to go for those gifts, and that he should exhibit ill-humor about it, as if he were much irked, in order not to arouse suspicion about his going. And thus he did, for when they requested it of him, he showed vexation about it, and said angrily to Mabilia:

"I tell you, madam, that on account of their being yours, I shall go there; for if they were the queen's or Oriana's I would not do so, for I have undergone much hardship from toiling over this road."

Mabilia was very grateful, and Oriana said to him:

"My friend Durin, however well you serve, don't seek to find fault with the service that you may render in such a way that people will not be thankful to you for it."

"I shall so do it for you," said he, "when you order me to serve you, for I well believe that your gratitude is worth as little as my service."

They all laughed a great deal at the anger that Durin showed and about how he replied; and he said to Mabilia:

"Madam, since it pleases you that I go, I intend to go immediately tomorrow morning early." And taking leave of the ladies he went to sleep in the town with Gandalin, who asked him to give his best regards to Enil his cousin, and that on his part he should invite him to come and see him if he could do so, because he had a few things to talk over with him, and that he begged him earnestly that while he was going about with that knight, to ask him for news concerning Amadis. He sent him to say this so that Amadis might go about better disguised and in order that, if he should wish to leave him, he could do so on the pretext of seeing Gandalin. While speaking about this, they reached London, and early the next morning Durin mounted his palfrey and went on his way to where he had left Beltenebros; but first he had sought to find out all the news of the court in order to be able to tell everything to him.

CHAPTER LV

HOW BELTENEBROS ORDERED ARMS AND COMPLETE EQUIPMENT MADE IN ORDER TO GO AND SEE HIS LADY ORIANA, AND CONCERNING THE ADVENTURES THAT HAPPENED TO HIM ON THE WAY, HE OVERCOMING DON QUADRAGANTE AND THE GIANTS FAMONGOMADAN AND BASAGANTE.

Then returning to Beltenebros, who had remained in the quarters of the lay sisters, waiting for the message from his lady, the story tells that being already, because of his great contentment, considerably restored in health and strength, he gave orders to Enil to have made in that town near where he was, some arms with a green field and as many small lions in gold as there would be room for, along with his device, and to buy for him a good horse and a sword and the best coat of mail that he could get. Enil went up to the town and did everything as he had commanded him. So that in the space of twenty days everything was prepared according to his need. At this time Durin arrived with the message he was bringing, with which Beltenebros was greatly pleased; and asking him in front of Enil how the good maid of Denmark, his sister, was, and why he had come, he told him that the maiden asked him to convey her best regards to him, and that he came for two pieces of jewelry that she had forgotten, which were among the pillows on which she had slept; and he told Enil that his cousin Gandalin greeted him heartily and everything else that he was charged with telling him. Beltenebros asked him who that Gandalin was.

“My cousin, a squire,” said he, “who for a long time attended a knight by the name of Amadis of Gaul.”

And then he took Durin with him and went for a walk through a public square, asking him for news of his sister; but when they had withdrawn somewhat Durin told him the message of his lady, how she awaited him in Miraflores, and that she had it very well arranged to have him there with her, so that he might be well concealed; and he told him how his brothers and Agrajes were in the court, and they were to be in the battle for which King Lisuarte had set a date with King Cildadan of Ireland; and furthermore the challenge of Famongomadan, and of the other giants and knights who had made a challenge, and how they demanded Oriana to serve as Madasima's maid, and that they would give her in marriage to Basagante, son of Famongomadan. And when Beltenebros heard this, his flesh trembled with the great anger he had within him, and his heart seethed with great fury; and he made the resolve until he saw his lady, not to take upon himself any other confrontation or quest until he found Famongomadan, and to fight with him, and to die or kill him for what he had said about Oriana. After Durin had related what you have heard, he took the gifts, and having bade him farewell, he returned very happy at having brought to a conclusion what he desired.

Beltenebros remained, giving many thanks to God for thus having helped him in bringing him back into the favor of his lady, for while he was considering her lost to him, his life had come close to the end, as we have told you; and that night, having said good-bye to the matrons one hour before dawn, armed with those verdant and fresh arms, on his beautiful, spirited horse, and Enil with him, carrying his shield and helmet and lance, he set out on his way to go and see that lady of his, whom he loved so much; and going along thus through the countryside, it now being bright daylight, he put the spurs to his horse very hard and made it go from one side to the other, in such a way that Enil, who was watching him, was greatly surprised, and said:

"Sir, I know nothing of the courage of your heart; but I have never seen a knight who appeared so handsome armed."

"The hearts of men, and not their good appearance," said Beltenebros, "accomplish good things, but to the one whom God

gives both together, he does a great favor; and since now you have judged the appearance, judge the heart according to what you observe that it deserves."

Thus he continued talking and laughing with him as one who, casting aside that great gloom in which he had been, was restored to the delight without which he could not live. So thus he traveled until night, when he lodged in the home of an old knight, where great honor was paid him; and the next day, leaving there, wearing the helmet on his head in order not to be recognized, he journeyed seven days without encountering any adventure; but on the eighth it happened that on passing at the foot of a mountain, he saw coming along a narrow road, on a big bay horse, a knight so large and so muscular that he seemed aught but a giant, and two squires who were carrying his arms. And when he came closer, the huge knight said to Beltenebros in a loud voice:

"You, sir knight, who come there, stop and do not come farther ahead until I find out from you what I want."

Beltenebros stopped in a level field through which he was going, and gazed at the shield of the knight and saw that it had on it three flowers of gold on a field of blue, and recognized him to be Don Quadragante, because one other such shield he had seen on the Firm Island raised above all the others as one who had won greatest honor in the test of the Forbidden Chamber; and he was very sorry, because he thought he would not be able to avoid a battle with him, having in mind a battle with Famongomadan, for on account of the latter he had wished to avoid all others, and also in order to go to the rendezvous as ordered in the message from his lady; and he had a fear that the great prowess of that knight might hinder him somewhat; and he remained motionless; then calling to Enil, he said:

"Come to me, and you will give me the arms if I need them."

"God protect you," said Enil, "for this man seems to me more of a devil than a knight."

"He is not a devil," said Beltenebros, "but a very good knight, of whom I have heard several times already."

At this juncture Don Quadragante came up and said to him:

"Knight, it is important that you tell me if you are from King Lisuarte."

"Why do you ask?" said Beltenebros.

"Because I have challenged him," said Quadragante, "and all of his men and his friends, and I shall find none of them that I do not kill."

Great anger came to Beltenebros, and he said to him:

"Are you one of those who challenged him?"

"I am," said he, "and the one who will do to him and to all of his men, all the harm that I can."

"And what is your name?" said Beltenebros.

"Don Quadragante," said he.

"Certainly, Quadragante," said he, "although you may be of high lineage and of great deeds at arms, your challenging the best king of the world is a great act of folly because knights should undertake things that are appropriate for them, and when they go beyond that, it must be taken more for folly than for courage; I am not a vassal of this king you mention, nor a native of his land; but because of what he deserves, my heart is given over to serving him; therefore I can rightly consider myself challenged by you, and if you wish combat, you shall have it; and if not, go on your way."

Don Quadragante said to him:

"I really believe, knight, that the meager information that you have concerning me causes you to speak so boldly and so insanely, and I earnestly beseech you to tell me your name."

"I am called Beltenebros," said he, "and therefore as much because of the name as on account of my being of little renown, you will not know me any better than before; but although I be of a foreign and remote land, I have heard that you are seeking Amadis of Gaul, and according to reports about him, I understand that it is not to your harm to be unable to find him."

"What!" said Don Quadragante, "you esteem him whom I so greatly hate more than you do me? Know you that you have come to your death, and take up your arms if you dare to defend yourself with them."

"Although against others," said Beltenebros, "I might hesitate to take them, not against you, who make to me such arrogant remarks and threats."

Then, taking up their arms with great fury, they spurred their horses at each other, and they clashed so violently that the horse of Beltenebros was about to fall; but Don Quadragante went out of his saddle, and each one had great pain from that encounter; Beltenebros had the nipple of his breast split open by the lance blade, and the other was wounded in the ribs; but the wound was small, and he got up at once, as one who was very valiant and agile; and grasping his sword he went at Beltenebros, who was adjusting his helmet on his head, so that he did not see him, and he struck the horse with the point of his sword, in such a way that he thrust half of it through its haunches, hence with the wound it went across the field kicking and about to fall; but Beltenebros got off at once, and grasping his shield, with sword in hand went to Don Quadragante in a great rage and furiously because he had killed his horse, and said:

"Knight, you do not show the proper spirit in what you have done; but yours will suffice for the one who obtains the victory of the battle."

Then they attacked each other so fiercely that it was frightful to see; for the noise that they made with their swords in slashing each other's armor was such that it seemed as if ten knights were fighting there, and sometimes they clutched one another in attempts to overthrow each other; so that each one exerted all his strength and valor against the other. Some squires who were watching them, deeming it frightening to see such cruelty in two knights, never expected that either of them could stay alive; and thus they continued in their battle from tierce until vespers without resting or speaking a word. But at this time Don Quadragante was overwhelmed by fatigue and injured by a blow that Beltenebros gave him on top of his helmet, so that he fell headlong and insensible to the ground as if he were dead; and Beltenebros took off his helmet to see if he was dead; but on giving him air, he almost recovered his senses, and Amadis put the point of his sword to his face and said:

"Quadragante, give thought to your soul, for you die."

And he, who was now more conscious, said:

"Alas, Beltenebros, I beg you in God's name to let me live for the sake of my soul's salvation."

He said:

"If you want to live, admit defeat and that you will do what I command you."

"Your will," said he, "I shall do in order to save my life; but by rights I ought not to admit myself defeated, for he is not defeated who in his defense, not showing cowardice, does all he can until strength and breath fail him and he falls at the feet of his enemy; for the defeated man is he who stops performing through lack of courage what he would be able to do."

"Certainly," said Beltenebros, "you speak the absolute truth, and I am very pleased from what now I have learned concerning you; give me your hand and give me your pledge that you will do what I command."

And he gave it to him as best he could.

Then Beltenebros called the squires who were looking on, and said to Quadragante:

"I order you, as per the compact you make with me, to be immediately at the court of King Lisuarte and that you not leave there until Amadis, the one you are looking for, is there; and he having come, you place yourself in his power and pardon him for the death of your brother, King Abies of Ireland; since, according to what I have found out, they of their own free will challenged each other and alone entered into battle. Therefore such death as this should not be sought even among common people, much less in those like you, according to the great deeds at arms in which you have participated with very good fortune; and likewise I command you to retract the challenge to the king and to all of his men, and not take up arms against what is service to him."

Don Quadragante agreed to it all much against his will; but he did it with the great fear of death, which he had very near; and he gave orders at once to his squires to make a stretcher for him and transport him where Beltenebros ordered, in order to carry out his promise. Beltenebros saw Enil, his squire, who was

holding Don Quadragante's horse and was very happy and with great joy about the good fortune that God had given his lord. Beltenebros mounted the horse and gave his arms to Enil and again took up his journey; and he had not traveled far along the way when he found a maiden hunting with a goshawk, and three other maidens with her who had seen the battle and had heard most of the words that were exchanged; and as they saw that he was so battered and that he needed to rest, they begged him earnestly to go with the huntress to a castle of hers where he would be rendered every service on account of that willingness to serve the king, their lord, which they discerned in him. He thought it good because he was in considerable pain by reason of the great physical stress he had undergone; but as soon as they arrived there, on examining him to see if he was wounded, they found only that small wound on his nipple, from which he had lost much blood; and at the end of three days he left there and traveled all that day without encountering any adventure. That night he lodged in the house of a noble who dwelt near the road; and next day he went on until at noon, on reaching the top of a hill, he saw the city of London, and to his right the castle of Miraflores, where his lady Oriana was; and when he saw it, his heart felt great joy. Then he paused there quite a while thinking about how he might rid himself of Enil; and he said to him:

"Do you know this region where we are?"

"Yes, I know it," said he, "for in that valley is London, where King Lisuarte is."

"Are we so close to London?" said he. "Well, I do not wish to make myself known to the king now, nor to anyone else until my deeds merit it; for, as you see, I am young, and have not done enough to be highly esteemed; and since we are so near London, go and see that squire Gandalin, from whom Durin gave you greetings, and find out what they are saying of me in the court, and when the battle with King Cildadan will be."

"How can I leave you alone?" said he.

"Don't worry," said he, "for sometimes I am accustomed to going about without anyone; but first I wish us to settle on some appointed place where you may find me."

And they went ahead along that road; and it was not long before they saw two tents set up beside a stream, and between them another very fine tent, and in front of them knights and maidens were frolicking. And he saw at the door of one tent five shields, and at the other, five more, and ten armed knights. And in order not to have any reason to joust with them, he turned aside from the road that he was following.

The knights at the tents called him to come to the joust.

"I do not care to joust now," said he, "for you are many and rested, and I am alone and tired."

"Rather do I think," said one of them, "that you refuse out of fear of losing your horse."

"And why would I lose it?" said he.

"Because it would go to the one who overthrew you," said the knight, "which is more certain than that those which you might be able to win from us would be yours."

"Since thus it must be," said Beltenebros, "I would rather go on riding it than to involve it in that adventure."

And he began to go circling around them as before. The knight said to him:

"It seems to us, knight, that those arms of yours are defended more with pretty words than with strength of heart; so that they could well remain and be placed on your tomb, although you live a hundred years."

"You may think whatever you wish of me," said he, "for no matter what you say to me, you do not take from me my excellence, if there is any in me."

"Now, might God grant," said one of them, "that you should take the notion to joust with me, for you would not go today to look for lodging on that horse, under penalty of being called a traitor or that in this year I might not mount another."

Beltenebros said:

"Good sir, that is what I fear, and therefore I leave my road."

They all began to say:

"Oh, Holy Mary, protect us, what a timid knight!"

But he paid no attention to this, and went on his way; and on reaching a ford of the river that he wanted to cross, he heard someone saying to him:

"Wait, knight."

And he, on looking to see who it might be, saw a maiden very well attired on a beautiful palfrey; and coming up to him, she said:

"Sir knight, in that tent is Leonoreta, the daughter of King Lisuarte, and she and all the maidens wish to beg you to hold a joust with those knights, and that you do this out of regard for them as ladies, inasmuch as you are more obligated to honor their request than that of the knights."

"What!" said he, "the daughter of the king is the one who is there?"

"Yes, sir," said she.

"I regret," said he, "to have any enmity with her knights, for I would like instead to serve her; but since she orders it, I shall do so on condition that the knights do not ask of me more than to joust."

The maiden went away with his reply, and Beltenebros took up his arms; and returning to the tents he found a good level field and waited there; and it was not long before he saw the knight coming who had talked to him and who would not permit him to go away on his horse if he jousted with him, for he had thought a lot about him, and was quite pleased that he should be the first. And coming closer they let their horses run at each other as hard as they could; and the knight broke his lance and Beltenebros struck him so hard that he threw him from his saddle, sending him rolling over the field; and he ordered Enil to take the horse; and the knight remained so jarred from the fall that he was insensible; and he came out of his faint groaning and rolling around over the field as one who had three ribs and a hip broken. Beltenebros said:

"Sir knight, if your word is good, for one year from now you will not fall again from a horse, for thus you promised if you did not win."

And at this juncture, while he was still there, he saw another knight coming to the joust and shouting to be on guard; and Beltenebros let his horse run at him and he overthrew him just as he had the first one; and similarly he did so to the third and the fourth, and on that one he broke his lance, but the knight

was so badly wounded that the lance went through the shield and the arm; and from all of them he took their horses and tied them to the branches of the trees; and after he had overthrown those four knights, he wanted to go, but he saw coming another knight prepared to joust, and he brought a squire with four lances, and said to him:

“Sir knight, Leonoreta sends you these lances, and gives orders to tell you to do with them what you should with the knights who remain, since you have unhorsed their companions.”

Beltenebros said:

“For the love of Leonoreta, who is the daughter of such a good kind, I shall do what she commands, but for the knights I tell you that I would not do anything, for I consider them very insolent in forcing knights who are going on their way to fight against their will.”

And taking a lance, he let himself go at the knight and unhorsed him like the others, and likewise he did all the others, except the one who came at the end, for he jousted with him twice and broke two lances on him without being able to budge him from his saddle; but with the third one he overthrew him as he had the others; and if anyone were to ask who this one might be, I would say that he was Nicoran, he of the Frightful Bridge, who at the time was one of the good jousts of the kingdom of Great Britain.

These jousts having been completed by Beltenebros as you have heard, he sent all the horses he had won from the knights to Leonoreta, and gave orders to tell her that she should order her knights to be more courteous to those who pass along the road, and that they should joust better, for a knight might come there who would make them go on foot. And the knights were so ashamed of what had happened to them that they made no reply and marveled at being thus overthrown by a single knight, and could not imagine who he could be, for they had never seen a knight who bore such emblems on his arms; Nicoran said:

“If Amadis were alive and healthy, I would truly say that this was he, for I do not think of any other knight who would leave us thus.”

"Certainly," said Galiseo, "it must not be he, for some of us would have recognized him; and all the more so because he would not have been willing to joust, since he knew us all as his friends."

Giontes, the king's nephew, who was there, said:

"If it pleased God for it to be Amadis, we would consider our shame well employed; but whoever he be, may God grant him good fortune wherever he goes, for he won our horses like a good knight, and as a good knight he sent them to us."

"May he be damned," said Lasanor, "as long as I continue in poor shape with my ribs and hip broken; but the blame is mine, for I was the solicitor, more than anyone else, of my injury."

And this man was the first one in the joust.

Beltenebros left them, very happy about how it had come out for him; and he went on his way talking to Enil, and he was looking at the lance that he had left, which seemed to him very good; and with the excessive heat and the jousting he was very thirsty; and when he was at as much as a quarter-league's distance from there, he saw a hermitage shaded by trees; and as much for the sake of saying his prayers in it, as to drink some water, he went to it, and saw at the gate three palfreys with women's sidesaddles and two others with squires' saddles. He dismounted and went inside, but he saw nothing; and he said his prayers, committing himself very devoutly to God and to the Virgin Mary. And on leaving the hermitage, he saw three maidens under some trees at a fountain and the squires with them; and he came up to drink of the water, but did not recognize any of the maidens. And they said to him:

"Knight, are you from the court of King Lisuarte?"

"Good maidens," said he, "I should like to be such a knight as to be wanted in his company; but you, where are you going?"

"To Miraflores," said they, "to see our aunt who is abbess of a nunnery, and to Oriana, the daughter of King Lisuarte; and we decided to rest here until the heat passes."

"In the name of God!" said he, "I will keep you company until it be time to go."

And he asked them what the name of that fountain was.

"We do not know," said they, "or about any other that there is in this forest, except the one in that valley near those big trees, which is called the Fountain of the Three Jets."

And they pointed out to him the valley, which was near there; but he knew it better, for many times he had gone through there to hunt; and that fountain he wanted for a landmark to which Enil might come, because he wanted him to be separated from him while he went to see his lady.

Then, while they were talking, as you hear, it was not long before they saw coming along the same road over which Beltenebros had come, a cart that twelve palfreys were pulling, and two dwarfs on top of it who were driving it, and in it they saw many armed knights chained together, and their shields suspended on rods; and among them beautiful maidens and little girls who were uttering loud cries; and in front of the cart came a giant so huge that he was a frightful thing to see, on a black horse and armed with strong plated arms and a helmet that shone brightly; and he was carrying in his hand a javelin; and behind the cart came another giant who appeared larger and much more fearful than the first. The maidens were all frightened and hid among the trees because of their great fear and terror; and the giant who came in front, turning to the dwarfs, said to them:

"I shall tear you into a thousand pieces if you do not keep those little girls from shedding their own blood, because with it I must make sacrifice to the god I worship."

When Beltenebros heard this, he recognized him to be Famongomadan, for he had the custom, which he would never relinquish, of cutting the throats of many maidens before an idol that he had at the Boiling Lake, by whose advice and speech he was guided in all things, and with that he kept the idol contented, as one who, being the Devil, with such great deviltry was to be satisfied. And although Amadis had his mind set on fighting with him because of what he had said about Oriana, he had not wanted to meet him until he had spent that night with his lady Oriana, as was agreed, and also because he was very fatigued from the joust with the ten knights. But recognizing the knights who were riding in the cart, and Leonoreta and her maidens with them, he was very sorry to see them, and more on account of the grief that

his lady would have if such a misfortune should befall her sister; for it seemed that after he departed from the joust, as you have already heard, leaving those knights battered, in a short while there arrived those two giants, father and son, who had challenged King Lisuarte; and taking them all, men and women, they put them, as you have heard, in that cart that they brought with them in order to transport the prisoners that they might be able to take. And at once mounting his horse, he asked Enil to give him his arms; but the latter said to him:

“Why do you want them? First let these devils who are coming here, go by.”

“Give them to me,” said Beltenebros, “for before they go by I want to test the compassion of God, whether it will please Him that the very great violence that these enemies of His commit be done away with by me.”

“Oh, sir!” said he, “Why do you want to have poor enjoyment of your youth? For if the twenty best knights that King Lisuarte has were here, they could not dare undertake this.”

“Don’t worry,” said he, “for if in my presence I should let such a thing happen without doing all I could, I would not be fit to appear before men of excellence, and you will see what my luck will be.”

Enil gave him the arms, weeping very bitterly. Beltenebros came down a slope towards the giant and before he reached him, he looked at the place where Miraflores was, and said:

“Oh, my lady Oriana! Never did I begin a great feat on my own initiative wherever I might be, except with your help; and now, my good lady, help me, for it is so necessary for me.”

With this it seemed to him that such great courage came to him that it caused him to lose fear, and he told the dwarfs to stop. When the giant heard this, he turned toward him with great anger, for steam came out through the visor of his helmet and he flourished the javelin in his hand, so that he caused it to bend double; and he said:

“Luckless wretch, who gave you such boldness as to appear before me?”

"That Lord," said Beltenebros, "whom you offend, who will give me today strength with which your great arrogance may be broken."

"Well, come on, come on," said the giant, "and you will see if your might is enough to defend yourself from mine."

Beltenebros settled the lance under his arm, and at full gallop went toward him and struck him so violently on the strong plate below his belt that perforce he broke the steel sheets and the lance pierced his belly and penetrated through to the other side; and the encounter was so hard that the lance on striking the saddletree broke the saddle girths; so that it turned the saddle with him upside down under the horse, and a piece of the lance remained lodged in his body; but before he fell, he flung the javelin at him and put it through the forequarters of the horse so that it came out between its legs. And Beltenebros came out from under it as quickly as he could and grasped his sword; but the giant was mortally wounded, and the horse was dragging him under it to his great harm; but with the strength that he had, he came out from under it at once, and extracting the lance fragment he hurled it at Beltenebros, and with it gave him such a blow on the helmet together with the shield that he might have knocked him to the ground; and with the force that he put into this blow, most of his guts came out of his belly through the wound, and he fell to the ground, shouting:

"Help me, son Basagante, and come on, for I am dying."

At these shouts Basagante came up at the full speed of his horse, carrying a very heavy steel axe, and he went toward Beltenebros to strike him with it, for he intended to cut him in two; but through his great skill Beltenebros protected himself from the blow, and on passing, he sought to wound the horse, but could not, and he reached him with the tip of the sword and cut off his stirrup strap and half of his leg. And the giant because of his great fury, did not feel it, although he missed his stirrup; and he turned toward him, and Beltenebros had taken his shield off his neck, and was holding it by the arm bands, and the giant delivered such a blow on it with the axe that he hurled it to the ground. Beltenebros struck him with his sword on the arm and cut his cuirass and into his flesh, and the sword went down

through the armor plates, which were of fine steel, and he broke it in such wise that nothing remained of it but the hilt. But he was not disheartened by this, nor did he lose his great courage; rather, when he saw that the giant was trying to pull the axe out of the shield, and could not, he went as fast as he could and seized it, and his good luck so guided him that he was on the side where the stirrup was missing, and while they were both tugging at it, the giant was upset and his horse started up quickly, so that it threw him to the ground and the axe remained in the hands of Beltenebros. The giant got up with great effort and drew a very large sword that he was carrying, and as he tried to go to Beltenebros he was not able to do so because of the severed nerves he had in his leg, and he fell with one knee on the ground. And Beltenebros struck him with the axe on top of his helmet such a mighty blow that perforce all the laces were broken and it caused it to bounce off his head. And Basagante, who saw him so near, thought he would cut off his head; but he struck him high on his helmet so that it cut the whole crown all around and his hair in addition, without wounding his flesh; and Beltenebros drew back, and the helmet, which had nothing to support it, fell to his shoulders, and Basagante's sword fell to the ground on some rocks and was broken in two. Those who were watching thought that he had cut half of Beltenebros's head and they uttered loud laments, especially Leonoreta with her little girls and maidens, who were on their knees in the cart, with their hands uplifted to heaven, praying God to free them from that danger; they tore their hair and uttered loud shouts and cries as they invoked the Virgin Mary; but Beltenebros, taking off his helmet and feeling his head with his hands to see if he was mortally wounded, and not feeling anything, went with the axe against the giant. Although the latter was very strong, when he saw him coming, he became so faint-hearted that he was not able to protect himself, and Beltenebros struck him such a mighty blow on top of the head that one ear along with the jawbone he cut off and knocked to the ground. The giant hit him with the half sword and cut him a little on the leg; then Basagante fell over, rolling about on the field in the agony of death. At this time, Famongomadan had taken his helmet off his head and was

putting his hands on his wounds to staunch the blood; and when he saw his son dead, he began to blaspheme God and Saint Mary, His mother, saying that he only regretted dying because he had not destroyed their churches and monasteries, whereas they were permitting him and his son to be overcome and killed by a single knight, when they did not expect to be overcome by a hundred.

Beltenebros knelt on the ground, giving thanks to God for the great favor that he had granted him, and said to Famongomadan:

“Deprived of the hope of God and of the blessed Mary, now you will be the victim of your own great acts of cruelty.”

And he made him remove his hands from the wound and said:

“Ask your idol that in exchange for all the innocent blood you have offered him, he keep that blood from flowing which is taking your life.”

The giant did nothing but curse God and His saints. And Beltenebros pulled the javelin out of the horse and thrust it into Famongomadan’s mouth so that it protruded from the back of his head by a good span and went into the ground; and he took Basagante’s helmet and put it on his own head so that he would not be recognized; then mounting on Famongomadan’s horse, which Enil had given him, he went to the cart. And the knights and maidens and little girls bowed before him, thanking him profusely for the help that he had given them; but he had them taken from their chains, and he asked them to mount their horses which were following along tethered to the cart, and to bring those two giants in the cart, and Leonoreta and her maidens on the palfreys that her squires, who also were prisoners, were leading, and to give the bodies to King Lisuarte on behalf of a foreign knight called Beltenebros, who wished to serve him, and to tell him why he had killed them. Also he asked them to give him on the king’s behalf Basagante’s horse which was very large and handsome, on which he might enter the battle for which the king had set a date with King Cildadan.

The knights carried out his orders with great pleasure, and they put the giants in the cart. Although it was big, they were carried in it with their legs dangling at the knees, so huge were they. And Leonoreta and the little girls and damsels made garlands of forest flowers, and with these placed on their heads, with great

joy, laughing and singing, they went off to London, where all were surprised when they saw them enter the city in such a manner, and to see such monstrous things as the giants were.

When the king learned of the great danger of his daughter, and how Beltenebros had delivered her at such great risk and danger to himself, and Quadragante having already arrived there, presenting himself before the king as one who had been vanquished by Beltenebros, he greatly wondered who that knight might be who recently had arrived in his country, surpassing all others in rare deeds at arms. And he went on praising him for quite a while, asking everybody if anyone knew him; but there was no one who knew any other news reported about him except that Corisanda, the beloved of Don Florestan, had said that on the Poor Cliff she had found a sick knight who was called Beltenebros.

“Now might it please God,” said the king, “that such a man were among us, for I would not let him go, no matter what he might demand and I grant.”

CHAPTER LVI

HOW BELTENEBROS, THE AFOREMENTIONED ADVENTURES HAVING BEEN FINISHED, WENT TO THE FOUNTAIN OF THE THREE JETS, FROM WHERE HE ARRANGED TO GO TO MIRAFLORES, WHERE HIS LADY ORIANA WAS; AND HOW A STRANGE KNIGHT BROUGHT SOME JEWELS TESTING FAITHFUL LOVERS TO THE COURT OF THE KING; AND BELTENEBROS WITH HIS LADY ORIANA WENT UNRECOGNIZED TO WIN THE GLORY OF THE QUEST IN THE TEST OF TRUE LOVE.

Beltenebros, experiencing great pleasure at having concluded such a dangerous confrontation, having taken leave of the maidens and knights, returned to the other maidens whom he had found at the fountain, who had already emerged from among the trees to come to him. And he gave orders to Enil to go to London to see Gandalin, Enil's cousin, and to have some arms and armor made similar to those he had borne in those battles, for his were all so shattered that he had no protection from them, and to buy him a good sword, and at the end of a week to come back to him at that Fountain of the Three Jets, for there he would find him. He took leave of the damsels and of him, and entered the most dense part of the forest; and Enil went to carry out his orders, and the maidens to Miraflores, where on relating to Oriana and to Mabilia what they had seen, and telling them how a knight called Beltenebros had set everything to rights, their pleasure and joy were unparalleled, knowing now that Beltenebros was so close to them with such personal honor and prowess as no other could attain.

Beltenebros in the midst of the forest, as you hear, kept veering toward Miraflores and found a river that was flowing

beneath large groves; and because it was still early, he dismounted from his horse and let it graze on the green grass, and taking off his helmet, he washed his face and hands and drank of the water; and he sat down thinking of the changeable things in the world, recalling the great despair in which he had been, and how of his own free will he had asked for death, not expecting any relief for his great distress and grief, and that God, more through His compassion than through his own merits, had so restored everything, not only in leaving him as he was before, but also with much more glory and fame than ever; and especially, his being so close to seeing and possessing that lady, his greatly beloved Oriana, on account of whom when his heart found itself absent, he was placed in great sadness and tribulation; which led him to recognize how little confidence men in this world ought to have in those things in the pursuit of which they suffer and toil, devoting to them so much zeal, so much love, not remembering how quickly they are won and lost, forgetting to serve that all-powerful Lord, who gives them and can confirm them. And when they think they hold them most securely, then they are taken from them to the great anguish of their hearts, and sometimes their lives are taken, their souls not departing from them except with great assurance of their salvation. And many times things being thus lost, without any hope of their being recovered, that Lord of the world has returned them as He had done with him, giving to understand that neither in things acquired nor things lost should one have faith, but that, doing what people are obliged to do, they leave them to That One who commands and rules them without any contradiction, as one without whose hand nothing can be done.

Oh, those of you who with such tricky methods gain fortunes! How frequently and with how much diligence should you reflect that with possessions won and soul lost forever, how little such riches help to preserve you from the perpetual punishment which the justice of that eternal God has prepared for such people!

Quite carried away about these and other things, in retrospect he was raising questions and reflecting. Thus Beltenebros was meditating beside that stream voluntarily restraining the great pleasure and pride that came to him from those very great ad-

ventures that he had completed in only one day, considering that in another such short space of time, Fortune could turn that great joy into weeping, just as it had done to many others who had attained great good fortune in this world. And night having come, he mounted his horse and went on to the castle of Miraflores, and to that part of the garden where he found Gandalin and Durin, who took his horse. And Oriana and Mabilia and the maid of Denmark were on top of the wall, and with the help of the squires, and they lending a hand, he climbed up to where they were and took his lady in his arms.

But who would be the one qualified to recount the loving embraces, the sweet kisses, the tears which, with mouth pressed to mouth, were blended there together? Certainly only that one who, being subjected to that same passion and burning with such flaming ardor with his heart tormented by those wounds of love, would have been able to draw from it what those who, already cold, with youthful vigor lost, are unable to attain. Therefore, relying on the foregoing, nothing further will be related about it.

Then as they were locked in an embrace, oblivious to all else, Mabilia, as if she were arousing them from some deep sleep, taking them with her, brought them to the castle. There Beltebros was lodged in the chamber of Oriana, where, according to the past things that you have already heard, one can believe that it was probably much more agreeable for him than Paradise itself. There he was with his lady for one week, which except for the nights, they spent in a patio where the beautiful trees were, of which we have told you, beside themselves with delightful pleasure and everything in the world that might be said and done. There Gandalin came frequently, from whom they learned all the news of the court; he had in his lodging Enil, his cousin, while the latter was having the arms made that Beltenebros had ordered.

King Lisuarte feared greatly the battle that he was to have with King Cildadan; knowing the fierce and evil giant people and other knights of his blood that he would bring to the battle, he tried very hard to prepare so that it would come out to his honor; and he had there in London with him Don Florestan and Agrajes and Galvanes Lackland, who at that time had arrived, and many other knights of great importance. They all talked a

great deal about the great deeds of Beltenebros, and many said that they surpassed in large measure those of Amadis. Don Galaor and Florestan, his brother, were so irked at this that if it had not been for the promise that they had given the king not to involve themselves in any confrontation until the battle took place, they would have searched for, and fought with him, with such anger and fury that death to him or them could not have been avoided. And they had said to themselves that if they should come out alive from the battle, they would not involve themselves in any pact except to find him; but they only spoke of this among themselves. Then the king being one day in his palace talking with his knights, an old squire came through the gate and with him two other squires, all three dressed alike, and the old squire's hair was cut short and his ears seemed large and his hair white. He went to the king, and kneeling before him, greeted him in the Greek language, as he was a native of Greece, and said to him:

“Sire, the great fame of the knights and ladies and maidens of your court, which is current throughout the world, has given me the reason for coming to see whether among them I will find what I have been seeking for sixty years everywhere in the world, without obtaining any fruit from my great efforts. And if you, noble king, think it right that a test be made here, which will not be to your harm or discredit, I shall tell you about it.”

The knights, with a desire to see what it might be, humbly begged the king to grant him the favor; and he who was as eager as they were, thought well of it. Then the old squire took in his hands a chest of jasper, three cubits in length and a span wide, and its components were fastened together with gold plates; and opening it, he drew out the most extraordinary sword ever seen, for its sheath was of two emerald green strips, and they were of bone so transparent that the iron of the sword appeared within, but it was not like that of other swords, for half of it appeared so hard and bright that it could not be more so, and the other half as glowing and red as fire. The decorations on it and the sword belt on which it was suspended were of the same bone as the sheath, made of many pieces fastened together with gold screws in such a way that it could easily be girded on like any other sword belt. The squire slung it around his neck and drew

out of the chest a headdress of very beautiful flowers, half of them as beautiful and green and of a color as bright as if they had been cut immediately after blossoming; and the other half of flowers so dry that it seemed that if one merely came near them they would fall to pieces.

The king asked why those flowers coming from the same cluster were so different, some so fresh and the others so dry, and the sword so extraordinary in appearance.

"King," said the squire, "no one can draw this sword from the scabbard except the knight who loves his lady more than anyone else in the world so loves, and when it be in the hand of such a one, the half that now glows will be rendered as clean and bright as the other half appears; thus the iron will appear uniform; and this headdress of these flowers that you see, if it should happen to be placed on the head of a matron or maiden who loves her husband or lover to the same degree as the knight loves, then the dry flowers will be as green and beautiful as the others, without there being any difference; and know you that I cannot become a knight except by the hand of that faithful lover who draws out the sword, or take a sword except from her who can win the headdress of flowers. And therefore, good king, I have come to your court after sixty years of going about on this quest, thinking that just as in all of them no court of emperor or king has been able to equal yours in honor and fame, so in it will be found what until today, although I have visited them all, could not be found in them."

"Now tell me," said the king, "why does this very intense fire of this half of the sword not burn the scabbard?"

"That I shall tell you," said the squire, "gladly; know you, king, that between Tartary and India there is a sea so hot that it boils just like water over a fire, and it is all green, and within that sea are bred serpents bigger than crocodiles, and they have wings with which they fly and they are so poisonous that people flee from them with fear; but sometimes when they find them dead they value them highly, for they are very useful for making medicines; and this serpent has one bone from head to tail, and it is so thick that the whole body is formed on it, just as green as you see here on the sheath and its decoration; and because it was

reared in that boiling sea, no other fire can burn it. Now I tell you about the headdress of flowers, which are from trees that there are in the land of Tartary on an island located fifteen miles out to sea; and there are only two trees, and others are not known to exist today in any place on it; and a whirlpool is formed there in that sea so formidable and dangerous that men fear to cross over it to capture the serpents; but some who take a risk and bring them back, sell them as they wish, because if they are preserved, their greenness and vividness never perish. And now that I have told you the reasons for both phenomena, I want you to know why I travel around this way and who I am. Know you that I am a nephew of the best man of his time that there ever was, who was called Apolidon, and he dwelt for a long time in this land of yours on the Firm Island, where he left many enchantments and marvelous things, as is well known to everyone. And my father was King Ganor, his brother, to whom he left the kingdom, and by that Ganor and a daughter of the King of Canonia was I engendered; and when I was already at an age to be a knight, she asked me to grant her as a favor that since I had been a product of the great love obtaining between her and my father, I was not to be a knight except by the hand of the most faithful lover that ever was in the world, nor was I to take the sword except from the matron or maiden who loved to that same degree. I promised it to her, thinking I would not be delayed any longer in fulfilling my promise than it would take me to be in the presence of Apolidon, my uncle, and of Grimanesa, his mistress; but for me it turned out otherwise; for when I went before him, I found Grimanesa dead; and the cause of my coming having been ascertained by Apolidon, he had great pity for me, because the custom of that land is such, that not being a knight I am not able to reign in that seigniory, which comes to me by right. Therefore, not being able to remedy the situation at that time, he commanded me to return to him within a year, at the end of which he gave me this sword and headdress, telling me that for the act of stupidity I had committed in promising such a boon, I should compensate with the travail of seeking the knight and the woman who, by bringing to an end these two adventures, might enable me to fulfill my promise. Therefore, good king, this

is the reason for my quest; let your nobility appear, which has not been lacking for anyone, by your testing the magic sword, and all your knights likewise; and the queen with her ladies-in-waiting and maidens, the headdress of flowers; and if those be found who can complete it, the jewels will be theirs and the benefit and relief mine, with your carrying off the honors more than any other prince by finding in your court what is lacking in theirs."

When the old squire had finished his speech, all the knights who were with the king begged him very earnestly to order the test made; and he, who also wanted it, authorized it; and he told the squire that inasmuch as it was only five days until St. James' day, and on that day there were to be with him many knights whom he had summoned, to wait until then, because there being a larger number of people present there, it would be possible to find more easily what he was seeking. He considered it a good idea.

Gandalin, who was in the court at the time and had heard all that the squire said and what the king replied, mounting his horse went to Miraflores, and with the pretext of seeing Mabilia, went into the little patio of the beautiful trees, where he found Beltenebros playing chess with Oriana; and he said to them:

"Good friends, I bring you strange news that came today to the court."

Then he told them all about the business of the sword and headdress of flowers, and the reason the old squire brought them; and how the king had agreed that the test should be made, just as has been told you above.

Beltenebros, having heard this, lowered his head and became immersed in deep thought, so that he did not heed anything else, for in the opinion of Oriana and Mabilia and Gandalin, he was oblivious to the world. And thus he remained for a while, so long that Mabilia and Gandalin went out. And when he emerged from his meditation, Oriana asked him what caused that deep thought of his. He said to her:

"My lady, if through God and through you, my thought could be put into execution, you would make me very happy for all time."

"My good lover," said she, "for one who has made you master of her person, everything else will be easy to perform."

He took hold of her hands and kissed them many times, and said:

"Lady, what I was thinking about is that if you and I won those two jewels, our hearts would remain forever in great contentment, all the doubts by which they have been tormented being removed from them."

"How could that be done," said Oriana, "without its being for me, and for these maidens who know about our love affair, a great embarrassment and a greater danger?"

"It could be done very well," said Beltenebros, "for I shall escort you so well disguised and with such guarantees from the king your father that we would not be recognized, as if we were to go before the greatest strangers having no acquaintance with us."

"Well if that is so," said she, "let us carry out your wish, and may God grant that it be for the best, for I have no doubts about my wearing the headdress of flowers, if it can be won through excessive love."

Beltenebros said to her:

"I shall obtain a guarantee from your father that nothing will be demanded of me against my will; and I shall go fully armed, and you, my lady, will wear a brocade cape and a mask on your face, so that you can see everyone, and no one can see you; and in this manner we shall go and come without its being possible to ascertain who we are."

"My dear," said Oriana, "what you say seems good to me, and let us call Mabilia, for without her advice I would not dare agree to such an important matter."

They then called her, and the maid of Denmark, and Gandalin, who was with them; and they told them their plan; and although the danger appeared to them to be very great, recognizing that to be their desire, they did not contradict it; instead, Mabilia told them:

"The queen my mother sent to me, along with the other gifts that the maid of Denmark brought me, a very beautiful, well-

made cape, which has never been worn nor seen in all this land; and that will be for you, lady, to wear."

And at once they brought it there and put it on Oriana in a chamber, and dressing her the way she would go, with her gloves in her hand, and wearing her mask, they took her before Beltenebros, and however much he and they looked her over from head to toe, they could not find a thing by which she could be recognized by them or anyone else; and Beltenebros said:

"I never thought, lady, to be so happy not to see or recognize you."

And he ordered Gandalin to go at once to that market, and buying the most beautiful palfrey that could be had, to bring it there the day of the test to the wall of the garden, as soon as it would be past midnight. And likewise he ordered Durin, as soon as it was night, to wait for him with his horse at that place where they had entered the garden, because that night he wanted to go to the Fountain of the Three Jets; and to send Enil, his squire, to the king for the guarantee, and to take the arms that he was bringing him.

Finally, the hour having come, he left the garden and mounting his horse, went alone through the forest, which he knew very well, as one who had gone hunting in it many times; and it now being dawn, he found himself near the fountain, and it was not long before he saw Enil coming with his arms, including armor, very well made and beautiful, from which he derived great pleasure; and he asked him for news of the court. Enil told him that the king and all his men were speaking highly of his great prowess; and he sought to tell him about the sword and the headdress; but Beltenebros said to him:

"A good three days ago I obtained information about that from a maiden, on condition that I take her to the test very secretly; and it is important to me that it be done thus, and that I go with her incognito, and I shall test the sword; and because, as you know, it is my wish not to make myself known to the king or to anyone else until my deeds may merit it, you will return at once and tell the king that if he gives me a guarantee for myself and for a maiden that I shall bring, to the effect that nothing shall be done or said to us against our will, then we shall

go and try that adventure; and you will speak before the queen and her ladies-in-waiting and maidens about how the maiden makes me come there against my will, but that I could not do anything else, for I had promised it to her. And the day that the test is to be performed, come to this place at sunrise, in order that the maiden may know whether you bring the guarantee or not, and in the meantime I shall return to her in order to bring her, for she dwells far from here."

Enil said he would do so; and giving him the arms, he went away to carry out his orders. Beltenebros went to the stream that you have already heard about, and there he remained until night, and then he left for Miraflores. When he arrived he found Durin, who took his horse, and he went to the entrance of the garden, where he saw that his lady Oriana and the others were, who received him very well; and giving them his arms, he climbed up. Mabilia said to him:

"How is this, sir cousin? you come back richer than you left here?"

"You do not understand," said Oriana; "know you that he went to look for arms with which to get out of this prison."

"That is so," said Mabilia; "it is necessary that you take counsel, since you have to fight with him."

Thus they went in high good humor to the castle, where they fed Beltenebros, for the whole day he had not eaten in order not to be discovered.

CHAPTER LVII

HOW BELTENEHBROS AND ORIANA SENT THE MAID OF DENMARK TO THE COURT TO ASCERTAIN THE REPLY WHICH FOR SECURITY THEY HAD SENT TO ASK THE KING FOR, AND HOW THEY WENT TO THE TEST AND WERE THE ONES WHO WON THE HONOR OVER ALL OTHERS.

Next day they told the maid of Denmark to go to London to find out what reply the king was giving to Enil, and to tell the queen and all the ladies-in-waiting and maidens that Oriana had felt ill and she was staying abed. The maiden went at once to carry out their order and she did not return until quite late; and her delay was because the king came out to receive Queen Briolanja, who had come there, and she was bringing a hundred knights to look for Amadis, under the direction of his brothers. "And she brought twenty maidens dressed in black garments like herself, and she will not cease to wear black until she has news about him; for he found her thus dressed when he enabled her to reign; and she wants to stay there with the queen until her knights return, or until she has news of Amadis." Then Oriana said to her:

"Does she appear to you as beautiful as they say?"

"So save me God," said she, "excepting you, lady, she is the most beautiful and elegant woman of any I have seen. And she was very sorry when she learned of your illness. And through me she sends word to let you know that she will see you whenever you consider it all right."

"I shall be very pleased to be with her," said Oriana, "for she is the person in the world I want most to see."

"Honor her," said Beltenebros, "for she well deserves it, although you, madam, had certain thoughts."

"My dear," said she, "let us forget this, for I am sure my thought was erroneous."

"Well, I understand," said he, "that what we now obtain from this test will render you freer from it and me much more your slave."

"Then if what happened," said Oriana, "was because of the abundant love that I have for you, I trust in God that that head-dress of flowers will give proof of it."

Furthermore, the maiden told them that the king had granted Enil all the guarantees he had asked of him.

In this and other things in which they took pleasure, they spent that day and the others until the test was to be made. And the night before it, they got up at midnight and they dressed Oriana in the cape that you have already heard about, and they put the mask on her face; and Beltenebros, armed with that new and strong armor and other arms that Enil had brought him, having gone down over the garden wall, they mounted, she on a palfrey that Gandalin brought, and he on his horse; and alone they went through the forest by way of the Fountain of the Three Jets, with no little fear and dread on the part of Mabilia and the maid of Denmark lest they be recognized and that great radiance of joy be changed to great gloom. But when Oriana saw herself thus alone with her lover at night and in the forest, she was so frightened that her body trembled and she was not able to speak, and fear came to her concerning her ability to succeed in that adventure, and that to her lover, himself assured of his love for her, there might occur thereby some suspicion, and she wouldn't have set out on that journey for anything in the world. Beltenebros, seeing her deep agitation said to her:

"So help me God, lady, if I had thought that you feared this journey so much I would have died rather than to have started you out on it, and it will be well for us to turn back."

Then he turned the horse and the palfrey in the opposite direction from the one in which they were going; but when Oriana saw that because of her, such a significant thing as that was, was being blocked, she had a change of heart and said:

"My dear, don't be concerned with the fear that I as a woman have on seeing myself in a place so strange for me, but be concerned with what you as a good knight ought to do."

"My good lady," said he, "since your prudence overcomes my folly, pardon me; for I would not have dared to say or do anything, save that commanded willingly by you."

Then they went on as before; and they reached the Fountain of the Three Jets an hour before dawn; and when it was already bright daylight Enil arrived, whereat they were quite pleased, and Beltenebros said:

"Lady, this is the squire who I told you went to the king on my behalf; let us find out what word he brings."

Enil told them he brought word that everything was arranged by the king according to their desires, and that after mass the test would begin. Beltenebros gave him the shield and the lance, but did not remove his helmet; and they journeyed along the road to London, and traveled until they came through the town gate. Everyone was looking at them, saying:

"This is that good knight Beltenebros who sent Don Quadrante and the giants here. Surely, this man represents armed might at its pinnacle; that maiden who comes escorted by him ought to consider herself very fortunate."

Oriana, who heard all this, became proud to see herself the lady of that man who dominated by reason of his great strength so many and such others. Thus they reached the king's palace, where he and all his knights and the queen and her ladies-in-waiting and maidens were assembled for the test in a large hall; and when they ascertained their arrival, the king came out to receive them at the entrance to the hall; and as they came up to him, they knelt to kiss his hands. The king did not give them to them, and said:

"My good friend, note that whatever you wish, I shall do gladly, because it is for one who in a short time served me better than any knight has ever served a king."

Beltenebros thanked him with great humility and did not try to speak, and went with his maiden where he saw that the queen was. Oriana's flesh trembled with the terror she had on seeing herself in the presence of her father and mother, fearing to be

recognized; but her lover never relinquished her hand, and they knelt before the queen, and the queen raised them by the hands, and said:

“Maiden, I do not know who you are, for I have never before seen you; but for the great services which that knight who escorts you has rendered us, and for your own worth, all honor and favor as is owed to him, will be shown him and you.”

Beltenebros evinced gratitude; but Oriana did not answer anything, and held her head lowered in token of humility. The king placed himself with all his knights at one side of the hall, and the queen at the other side with her ladies and maidens. Beltenebros told the king he wanted to remain apart with his maiden in order that they might be the last ones to try that adventure. The king agreed to this.

Then the king went and took the sword that was on top of a table, and drew it out a span and no more. Macandon, for thus was the squire named who brought it, said:

“King, if in your court there is not any other more enamored than you, I shall not go from here with what I desire.”

And he put the sword back again, for he had to do so each time; and then Galaor made the trial, and he did not pull it out more than three fingers' breadth. And after him Florestan, and Galvanes, and Grumedan, and Brandoyvas, and Ladasin tried it, and none of them drew it out as much as Don Florestan, who took it out a span. And then Don Guilan the Pensive made the trial, and drew it half out. And Macandon said to him:

“If you were to love twice that much, you would win the sword, and I, what I have been seeking for so long.”

And after him more than a hundred very well-known knights tried it, and none of them drew the sword out, and there were those who drew it out not at all. And Macandon told those that they were heretics of love. Then Agrajes came to make the trial, and before he took it, he looked toward where his lady Olinda was, and he thought that the sword would be his, in view of the faithful and true love he had for her; and he drew it out until only a span remained of it, and he tried so hard to pull it out that the glowing part of the sword reached his clothing and burned part of it, and being happier for having drawn out more of it than

anyone else, he left it and returned to his place; but first Macandon said to him:

"Sir knight, you very nearly made yourself happy and me satisfied."

And then Palomir and Dragonis, who had arrived the day before at the court, tried it, and they drew the sword out as far as Don Galaor, and Macandon said to them:

"Knights, if you divide up the portion of the sword that you have drawn out, little would remain to you with which to defend yourselves."

"You speak truly," said Dragonis, "but if you at the end of this testing are dubbed a knight, you won't be too young to remember it."

They all laughed at what Dragonis said; but now with no one remaining in the whole court to try this adventure, Beltenebros stood up and took his lady by the hand and went where the sword was, and Macandon said to him:

"Sir foreign knight, this sword would become you better than the one you are wearing; but it would be well for you not to give up the latter out of confidence that you will obtain it, because this one, more through fidelity of heart than by force of arms is to be won."

But he took the sword and when he drew it completely out of the scabbard, at once the burning part was as shining as the other half, so that it all appeared as a unit. When Macandon saw this, he knelt before him and said:

"Oh good knight! May God honor you since you have so honored this court; quite rightly you should be loved and desired by the one you love, unless she is the falsest and most impudent woman in the world; I ask of you the honor of knighthood, since I can have it from your hand and not from any other, and you will be giving me land and sovereignty over many nobles."

"Good friend," said Beltenebros, "make the test of the head-dress, and I shall do for you what I rightly should."

Then he made the sign of the cross on the sword, and leaving his own for whoever should want it, he slung the other from his neck, and taking his lady by the hand returned to where he was before; but the praise of him was so great on the part of all the

knights and ladies in love who were in the palace that Don Galaor and Florestan were moved to great fury, considering it a great dishonor that anyone in the world, other than their brother, should be put ahead of them; and they immediately decided that the first thing after the battle of King Lisuarte and King Cildadan, if they remained alive, would be to fight with him and to die or make all recognize the difference there was between him and their brother Amadis.

The test of the sword having been completed by Beltenebros, as you have heard, the king gave orders that the queen and all the others who were in the palace were to test the headdress of the flowers without being afraid of it, for if a matron were to win it, she would be more beloved and desired by her husband, and if a maiden, that it would be glory for her to be the most faithful of all women. Then the queen went and put it on her head; but the flowers did not undergo any change from what they were before; and Macandon said to her:

“My lady queen, if the king your husband did not win much with the sword, it seems indeed that you have paid him back that same way.”

She returned abashed without saying anything; and then that very beautiful Briolanja, queen of Sobradisa, came up, but won no more than the queen. Macandon said to her:

“Most beautiful maiden, you must be more beloved than you love, according to what you have shown here.”

And then there came four princesses, daughters of kings: Elvida, and Estrelleta, her sister, who was very buxom and beautiful, and Aldeva; and Olinda the prudent one on whose head the dry flowers began to turn somewhat green, so that everyone thought that this woman would win it; but although she wore it for quite a bit, it did not make any other change; on the contrary as she took it off, the flowers became again as dry as before. And after Olinda, more than a hundred matrons and maidens tried it; but none came up to her, and Macandon was telling jokes and saying pleasantries to all the ladies; and Oriana, who had seen all of this, was very fearful that Queen Briolanja would win it; and when she saw that the latter had failed, she was quite pleased that her lover would not think

that the love which that lady had for him had been the cause of it, for as she seemed to her to a high degree more beautiful than any woman she had ever seen in her life, she did not think she would lose the headdress, unless to her; and when she saw that now no woman remained to try it, she gave a sign to Beltenebros that he escort her; and when she came up, they placed the headdress on her head, and immediately the dry flowers turned so green and so beautiful that one could not distinguish them from the others. And Macandon said:

“Oh good maiden! You are the one I had been seeking for forty years before you were born.”

Then he told Beltenebros that he should make him a knight and he begged that maiden to give him the sword from her own hand.

“Let it be at once,” said he, “for I cannot linger.”

Macandon put on some white clothing that he had brought with him and some white armor as a novice knight; and Beltenebros dubbed him a knight in the customary way and placed on him the right spur, and Oriana gave him quite a splendid sword that he had brought. When they saw him thus, the matrons and maidens began to laugh, and Aldeva said, and all heard it:

“Oh heavens, what an extraordinary youth and what an extraordinary adornment to all novice knights! It ought to please us greatly that he will be a novice all his life.”

“How do you know that?” said Estrelleta.

“By those clothes,” said she, “that he is wearing, which cannot wear out before he does.”

“May God make him so,” said they, “and may He keep him as handsome as he is now.”

“Good ladies,” said he, “I would not give my pleasure for your politeness; for better am I in politeness and youth than you in politeness and sense of shame.”

The king was pleased with what he had replied, for what they had said to Macandon did not seem proper to him.

This business done, Beltenebros took his lady and bade the queen farewell and she said to her daughter, whom she did not recognize:

"Good maiden, since your desire has been that we not recognize you, I beg you that from wherever you may be you let me know how you are getting along, and that you ask favors of me, for they will be granted you with pleasure."

"Lady," said Beltenebros, "I am as well acquainted with her as I am with you, although it has been only seven days that I have been going about with her; but as for what I have seen, I tell you she is beautiful and with such hair that she has no reason to cover it up."

Briolanja said to her:

"Maiden, I do not know who you are, but judging by what you have shown here of your love, if your lover loves you as much as you love him, this would be the fairest match that love ever united, and if he is smart, he will make it so."

Oriana was quite pleased with what Briolanja said. Whereupon they took leave of the queen and went away on horseback as they had come; and the king and Don Galaor went with them, and Beltenebros said to the king:

"Sire, take this maiden and honor her for she well deserves it, since she has so honored your court."

The king took her by her palfrey's rein, and he went on talking with Don Galaor, who had no desire to hear from him anything about good love because he already considered it settled that he would fight with him; and when they had ridden on for a while, Beltenebros took Oriana and said to the king:

"Sire, from here on may God be with you, and if you see fit that I be one of the hundred for your battle, I shall gladly serve you."

The king was quite pleased at this; and embracing him, he thanked him, saying that by having him come to his aid he was losing much of his fear.

So he and Galaor turned back. And Beltenebros penetrated into the forest with his mistress and with Enil, who was carrying the arms, very happy that their adventures had come out so well, he wearing that green sword at his neck and she wearing on her head the headdress of flowers. Thus they arrived at the Fountain of the Three Jets, and down from a mountain near at

hand they saw a squire coming on horseback; and on approaching, he said:

“Knight, Arcalaus orders you to bring this damsel before him, and that if you tarry and make him take horse, he will cut off your heads.”

“Where is Arcalaus the enchanter?” said Beltenebros.

The man pointed him out to him under some trees, and another with him; and they were armed and their horses beside them. Oriana, having heard this, was so frightened that she could hardly keep herself on the palfrey. Beltenebros came up to her and said:

“Lady, don’t fear; for if this sword does not fail me, I shall protect you.”

Then he took his arms, and said to the squire:

“Tell Arcalaus that I am a foreign knight who does not recognize him or has any reason to do his bidding.”

When Arcalaus heard this, he was very furious and said to the knight who was with him:

“Nephew Lindoraque, take that headdress that that maiden is wearing and it will be for your beloved, Madasima, and if the knight forbids your taking it, cut off his head, and hang her by the hair from a tree.”

Lindoraque mounted and went at once to do so, but Beltenebros, who had heard him, stopped in front of him and although he saw he was very big, as he was a son of Cartadaque, the giant of the Forbidden Mountain, and of a sister of Arcalaus, he held him in low esteem for the great arrogance with which he came, and he said to him:

“Knight, don’t come forward any farther.”

“On account of you I shall not desist from doing what you as an arrogant man and he an evil one can do.”

“Then now,” said Beltenebros, “there will be shown what you as an arrogant man and he an evil one can do.”

They they went and struck each other, with heavy collisions, so that their lances were broken, and Lindoraque was thrown from his saddle, and carried a piece of the lance thrust into his body; but he got up at once with his great valor, and seeing Beltenebros coming to strike him, and wishing to protect himself

from the blow, he stumbled and fell to the ground, so that the iron of the lance came through his back and he died at once. Arcalaus who saw him thus, quickly mounted to come to his aid; but Beltenebros went for him and made him miss with his lance thrust; and as he passed he gave him with the sword such a blow that he caused the lance along with half of his hand to fall to the ground, so that all he had left was his thumb. When he saw himself thus, he began to flee, and Beltenebros after him; but Arcalaus threw away the shield that he was wearing on his neck, and with the great speed of his horse pulled so far ahead that Beltenebros could not overtake him. Then he returned to his lady, and ordered Enil to take Lindoraque's horse and the hand and shield of Arcalaus, and to go to King Lisuarte and tell him why they had attacked him.

This having been done, he took his lady and went on his way; and after they had rested a little while beside a fountain, night having already come, they reached Miraflores, where they found Gandalin and Durin, who took their animals; and Mabilia and the maid of Denmark, who with great joy in their hearts received them at the wall of the entrance to the garden, as women who if for them some interval of time had elapsed, would not be expecting anything but their death; Mabilia said to them:

"You bring beautiful gifts; but indeed I tell you that we have paid for them with great anxiety of mind and many heartfelt tears; and thanks be to God who brought it off so well."

And they entered the castle, where they dined and rested with great joy and happiness.

King Lisuarte and Don Galaor returned to the town after they left Beltenebros; a maiden came to them and gave the king a letter, saying that it was from Urganda the Unknown, and another to Don Galaor; and without saying any more to him, she turned back on the road over which she had come previously. The king took the letter and read it. It read as follows:

"To you, Lisuarte, king of Great Britain: I, Urganda the Unknown, send greetings and make known to you that in that cruel and dangerous battle of yours and King Cildadan's that Beltenebros, by whom you are so much strengthened, will lose his name and great renown; for that one, by one blow that he

will strike will have all his great deeds placed in oblivion; and in that hour you will be in the greatest sorrow and danger you were ever in; and when the sharp sword of Beltenebros scatters your blood, you will be in complete danger of death. That will be a cruel and grievous battle where many strong and valiant knights will lose their lives; it will be of great fury and of harsh cruelty without any pity. But at the end, by the three blows which that Beltenebros will strike in it, those on his side will be the victors. Take care, king, what you do, for what I am sending to tell you will be done without doubt."

The letter having been read by the king, although he was absolutely a man of his word and of stout heart in all dangers, deeming this Urganda to be so wise that for the most part all the things she foretold turned out to be true, he was somewhat frightened, having believed that Beltenebros, whom he so greatly esteemed, would lose his life there and his own life would not be without great danger; but with a happy mien he went to Don Galaor, who had now read his letter and was thinking, and he said to him:

"My good friend, I wish to take counsel with you without anyone's knowing it, about this matter concerning which Urganda writes me."

Then he showed him the letter, and Don Galaor said to him:

"Sire, according to what is contained in mine, it is more fitting for me to be advised than to advise; but still, if some way could be found whereby this battle might be avoided with honor, I should deem it a good idea; and if this cannot be, at least I should think that you, sire, ought not to be in it, because I see here two very serious matters: one, that by the arm and sword of Beltenebros your blood will be shed, and the other that by three blows that he will give, those on his side will be victors. I don't know how to interpret it, because he is now on your side, and according to what the letter says, he will be on the other."

The king said to him:

"My good friend, the great love you have for me causes me not to be well advised by you; for if I were to lose my hope in that Lord who has placed me at such a great height, by thinking that the knowledge of any person could thwart His will, with

much cause and reason it being permitted by Him, I ought to be down from that height; because the courage and prudence of kings must be in conformity with the greatness of their status, and by doing what they should, not only with their subjects but in defense of them, the remedy for things that infuse in them fear and fright they must leave to that Lord in whom is complete power. Therefore, very good friend, I shall be in the battle, and that risk which God may give to my people, that risk I wish Him to give to me."

Don Galaor, deflected from another opinion and seeing the great spirit of the king, said:

"Not without cause are you praised for being the greatest and most honorable prince in the world; and if kings thus avoided the weak counsel of their subjects, no one would dare to tell them anything except what would truly be in their service."

Then he showed him his letter, which read thus:

"To you, Don Galaor of Gaul, strong and vigorous, I, Urgan-da, greet you as the one whom I esteem and love, and I wish that through me you learn what in the grievous battle, if you go into it, will happen to you; for after great atrocities and deaths seen by you in its final melee, your valiant body and tough limbs will fail your strong and ardent heart; and at the conclusion of the battle your head will be in the power of that one who will give the three blows by which it will be won."

When the king saw this, he said to him:

"Friend, if what this letter says, comes out true, it is clear that your death would come if you were to enter into that battle. And according to the way great conflicts at arms have turned out for you, very little fault would be found with you if you left this battle. So I shall arrange it so that in conformity with your service to me and with your own honor, you may be excused from it."

Don Galaor said to him:

"It indeed appears, sire, that from the advice that I gave you you have received annoyance, since although I am healthy and able-bodied, you command me to fall into such great error and discredit to my honor. May it please God not to give me any opportunity for being obedient to you in such a matter."

The king said:

“Don Galaor, you speak better than I. And now let us stop talking about this, having trust in that Lord which one should have, and let us guard these letters, because in view of the fearful words that come in them, if they were to be known, they could implant great cause for fear in people.”

Thereupon they went to the town, and before they entered it, they saw two armed knights on their weary, exhausted horses, and their armor hacked in some places, for it really appeared that they had not been without great confrontations; their names were Don Bruneo of Bonamar and Branfil, his brother; and they came in order to be in the battle if the king should wish to receive them; and Don Bruneo knew about the sword test; he had made a great effort to arrive in time to try the test, as one who already had been under the arch of the faithful lovers, as you have already heard; and because of the great and faithful love that he had for Melicia, Amadis's sister, he really thought that he would have won the sword and that any other thing, no matter how difficult, by reason of his great love, he would have accomplished; and he regretted very much that that adventure was ended. And when they saw the king they went to him with great humility, and he received them quite cordially. And Don Bruneo said to him:

“Sire, we have heard of a battle for which you have a date set, in which, as the number of people will be small, it will be important that choices be made, and if you have a report on us to the effect that our valor deserves to be in it, we shall serve you gladly.”

The king, who had already been informed by Don Galaor of the excellence of these two brothers, especially that of Don Bruneo, who was, although a youth, one of the outstanding knights to be found in a large area, was very pleased with them and with their service, and thanked them very much. Then Don Galaor made himself known and begged them to lodge with him, and until the battle was waged, that they be together, reminding him concerning Florestan his brother, and Agrajes and Don Galvanes, that these were always in one company.

Don Bruneo greatly appreciated his offer, saying to him that he was the knight whom he loved most in the world outside of Amadis, his brother, for whom he had spent great effort in searching, after he found out how he had set out in such wise from the Firm Island, and that he would not desist in the search, except for being in that battle, and that he agreed with him in what he said. Thus Don Bruneo and his brother Branfil stayed in the company of Don Galaor and in the service of King Lisuarte, as you have heard.

The king having betaken himself to his palace, Enil, squire of Beltenebros, arrived with the head dangling by the hair from the breast strap of his hackney, and with the shield and half of the hand of Arcalaus the enchanter; and before he entered the palace, there came behind him many people of that town to find out what that could be about. Reaching the king, he told him what Beltenebros had directed him to say to him, with which the king was very happy and marveled at the great deed of this valiant and courageous knight, and he was praising him highly, and thus did they all; but this increased the fury of Don Galaor and Don Florestan all the more, and they longed to fight with him, and to die or make everybody recognize that his deeds could not equal those of Amadis, their brother.

At this time Filispinel arrived, the knight who had gone on behalf of King Lisuarte to challenge the giants, as you have heard, and he identified most of those who were to be in the battle, in which there were many fierce giants and other knights with records of great deeds, and that they were already going to Ireland to join King Cildadan, and that within four days they would disembark at the port of Vega, where the battle was by agreement to take place; and also he told how he had found at Boiling Lake, which is on the Island of Mongaza, King Arban of North Wales and Angriote of Estravaus held captives by Gromadaza, the fierce giantess, wife of Famongomadan, who was holding them in very cruel captivity, in which they were tortured each day by many lashings and other severe tortures, so that their flesh, afflicted with many wounds, bled continually. And with him he brought a letter written for the king, which read thus:

“To the great lord Lisuarte, King of Great Britain, and to all our friends of his seigniory: I, Arban, wretched former king of North Wales, and Angriote of Estravaus, cast into a doleful prison, make known to you that our great misfortune, much more cruel than death itself, has put us in the power of violent Gromadaza, wife of Famongomadan, who in revenge for the death of her husband and son, makes us bear such tortures and punishments, cruel beyond all imagining, to such an extent that many times we have asked for death, which for us would be a great relief; but she, desirous of giving us each day a living death, causes our lives to be sustained, though they already would have been forsaken by us, if the loss of our souls had not prevented it. But because we have already arrived at the end of our ability to live, we have sought to send this letter written with our blood, and with it to say good-bye, beseeching our Lord that He may give you the victory of the battle against these traitors who have done us such harm.”

The king was greatly distressed about the loss of those two knights and had great grief in his heart; but perceiving that thereby they would be benefited very little, he mustered a cheerful countenance while encouraging his own men, putting before them many other serious affairs, in which those who seek to achieve honors and feats at arms had participated; inciting them to the battle, which if won, would be the real means of delivering those knights from prison. And he gave orders at once to all those who were to be with him in the battle, to be ready the next day; saying that he wanted to set out against his enemies, and so he did; for with that great courage he always had in all confrontations, he moved with his knights to give battle to them.

CHAPTER LVIII

HOW BELTENEBROS CAME TO MIRAFLORES AND WAS WITH HIS LADY ORIANA AFTER THE VICTORY OF THE SWORD AND HEADDRESS; AND FROM THERE HE WENT TO THE BATTLE THAT WAS AGREED UPON WITH KING CILDADAN, AND WHAT HAPPENED IN IT AT THE VICTORY THAT THEY HAD.

Beltenebros was with his lady in Miraflores for three days after he had won the sword and the headdress of flowers; and on the fourth day he left there alone at midnight, with only his arms and horse, for he ordered his squire Enil to go to a castle that was at the foot of a mountain near where the battle was to take place. This castle belonged to an old knight who was called Abradan, from whom all the knights errant received much service; and that night Beltenebros passed near the army of King Lisuarte. And he traveled so far that on the fifth day he arrived there and found Enil who had come that day, at which he was quite pleased, and he was very well received by the knight. And while he was there, two squires, nephews of the host, arrived, who came from where the battle was to be, and they said that Cildadan had already arrived with his knights, and that they lodged in tents near the seashore and they were unloading their arms and horses, and that they saw arrive there Don Grumedan and Giontes, nephew of King Lisuarte, and that they had arranged a truce until the day of the battle, and also that neither one of the kings was to put in the battle more than one hundred knights, as had been stipulated. The host said to them:

“Nephews, what do you think of those people whom may God curse?”

"Good uncle," said they, "it is not for discussion, in view of the extent to which they are strong and formidable, for we shall tell you that unless God miraculously favors the side of our lord the king, his power against them is as nothing."

Tears came to the eyes of the host and he said:

"Oh, powerful Lord, do not forsake the finest and most upright king in the world!"

"Good host," said Beltenebros, "do not be dismayed by fierce people, for many times excellence and modesty overcome arrogant valor. And I beg you earnestly to go to the king and tell him that in your house is a knight by the name of Beltenebros, and that he let me know the day of the battle, for I shall be there at once.

When he heard this, he was very cheerful and said:

"What, sir, you are the one who sent Don Quadragante to the court of the king my lord, and the one who killed that fierce giant Famongomadan and his son when they took Leonoreta and her knights prisoners! Now I tell you that if I have done some service to knights errant, with this single reward I consider myself satisfied for everything, and what you command me, I shall gladly do."

Then taking with him those nephews of his, he went where they guided him and found that King Lisuarte and all his company had arrived within a half league of their enemies and that the battle would be the next day; and he told him the message that he brought, which made the king and everyone very happy, and he said:

"Now we lack only one knight for the full complement of the hundred."

Don Grumedan said:

"Rather I think, sire, that you have an excess of them, for Beltenebros is well worth five."

Don Galaor and Florestan and Agrajes were greatly irked at this remark, for they did not like any honor to be given to Beltenebros, through envy of his great deeds rather than for any other enmity, but they kept silent. Abradan, being informed concerning what he had come for, having taken leave of the king, returned to his guest and told him of the pleasure and the great

joy that the king and all his men had with his message, and that to fill out the complement of one hundred only one knight was lacking. Enil, hearing this, drew Beltenebros aside through a door and kneeling before him said:

"Although I, sir, have not served you, presuming on your great integrity, I wish to ask a favor of you, and I beg you in heaven's name to grant it to me."

Beltenebros raised him up and said:

"Ask whatever you wish, that I am able to do."

Enil sought to kiss his hands, but he would not permit it, and Enil said:

"Sir, I ask of you that you make me a knight and that you ask the king to put me into the count of the hundred knights, since one is lacking."

Beltenebros said to him:

"Friend Enil, let not a desire to begin with such a great and dangerous action as this will be enter into your heart. And I do not tell you this in order not to make you a knight, but because it is more fitting for you to begin with other, easier actions."

"My good sir," said Enil, "for the sake of being in this battle I cannot be risking danger to such an extent from being in it, even if death may come to me, as that extent to which great honor may accrue to me from it; for if I come out alive, it will always be an honor and a distinction for me to have been included in the number of the aforesaid one hundred knights, and I shall be regarded as one of them; and if I die, death would be quite welcome, because memory of me would be joined with that of the other valued knights who are to die there."

A loving compassion came to the heart of Beltenebros and he said to himself: "You indeed seem to be of that lineage of the esteemed and loyal Don Gandales, my foster father." And he replied to him:

"Since you want it thus, so be it."

He went at once to his host and asked to give him some arms for his squire, for he wanted to dub him a knight. The host gave them to him gladly, and Enil having kept his vigil that night in the chapel and having said mass at dawn, Beltenebros dubbed him knight. And immediately he left for the battle, and his host with

him with the two nephews, who were carrying their arms for them. And on arriving where it was to be, they found good King Lisuarte, who was setting his knights in battle order for attacking their enemies, who were waiting for them on a level field; and when he saw Beltenebros, he as well as his men took very great courage, and Beltenebros said to him:

“Sire, I come to carry out my promise, and I bring a knight with me in place of the one I learned you were lacking.”

The king received him with great joy, and he placed his knight in the complement of the hundred.

Then he moved one battle line of his men against their enemies, as there were not enough men for more. But in front of the king, who was going in the middle of the battle line, they put Beltenebros and his companion, and Don Galaor and Florestan and Agrajes, and Gandalas, foster father of Don Galaor and his sons Bramandil and Gavus, whom Don Galaor had already dubbed a knight, and Nicoran of the Fearful Bridge and Dragonis and Palomir, and Vinorante and Giontes, nephew of the king, and the esteemed Don Bruneo of Bonamar, and his brother Branfil and Don Guilan the Pensive. These went together in front of everybody as you have heard; at their head went that honorable and esteemed old man Don Grumedan, foster father of Queen Brisena, with the king's standard.

King Cildadan had his people very well drawn up and in front of himself the giants, who were very evil folk, and with them twenty knights of their lineage, who were very brave; and he ordered Madanfagul, the giant of the island of the Red Tower and ten knights with him, the most valued that he had there, to stand on a little knoll. And he commanded him not to move from there until the battalion was engaged and all were tired, and that then attacking fiercely, he should try to kill King Lisuarte or capture and bring him to the ships.

Thus, as you hear, they went at each other in fine order and very slowly. But when they came close, those who were going in front collided so violently that many of them went to the ground. But at once both battalions joined in battle with such great fury and cruelty that their strong valor caused many horses to flee across the field without their masters, leaving some of

them dead and others badly wounded. Therefore with good reason it could be said that that day was violent and grievous for those who were there. With them attacking and killing one another, the third part of the day passed without there being any rest, with so much rigor and travail on the part of everyone that it being in the boiling hot weather of summer, with its tremendous heat, they as well as their horses very exhausted and weary went on miraculously, and the wounded lost much blood, so that not being able to maintain life, they remained on the battlefield as ugly corpses, especially those who had been wounded by the giants.

At that time Beltenebros performed great feats at arms, holding that very good sword of his in his hand, knocking down and killing those whom he found in front of him, although the concern over guarding the king in the great melee in which he saw him hindered him, for if the king were overcome, the entire dishonor would be his, just as if he were victor, the glory would be his, and this caused the king to put those protecting him in the greatest danger. But the rare exploits accomplished by Beltenebros having been seen by Don Galaor and Florestan and Agrajes, they kept on holding along with him, giving and sustaining so many blows that the great envy felt by them caused those on their side to be pointed out to the great advantage of all. And Don Bruneo joined with them and guarded Don Galaor, who like a furious lion, in order to equal the prowess of Beltenebros, not fearing the tremendous blows of the giants or the death that he saw others suffer before his eyes, plunged with his sword among his foes attacking and killing them; and going about as you hear, with angry, raging heart, he saw before him the giant Cartadaque of the Forbidden Mountain, who with a heavy axe was striking all those he could reach such tremendous blows that he had more than six knights lying at his feet; but he was wounded in the shoulder by a blow that Don Florestan had given him, so that much blood was flowing from him. And Don Galaor seized his sword and went for him, and gave him such a slanting blow on top of his helmet that as much as he reached of it along with one ear, he struck off; and his sword not stopping there, cut the shaft of the axe near his hands. When the giant saw him so near, not having anything with which he could strike, he threw his

arms around him with such force that the saddle girths having been broken, he dragged the saddle off after him and Don Galaor fell to the ground, the giant holding him so tightly that he could not escape from his strong arms; it seemed to him rather that all his bones were being pulverized. But before losing his senses, Don Galaor recovered his sword that he had hanging at his side; piercing the giant through his visor, he made him lose the strength of his arms, so that in a short time he was dead. Galaor got up so tired with the great effort that he had exerted and from the blood that was flowing copiously from his wounds that he was not able to draw his sword out of the head of the giant.

And there gathered there to aid them many knights from both sides, who made the battle more harsh and cruel than it had been all day, among whom King Cildadan arrived to aid his side and Beltenebros the other side. And with his sword he struck King Cildadan on the head two blows so heavy that he caused him, devoid of all his strength, to fall from his horse at the feet of Don Galaor; who took the sword that fell from him and began to deliver mighty blows in all directions until he lost strength and consciousness, and not being able to hold himself upright, fell on top of King Cildadan as though dead.

At this hour the giants Gandalas and Albadanzor came to grips and they both struck each other with their maces such heavy blows that they and their horses went down to the ground. This Albadanzor had one arm broken, and Gandalas a leg, but he and his sons killed Albadanzor.

At that time there were on both sides more than one hundred twenty knights dead, and it was already noon. And Mandafabul, the giant of the Island of the Red Tower, who was on the hillock as you have heard, at that juncture scrutinized the battle, and as he saw so many dead and the others weary and their armor rent in many places, and the horses wounded, he decided that with his companions he could easily conquer the others; and he moved from the hill with such momentum and so furiously that it was a marvel, shouting to his men:

“Don't leave a man alive, and I shall take or kill King Li-suarte.”

And Beltenebros, who saw him coming thus, and who then had taken a rested horse from one of the nephews of Abradan, his host, placed himself in front of the king, calling Florestan and Agrajes, whom he saw nearby; and they were joined by Don Bruneo of Bonamar and Branfil and Guilan the Pensive and Enil, who had done much in that battle, for which reason he was forever held in high fame. All these, although they and their horses were wounded severely, placed themselves in front of the king. And in front of Madanfagul came a knight named Sarmadan the Lion, the strongest and most valiant at arms of all those of the lineage of King Cildadan, and he was his uncle. And Beltenebros came out to him from among his men, and Sarmadan struck him with his lance on the shield, and although it was broken, he pierced it and gave him a wound, but not a severe one. And Beltenebros as he passed him struck him with the sword across the visor of his helmet such a glancing blow that both eyes were shattered and he fell to the ground senseless. But Madanfagul and those who came with him attacked so fiercely that most of those who were with King Lisuarte were unhorsed. And Madanfagul went straight for the king with such ferocity that those who were with him were not powerful enough to defend him with any blows they might deliver, and he threw his arm around his neck and squeezed it so hard that he pulled him out of his saddle deprived of all his strength and was going away with him to the ships. Beltenebros, who saw him carried thus, said:

“Oh, Lord God, may it not please you that Oriana suffer such offense!”

And he spurred his horse and seized his sword, and overtaking the giant, struck him with all his strength on the left arm, on which he was carrying the king, and cut it off near the elbow, and cut one side of the king's coat of mail and gave him a wound from which much blood flowed; and leaving him on the ground, the giant fled hobbling like a cripple.

When Beltenebros saw that he had destroyed that fierce giant with that blow and freed the king from such danger, he began to shout:

“Gaul, Gaul, for I am Amadis!”

And he said this while attacking his foes, unhorsing and killing many of them, which was very necessary at that time, because the knights on his side were very much decimated in number, some of them wounded, others on foot and still others dead. And the enemy had arrived rested and with great strength and with a strong desire to kill as many as they could reach, and for this reason Amadis hurried very fast. So it can well be said that his great strength was the restorative and protection of all those on his side; and what made him gather more strength was Don Galaor, his brother, whom he saw on foot and very tired; and afterwards he had not seen him, although he had searched thoroughly for him; and he thought he was dead, whereupon he killed every knight he met.

When King Cildadan's men saw such havoc among those on his side and the great deeds that Amadis was performing, they took for their leader a knight of the lineage of the giants, a very valiant man, Gadancuriel by name, and he was inflicting such great damage on their opponents that he was scrutinized and singled out by all; and with him they hoped to overcome their foes. But at this hour, Amadis with the great rage that he felt and with his desire to kill those whom he overtook, penetrated so deeply into the ranks of his opponents that he might have been lost. And King Lisuarte, having now taken a horse—there being with him Don Bruneo of Bonamar and Don Florestan and Guilan the Pensive and Ladasin and Galvanes Lackland and Olivas, and Grumedan, from whose arms they had cut away the standard he was bearing—on seeing Amadis in great danger, although he was wounded with many wounds, came to his aid like a good king to the great pleasure of all when they learned that Beltenebros was Amadis; and all together they went in among the foe, attacking and killing, so that they did not dare await them. And they allowed Amadis to go wherever he wished so that chance guided him where Agrajes, his cousin, and Palomir and Branfil and Dragonis were on foot, for their horses had been killed and many knights had set upon them who were trying to kill them; and they were together and were defending themselves very bravely. And as he saw them there, he shouted to Don Florestan, his brother, and to Guilan the Pensive, and with

them he rescued them. And there came at him a very distinguished knight, Vadamigar by name, whose helmet had been knocked off his head, and he gave Amadis a tremendous thrust with the lance on the neck of his horse, so that the iron tip of the lance passed through to the other side; but Amadis reached him with the sword and cleaved him down to his ears. And as he fell, Amadis said:

“Cousin Agrajes, mount that horse.”

And Don Florestan unhorsed another knight, Danel by name, and gave his horse to Palomir; and Don Guilan gave another horse to Branfil, from which he had unhorsed Landin, leaving him very badly wounded; and Palomir brought another horse to Dragonis, so that all were rescued. And they followed where Amadis was leading, performing wonders at arms and calling out his name so that the enemy might recognize him and be plunged into greater fear. And so well did he and Agrajes and Don Florestan fight along with those knights that they found themselves joined with them. And with the great excellence of the king, their lord, who that day was of considerable avail, demonstrating his fine courage, they won the battle, most of their foes remaining dead or wounded on the battlefield. But Amadis with the great rage he had on thinking that Don Galaor, his brother, was dead, went on attacking and killing them until he drove them to the sea, where they had their fleet.

But that valiant and courageous Gadancuriel, leader of the opponents, when he saw his men thus overcome and that he would not be allowed to go on board the ships, gathered as many as he could with him and turned with sword raised in his hand to attack the king, who was closest to him; but Florestan, who had seen him delivering great and vicious blows that day, fearing danger to the king, put himself in front in order to receive the blows on himself, although there remained to him only the hilt of his sword. And Gadancuriel struck him so hard on top of the helmet that he cut it down to the flesh and Florestan struck him with what he had left of the sword such a blow that he knocked the helmet from his head. And the king came up then and hit Gadancuriel with his sword, so that he split his head in two.

And since he was dead, nobody remained to hold the field; rather, in order to reach the boats they died in the water and the others on land, so that none remained. Then Amadis called Don Florestan and Agrajes and Dragonis and Palomir, and said to them weeping:

“Ah, good cousins, I am afraid we have lost Don Galaor. Let us go and look for him.”

So they went to where Amadis had seen him on foot, there where he had unhorsed King Cildadan, and there were so many dead that they could not find him. But by turning them all over, Florestan found him, recognizing him by a sleeve of his surcoat that was blue with flowers embroidered on it in silver; and they began to lament loudly over him. When Amadis saw this, he dropped from his horse, and the wounds that were already coagulated, with the force of the fall were opened, so that blood flowed freely from him. Taking off his helmet and his shield, which were shattered, he came up weeping to Galaor and took off the latter's helmet and put his head on his knees; and Galaor, with the air he gave him, began to stir somewhat.

Then they all came up weeping with bitter grief on seeing him thus. And when they had been there for a short while, twelve maidens, well-dressed, arrived there, and with them squires who were bearing a litter covered with fine cloth, and they knelt before Amadis and said:

“Sir, we have come here for Don Galaor. If you want him alive, give him to us; if not, all the doctors in Great Britain will not cure him.”

Amadis, who did not recognize the maidens, was thinking about Galaor's great danger; he did not know what to do; but those knights advised him that it was better to give him to them at a risk than to see him die before their eyes without being able to help him. Then Amadis said:

“Good maidens, could we find out where you are taking him?”

“No,” said they, “for the present, and if you want him alive, give him to us at once; if not, we shall go away.”

Amadis begged them to take him with him, but they would not; and at his request they took Ardian, his dwarf, and his squire.

Then they put him thus armed except his head and hands, and half dead, on the litter. And Amadis and those knights, lamenting loudly, went as far as the sea with him, where they saw a ship, into which the maidens put the litter. And then they asked King Lisuarte please to give them King Cildadan who was among the dead, reminding him that he had been a good king and that by his doing what he was obligated to do, Fortune had led him into such great tribulation that he should have compassion for him, so that if that Fortune were to turn against him, he might encounter it in others. The king gave orders to deliver him more dead than alive to them; and at once they took him in that litter and put him on the ship. And hoisting the sails, they left the shore in great haste.

At this point the king approached, who had been making an effort so that nothing might be saved of the fleet of his enemies, and causing those to be taken prisoners who had not died in battle; and he found Amadis and Don Florestan and Agrajes weeping, and all the others who were there. And finding out that the cause of it was the loss of Don Galaor, he was much grieved and pained in his heart, as one who loved him sincerely and held him dear. And this very rightly, for since the day he remained as his liege man, he never thought of any thing but serving him. And the king dismounted, although he had many wounds, for his arms were all stained with his blood, and embraced Amadis, out of the very great love he had for him, and consoling him and telling him that if great regret could cure the ills of Galaor, his own would suffice in view of the great sorrow for him that he felt in his heart; but by having hope in the powerful Lord, who would not want to forsake entirely such a man, he consoled himself, and thus with their courageous minds, they should do. And taking them with him he went to the tent of King Cildadan, which was rare and luxurious, and there he kept them with him, asking that he be brought something to eat and afterwards that diligence be exercised in burying the knights who died on his behalf in a monastery that there was at the foot of that mountain. And he ordered them to make provisions for their souls and he gave great sums of money, not only for the restoration of their souls, but also that a very fine chapel be built and that

here they be placed in tombs richly ornamented, and their names inscribed on them. And messengers having been dispatched to Queen Brisena, informing her of that good fortune that God had given him, he and those knights who were badly wounded went to a town four leagues from there, which was called Ganota, and there they remained until they were healed of their wounds.

In the meantime while the battle took place, the beautiful Queen Briolanja, who had remained with Queen Brisena, decided to go to Miraflores to see Oriana, for they, the one just as much as the other, wanted to see each other because of the reputation of their beauty. Oriana, having learned of Briolanja's intention, ordered her apartment to be adorned with very luxurious hangings; and when the queen arrived and they saw each other, they were greatly astounded, so much so that neither the enchanted arch nor the trial of the sword had such an effect or gave such assurance as to exempt Oriana from a very great shock, she believing that in the world there was not a heart so captivated and subjugated that the beauty of Briolanja by breaking those bonds would not win it for itself. And Briolanja, having sometimes seen the anguish and tears of Amadis together with those great tests of arms here told, suspected at once that in view of his great worth, his heart did not deserve to suffer except for that one before whom all those women who were esteemed for their beauty had to flee in order that their beauty not be eclipsed by her great brilliance, freeing Amadis from blame for thus having rejected what on her part was tried on him.

Thus they were both together speaking with much pleasure about the things that they liked best. And as Briolanja was telling among other things what Amadis had done for her as the most important, and how she had sincere regard for him, Oriana, in order to find out more, said:

"My lady and queen, since he is so excellent and of such high esteem, as a descendant of the most lofty emperors in the world, according to what I have heard, and expecting to be king of Gaul, why wouldn't you take him with you, making him lord of that realm that he gave you to win, since in all things he is your equal?"

Briolanja said to her:

"Dear lady, I really believe that although you have seen him many times, you do not know him. Don't you think I would consider myself the luckiest woman in the world if I could have achieved what you say? But I want you to know what happened to me in this matter, and keep it secret as such a lady as you should keep it, for I came at him with what you said just now and I tried to have him for myself in wedlock, about which I am always ashamed whenever I think of it; and he gave me clearly to understand that he cared little about me or about any other woman. And this I have believed because while he dwelt with me during that period of time, I never heard him speak of any other woman as all the other knights do. But this much I tell you that he is the one man in the world for whom I would rather lose my kingdom and risk my person."

Oriana was very happy about this which she heard from her, and more confident of this friend of hers, from witnessing the great feeling with which Briolanja uttered it, than because of any of the other proofs, and she said:

"I am astounded at what you have told me, for if Amadis did not love any woman, he could not have entered under the arch of the loyal lovers, where they say that for him were made greater signs of loyal love than for any other who was there."

"He can indeed love," said the queen, "but he is the most secretive knight that ever was."

Talking about this and many other things, they were there ten days, at the end of which they both went with their retinue to the town of Fernisa, where Queen Brisena was awaiting the king her husband. She was very pleased with them on seeing her daughter in good health and her beauty restored. There the good news came to them of the winning of the battle, and as a result of the great pleasure it gave them, Queen Brisena gave many alms to churches and monasteries, and to other persons who were needy. But when Queen Briolanja heard that Amadis was the one they called Beltenebros, who could tell you the joy that her heart felt? And equally joyful were Queen Brisena and all the matrons and maidens who loved him dearly; and with them Oriana and Mabilia pretending that that news had come to them as recently as to the others. And Briolanja said to Oriana:

"What do you think, my dear, about that good knight who until now was praised, while the fame of Amadis was becoming beclouded? For already there was scarcely any remembrance of him: and although I esteemed him greatly and knew much concerning his deeds of chivalry, I was already in doubt, on seeing the mighty exploits of Beltenebros, as to which of them I should be inclined to favor."

"My lady queen," said Oriana, "I know that already we were all in the same situation; and if he comes with the king, my father, let us ask him for what reason he abandoned his name and who is the woman who won the headdress of the flowers."

"So let it be done," said Briolanja.

CHAPTER LIX

HOW KING CILDADAN AND DON GALAOR WERE CARRIED AWAY IN ORDER TO HEAL THEM, AND WERE PLACED, THE ONE IN A STRONG TOWER FLANKED BY THE SEA, THE OTHER IN A GARDEN WITH HIGH WALLS AND ADORNED WITH IRON GRATINGS, WHERE EACH ONE OF THEM, ON RECOVERING CONSCIOUSNESS, THOUGHT HE WAS IN PRISON, THEY NOT KNOWING BY WHOM THEY HAD BEEN BROUGHT THERE AND WHAT ELSE HAD HAPPENED TO THEM.

Now we shall tell you what became of King Cildadan and Galaor. Know you that the maidens who carried them away took care of their wounds and on the third day they were completely conscious again. And Don Galaor found himself inside a garden in a finely wrought edifice supported by four marble pillars, enclosed from pillar to pillar with a strong grating of iron, so that the garden, from a bed where he was placed, was visible, and what he could manage to see of it appeared to be surrounded by a high wall, in which there was a little door covered with sheet-iron, and he was frightened on seeing himself in such a place, thinking he had been put in prison, and he found himself in great pain from his wounds, so that he expected only death. And there he remembered how he went to the battle, but he did not know who took him out of it, nor how they had brought him there.

King Cildadan on returning to complete consciousness, found himself in a vaulted chamber of a great tower, on a luxurious bed set beside a window. He looked from one end to the other, but did not see a single person, and he heard people talking overhead, above the vault, but could not see any door or entrance in that

chamber where he was. And he looked through the window, thrusting his head out, and saw the sea and that where he was, was a very high tower, built on a steep cliff, and it seemed to him that the sea surrounded it on three sides; and he remembered that he had been in the battle, but did not know who had taken him out of it. But he really thought that since he was in such bad physical condition and thus imprisoned, his own men were probably not very free; and as he saw that there was nothing more he could do, he settled down in his bed, groaning and suffering a great deal from his wounds, awaiting what might happen to him.

And Don Galaor, who was in the garden-house, as you have already heard, saw the small door open, and he raised his head with great effort and saw a maiden, very beautiful and well dressed, enter through it, and with her a man so weak and so old that it was a wonder that he could walk; coming up to the iron grating of the chamber, they said to him:

“Don Galaor, think of your soul; and we are not saving you or guaranteeing your safety.”

Then the beautiful maiden took out two containers, one of iron and the other of silver, and showing them to Don Galaor, said to him:

“The one who brought you here does not want you to die until he knows whether you will do his will, and in the meantime he wants you to be treated for your wounds and be fed.”

“Good maiden,” said he, “if the will of the one of whom you speak is to want me to do what I should not, it would be a harder thing for me than death; as regards everything else, in order to save my life, I shall do it.”

“You will do,” said she, “what may be best for you, for we care little about what you say. Whether to live or die is in your hands.”

Then that old man opened the door of the cell and they came in; and she took the iron container and told the old man to withdraw outside, and he did so. And she said to Don Galaor:

“My lord, I have such grief for you that in order to save your life I am willing to risk death, and I shall tell you what I have been ordered to do: that I should fill this container with poison

and the other with ointment that makes one sleep a great deal; because if the poison were placed in your wounds and the other used to put you to sleep, since it works most powerfully in sleep, you would quickly be dead. But feeling sorry that such a knight should die in such wise, I have done the opposite, for here I have put that medicine which, if it is taken by you each day, after seven days will make you so well that without difficulty you can ride horseback."

Then she put on the wounds that ointment, so soothing that the swelling and pain were reduced immediately, so that he found himself quite at ease, and he said to her:

"Good maiden, I thank you very much for what you have done for me, for if I leave here by your hand, never was the life of a knight so well rewarded as this one will be to you. But if by chance your efforts to that end are not sufficient and you wish to do something for me, contrive that this very dangerous imprisonment of mine be made known to that Urganda the Unknown, in whom I have great hope."

The maiden began to laugh heartily, and said:

"What! You have so much hope in Urganda, who cares so little about your welfare or harm?"

"So much," said he, "that if she knows the wills of others, then she knows that my wish is to serve her."

"Do not pay attention," said she, "to any other Urganda but me, provided that you, Don Galaor, just as you have had great courage to place your health in such danger, so also have courage to mend it, for a great and courageous heart ought to make itself manifest in things other than fighting, and in payment for the danger I incur for you, not only to bring you back to health but also to get you out of here, I wish you to grant me a boon, which will not be to your discredit or harm."

"I grant it to you," said he, "if I can give it to you legitimately."

"Then I am going away until it be time to see you; and lie down, pretending to be sound asleep."

He did so, and the maiden called the old man and said:

"Look how this knight is sleeping. Now the poison will work on him."

"Thus it is necessary," said the old man, "in order that the one who brought him here be avenged. And since thus you have carried out what they ordered you to do, henceforth you will come without a guard; and keep him this way for two weeks so that he neither dies nor lives except in great pain, because in the meantime those will come who will give him the payment for the offense he has given them."

Galaor heard all this, and it indeed seemed to him that the old man was his mortal enemy. But he had hope in what the maiden had told him, that she would turn him out cured in seven days, because if Fortune were to restore him to health, then he would be able to free himself from that danger; and for this reason he plucked up courage, as the maiden advised him. At this juncture she and the old man went away, but it was not long before he saw her return, and with her two little girls, beautiful and well dressed, and they were bringing something for Don Galaor to eat. And opening the door they came inside, and the maiden fed him and left with him those two little girls to keep him company, and story books for them to read to him, and orders not to let him sleep by day. Galaor was very much comforted by this, for he saw indeed that the maiden wanted to carry out what she had promised him, and he was very grateful to her for it. Then she went away, closing the door, and the little girls remained, keeping him company.

Thus it happened also, as you have heard, to King Cildadan, who found himself locked in that strong, high tower overlooking the sea; and after a little while during which he was in deep thought, he saw a door of stone open that was set in the tower, so joined that it appeared just like the wall itself, and he saw a matron of middle age and two armed knights enter through the door. And they came over to the bed where he was, but they did not greet him, and he did greet them, speaking to them with a good countenance; but they did not reply to him. The matron took off the covering that he had over himself and examining his wounds, she put medicine on them and fed him. And they returned to where they had come from without saying a word, and left the stone door closed as it was before. This having been seen by the king, he really believed that he was in prison, placed in

the custody of persons in whose keeping his life was not very safe; but he plucked up his courage as best he could, not being able to do more.

The maiden who was caring for Galaor returned to him when she saw it was time, and asked him how he was. He told her he was all right, and that if he kept on improving, he believed he would be in a good state of health by the deadline she had set.

"I am quite pleased about that," said she, "and with regard to what I told you, do not doubt that it will be carried out thus. But I wish you to grant me a favor as a loyal knight: that you will not try to leave here except by my hand, because it would be for you mortal harm and danger for your life, and at the end you would not be able to carry it through."

Galaor promised her this, and begged her earnestly to tell him her name. She said:

"What, Don Galaor, don't you know my name? Now I tell you that I am mistaken about you, because there was a time when I did a service for you, which as I see, you little remember; and if my name recalls it to you, know you that I am called Sapience Super-sapience."

And at once she went away; and he, when thinking about that and recalling the beautiful sword that Urganda gave him at the time that Amadis, his brother, made him a knight, suspected that this maiden might be she; but he was doubtful about it, because at that time he saw her very old, and now young; for this reason he did not recognize her. And he looked for the little girls, but did not see them; but he saw instead Gasaval, his squire and Ardian, Amadis's dwarf, whereat he was astounded and happy with them; and he called them, for they were asleep until he awoke them. And when they saw him, they went weeping with joy to kiss his hands, and they said to him:

"Oh, good sir, blessed be God, who has united us with you where we may serve you!"

He asked them how they had entered there. They told him they didn't know except that "Amadis and Agrajes and Florestan sent us with you." Then they told him about the condition he had been in, and how, when Amadis was holding his head in his lap, the maidens came up to ask for him; and how by agreement

between them and his friends they had given him to the maidens on seeing him at the point of death; and how they had put him in the boat and King Cildadan with him. Don Galaor said to them:

“How was Amadis found at such a time?”

“Sir,” said they, “know you that he who was called Beltenebros is your brother Amadis, and through his great courage the battle was won for King Lisuarte.”

And they told him how he had come to the aid of the king when the giant was carrying him under his arm, and how then he called himself Amadis.

“Great things,” said Galaor, “you have told me, and I am very pleased to have the news about my brother; although if he does not give me a legitimate reason why he had to hide his identity from me for such a long time, I shall be complaining about him a great deal.”

Just as you hear, King Cildadan and Don Galaor remained, the one in that great tower and the other in the garden-house, where they were healed of their wounds until they could now go wherever they wished without danger. Then Urganda, in whose power they were on that island of hers called the Undiscovered, after making herself known to them and telling them that the fears that she had infused in them had been, in order to give them back their health more quickly, for in view of the great straits in which their lives were, that was necessary for them. She commanded two nieces of hers — very beautiful maidens, daughters of King Falangris, late brother of King Lisuarte, who begot them as a youth in a sister of this same Urganda, Grimota by name — to serve and visit them and complete their cure. One of them was named Julianda, the other, Solisa; during the said visitations, occasions were afforded for their becoming pregnant by them with two sons: the son of Don Galaor was Talanque; that of King Cildadan, Maneli the Prudent; both of whom turned out to be very brave and courageous knights, as will be related later. With these ladies Galaor and Cildadan were there much to their pleasure in great delight, until Urganda was pleased to take them away from there, as you will hear further on.

But King Lisuarte, now recovering somewhat from his wounds, as also were Amadis and all the other knights, went to Fernisa,

where Queen Brisena, his wife, was; and there by her and by Briolanja and Oriana, and all the other ladies and maidens of high degree, he was so well received and with such joy as never was any other man in any time; and after him, Amadis, for by now the queen and all those ladies knew how he not only had saved the king, their lord, from death, but also that the battle was won through his great courage; thus they welcomed all the other knights who remained alive. But what Queen Briolanja did with Amadis, this can by no means be written down; and taking him by the hand she had him sit between her and Oriana, and she said to him:

“My lord, the grief and sadness that I felt when they told me you were lost I would not be able to tell you; and then taking one hundred of my knights, I came to this court, where I knew that your brothers were, in order that they might appportion them in a search for you. And because this battle that has now taken place was a hindrance to the search, I agreed to remain here until it was over. And now that, thanks to God, it has come out as I desired, tell me what you would like me to do and it will be undertaken.”

“My good lady,” said he, “if you feel unhappy about my misfortune, you have good reason, for certainly you can believe that in the whole world there is not a man who would carry out your command with more good will than I. Since you leave your affairs in my hands, I should consider it good that you be here these ten days and settle your business with the king, and meanwhile we shall find out some news of Don Galaor, my brother, and a battle will take place that Don Florestan has arranged with Landin; and then I shall take you to your kingdom, and from there I shall go to the Firm Island, where I have much to do.”

“Thus I shall do,” said Queen Briolanja, “but I beg you, my lord, to tell us about those great wonders that you found on that island.”

And when he sought to avoid doing so, Oriana took him by the hand and said:

“We shall not let you go until you have told us something about them.”

Then Amadis said:

“Do believe, good ladies, that even if I try hard to tell about them, it would be impossible to do so. But I tell you that that forbidden chamber is the most luxurious and most beautiful that could be found in all the world, and if it is not won by one of you ladies, I believe it will not be by anyone else in the world.”

Briolanja, who was somewhat subdued, said:

“I don’t consider myself one who could complete that adventure successfully, but whatever I be, if you didn’t think it folly on my part, I would try it.”

“My lady,” said Amadis, “I do not consider it folly to test that in which all other women have failed, it being by reason of beauty, especially when it concerns you to whom God has sought to give so great a share of it; rather I consider it honorable to want to win that fame that will be able to endure for many and long periods of time without any part of the honor being lessened.”

Oriana was greatly irked by this which Amadis said and showed it in her face, so that Amadis, whose eyes never left her, understood it at once, and regretted having said it, even though his intention was to honor and praise her the more, knowing from having seen a representation of Grimanesa, that Briolanja’s beauty did not approach hers sufficiently to enable her to win that adventure, which he did not doubt that his lady could accomplish.

But Oriana, who was quite disturbed about it, fearing that if in the world there was a thing by right of beauty to be won, Briolanja would achieve it, after having been there some time, and having begged Briolanja, if she were to enter the forbidden chamber to let her know how it was, went to find Mabilia; and speaking privately with her told her all that Briolanja and Amadis had said to each other in her presence, saying to her:

“This always happens to me with your cousin, for my unhappy heart is never thinking about any other thing except humoring and following his desire, not heeding God or the anger of my father; and he recognizing that he alone has complete dominance, holds me in little regard.”

And tears came to her eyes and ran down her very beautiful cheeks. Mabilia said to her:

"I am astonished at you, lady. What kind of heart do you have, for you haven't yet emerged from one sorrow and you seek to involve yourself in another? What great wrong is this that you say that my cousin has done you, to put you in such a passion, knowing that never by deed or word has he wronged you and seeing with your own eyes those tests that he has completed for your assurance? Now I tell you, lady, that you are giving me to understand that you are not pleased that he live, for according to what he has suffered because of your anger, at the least sign of it he senses in you, death threatens him. And I don't know why you are angry at him for what he cannot help, for if Apolidon left that there to be tested by all men and all women generally, how could he prevent it, since that's the way it is, if he believed Briolanja by completing it, will take it from you? Certainly, although you may not like it, I believe that neither her beauty nor yours will be enough to bring to an end that which in a hundred years no woman, no matter how beautiful she be, has completed. But this is only that rigorous fortune of his that made him to such a degree your subject and captive, that abandoning and casting aside his whole lineage for the sake, lady, of serving you, considering them strangers, and serving where you so order him, with such cruelty you want to take it from him. Ah, how ill employed is all the time he has served and has made his lineage and his brothers serve, since the reward of it all is to bring him undeservedly to death's door! And I, lady, in exchange for all the time that I have watched over and served you, to have as a reward to see die before my eyes the flower of my lineage, the one who loves me so dearly. But if it please God, I shall not see this death nor this sorrow, for my brother Agrajes and my uncle Galvanes will escort me to my own land, because it would be a great mistake to serve one who so poorly recognizes and rewards services."

And she began to weep, saying:

"This cruelty that you do to Amadis, may God grant that you be called to account for it by him and his family; although I am indeed certain that his loss, however great it may be, will not equal yours; because forgetting them, he loves you alone above all things that are loved."

When Mabilia said this, Oriana was so frightened that her heart became constricted, so that she was unable to speak for a while. And when she was calmer, she said to her, weeping heartfelt tears:

“Oh, hapless woman that I am, more unfortunate than all the women ever born! What can become of me with such understanding as you have? I came for help in my great sorrow, not having anyone else to advise me, and you dishearten me even more by suspecting what I never thought. And it is just my bad luck that you should take offense at what I told you in good faith, for may God not save me or help me if my heart ever had any such thoughts as you have attributed to me; nor do I doubt that the share I have in your cousin is entirely to the satisfaction of my desires. But what I most keenly regret is that, he having won the sovereignty of that island, if another woman should complete that test before I do, it would be much greater sorrow for me than death itself; and with this great rage that my heart feels, I take amiss what perchance he said with good intentions. But no matter what may have happened, I demand of you pardon for what I did not deserve of you, and beg of you in the name of that great love that you have for your cousin that I be pardoned, and that you advise me as to what most befits him and me.”

Then, with a charming laugh, she went and embraced her, saying to her:

“My true friend above all others in the world, I promise you never to speak about this to your cousin or to give him to understand that I considered it. But tell him yourself whatever you consider proper and that I shall take as good.”

Mabilia said to her:

“Lady, I pardon you, provided that you make a compact with me that, although you may be angry with him, you not show it to him without my first intervening in the matter, so that another such mistake as the past one may not occur.”

With this they were well reconciled, as women between whom there could be no hatred. But Mabilia, not forgetting what Amadis had said, confronted him bitterly with anger, scolding him severely and condemning what Briolanja had said in the presence of his lady, reminding him of the danger of that woman, advising him

that always, when he talked with her, he should be very careful, thinking how hard it was to eradicate jealousy rooted in the heart of a woman, and telling with what feeling his lady had resented that remark, and the procedure she had used to calm her. Amadis, after having thanked her with great courtesy, valuing highly what she had done for him, and promising if he lived, to make her a queen, said to her:

“My lady and good cousin, very different is my thinking about the suspicion that my lady had, because one of the greatest services that I could render her in an affair of such a character is not only by advising Briolanja to try that adventure, but also for me to go for her, wherever she may be; for the purpose and the reason is this: in the opinion of all, Briolanja is considered one of the most beautiful women in the world, so much so that she is deemed without doubt to be sufficiently so for her to enter that chamber without embarrassment. And because I hold the contrary view, for I saw Grimanesa, and Briolanja does not equal her by any means in beauty, I am certain that that honor that all the others have won Briolanja will win, about which as concerns Oriana, I have no doubts, for to finish it she has only to try it. And if this were before Briolanja’s test, everyone would say that the other lady, if she had tried it first, could have finished it. And if Briolanja is first, and fails in it as I deem certain, afterwards all the glory will be for my lady. This was the cause of my boldness.”

Mabilia was very happy with what Amadis said to her, and Oriana much more so after she learned of it from her, being very repentant about that fit of anger she had, remembering how already another time in a similar episode her anger had placed her and her lover in great danger. And to make amends for that mistake they agreed that by an old underground passageway extending from the apartment of Oriana and Queen Briolanja to a garden, Amadis should enter in order to dally and speak with her. This having been thus arranged, and Amadis having left Mabilia, Briolanja and Oriana, who were together, called him, and when he came to them, they asked him to tell them the truth concerning what they wanted to ask. He so promised them. Oriana said to him:

"Well, tell us who that maiden was who carried off the headdress of flowers when you won the sword."

He was irked with that question, because he had to tell the truth; but he turned to Oriana and said to her:

"May God not save me, lady, if I know her name or who she is any more than you do; although I was seven days in her company. But I tell you she had beautiful hair and from what I saw of her, she was indeed lovely, but of her affairs I know no more than you, lady, know, for I understand that you have never seen her."

Oriana said:

"If she obtained great glory in successfully terminating that adventure, it might have cost her dear; for according to what I have been told, Arcalaus the Enchanter, and Lindoraque, his nephew, wanted to take her headdress and hang her by the hair, if it had not been for your defense of her."

"It does not seem to me," said Briolanja, "that he defended her, if he is Amadis, but that valiant one at arms, Beltenebros, who ought not to be considered of lower rank than Amadis. And although I received such a great benefit from him, it is not for that that I shall stop telling the truth without any bias. And I say that if Amadis, by surpassing to a great degree the courage of that strong Apolidon, attained great glory in winning the Firm Island, Beltenebros, by overcoming in the space of one day ten of the good knights of your father's court and killing in battle that fierce giant Famongomadan and Basagante, his son, has not attained less. Then if we say that Amadis, by passing under the arch of the loyal lovers—there being done for him what the image with the horn did, to a greater degree than for any other knight—gave to understand the fidelity of his love; then it seems to me that one should not esteem Beltenebros less for having drawn that burning sword when for more than sixty years no other had been found who could draw it out. Therefore, my good friend, it is not just that the honor owed to Beltenebros be wrongly given to Amadis, since people ought to judge the one as good as the other. And that is my opinion."

Just as you hear, these two ladies, in whom all the beauty and charm of the world was united, were joking and laughing, so

they with great pleasure were in the company of that knight who was so beloved by them; and his heart took all the more delight in it, the more he recalled that great misfortune, that sadness which, when he was on the Poor Cliff without hope of aid, had brought him so close to death.

While they were together, as you have heard, Amadis was summoned by a maiden on behalf of the king, telling him that Don Quadragante and Landin, his nephew, wanted to free themselves from their promises; hence it was necessary for him, leaving that great pleasure, to go where they were, and with him Don Bruneo of Bonamar and Branfil. They having arrived where the king was with many good knights, Don Quadragante rose and said:

“Sire, I have waited here for Amadis of Gaul, as you know, and since he is present, I wish in your presence to free myself of the promise I made him.”

Then he related there all that had happened to him in the battle and how, being overcome by him, much against his will he came to that court to put himself in his power and to pardon him for the death of King Abies, his brother; and because, freed from the passion that he had until then, for his perception had been inhibited, not permitting his judgment to determine the truth, he found that more by excessive arrogance than with just reason he had sought and tried to avenge that death, realizing that that battle had taken place between knights, devoid of anything whereby it might have been inhibited, and since that was the way it was he pardoned the killing and took Amadis as a friend, subject to the latter's pleasure. The king said to him:

“Don Quadragante, if up to now with great praise and winning high honor, your mighty deeds at arms are made known, in no less honor should this be held, because the valor and courage that are not subject to reason and good counsel, ought not to be highly esteemed.”

Then he had them embrace, Amadis thanking Quadragante profusely for what he was doing for him and the friendship that he was seeking from him; which although at the time it was considered trivial, lasted and was kept between them for a long period, as the story will relate. And with regard to the battle that

was arranged between Florestan and Landin, for the same reason it was found to be right that since Quadragante, who was the leading participant, had pardoned, Landin with just cause ought to do so; which being done, the battle was called off, from which Landin derived no little pleasure, having seen the bravery of Florestan in the past battle of the kings.

This having been done as you have heard, and King Lisuarte having rested a few days from the great effort he had put forth in the battle with King Cildadan, remembering the cruel imprisonment of Arban, King of North Wales, and of Angriote de Estravaus, he decided to go to the Island of Mongaza where they were, and so he told Amadis and his knights; but Amadis said to him:

"Sire, you already know what a loss to your service the lack of Don Galaor's presence occasions, and if you think it a good idea, I shall go to look for him in the company of my brother and my cousin, and God will be pleased, for we shall bring him to you at the time for this trip you wish to make."

The king said to him:

"God knows, friend, if I did not have so many things to remedy, with what willingness I would personally go in search of him; but since I cannot, I consider it good that what you say be done."

Then more than a hundred knights, all very highly esteemed and of great prowess at arms, stood up and said that they also wanted to embark on that quest, that if they were obligated to undertake great adventures, there could not be any greater one than to search for such a knight now missing. The king was pleased by it, and asked Amadis not to leave, for he wanted to talk to him.

CHAPTER LX

HOW THE KING SAW THE RARE SPECTACLE OF FIRES COMING ALONG OVER THE SEA, WHICH WERE FROM A SHIP IN WHICH URGANDA THE ENCHANTRESS WAS TRAVELING; AND WHAT HAPPENED TO HIM WITH HER.

After having supped, the king being on a gallery, it being already almost bedtime, on looking toward the sea he saw coming over it two fires that were approaching the town; at which all were frightened, it seeming to them a strange thing that fire should unite with water. But when they drew nearer they saw between the fires a galley on the mast of which some huge burning candles appeared so that it seemed that the whole galley was burning. The noise was so loud that all the people of the town came to the walls to see that marvel, thinking that since water was not powerful enough to put out the fire, no other thing would be and the town would be burned. And the people were in a great fright because the galley and the fires were approaching; so the queen with all her matrons and maidens, out of fear went to the chapel. And the king mounted his horse, and fifty knights with him who always protected him; and reaching the seashore, he found that all the rest of his knights were there. And he saw in front of everyone Amadis and Guilan the Pensive and Enil, so close to the fire that he wondered how they were able to endure it; and spurring his horse, which was frightened by the loud noise, he joined them. But it was not long before they saw coming out from the ship, from under a canopy a matron dressed in white garments and with a golden coffer in her hands; opening it before everybody and taking out of it a lighted torch; which on being thrown and extinguished in the sea, those great fires were

immediately quenched, so that no sign of them remained; at which all the people were happy, losing the fear they had before, there remaining only the light of the wax candles that were on the mast of the ship, a light which was so bright that the whole beach was illuminated. And the canopy that covered the ship having been taken off, they saw it all bedecked with branches and covered with roses and other flowers, and they heard within it instruments playing with wondrously sweet sounds. And when the playing ceased, ten maidens came out richly dressed with garlands on their heads and wands of gold in their hands, and in front of them the matron who had extinguished the torch in the sea, coming up on the deck of the ship in a direct line with the king. The maidens all bowed, and likewise the king to them, and he said:

“Lady, you have put us in great fright with your fires, and if you please, tell us who you are; although I really think that we should be able to guess without much effort.”

“Sire,” said she, “in vain would he strive who thought to put fright or fear into your great heart and in the hearts of all the knights who are here; but the fires that you see, I carry in protection of myself and my maidens, and if your thought is that I be Urganda the Unknown, you think correctly. And I come to you as to the greatest king in the world, and to see the queen, who has no equal in virtue and goodness.”

Then she said to Amadis:

“Sir, come forward here, and I must tell you how in order to free you and your friends of the labor in which you intend to engage in order to search for Don Galaor, your brother, I am come here; because all would be effort lost, even though everybody in the world were to look for him. And I say to you that he is cured of his wounds, and living such a life amid such pleasure as he never before had in his life.”

“My lady,” said Amadis, “I always have had in my thought that after God, your help was for the welfare of Don Galaor and my great relief; for in view of the manner it was asked of me and carried out before my eyes, if I did not have this suspicion, I would rather receive death with him than to have him separated from me. And the thanks that I can give you for this are only, as

you know better than I, that this my person will be involved in matters of your honor and service, without fear of any danger, even though it be death itself."

"Then relax," said she, "for very quickly you will see him in such pleasure that a large share of it may overtake you."

The king said to her:

"Lady, it is about time that you leave the ship and come to my palace."

"Many thanks," said she, "but tonight I shall stay here and tomorrow I shall do what you command. And let come to me Amadis, and Agrajes, and Don Bruneo of Bonamar and Guilan the Pensive, because they are all in love and very exuberant of heart, just as I am."

"Thus shall be done," said the king, "in this and in everything whatever your desire may be."

And commanding all the people to go to the town, having taken leave of her, he returned to his palace and gave orders there to leave twenty crossbowmen on guard so that no one might come to the seashore. Early the next morning the queen sent a dozen palfreys richly caparisoned for Urganda and her maidens to ride, and Amadis and the three knights whom she named, dressed in very noble and luxurious garb, went to escort them. And when they arrived they found Urganda and her maidens out of the ship in a tent that she had had set up the night before; and dismounting they went to her, who received them very well and they her with great humility. Then they placed them on the palfreys, and the four knights encircled Urganda; and as she saw herself thus, she said:

"Now my heart rejoices in complete peace, since it sees itself surrounded by those who are in harmony with it."

She said this because, just as they were in love, she was enamored of that handsome knight, her lover. Then on arriving at the palace they went in where the king was, who received her very well; and she kissed his hands. And gazing here and there, she saw many knights throughout the palace, and she looked at the king and said to him:

"Sire, you are well accompanied, and I do not say it to you so much on account of the valor of these knights as because of

the great love they have for you, for princes being loved by their people renders their states safe. Therefore, know how to keep them, so that it may not seem that your administration lacks any of that good fortune that could be contained in it. Protect yourself from evil counsellors, for that is the true poison that destroys princes. And if you please, I shall see the queen and I shall talk with you, sire, before I leave, about a few matters."

The king said to her:

"My friend, I thank you very much for the advice you give me, and I shall follow it to the best of my ability. And see the queen, who greatly esteems you; and believe with certainty that she will gladly do everything that will be agreeable to you."

She went with her four companions to the queen, by whom and by Oriana and Queen Briolanja, and by all the other ladies and maidens of high rank, she was received with much affection. She gazed long at Briolanja's beauty, but saw clearly that it fell far short of equalling Oriana's, and she had a great desire to see them. And she said to the queen:

"Madam, I came to this court to see the king's and your great highness and the excellence at arms and the flower of the world's beauty which I certainly believe would not be found to such a high degree so completely in the company of any emperor or prince. That this be proven so, testimony is afforded by the winning of the Firm Island by exceeding in courage that mighty Apolidon, the death of the fierce giants, the grievous and cruel battle in which such a large share of the raw courage of the king, your husband, and of all his men, was shown. Who would be so bold and so ignorant as to seek to affirm that there is in the whole world beauty that could equal that of these two ladies? No one, truly. Therefore, on seeing these things my heart is put completely at ease and rest. Even more do I say: that here love is maintained with the greatest fidelity that it ever has been at any time; which has been demonstrated in those tests of the glowing sword and of the headdress of flowers, which after sixty years of their being carried about over most of the world, no one could be found to complete; and that woman who won the flowers certainly gave people to understand that she is outstanding in the world over all other women in being loyal to her lover."

When Oriana heard this, she became pale, and was very faint, thinking that if Urganda revealed something about her and her lover, they would be exposed to great danger and shame; and in the same state were all those ladies who had lovers there. But especially Mabilia and the maiden of Denmark were afraid, believing that the greatest danger might come upon them. Oriana looked at Amadis, who was near her, and as he understood her fear, he came up to her and said to her:

“Madam, do not be afraid, for it will not be disclosed as you are thinking.”

Then he said to the queen:

“Madam, ask Urganda who that one was who carried off from here the headdress of flowers.”

And the queen said:

“Friend, tell us if you please, this which Amadis wishes to know.”

She said, laughing:

“He should know better than I, for he went in her company, and greatly exerted himself to free her from the hands of Arcalaus the Enchanter and Lindoraque.”

“I, madam?” said Amadis. “It could not be that I knew her, nor she me, as you know, because if she wished to conceal herself from me as she did, from you she would strive in vain to do so.”

“Since that is the way it is,” said she, “I wish to tell what I know about it.”

Then she spoke distinctly so that all heard her, saying:

“Although Amadis brought her as a maiden there to that trial, certainly she is nothing else but a matron, and she became that through the good offices of the man who caused her to win the headdress of flowers for loving him so dearly. And know you that she is a native of the king’s and your dominions, and on her mother’s side she is not of this land, and she dwells in this signiory and in it is well endowed. And if she lacks anything, it is not having that one whom she loves so deeply as disposed to do her bidding as she would like. And I shall not tell you more about her affairs, and may God forbid that I disclose things that it befits others to conceal; and whoever wishes to know her

let him look for her in the king's realm, where his effort will go for naught."

Oriana's heart and the hearts of all the other ladies became calm. The queen said to Urganda:

"I believe what you say, but I know exactly as much as before, except that I thought she was a maiden, whereas you say that she is a matron."

"This is enough without your learning any more about it," said Urganda, "since by honoring your court she showed her great loyalty."

With this which Oriana heard, she was relieved of her agitation and so were all the other ladies. Whereupon they went to dinner, which had been prepared, as in a house where they were always accustomed to serve meals punctually. Urganda asked the queen to let her lodge with Oriana and with Queen Briolanja.

"So be it," said the queen, "but I think their giddy ways will disturb you."

"Their beauty," said Urganda, "will disturb more the knights who do not protect themselves from it, for against such beauty courage will not suffice, nor will valor nor prudence, to deflect from them a danger more grave than death."

The queen said to her, laughing:

"I think they will be quickly pardoned for their having tormented and slain the knights."

Urganda derived much pleasure from what the queen said; and taking leave of her, she went with Oriana to her room, which was a chamber in which there were four beds: one belonging to Queen Briolanja, another Oriana's, another Mabilia's, and the other for Urganda. There they enjoyed themselves talking about many things that gave them pleasure, until they went to bed. But after the others were all sleeping, Urganda saw that Oriana was awake, and said to her:

"Dear lady, if you do not sleep, the reason is that that one who never has sleep or rest without the sight of you keeps you awake, and that's the way to get even."

Oriana was abashed by what Urganda said, but the latter, who understood that she was, said to her:

"My lady, don't fear me, lest I learn your secrets, for I shall keep them as well as you do; and if I say something, it will be so veiled that when it becomes known, the danger from it will no longer be able to do any harm."

Oriana said:

"Lady, speak softly, so that it be not heard by these ladies who are here".

Urganda said:

"I shall free you of this fear."

Then she took out a book so small as to be hidden within one's hand, and made her put her hand there, and she began to read from it, and said:

"Now know you that whatever may be done to them, they will not awaken, and if someone comes in, immediately he will fall to the floor asleep."

Oriana went to Queen Briolanja and sought to waken her, but could not; and she began to laugh, seizing her by the head and by the arms, and letting her dangle from the bed, and doing the same to Mabilia; but not on that account did they awaken. And she called the maid of Denmark who was at the door of the room; and as she came in, she fell down asleep. Then with great pleasure she went to fling herself down on the bed with Urganda, and she said to her:

"Lady, I earnestly beg you, since your great wisdom and knowledge understand the things to come, to tell me something of what could happen to me before it comes about."

Urganda looked at her laughing as if in mockery, and said:

"My beloved daughter, do you think that by finding out what you are asking, if it were to your harm, you would flee from it? Don't believe it, for whatever is by that very exalted Lord permitted and ordered, no one is powerful enough to prevent, whether it be good or bad, if He does not help him. But since you have such a desire for me to tell you something, I shall do so; and observe whether by learning it, you are doing anything to your own advantage."

Then she said to her:

"In that time when the great sorrow will be present for you, and on account of you many people tormented by great sadness,

the strong lion will come out with its beasts, and your protectors having been frightened by its great rage, you will be abandoned in its very strong claws; and the famous lion will remove from your head the exalted crown that will no longer be yours. And the hungry lion will be in possession of your flesh, so he will put it in his caves, whereby his ravenous hunger will be appeased. Now, my good daughter, consider carefully what you will do, for this is to come to pass thus."

"Lady," said Oriana, "very happy would I have been not to have asked you anything, for you have put me into such great fright with such a strange and cruel outcome."

"Lady and beautiful daughter," said she, "do not seek to know what neither your prudence nor your strength is sufficient to prevent. But concerning hidden things, people often fear that at which they ought to rejoice; and meanwhile be very happy that God has made you a daughter of the best king and queen in the world, with such beauty that it is everywhere proclaimed a wonder; and He made you love that one who over and above all those who have and achieve honor and distinction shines as daylight over darkness. Concerning him, according to things past and seen by you, without any doubt you can be sure of being the woman whom he loves more than his own life. From this, my lady, you ought to receive great glory from lording it over that one who through his merits, has deserved to be lord of the world. And now it is high time that these ladies be awakened."

Then by taking the book out of the room, all were brought back to their senses. As you hear, Urganda rested there, being well provided with everything she needed; and after a few days she asked the king to assemble all his knights, and the queen her ladies-in-waiting and maidens, because she wanted to speak to them before she departed. This was done at once in a large, handsome hall, richly adorned, and Urganda stationed herself in it where everyone could hear her. Then she said to the king:

"Sire, since you have kept the letters that I sent to you and to Don Galaor at the time that Beltenebros left you, having won the sword and his lady the headdress of flowers, I earnestly beg you to have them brought here, so that it may clearly be recognized that I had known things before they came about."

The king had them brought and read to all, and they saw that all that had been said in them had been completely fulfilled, at which they were greatly astounded, and much more at the great courage of the king in having dared enter the battle in the face of such fearful words. And there they saw how the battle was won by the three blows that Beltenebros struck: the first when at the feet of Don Galaor he unhorsed King Cildadan; the second when he killed that very powerful Sarmadan the Lion; the third when he rescued the king whom Madanfabel, the fierce giant of the Red Tower, was carrying away under his arm in order to put him in the ship, and he cut off Mandafabel's arm near the elbow, and by him the king having been rescued, the giant was slain. Also what she said of Don Galaor was fulfilled: that his head would be placed in the power of that one who would deliver those three blows. This was when Amadis held Galaor in his lap apparently dead at the time that he yielded him up to the maidens who were asking him for him.

"But now," said Urganda, "I want to tell you some of the things that are in the future to come about successively, according to the times."

And she spoke thus:

"Strife will arise between the great serpent and the strong lion, in which many fierce animals will be involved. Great anger and fury will overtake them, so that many of them will suffer cruel death. The great Roman fox will be wounded by the claw of the strong lion, and his hide cruelly torn to pieces, for which reason the side of the great serpent will be in much distress. At that time the gentle ewe covered with black wool will be placed among them, and with her great humility and loving cajoleries she will tame the harsh ferocity of their strong hearts and will separate some from others. But then the hungry wolves will descend from the rugged mountains against the great serpent, and being conquered by them with all his animals, he will be confined in one of his caves. And the tender unicorn, putting its mouth to the ear of the strong lion, with its outcry will awaken it from its long sleep, and making it take with it some of its fierce animals, going at a very swift pace it will be involved in the rescue of the great snake, and will find it bitten and gnawed

by the hungry wolves, so that much of its blood will be spilled out between its strong scales. And the lion dragging it away from their ravenous mouths, all the wolves will be torn and battered to pieces. And the life of the great serpent being restored, and all of its poison expelled, the white doe, which in the fearful forest, while emitting piteous bleatings, will have taken refuge, will consent to be placed within the cruel claws of the lion. Now, good king, have it written down that thus everything will take place."

The king said he would do so, but that for the time being he did not understand a bit of it.

"Well, a time will come," said she, "when it will be very plain to everyone."

And Urganda looked at Amadis, and saw that he was pensive, and said:

"Amadis, why are you thinking about what brings you no benefit? Desist from it and think about a business deal that you are now to make. To that point of death you will be brought for the life of another, and for the blood of another you will give yours; and from that transaction, you being the martyr, the profit will be for the other; and the reward that you will have from it will be rage and the postponement of your desire. And that sharp and splendid sword of yours will disturb your flesh and bones in such a way that you will be in great want of blood. And you will be in such a state that if the half of the world were yours, you would give it provided that your sword were broken up or thrown into some lake from where it would never be recovered. And now be careful what you do, for everything will happen just as I say."

Amadis, seeing that all of them had their eyes on him, said with a cheerful mien, which was just the way he looked:

"Lady, from the past events told by you, we can believe this present thing to be true, and just as I have believed myself to be mortal and unable to achieve a longer life than the one God may be pleased to give me, declaring my concern for accomplishing by fair means the great and serious things where honor and fame are won, rather than for sustaining my life; likewise, if I were to fear frightful things, I would with greater justification

be afraid of the present ones that each day happen to me, rather than the hidden ones that are in the future.”

Urganda said:

“It would be as great a labor to try to take away from that heart of yours its mighty spirit as to draw all the water from the great ocean.”

Then she said to the king:

“Sire, I wish to leave; remember what I have said in your presence as from one who desires your honor and service. Close your ears to all men, and above all to those in whom you perceive evil deeds.”

With this she took leave of everyone, and with her four companions, without wishing any others to accompany her, she went to her ship; which having entered upon the high sea was enveloped in a shroud of darkness.

CHAPTER LXI

HOW KING LISUARTE WAS DISCUSSING WITH HIS KNIGHTS HIS DESIRE TO ATTACK THE ISLAND OF THE BOILING LAKE IN ORDER TO SET FREE FROM PRISON KING ARBAN OF NORTH WALES AND ANGRIOTE OF ESTRVAUS; AND HOW HE BEING THUS ENGAGED, A GIANT MAIDEN CAME BY SEA AND ASKED THE KING IN THE PRESENCE OF THE QUEEN AND THE COURT THAT AMADIS FIGHT WITH ARDAN CANILEO; AND IF THAT ARDAN CANILEO WERE DEFEATED, THE ISLAND WOULD BE SUBJECT TO THE KING, AND THE PRISONERS WHOM THEY SO GREATLY DESIRED TO SET FREE WOULD BE YIELDED; AND IF AMADIS WERE DEFEATED, THEY WANTED ONLY TO BE ALLOWED TO TAKE HIS HEAD TO MADASIMA.

Urganda having left as you have heard, and some days having passed, while King Lisuarte was riding through the countryside talking with his knights about the voyage he wished to make to the island of Mongaza, where the Boiling Lake was, in order to release from prison King Arban of North Wales and Angriote of Estravaus, they saw approaching over the sea a ship that was coming to land at the port of that town, and he went there at once to find out who was traveling in it. When the king arrived, there were already coming in a small boat a maiden and two squires; and as they reached land, the maiden stood up and asked if King Lisuarte was there. They told her he was, but all were greatly astounded at her size, for in the entire court there was not a knight who came within a full span of equalling her, and all her features and limbs were in proper proportion to her height, and she was very beautiful and richly garbed. And she said to the king:

"Sire, I bring you a message, and if you please, I shall tell it to you in the queen's presence."

"So be it done," said the king.

When he went to his palace, the maiden went behind him. Being then before the queen and before all the knights and ladies of the court, the maiden asked if Amadis of Gaul was there, the one who formerly was called Beltenebros. And he replied and said:

"Good maiden, I am he."

She looked at him with a frown and said:

"It may well be that you are, but now it will be seen whether you are as good as you are alleged in praise to be."

Then she took out two letters that bore gold seals, and one she gave to the king and the other to the queen, and they were her credentials. The king said:

"Maiden, tell us what you desire, for we shall hear you."

The maiden said:

"Sire, Gromadaza, the giantess of the Boiling Lake, the very beautiful Madasima, and Ardan Canileo the Feared, who is with them in order to defend them, have found out that you want to go to their land in order to seize it; and because this would not be possible to do without great loss of men, they say that they will let it be decided by a combat in this wise: that Ardan Canileo will fight with Amadis of Gaul, and if he defeats or kills him, that with the land remaining free, they be permitted to carry his head to the Boiling Lake; and if Ardan be overcome or killed, they will give up all his land to you, sire, and King Arban of North Wales and Angriote of Estravaus, whom they hold prisoners; who will then be brought here. And if Amadis loves them as much as they think, and wishes to make real the hope they have in him, let him agree to the battle in order to set free two such friends; and if he be overcome or killed, Ardan Canileo takes them. And if he does not wish to agree, immediately he will see their heads cut off in his presence."

"Good maiden," said Amadis, "if I agree to the battle, how will the king be certain that what you say will be carried out?"

"I shall tell you how," said she. "The beautiful Madasima with twelve maidens of high degree will submit to imprisonment

by the queen as security that it will be fulfilled or their heads cut off. And from you she does not wish any other security except that if you are killed, she will bear away your head, she being permitted to leave in safety. And they will do more, for by this compact there will enter the king's prison Andanguel, the old giant with two sons of his and nine knights, who have in their power the prisoners and towns and castles of the island."

Amadis said:

"If under the power of the king and of the queen come those you say, there is a sufficiency of good guarantees. But I tell you that you will not have an answer from me if you and these squires whom you bring with you do not agree to dine with me."

"And why do you invite me?" said she. "You do not display good judgment, for all your effort will be in vain, because I hate you implacably."

"Good maiden," said Amadis, "I am very sorry about this, because I esteem you and I would do you all the honor that I could. And if you want an answer, agree to what I ask of you."

The maiden replied:

"I agree to it, more to remove an obstacle to your answering what you should, than of my own free will."

Amadis said:

"If I risk myself for two such friends, and in order that the domains of the king may be increased, the thing is just, and therefore I accept the battle in the name of God; and let those you mention come to offer themselves as hostages."

"Certainly," said the maiden, "you have responded to my desire, and let the king promise, if you withdraw, never to help you against the relatives of Famongomadan."

"That promise is unnecessary," said Amadis, "for the king would not have in his company anyone who did not maintain the truth. And let us go dine, for it is already time."

"I shall go," said she, "and more cheerfully than I thought; and since the integrity of the king is what you say, I declare myself satisfied."

And she said to the king and to the queen:

"Tomorrow Madasima and her maidens and the knights will be here in your prison. Ardan Canileo will want to have the battle

at once, but it is necessary that you insure him against everyone save Amadis, whose head he will carry away from here."

Don Bruneo of Bonamar, who was there at the time, said:

"Lady maiden, sometimes someone expects to take the head of another and loses his own; and very quickly it could happen thus to Ardan Canileo."

Amadis begged him to be quiet, but the maiden said to Bruneo:

"Who are you to reply thus for Amadis?"

"I am a knight," said he, "who would gladly enter the battle if Ardan Canileo should want to place another companion with himself."

She said to him:

"You are excused from this battle, but if you have such a desire to fight, I shall give you on another day a brother of mine who will answer you, and he is as great a mortal enemy of Amadis as you show yourself to be his friend, and I think in view of what he is, that I shall be saving you the effort of speaking for him again."

"Good maiden," said Don Bruneo, "if your brother is such as you say, it will really be necessary to pursue further what you with rage and great anger have promised. And you see here my gage in token that I wish the combat."

And he extended the end of his mantle toward the king, and the maiden took from her head a silver net and said to the king:

"Sire, observe here mine, in token that I shall truly carry out what I have said."

The king took the gages, but he was not pleased, for he had enough to look after in the matter of Amadis and Ardan Canileo, who was so valiant and so feared by all those in the world that it had been four years since he had found any knight who dared to fight with him if he recognized him.

This having been done thus, Amadis went to his lodging and took with him the maiden, which he ought not to have done, even in exchange for the best castle that his father had. And in order to pay her greater honor, he had her lodge in a chamber where Gandalin kept for him all his armor, other arms, and finery, and with her two squires. The maiden, gazing about the room,

saw Amadis's sword, which appeared rare to her; and she told her squires and others who were there to go out a while and leave her. And thinking she wanted to attend to some necessity of nature that cannot be avoided, they left her alone; and she, closing the door, took the sword and leaving the scabbard and the guard arranged in such a way that the sword did not seem to be missing from there, she put the latter under a loose-fitting cloak of very unusual cut that she was wearing; and when she opened the door, the squires entered, and she put the sword under the mantle of one of them and ordered him to go secretly to the boat, and said to him:

"Bring me my cup with which to drink, and it will be thought that you went for it."

And the squire did so. Then Amadis and Branfil came into the room, and had her sit down on a bench, and Amadis said to her:

"Madam, tell us what time tomorrow Madasima will come, if you please."

"She will come," said she, "before dinner, but why do you ask?"

"Good lady," said he, "because we should like to go forth and receive her and extend to her every courtesy and service; and if she has received any annoyance from me, I would make amends for it in whatever she might command."

"If you do not withdraw from what you have promised," said she, "and Ardan Canileo is the one that he always has been since he took up arms, you will have to give her that head of yours for amends, for your amends cannot be worth much."

"I shall protect myself from that if I can; but if she would be pleased by anything else from me, I would gladly do it to obtain pardon from her; but someone else would have to negotiate it who desired it more than you do."

With this they went outside, and left there Enil and others to serve her. But she wanted so much to go away that the many viands annoyed her; and so as they cleared the table she got up and said to Enil:

"Knight, tell Amadis that I am going, and that he consider that all he did for me was wasted."

"So help me God," said Enil, "that I believe, for according to what you are, all that is done for your pleasure will be wasted."

"However it be," said she, "I have little fondness for you and much less for him."

"Then believe," said Enil, "that with a maiden as insolent as you, neither he nor I, nor anyone else, can find much contentment."

With these words the maiden departed, and went to the ship very happy about the sword that she had, and told Ardan Canileo and Madasima how she had delivered their message and how the battle remained fixed and how she was bringing a guarantee from the king whereby they might land without fear. Ardan Canileo thanked her for what she had done, and said to Madasima:

"My lady, do not consider me a knight if I do not cause you to go from here with honor and with your land freed; and if I do not give you the head of Amadis before a man walks half a league, no matter however swift he may be, do not grant me your love."

She was silent, for she said nothing at all; because although she wished for vengeance for her father and brother on that one who had killed them, there was not a thing in the world for which she would see herself united with Ardan Canileo, for she was beautiful and noble, and he was ugly and very disfigured and coarse, the like of which was never seen. And her coming was not because of her wish, but on account of her mother's, in order to have Ardan Canileo to defend her land; and if he avenged the death of her husband and son, she wanted to marry him to Madasima and leave him all her land. Inasmuch as this Ardan Canileo was a knight famous in the world and of great prowess and performance at arms, the story wishes to tell you of what region he was a native, and the appearance of his body and face, and other things pertaining to him. Know you that he was a native of that province that is called Canileo, and he was of the blood of giants, for there are more there than in other places, and he was not enormously large of body, but was taller than other men who were not giants. He had heavy limbs and broad shoulders and a thick neck, and a heavy, well-proportioned

chest, and hands and legs to correspond. He had a large, flat nosed, dog-like face, and because of this resemblance they called him Canileo (Dog-lion). His nose was flat and wide and was all red and covered with thick black spots, with which his face and hands and neck were sprinkled, and he had a fierce expression resembling that of a lion. He had thick twisted lips, and kinky hair and beard that he could scarcely comb. He was thirty-five years old, and since twenty-five he had never found a knight or a giant, however strong they might be, who could prevail over him in any kind of contest. But he was so big-boned and heavy that with difficulty did he find a horse which could carry him. This is what this knight was like. And when he, as you have already heard, was promising the beautiful Madasima the head of Amadis, the enormous maiden said to him:

“Sir, with much reason we ought to have hope for this battle, since Fortune appears to be on your side and against your enemy, for you see here his precious sword that I bring you, which could not have been had without great secrecy concerning your good fortune and the great misfortune of Amadis.”

Then she put it in his hand and told him how she had obtained it. Ardan took it and said:

“I am very grateful to you for this gift that you give me, more because of the good procedure you followed in obtaining it than on account of any fear I may have of combat with a single knight.”

And then he gave orders to take the tents off the ship and have them set up in a meadow that was near the town, where they all went with their war horses and palfreys and the arms of Ardan Canileo, expecting next day to be before King Lisuarte and Queen Brisena, his wife. There went Ardan very happy to have that combat scheduled for two reasons: one, that he expected without any doubt to take the head of Amadis, who was so renowned in the world, and that all that glory would be his; the other, that by this death he would win that beautiful Madasima whom he loved so much, and this made him proud and exuberant without fearing any danger. Thus they were in their tents awaiting the king's command.

And also Amadis was in his dwelling with many knights of high degree who always gathered about him, and they all greatly

feared that combat, so dangerous did they consider it and so greatly were they afraid of losing him in it. And at this time Agrajes arrived and Don Florestan and Galvanes Lackland and Don Guilan the Pensive, who knew nothing about this because they had been hunting in the forests. And when they found out about the battle that was arranged, they complained bitterly because it was not set up for more knights, whereby rightly they could enter; and the one who was most disturbed about it was Don Guilan, who sometimes had heard that this Ardan Canileo was stronger and more powerful at arms than anyone else in the world; and he was worried to death because he believed that Amadis would in nowise be able to face up to him in single combat, and he would have liked very much to be in that combat if Ardan had put in another person with himself, and to undergo the same risk as Amadis. And Don Florestan, who was all afire with anger, said:

“So help me God, sir brother, you do not consider me worth anything, not even as a knight, nor do you love me, since at such a time you did not remember me; and indeed you give one to understand that it is of no use for me to accompany you, since in such dangers, you treat me as a stranger.”

And also Agrajes and Don Galvanes complained bitterly.

“Sirs,” said Amadis, “do not complain or regret this in order to blame me, for the battle was sought of me alone, and on account of me it is initiated, so that I could not and should not answer, without showing weakness, except in accordance with the demand for it; for if it had been otherwise, by whom would I be succored and aided, if not by you? For your great strength would add force to mine whenever I would be in danger.”

Just as you hear, Amadis excused himself from blame by those knights, and said to them:

“It will be good for us to take horse tomorrow before the king leaves, and we shall receive Madasima, who is highly esteemed by all those who know her.”

Thus they spent that evening talking about what most pleased them; and morning having come, they dressed in very fine clothes, and having heard mass, mounted on beautiful palfreys and went to welcome Madasima, and with them Don Bruneo of Bonamar

and his brother Branfil and Enil, who was a very handsome, spruce, and light-hearted knight, and for his good manners and great vigor he was much esteemed and valued by all; so eight companions went forth to receive Madasima. And on coming near the tents, they saw her and Ardan Canileo and their retinue; and Madasima was dressed in black cloth in mourning for her father and her brother, but her beauty was so striking and so abundant that even in mourning she seemed so fine that all marvelled; and beside her were her maidens dressed in that same garb, and Ardan Canileo led her palfrey by the rein; and there came the old giant and his sons, and the nine knights who were to serve as hostages. Those knights on approaching bowed, and she bowed to them, apparently with good countenance. Amadis came up to her and said to her:

“Lady, if you are praised, this is with great justice according to all appearance, and he who has your acquaintance must consider himself fortunate to honor and serve you; and for my part I tell you that so I shall do in whatever may be commanded me by you.”

And Ardan Canileo, who was watching him and saw him so handsome, more so than anyone else he had ever seen, was not pleased that he was talking with her, and said to him:

“Knight, stand back and don’t be so bold as to talk to someone you do not know.”

“Sir,” said Amadis, “for that we come here; to make her acquaintance and to serve her.”

Ardan spoke to him scornfully:

“Then tell me now who you are, and I shall see if you are such that you should serve a maiden of such high rank.”

“Whoever I may be,” said Amadis, “I shall serve her gladly, and as for not being worth as much as I might need to be, not on that account do I cease to have this desire; and since you want to know who I am, tell me who you are, who thus seek to take away from her one who will gladly carry out her command.”

Ardan Canileo looked at him very angrily and said to him:

“I am Ardan Canileo, who will be able to serve her better in one single day than you in all your life, even if you were worth twice as much as you are.”

"It could well be," said Amadis, "but I well know that your service, in accordance with your insolence and ill-humor, would not be rendered so wholeheartedly as my small one. And since you want to make my acquaintance, know you that I am Amadis of Gaul with whom you demanded combat; and if I have annoyed and distressed this lady by doing what could not be avoided without great embarrassment, I shall very gladly make amends for it with another service."

And Ardan Canileo said:

"If you dare attend to what you promised, she will certainly have that head of yours, which I shall give her, as amends for her annoyance."

"Those amends," said Amadis, "she will not have with my consent, but she will have others of greater import and more befitting, which will consist of my preventing your marriage with her, for I can't conceive of a man's being so ignorant as to think it proper for your devastating beauty to be united with hers."

Madasima was not irked at what he said: she laughed a bit, as did her maidens; but Ardan became so enraged that he trembled all over with the great anger that he felt, and he took on an appearance so fierce and so frightful that those who looked at him without being experts in feats of arms considered nil the strength and valor of Amadis in comparison with Ardan's, and they were sure that that would be the last battle, and that day the last of his life. And as you hear, they went on until they came before the king; and Ardan said:

"King, you see here the knights who will enter your prison to render firm the commitment made by my maiden, if Amadis dares to hold to what he proposed."

Amadis came forward and said:

"Sire, you see me here, for I desire the battle at once without more delay; and I tell you that even if I had not promised, I would undertake it solely to dissuade Madasima from such a monstrous marriage. But I want King Arban of North Wales and Angriote of Estravaus to come and to be where I may reach them if I win the battle."

Ardan Canileo said:

"I shall have them come where the battle will be, and if I carry your head away, let me take the prisoners, and I shall also take Madasima and her maidens; let them be in the custody of the queen, for thus is carried out what was agreed upon; but it will be necessary for Madasima to be where she may see the battle and the vengeance that I shall cause her to have."

Then just as you hear, that beautiful Madasima and her maidens were in the custody of the queen; and in that of the king, the old giant and his sons and the nine knights. But as for Madasima, I tell you that she appeared before the queen with such humility and discretion that although so much danger accrued to Amadis through her coming, for which all the ladies were very sorry, they were very content with her and paid her great honor. But Oriana and Mabilia, on seeing the fierce attitude of Ardan Canileo, were quite frightened, being plunged into great anxiety and sorrow; and in the privacy of their room they shed many tears, for they thought that the great courage of Amadis was not enough against that devil. And if they had some hope, it was only in his good fortune, which had extricated him from great dangers many times in struggles so serious that little hope was entertained of their being won by him or by anyone else, although Mabilia always kept Oriana's hopes high with much reassurance.

This having been done, and the date for the battle set for next day, the king commanded his huntsmen and crossbowmen to enclose with chains and posts a field that was in front of his palace, so that the knights might not lose any honor through the fault of their horses. When Oriana saw this from a window and thought about the danger that was being prepared there for her lover, she became so faint that almost unconscious she fell into the arms of Mabilia. The king went to Amadis's quarters, where many knights were, and told them that since Queen Briolanja and his daughter and Queen Brisena and all the other ladies and maidens were going that night to his chapel to pray God to protect that knight of theirs, he wanted to take him with him to his palace and with him Florestan and Agrajes and Don Galvanes, and Guilan and Enil, and that they should relax just as they were. And he told Amadis to order his arms to be taken to the chapel because he wanted to arm him next day before the

altar of the Virgin Mary, in order that she be his advocate with her glorious Son.

So as they were going with the king, Amadis told Gandalin to take the arms to where the king ordered; but he, on gathering them up in order to carry out his order, and not finding the sword in the scabbard, was so frightened by it, and so sad that he would have preferred death both because of its happening at a time of such great danger, and on account of considering it a sign that the death of his lord was near. And he looked everywhere for the sword, asking those who might know something about it; but when he found no clarification, he was about to throw himself out of the window into the sea, if he had not remembered that with his suicide he would lose his soul; and he went to the king's palace with great anguish of heart, and taking Amadis aside he said to him:

"Sir, cut off my head, for I am a traitor to you, and if you don't do so, I shall kill myself."

Amadis said to him:

"From what have you gone crazy, or what bad fortune is this?"

"Sir," said he, "it would be better if I were crazy or dead than for such a misfortune to have come at such a time; for know you that I have lost your sword, which has been stolen from its scabbard."

Amadis said to him:

"You are complaining about that? I thought something else far worse had happened to you. Now have done with this, for another sword will not be lacking with which God may help me if He so pleases."

Although he said this to comfort him, he was much grieved by the loss of the sword, not only on account of its being one of the best in the world and because he had such great need of it at that time, but also for having won it with the force of the great love he had for his lady; for to look at it and recall this circumstance constituted a very great help to his mortal desires when he found himself absent from her. And he told Gandalin not to tell anyone and to bring him the scabbard, and to find out from the queen if he could have that sword of his which Don Guilan had brought with the other arms; and that if he could see his

lady Oriana, to ask her on his behalf that when he and Ardan Canileo came on the field to place herself where he could see her, because the sight of her would make him the victor in that affair, and in any other much more serious one. Gandalin went to do what his lord had commanded him, and the queen ordered that he be given the sword. But Queen Briolanja and Olinda told him:

“Alas, Gandalin! what do you think your lord will be able to do against that devil?”

He said to them laughing and with good countenance:

“Ladies, this is not the first dangerous deed that my lord has undertaken; and just as God has protected him until the present, so He will protect him now; for he has completed to his honor many other more dangerous exploits, and thus will he complete this one.”

“So may it please God,” said they.

Then he went to Mabilia and told her to tell Oriana what his lord was sending him to ask of her. Whereupon he returned to the chapel where he had the arms, and he told his lord how he was leaving everything done in accordance with his will, whereat he was greatly pleased and took great courage on knowing that his lady would be where he could see her from the field. Then drawing the king aside, away from the other knights, he said to him:

“Know you, sire, that I have lost my sword, and I didn’t find it out until just now, and they left me the scabbard.”

The king was very sorry about it, and said to him:

“Although I have agreed and promised never to give my sword to any knight to fight in single combat at my court, I shall give it to you now, remembering those great encounters when your sword was put at my service.”

“Sire,” said Amadis, “may it not please God that I, who must promote and sustain your word, be the cause of your breaking it, after your having made a promise before so many nobles.”

Tears came to the eyes of the king, and he said:

“Such a stickler you are for upholding all justice and loyalty! But what will you do, since that very fine sword cannot be had?”

"Here I have," said he, "the one with which I was cast upon the sea, which Don Guilan brought here and the queen gave orders to guard it. With this and with your prayer to our Lord, which before Him will be of much avail, I shall be able to be helped."

Then he tried it in the scabbard of the other one and it went in well, although it was somewhat smaller. The king was pleased with it, because by his carrying the scabbard with him, through its great virtue, he would be freed from considerable heat and cold, for such a property those serpent bones had, out of which it was made; but this sword was very far removed from the excellence of the other. Thus they spent that day until it was the hour for sleeping, and all those knights that you have heard about had their arms stacked around the king's bed. But I tell you about Ardan Canileo that that whole night he had all his people make a big celebration and dance play instruments of various kinds in their tents, and at the end of their songs they all said in loud voices:

"Come, tomorrow, come and bring the bright day, so that Ardan Canileo may fulfill what he has promised that very beautiful Madasima."

But Fortune in this was to be contrary to what they had thought. Amadis slept that night in the chamber of the king, but the sleep he had was not of any benefit to him, for promptly at midnight he got up without saying anything and went to the chapel, and awaking the chaplain he confessed to him all his sins, and they were both praying before the altar of the Virgin Mary, asking that she be his mediator in that battle. And dawn having come, the king arose, and those aforementioned knights, and they heard mass; and such knights as knew very well how to do it armed Amadis. But before he put on his coat of mail, Mabilia came in and put around his neck some relics set in gold, saying that the queen, her mother, had sent them to her by the maid of Denmark; but it was not so, for Queen Elisena gave them to Amadis when she recognized him as a son, and he had given them to Oriana at the time he freed her from Arcalaus and those who were carrying her away. As soon as he was armed, they brought him a beautiful horse that Corisanda had sent with

other gifts to Don Florestan, her lover; and Don Florestan brought the lance to him and Don Guilan the shield, and Don Bruneo, the helmet; and the king was riding a big horse with a staff in his hand. And know you that all the people of the court and of the town were surrounding the field to see the combat, and the matrons and maidens were at their windows, and the beautiful Oriana and Mabilia at a window of their chamber, and with the queen were Briolanja and Madasima and other princesses.

Amadis having arrived on the field, they raised a chain and he came in and took up his arms; and when he was to put on his helmet he looked at his lady Oriana, and such great courage came to him that it seemed to him that there was nothing else in the world so powerful to protect him. Then into the field came the judges, who were to render justice to each one, and they were three in number: one of them was that old man Don Grumedan, who knew a great deal about these matters; and Don Quadragante, who was a vassal of the king; and Brandoyvas. Then came Ardan Canileo, well armed on a big horse and his coat of mail of very thick mesh, and he was carrying a shield and a helmet of a steel as clean and brilliant as a bright mirror, and wearing Amadis's very good sword that the maiden had stolen for him, and carrying a thick lance, brandishing it so hard that he seemed to be trying to break it; and thus he came on the field. When Oriana saw him, she said with great anxiety:

"Alas, my friends, how violent and frightful comes my death, if God out of His great compassion does not render help!"

"Lady," said Mabilia, "stop that and put on a good countenance, so that with it you may give your lover courage."

Then Grumedan took Amadis and put him at one end of the field, and Brandoyvas put Ardan Canileo at the other end, with the horses' heads facing each other, and Don Quadragante in the middle, who had in his hand a trumpet at whose blast the knights were to move. Amadis who was looking at his lady, said in a loud voice:

"What is Quadragante doing, that he does not blow the trumpet?"

Then Quadragante blew it, and the knights dashed forward at full speed and struck each other with their lances on their

shields so violently that they were quickly broken, and the knights collided with each other so that Ardan Canileo's horse fell on his neck and was killed immediately, and that of Amadis had one shoulder broken and could not get up; but Amadis, with great strength of heart stood up at once, but with considerable effort, for he had a piece of the lance thrust through his shield and through the sleeve of his cuirass without touching the flesh; and drawing it out, he seized his sword and went toward Ardan Canileo, who had stood up with great effort and was straightening his helmet. And when he saw him thus, he grasped his sword, and they went to attack each other so fiercely that there was no man who saw them who was not greatly frightened, for their blows were so powerful and so quick that they made sparks flash from their helmets and from the swords, so that they seemed to be on fire. But much more of this appeared on the shield of Ardan Canileo, for since it was of steel, and the blows of Amadis were so heavy, it seemed as if the shield and arm were being consumed in living flame; but its great strength protected his flesh from being cut, from which fact Amadis was in mortal danger; for since his armor was not so thick and Ardan had one of the best swords in the world, no blow reached him that did not cut through his armor and his flesh, so that in many places he was stained with his own blood and his whole shield was almost cut to pieces. And the sword of Amadis was not cutting through the armor of Ardan Canileo, which was very strong; but although his own coat of mail was of thick and strong mesh, it was already rent in more than ten places, so that he was shedding blood through them all. And what was of greatest advantage to Amadis at that time was his great agility, for with it he dodged most of the blows, although Ardan had had much practice in that profession and knew a great deal about sword play.

They continued in such furious fighting as you hear, dealing each other mighty and harsh blows until the hour of tierce, coming to grips with hands and arms so violently that Ardan Canileo was thrown into great terror, for never had he found such a strong knight, nor even such a brave giant, who so greatly resisted his valor; and what made the battle last longer was that he found

his foe ever quicker and stronger than at the beginning, and he himself more tired and exhausted and covered all over with blood.

Then Madasima recognized indeed that he was failing in what he had promised, namely that he would overcome Amadis in less time than it would take to walk half a league, at which she was not sorry, nor even if Ardan Canileo should lose his head, for her thought was so lofty that she would rather lose all of her land than to see herself united in matrimony with such a man.

The knights were striking each other with very mighty blows wherever they could do each other harm, and each one was striving to bring the other to his death. And if Amadis had borne such strong arms, in view of his great agility and the way his vigor remained with him, the other one would not have been able to hold the field against him; but all that he did and strove for was indeed needed, for he had to deal with a very strong and sinister knight at arms, the more so since he already had all his arms rent and his shield broken and his flesh cut in many places, from which his blood was flowing freely. When Oriana saw him thus, her heart not being able to stand it, she left the window in great anguish, and seated on the floor, she struck her face with her hands, thinking that death was approaching her lover Amadis. Mabilia, who saw her thus strike herself, was sad of heart, and made her return there, manifesting great anger at her, telling her that at such a time and at such danger she should not forsake her lover; and because she could not stand seeing him so maltreated, she turned her back to him in order that her lover might see her beautiful hair so that he would take more courage and ardor. They being at this point, Brandoyvas, who was one of the judges, said:

"I am quite worried about Amadis, for I see him very much at a disadvantage as regards his arms and his shield."

"So it seems to me," said Don Grumedan, "because of that I am greatly distressed."

"Sirs," said Quadragante, "I consider Amadis to have shown himself when I fought with him, so valiant and bold as to give the impression that his strength keeps doubling, and of all the knights I have seen, he is the one who best knows how to conserve his resources and is most vigorous; and I see him now with his

strength completely intact, which with Ardan Canileo is not the case, and if anything is hurting Amadis it is merely the great haste with which he fights; for if he would be patient, he would make his foe run after him and Ardan's great weight would tire him; but Amadis's great ardor does not allow him to calm down."

Oriana and Mabilia, who heard this, were greatly comforted. But Amadis, who had seen his lady leave the window, and since then had not glanced in that direction, thought that she had done it through grief for him, and went with great fury at Ardan Canileo. And he took his sword in hand and struck him with all his strength on top of his helmet such a mighty blow that he stunned him and he went to the ground on one knee, as the blow was so great and the helmet so strong that he broke his sword into three pieces, so that the smallest remained in his hand. Then was he in total fear of death and so also were all who were watching. When Ardan Canileo saw this, he drew back on the field and took his shield by the clasp and brandishing the sword, shouted in a loud voice so that all heard him, and said to Amadis:

"You see here that good sword which you won to your harm. Assure yourself that this is the one, and with it you shall die."

And then he shouted:

"Come out, come out to the window, Lady Madasima, and you will see the beautiful vengeance that I shall give you, and how through my prowess I have won it for you in such a way that no other woman will have such a lover as you have."

When Madasima heard this, she was very sad, and she threw herself at the feet of the queen and begged the favor that she should protect her from him, which with great justice could be done, for Ardan had promised to kill or overcome Amadis before a man walked half a league, and if he did not do it, that she should not grant him her love. So whether that time had elapsed in more than four hours, she could see for herself. And the queen said:

"I hear what you say and I shall do what is just."

Amadis, when he saw himself thus, with armor hacked to pieces and without a sword, remembered what Urganda had told him, that he would give half of the world, were it his, for his sword to be cast into a lake; and he looked toward the window

where Oriana was, and seeing her back, he knew indeed that his contrary fortune had caused it, and such great strength welled up in him that he decided to gamble his life, wishing to die rather than to fail to do what he could. And he went toward Ardan Canileo as if he were prepared to attack him; and Ardan lifted his sword and waited for him; and when he came up he tried to strike him, but Amadis dodged and made him miss the blow; and he came to grips with him so quickly without the other being able to thrust the sword between them, and seized the boss of the shield so forcibly that he removed it from his arm and he might have landed with it on the ground; but he swerved away from him and clasped the shield and picked up a piece of a lance with the iron head that he found in front of him and returned at once to Ardan, well protected by his shield. And Ardan, who was furious because he had thus lost his shield, went toward him and intended to strike him on top of the helmet. Amadis raised the shield and received the blow on it, and although it was very strong and of fine steel, the sword went through the boss a good three fingers. And Amadis struck him with the fragment of lance on the right arm near the hand, so that half of the iron went through between the long bones and made him lose his strength in such wise that he was not able to withdraw his sword, which Amadis took away from him still embedded in the shield. And whether he was quite happy and content about this, it is needless to ask. So then he threw the fragment of lance a considerable distance away, and drew the sword out of the shield, profusely thanking God for that favor He had done him.

Mabilia, who was watching him, took Oriana and made her turn around to see her lover obtain that great victory in surmounting the very considerable danger in which he had been at that time. Then Amadis went for Ardan Canileo, who at once grew weak on seeing his death thus in prospect; and with the thought that he would find no protection or help, he tried to take the shield away from Amadis, just as the latter had taken it from him; but the other, who beheld him close at hand, struck him on the left shoulder in such a way that he cut his armor and deeply into flesh and bones; and as he saw he had lost the use of his arm, he retreated across the field out of the intense fear he

had of the sword. But Amadis went after him; and as soon as he saw him weary and confused, he seized him by the helmet with such force that he made him fall at his feet; and he picked up the helmet and went at him as he was kneeling, and cutting off his head, brought great joy to everyone, especially to King Arban of North Wales and Angriote of Estravaus, who had experienced great anguish and grief when they saw Amadis in the straits that you have already heard about.

This done, Amadis took the head and threw it out of the field, and he dragged the body to a promontory, from which he dropped it into the sea; and cleaning the blood from his sword, he put it in the scabbard; and immediately the king commanded that he be given a horse, on which, with many wounds and much blood lost, accompanied by many knights, he went to his lodging. But first he had King Arban of North Wales and Angriote de Estravaus taken out of their cruel imprisonment, and he took them with him, and sending King Arban of North Wales to Queen Brisena, his aunt, who had sent word to his room asking for him; retaining his loyal friend Angriote, together they were given medical attention, Amadis for his wounds, of which he had many, and Angriote for the lashings and other injuries given him in prison. There they were visited with great show of affection by the knights and ladies and maidens of the court, and Amadis by his cousin Mabilia, who brought him that true medicine whereby his heart, duly strengthened by it, might be enabled to transmit to his minor wounds the health that was needed for their cure.

CHAPTER LXII

HOW THE BATTLE WAS FOUGHT BETWEEN DON BRUNEO OF BONAMAR AND MADAMAN THE ENVIOUS, BROTHER OF THE BIG DAMSEL; AND CONCERNING THE UPRISING CAUSED THROUGH ENVY OF THESE KNIGHTS WHO WERE FRIENDS OF AMADIS, FOR WHICH REASON AMADIS TOOK LEAVE OF THE COURT OF KING LISUARTE.

This battle between Amadis and Ardan Canileo having taken place as you have heard, there appeared promptly the next day before the king Don Bruneo of Bonamar, and with him many good knights by whom he was loved and esteemed; and he found there the big damsel, who was saying to the king that her brother was ready for the battle, that he should order that one to come with whom he was to fight; and although the vengeance achieved on him would be small in comparison with the worth of that brave Ardan Canileo, since no more could be done, with those poor amends they would be somewhat consoled. Don Bruneo, desisting from answering those insane words, said that he wanted the battle at once. Therefore both were armed at once and placed in the field, each one accompanied by those who wished him well; although with a difference, for with Bruneo there were many esteemed knights, and with Madaman the Envious, for thus he was called, three knights of his company who bore his arms. And as soon as the judges had put them in their proper places for the battle, they ran their horses at each other as fast as they could go. At the first encounter, when they broke their lances to pieces, Madaman went out of his saddle and Don Bruneo carried a part of the lance thrust through his shield and, inflicting a slight wound, into his chest; but when he turned his horse around, he

saw the other with his sword in his hand in an attitude of defense, and he said to him:

“Don Bruneo, if you don’t want to lose your horse, dismount from it or let me mount mine.”

“This and whatever you like,” said Don Bruneo, “for that I shall do.”

Madaman thinking it would be better to fight on foot than on horseback, because of his own bulk and the other’s slighthness of build, said to him:

“Since you leave it to me, dismount and let us have the battle on foot.”

And Don Bruneo pulled to one side and dismounted, and they began a fierce battle, so that in a short space of time their arms were rent in many places and their flesh cut, from which much blood flowed, and their shields demolished on their arms, with slashings from them littering the ground.

And when they were thus engaged in this very great battle crush, which you are hearing about, a strange thing occurred by which it seems that in animals there is an understanding of their masters, for the horses, which had remained loose on the field, having gotten together, began a battle of biting and kicking with such persistence and animosity that all were greatly astonished at it; and it lasted until Madaman’s horse, not being able to stand it any longer, on fleeing before the other, leaped with great fear over the chains by which the field was enclosed; which those who desired the victory of the battle for Don Bruneo took as a good omen. And again paying attention to the battle of the knights, they saw that Don Bruneo was harassing his foe with great hard blows, so that he drew aside and said:

“Don Bruneo, why do you drive yourself so hard? Isn’t the day long enough? Restrain yourself a bit and let us rest, for if you consider your arms and the blood that is flowing from your wounds, you will really need to do so.”

“Madaman,” said Don Bruneo, “if our battle were of another kind and not from such great enmity, then you would find in me complete courtesy and tolerance; but in view of the extreme arrogance that up till now you have shown, if I were to comply with what you ask for, it would cause your fame and worth to be

discredited; therefore it is not for anything good that I may get from you, but in order that by overcoming you I obtain more glory, that I do not wish to afford an opportunity for your weakness to be manifest; and be on your guard, for I shall not let you rest."

Then they attacked each other as before; but it was not long before Don Bruneo, showing the great strength and zeal of his heart, rendered Madaman so weary that his only concern was to defend and protect himself from the blows; and since he was not able to endure them any longer, he retreated as far as he could toward the sea, thinking that there among some rocks he might be able to defend himself. But seeing the distance down to the sea so great and so frightening, he stopped; and Don Bruneo, who was following him, came up and caught him at such close quarters that he could not defend himself, and he struck him with the shield and with his hands pushing him so hard that he hurled him down from such a height that he was smashed to bits before reaching the water. Then he knelt, thanking God for that great favor he had done him. When Mataleza, the huge damsel, saw this, she came on the field, running as fast as she could, and reached that great precipice with considerable effort, and saw how the waves of the sea were carrying to and fro the blood and flesh of her brother. Then, picking up his sword, which had fallen there, she said:

"Here, where the blood of my uncle Ardan Canileo and that of my brother remain, I wish mine to stay, so that my soul be united with theirs, there wherever they may be."

And thrusting the point of the sword into her body, she allowed herself to fall backward over that cliff so that she was completely destroyed. This affair having ended thus, Don Bruneo, mounting his horse amid great praise from the king and from all those who were there, accompanied by many of them, went to Amadis's quarters, where on a luxurious bed beside his and Angriote's, his wounds were treated along with theirs. There they were frequently visited by knights, as well as by many ladies and maidens, for the purpose of affording them relaxation and pleasure.

But Queen Briolanja, with the consent of Amadis, on seeing that his incapacity would be prolonged, and receiving permission

to leave from him, departed for her kingdom. But first she wanted to see the marvels of Firm Island and to test herself in the forbidden chamber, and she took Enil with her to show her everything; and she promised Oriana to let her know about everything she found there and what happened to her, which will be told later.

And at this juncture, as the story seeks to proceed, you will be able to see how little the strength of the human mind suffices when that high Lord, with slackened reins, and lifted hand withdrawing His grace, permits the judgment of man to exercise its powers freely; whence it will be manifest to you whether great estates, high dominions can be won and governed with the prudence and diligence of mortal man; or if when divine Grace is lacking, great pride, great greed, a throng of armed soldiers are enough to maintain them. Now you have heard how King Lisuarte when a prince, possessing only his arms and horse, with some few servants, going about as a knight errant seeking adventures, on arriving in the kingdom of Denmark, Fortune, which wished it thus, by that princess Brisena, daughter of that king—who on account of her beauty and surpassing virtue, was much esteemed and sought after by many knights and men of high degree, she casting them all aside—was greatly beloved, she choosing him from among all of them for her husband. This was the first good fortune that he had, which among the worldly ones should be accounted one of the best. Then his good fortune not being content with this, the all-powerful Lord wishing it, Falangriz his brother, king of Great Britain, had departed without heir from this present life; therefore without very much delay this disinherited prince is made king, not like those of his time who only with their own natives, with their own realms were content, but winning and dominating those of others, there coming to his court sons of kings and of great princes and dukes, among whom were those three brothers, Amadis of Gaul, Don Galaor, and Florestan, with many others of high rank. Among the emperors and kings of the world he shone above all others, and if his brightness was somewhat obscured by the boon he had promised to the deceitful damsel, which was the cause of his being imprisoned by Arcalaus, it must be attributed more to

his spirit of courage than to carelessness; because at that time, great courage, prowess at arms possessed by kings, princes and great lords, flourished notably in contests with others more lowly, just as one finds among the Greeks and Trojans in stories of antiquity.

Well, what more shall we say of the greatness of this powerful king? To his court came rare adventures, which, having wandered long throughout the world, without finding anyone to bring them to fruition, there to his great glory they were consummated; since there is no reason why the victory of that grievous, frightful battle that he had with Cildadan should remain in oblivion, where so many strong and sinister giants, so many valiant knights of their blood and others of very high rank and very renowned throughout the world, by his great effectiveness and courage and that of his men, were killed and destroyed. And then in a short while that powerful and famous Ardan Canileo, who through all the lands where he went never found four knights to stay with him in the field, was overcome and killed in the court of this king by one single knight.

Then, shall we say now that this good fortune which he had, caused this king to be as he was, very gracious, very humane, and very frank and courageous? Certainly in some way one could think so, if in it all he had learned how to govern, and if with such a slight cause most of it had not been undone and cast aside as you now shall hear; whence one ought to believe that when someone is provided with much good fortune and his judgment and prudence are not enough to preserve it, it should not be attributed to him, but to that very high and mighty Lord who to whomsoever he pleases gives it with such secrecy that it would be the greatest folly for us to try to fathom it.

Now know you that here in this court of this King Lisuarte there were two old knights who had served King Falangriz, his brother, for a long time, so that with that old upbringing more than with virtue or good astuteness, their increasing years giving them authority, they were placed in the council of King Lisuarte. One of them was called Brocadan and the other Gandandel. And this Gandandel had two sons who were considered valued knights before Amadis and his brothers and those of his lineage had come, but the exceeding excellence and vigor of the latter had placed

in oblivion the fame of those two knights; over which their father Gandandel, having great anguish in his heart, brooded so deeply, that not fearing God or considering the faith that he owed his lord the king, or the honors and favors received from Amadis and from his family, sought for his own private honor and advantage to endanger and obscure the general good, to which he was most obligated, by plotting and fabricating in his evil heart a great act of treason in the following manner. Speaking one day to the king, he said:

“Sire, it is necessary for us both that you hear me secretly, because for a long time I have refrained from speaking to you, thinking that the matter would be remedied in some other day; whereby I realize that I have greatly wronged you, because, in proportion as the evil increases each day, it is very necessary to take counsel with you.”

When the king heard this, he wanted to know what the matter was, and took him to his private room without anyone else being there; and he said to him:

“Now tell me whatever you wish.”

And Gandandel said to him:

“Sire, I have always had the desire to protect my soul and my honor, and—thank God—not to do anything bad even though it were possible! Therefore I am very free and without prejudice, so that my judgment may uninterruptedly give advice in your interest, and you, sire, do that which most befits it. And because I understand that I would wrong God and you if I should remain silent, I decided to tell this to you. Now know you, sire, that for a very long time, there has always been great discord between the kingdom of Gaul and that of Great Britain, and that by right that kingdom should be subject to this one, recognizing it as sovereign as all its neighbors do; and this is a sickness for which health does not come until a just conclusion of this matter. Now I have seen how, Amadis being not only a native from there but also the outstanding lord of his family, they have established themselves in your land so authoritatively and with such great fondness on the part of your natives that it seems to rest only with them to rise up in insurrection as if Amadis were the rightful heir of it. It is true that I never received

from this knight and from his brothers anything but much honor and pleasure, for which I am obligated to them with my person and sons' estate. But may it never please God that I be so obligated with what is yours, for you are my lord and native-born king; rather do I have to subordinate their interests and mine to the least of yours, because otherwise in this world I would fall into an evil way and in the other my soul into hell. Therefore, my lord, I have told you what I was obligated to tell you, discharging what I owe you; command it to be remedied in time before the delay brings greater danger, for in view of your greatness, you may live more honored and trustingly with your own people, than with those from other countries who are opposed to your natives, you being in great danger with reference to your status, although at present it may seem otherwise."

The king said to him, without any manifestation of irritation about it:

"These knights have served me so well and so greatly to my honor and benefit that I can think nothing of them but good."

"Sire," said Gandandel, "that is a sign to which you ought to pay least heed, because if they were to do you an ill turn, you would be on guard against them, as against foes; but services have hidden and concealed in them the deception of those who finally would not be able to refuse what in a feudal sense is natural, as I have already said to you."

At this which you hear, the conversation stopped, because the king did not make further reply. But this Gandandel spoke then with the other old knight whose name was Brocadan, and who was his brother-in-law and in agreement with his evil designs; and by telling him all about his interview with the king, he involved him in the same matter; thus with what both of them said, alleging it was all for the good of the realm, the king was stirred to great resentment against those who thought only to serve him, forgetting that great danger from which Don Galaor had delivered him when he was a prisoner in the hands of the ten knights of Arcalaus; and the other danger from which he was rescued by Amadis, at the time calling himself Beltenebros, when Madanfagul, the fierce giant of the Vermilion Tower, was carrying him off to the ships, taking him from his saddle and

holding him under his arm; for in each one of these episodes one can rightly say that his life was restored to him along with all his dominions.

Oh, kings and great lords who govern the world, how pertinent and appropriate for you is this example, so that, remembering it, you may entrust your confidence to men of good conscience, of good will, who without deceit and without malice will tell you the facts pertaining not only to your service alone but to your service in relationship to your salvation, banishing from your presence men like Brocadan and Gandandel and many others of this ilk, who go about your courts scheming and striving with great flattery, with much concealed deceit to move you away from the service of that Lord of yours whose ministers you are, merely in order that they and their sons may obtain honors and advantages, as these evil men have done! Look out, look out for yourselves, observe that those who are entrusted with great dominions must render to that Lord who gave them to them a very good and detailed accounting; and if not, that glory, that command, and the many delights that you have had in this world, in the other where you have to endure without end, your souls will be afflicted and tormented by much anguish and suffering. And not only in such endless postponement will you be left, but also in this world where honor and fame are so esteemed by you, and where your minds are so concerned to maintain them, from them you will be brought down as this King Lisuarte was, he believing in and trusting more to the words of those known to harbor evil deeds than to what he saw with his own eyes, to the great discredit and dishonor of his court, without his obtaining any remedy for it as long as he lived. And if Fortune from here onward granted him a few victories, it was in order that, by falling from higher places, his spirit might be tormented by greater anguish and pain.

Then returning to the story, I say that those words said to the king had such force that that great overflowing love he had with much cause and reason for Amadis and his relatives, with great injustice was not only chilled, but abandoned in such wise that without more accord or taking counsel, he was longing to see them gone from him; so that immediately he discontinued

the conversing and visiting with Amadis that had been his wont while Amadis lay wounded in bed, passing some times by his dwelling without remembering to inquire how he was nor to speak to the knights who were in his company; who, on seeing such novel and strange behavior on the king's part, were greatly astounded, and sometimes talked about it in front of Amadis. But he, believing, since he was so devoted to the king's service, that the latter was equally favorable to him, attributed this neglect to preoccupation with other matters and concerns, and thus he explained it to those who suspected that it was otherwise, and especially to his great and loyal friend Angriote of Estravaus, who more than any other showed himself distressed about it.

While matters were at such a pass as you hear, King Lisuarte commanded that Madasima and her maidens be called, and the old giant and his sons, and the nine knights that he held as hostages, and he told them that if they did not surrender to him at once the Island of Mongaza, as it had been agreed, he would have their heads cut off. When Madasima heard this, since her fear was very great, tears in great abundance filled her eyes, and she considered that if she were to give up her land, she would be disinherited, and if she did not give it, she would suffer a cruel death; and not knowing what to answer, she was trembling violently in great anxiety. But that Andaguel, the old giant, told the king that if he were to give him permission and some troops, he would promise him to have the island surrendered to him or return to that imprisonment. The king having considered it good and giving him the troops, he departed from there at once. And Madasima, returning to the prison, was accompanied by many knights, among whom was Don Galvanes Lackland. When Don Galvanes saw those tears falling down over the beautiful cheeks of that maiden, not only was his heart moved to great pity, but casting aside that freedom that he had possessed until then without being captivated by any woman of the many he had seen, suddenly, not knowing in what manner or how, he was subjugated and made captive, to such a degree that without further reflection or delay, within the hour speaking privately with Madasima, disclosing his heart, he told her that if she were pleased to marry him he would contrive that in addition

to saving her life, he would enable her to remain in free possession of her land. Madasima, already having information concerning the excellence of this knight and of his great and noble lineage, granting what he asked, kneeling, sought to kiss his hands in token thereof. Having received this assurance, Don Galvanes, with those enkindled flames ever swelling in his heart, felt them even more and with greater cruelty because he had remained free from such combat for so long; and not many days having passed, putting into effect what he had promised, he went to the dwelling of Amadis. And speaking with him and with Agrajes, his cousin, he made known to them the whole secret of his heart, informing them that if they did not help him in the matter, his life would be imperilled. They, being surprised by such a sudden quirk in a man who was so aloof from any desire for anything of the sort, and so unlike those who were wont to lavish care and thought on such matters, told him that in view of his worth and the great services he had rendered to King Lisuarte, they thought that it would be very easy to arrange that Madasima as well as all of her land be handed over to him, especially if the seigniory remained vested in the king and he as the latter's vassal, and when Amadis was able to mount his horse, he would go and settle it with the king.

In the meantime that trouble-maker Gandandel went often to see Amadis and showed great affection for him; and each time that they talked of the king, he always said something about how the king appeared to him to be very cool in his regard for Amadis, and that he should be careful lest some harm befall him on account of it, for which he would be very sorry because of being greatly indebted to him for favors that he and his sons had received from him. But however many subtle things he said to Amadis, he never could move him to any anger or suspicion; and he importuned him so much that Amadis told him with some anger not to speak to him any more about that, for even though everybody in the world were to tell him so, he could not believe that a man so wise and of such great virtue as the king would move against him, for never whether asleep or awake had he ever thought of anything but serving him.

Then, some days having passed during which Amadis and Angriote de Estravaus and Don Bruneo of Bonamar were able to rise from their beds with the great improvement of their wounds, richly dressed they mounted on horseback one morning, and as soon as they heard mass, they went to the palace of the king, where they were well received by all except the king alone, who did not look at them or receive them as he was accustomed to do, which attracted the attention of many; but Amadis paid no heed to it, for he did not think that the king did it with ill will. But that meddler, Gandandel, who was there, laughingly embraced Amadis and said to him:

“At times men are told the truth and won’t believe it.”

Amadis did not reply, but after leaving him, on seeing that Angriote and Don Bruneo were quite aggrieved at having been so discourteously received, Gandandel went to the king and said to him in an undertone, so that no one heard him:

“Don’t you see, sire, the resentment manifested toward you by those knights?”

The king was silent, for he made no effort to reply; and Amadis with complete good will and being without any suspicion of that plot so falsely woven, came up to the king with great humility and taking with him Galvanes and Agrajes, said:

“Sire, we wish, if you please, to speak with you, and at the talk let there be present those whom you may so order.”

The king said that Gandandel and Brocadan would be present. Amadis was very pleased with this because he sincerely considered them his very good friends. Then they all went together to a garden, where the king sat down under some trees, and they near him. And Amadis said to him:

“Sire, it has not been my good fortune to follow you to the extent I should have liked; but even though I do not deserve it from you, trusting in your virtue and great nobility, I want to make bold to ask a favor of you whereby you will be well served; you will be doing what is prudent and right.”

“Surely,” said Gandandel, “if that is so, you are asking for a fine boon, and it is well that the king know what you want.”

“Sire,” said Amadis, “what Agrajes and Don Galvanes and I, who have served you so well, wish to ask is that the Island of

Mongaza, which is under your feudal sovereignty, be given by you to Don Galvanes along with Madasima given to him in marriage; and in this, sire, you will confer a favor on Don Galvanes, who is of such high rank and yet has no seigniority anywhere, and he will render you good feudal service for it and you will be treating Madasima, who by us is disinherited, with compassion."

This having been heard by Brocadan and Gandandel, they looked at the king with expressions denoting disapproval. But for a while the king did not reply, thinking about the great valor of Galvanes and how he had served him and how Amadis had won that land with such great danger to his life, and he well recognized that their request was reasonable, just and honorable. But as his will was corrupted, it afforded no opportunity for virtue to exercise its obligation and he answered as one who was unwilling to do so, and said:

"One is not of good intelligence who asks what he cannot have. I say this with reference to you, because what you ask for, I gave a good five days ago to the queen for her daughter Leonoreta."

This he thought to reply, more to excuse himself, than for its being true as he stated it. Gandandel and Brocadan were very happy about this reply, and showed by their expression that he had answered well. But Agrajes, who was quite quick-tempered, when he heard such a surly answer, and how he excused himself with such scant courtesy, could not remain silent; rather, very angrily he said:

"You really give us to understand, sire, that if we are not worth something for ourselves, our services, according to the way they are appreciated, avail us little. But if I had been believed, our life would have been spent in some other way."

"Nephew," said Don Galvanes, "very little force do services have in themselves, when they are done for those who do not know how to give thanks for them, and therefore men ought to look where their services may be well employed."

"Sirs," said Amadis, "don't complain if the king does not give us what we ask him for, since he has given it away already. But I shall beseech him to give you Madasima, and keep the land

for himself, and I shall give you the Firm Island, where you may pass the time with her until the king has something to give you."

The king said:

"I have Madasima in my prison in order to obtain from her the land, and if not, I shall give orders to cut off her head."

Amadis said to him:

"Certainly, sire, you ought to answer us more courteously, if you please; and you would not do wrong in the matter if you sought to become better acquainted with it."

"If I do not acquaint myself well with you," said the king, "the world is quite large; go out into it and look for someone with whom to become acquainted."

Oh what words so worthy of noting! For even yesterday, we could say, this knight Amadis of Gaul was so beloved by this King Lisuarte, so highly esteemed, held in such favor that he, Lisuarte, thought that both with Amadis's person and with the persons of his brothers and other relatives, becoming lord of the world was merely a matter of initiating the enterprise; having such compassion for the danger to his life when the battle between him and Ardan Canileo was arranged that tears came to his eyes, knowing at that time that his very good sword was lost to him and contrary to that great oath that he had made before his court not to give his sword to any knight, begging and urging him to take it, an action which certainly must not have been motivated without his having abundant love for him, recalling then the great services received from him, that were the cause of the restoration of his life and realm. And now to think that this great love, this abundant good judgment and prudence of his, his knowledge of things were of no avail against a few facile words uttered by an ill-starred man of evil deeds, without seeing any reminders that would certify to him the prevention of all that from being confused and obscured! It seems to me an extraordinary thing and very significant to believe that neither from enemy arms nor from cold poisons so much danger and harm could come to kings and grandees as from ears alone by listening, because that good or evil transmitted to them persuades the heart, and guides the will to a large degree to follow what is just or the opposite. Therefore, great lords, you to whom in

this world so much power is given that it suffices to satisfy your appetites and your desires, beware of wicked men, for since they have little concern for themselves and their own souls, one must believe that they will have much less concern for yours.

Then returning to our subject matter, when that very dishonest and surly reply of the king was heard by Amadis, he said to him:

“Certainly, sire, in my thinking up to now, I did not believe that in the whole world any other king or great lord had such a high degree of understanding of things as you; but since you have shown yourself so foreign and so contrary to my thinking, it is proper that with equally new counsel and mandate we seek a new life.”

“Do whatever you wish,” said the king, “for that is what I am doing.”

Then he arose angrily and went where the queen was, and Brocadan and Gandandel with him, praising him highly for thus having discharged and freed himself from those from whom such great danger could befall him; and he told the queen all that had happened with Amadis and how on account of it he was very happy. But she told him that from his happiness she received sadness, because since Amadis and his brothers and other relatives had been at his court, his affairs always had been promoted and advanced without the opposite being done by any of them, and that if his own judgment was the sole cause of this separation, it had become greatly impaired in the understanding it should have; and if on the advice of some other people, that it probably was through the great envy they had of them and of their good deeds; and that the harm done was not only present but for the future, for others on seeing thus cast aside and ill-recognized the eminence of those knights who deserved such honor and so many favors for their great services, having very little hope for their own, which in the majority of cases were not equal to those of Amadis and his kin, with good reason would begin to flee from him to look for another who might have better understanding. But the king said to her:

“Stop talking any more about it, for I know what I am doing; and say as I have said that you asked me for that land for Leonoreta and that I have given it to her.”

“I shall say it,” said the queen, “just as you command and may God grant that it be for the best.”

With more anger and melancholy than he showed in his face, Amadis went to his dwelling, where he found many good knights who always stayed with him, and he didn't want to tell them anything about what happened with the king until he had spoken with his lady Oriana. And taking Durin aside, he asked him to tell his cousin Mabilia for him that that night it was very important for him to see Oriana, and that at the underground garden passageway, where on a few other occasions he had entered, they should expect him. Thereupon he returned to those knights, and they ate and relaxed just as they were accustomed to do in days past. And he said to them:

“Gentlemen, I earnestly entreat you to be here together tomorrow, because I must speak to you about something very important.”

“Thus it will be done,” said they.

Then the day having passed, and night come, after they had dined and people had quieted down, Amadis, taking Gandalin with him, went to the garden. And entering through that passageway as he had done several times, he reached the chamber of Oriana, his lady, who was waiting for him with a love as loyal and true as that which he bore for her, so that with many kisses and embraces they were united without having any envy of other true lovers anywhere in the world, considering their own love quite peerless. As they lay in Oriana's bed, she asked him why he had sent word to her that it was very important for him to speak to her. He said to her:

“Because of a very strange thing, according to my thinking, that has happened to me and Agrajes, my cousin, and Don Galvanes while in conversation with your father.”

Then he told her everything just as it had happened and how at the end the king had told them that the world was quite large and for them to go through it looking for someone who would judge them better than he.

"My lady," said Amadis, "since thus it is pleasing to him, thus we must do it; for otherwise all that glory and fame that I have won with my delightful memory of you would be lost, to the great discredit of my honor, so much so that in the whole world there would not be such a defamed or such a vilified knight as I. For this reason I beg of you, lady, that no other thing be commanded by you, because just as I am more yours than mine, so the greater share of the discredit which would fall on you, even if it were concealed from everyone else, being to you, my lady, manifest, your heart would always suffer great anguish."

Oriana having heard this, although her heart was breaking, summoned all her resources and said to him:

"My true beloved, with very little reason you ought to complain of my father, because not him but me, by whose command you came to his court, you have served and from me you have and shall have the reward as long as I live. And if some blame can be imputed to my father, it is only that since he doesn't know that you do things at my command, and therefore thinks they are done in his service; this imposed on him the obligation not to reply to you so violently. And although your departure is for me as serious as if my heart were broken into bits, heeding reason more than my desire and the mad love that I have for you, I am pleased that it be done as you ask; since according to the great sway I have over you, it will be in my hand to remedy it, as may be most to my pleasure, and in order that my father, on losing you, may know that all that remains to him will be for him a cause of great discredit and loneliness."

Amadis, when he heard this, kissing her hand many times, said to her:

"My true lady, although up till now I have received from you many and great favors, whereby my sad heart was returned from death to life, this must be accounted as very much greater, in accordance with the great ascendancy that matters of honor have over those of delights and pleasures."

Talking about this and other affairs they spent that night, mingling many tears with their great pleasure, when they reflected on the great loneliness that was awaiting them in the future. But now, as daybreak was approaching, Amadis arose,

accompanied by his very beloved cousin Mabilia and by the maid of Denmark, begging them very humbly to comfort Oriana, and as they acquiesced amid tears, he departed from them; and going to his lodging, he spent all that was left of the night and some part of the day in sleeping. But it now being time, he having aroused from their beds all those knights that you have already heard about, they came to him; and as soon as they had heard mass, all having gathered together on horseback in a field, Amadis spoke to them in this wise:

“It is well-known to you, my good sirs and honorable knights, whether after I had come from the kingdom of Gaul to Great Britain, and my brothers and friends likewise because of me, the affairs of King Lisuarte were enhanced in honor or placed in greater discredit; and for this reason it will be unnecessary to recall these matters to your memory. But I think that it ought to be told and very rightly that both you and I should have expected a large reward; but because fickle Fortune, playing its usual role, muddles and confuses things, on account of some evil counsellors, or perchance the king’s nature being changed by the onset of old age, for some reason or other we have found him quite the opposite of what we thought he was; for he having been besought by Agrajes and Don Galvanes and me, as a boon, for Madasima with her land so that she might be married to Don Galvanes, remaining under his sovereignty and as his vassal; not appreciating the great worth of this knight and his very high lineage, and the great services received from him, not only did he refuse to grant this boon to us, but he refused us with a reply so intemperate and so indecent that on account of its having come out of a mouth so wont to speak truth from judgment normally so discreet, I am greatly embarrassed that you should learn it from me. But, since there’s no help for it, the affair having reached such an ending, you must know, sirs, that at the end of our talk, when we told him our services were poorly recognized by him, he told us that the world was large and that we should go through it and seek some one to appreciate us better. So it is proper that, just as we have always been obedient to him in harmony and friendship, that now we be obedient in discord and enmity by carrying out what he considers good for us to do. It

seems to me proper that you know about this, because it not only relates to us in particular but to everyone in general."

When those knights heard what Amadis said, they were greatly surprised, and talking with each other, they said that their small services would be very poorly rewarded when those great ones of Amadis and his brothers were thus consigned to oblivion; so that their hearts immediately were constrained not to serve the king any longer but to do him disservice whenever they could. And Angriote de Estravaus, as one who intended to have his share of both the bad and the good that might come to Amadis, said:

"Gentlemen, for a long time I have known the king, and I have always seen him very calm in all of his affairs and not aroused except with great cause and just reason; therefore what came over him in talking with Amadis and these knights, I cannot believe, nor will it fit into my thinking that it came from his nature or desire; rather I truly think that some trouble-makers have cut him off from his usual good will and good sense. On that account I do not fail to attribute great blame to the excellence and great virtue of the king, and what I truly think is that I having seen him these past few days, talking more than his wont to Gandandel and Brocadan, and they being false and deceitful, forgetting God and the world, they and their sons thinking to obtain what their evil deeds do not deserve, have caused this change in the king. And so that you may see how the justice of God is carried out, I want to go and arm myself at once and tell them that they are evil and envious, and the great treachery and falsification that they have committed as regards the king and Amadis, and I want to fight with both of them, and if their age excuses them from it, let them each put one of their sons with me alone, to back the evil deeds of their fathers."

And as he was about to leave, Amadis stopped him and said to him:

"My good friend Angriote, may it not please God that your good and loyal body be placed in danger for what is not known for certain."

He said to him:

"I am sure that it is thus, according to what I have known of them for a long time; and if the desire of the king were to speak the truth, I know that he would agree with me."

And Amadis said:

"If you love me, do not concern yourself this time with it, so that the king be not angered. And if these persons that you say, showing themselves to such a degree my friends, have been enemies to me, besides not being able to conceal themselves, they will suffer that penalty that false people deserve; and when it is known and revealed, you will be able to proceed against them with greater reason and cause; and believe that then I shall not prevent you from doing so."

Angriote said:

"Although it be against my will, I shall desist this time, since it pleases you thus; but it will be for later."

Then Amadis, turning to those knights, said to them:

"Sirs, I wish to bid farewell to the king and queen if they wish to see me, and to go to the Firm Island; and to those of us who would like to live in unity there, they shall do us honor, in addition to the pleasure that we shall have, for that land is very delightful, abounding in all things and in good hunting and beautiful women, which are the cause wherever they may be, of pleasure to the most vigorous and proud knights. And in it I have many and precious jewels of great value that will be enough for our needs. There many of those who know us will come to see us, not only men but women, who have need of our help. And there we shall return each time that we please to seek shelter and take restoratives for our hardships. Then together with this, just as in the lifetime of King Perion, my father, as after it, that kingdom of Gaul in Little Brittany will not be lacking to us, for now I have had letters attesting the fact that while he was alive, it was given to me. All of this certainly you can consider as yours. So also I remind you of the kingdom of Scotland which my cousin Agrajes will have, and that of Queen Briolanja, which come what may will not fail us."

"That you can, Sir Amadis, with good reason say," said a knight by the name of Tantiles, majordomo and governor of that

kingdom of Sobradisa, "for that beautiful queen whom you restored to reign will always be at your command."

Don Quadragante said to him:

"Now, sir, bid the king farewell, and there will appear those who love you and wish your company."

"So shall I do," said Amadis, "and I shall long hold in high esteem those who at this time may wish to honor me; it is not for this reason that I say that by remaining with the king to their own advantage do they fail to do so. Certainly I think that such a good lord would not be found at this time either far or near."

The king went by on horseback, and Gandandel who was guarding him, and many other knights; and he was going hunting with falcons. And so he went for a while with them; and not speaking to them or looking at them, he returned to his palace.

CHAPTER LXIII

HOW AMADIS TOOK HIS LEAVE OF KING LISUARTE, AND WITH HIM TEN OTHER KNIGHTS, RELATIVES AND FRIENDS OF AMADIS, THE BEST AND MOST VIGOROUS OF ALL THE COURT; AND THEY PURSUED THEIR WAY TO THE FIRM ISLAND, WHERE BRIOLANJA WAS TRYING THE ADVENTURE OF THE STAUNCH LOVERS AND THAT OF THE FORBIDDEN CHAMBER; AND HOW THEY DECIDED TO FREE MADASIMA AND HER MAIDENS FROM THE POWER OF THE KING.

As Amadis saw the dislike that the king showed toward him, taking with him all those knights he went to take leave of him; and as he entered the palace, and they saw his face changed from what it was accustomed to be, and at such a time that the tables were already set, they all arrived to hear what he would say. And coming before the king, he said to him:

“Sire, if you wrong me in any way, God and you know it, and now I shall say no more, because although my services were great, much greater was my desire to repay you for the honors that I have received from you. Yesterday you told me to go traveling through the world and to look for someone who would recognize me better than you, giving me to understand that what will please you most is that I be away from your court; and since this is what you wish, it is proper for me to obey. I cannot take my leave as your vassal, since I never was yours, nor of anyone else save of God. But I say farewell to that great desire that as long as it pleased you, you had to do me honor and favor, and to the great love that I had to serve and repay you for it.”

And then Don Galvanes and Agrajes and Florestan took their leave; and Dragonis and Palomir, cousins of Amadis; and Don

Bruneo of Bonamar and Branfil, his brother; and Angriote de Estravaus and Grindonan, his brother, and Pinores, his nephew. And Don Quadragante appeared before the king and said:

“Sir, I stayed with you only because of Amadis’s request, wanting and desiring to have his love, since with true reason a way was found that the feeling that I had for him might be set aside to my honor; and since on account of him I was your vassal, for the same reason I shall not be henceforth, for my small services would have scant expectations when he fails with his great services; for poorly you remember how he snatched you from the hands of Madanfabul, from whom no one else was able to deliver you; and of the victory that he caused you to have in the battle with King Cildadan, and of how much blood he and his brothers and other relatives lost there; and how he removed me as an obstacle to you, and Famongomadan and Basagante, his son, who were the strongest giants in the world; and also Lindoraque, the son of the giant of the Forbidden Mountain, who was one of the best knights of any that I knew; and Arcalaus the Enchanter; and to think that all this should be obliterated in your memory, having a bad reward! For if these of us that I mention were against you in that battle, and Amadis had not been on your side, think what might have come to you from it.”

The king replied:

“Don Quadragante, I understand very well from your words, that you do not esteem me; you do not say it for my benefit, nor do you even have with Amadis such a relationship as to cause you to desire his advantage or welfare, but you say what perchance is not so steadfast in your thought as in your speech.”

Don Quadragante said:

“You will say what you please as the great lord you are, but I am certain that you will not influence Amadis with meddlesome words, as others are influenced who finally will recognize their mistake. And whether I be a good friend or a bad one to Amadis, we are close to showing.”

And he withdrew from before the king. And then Landin approached and said to him:

"Sire, in your court I have found no help or restorative for my wounds, except in Amadis; therefore ceasing to be yours, with him and with my uncle, Don Quadragante, I wish to go."

And the king responded:

"Certainly I think that in you we would not have a good friend."

"Sire," said he, "as they are to you, such shall I be, since I do not have to depart from their command."

At this time there were gathered at one end of the palace Don Brian of Monjaste, highly esteemed knight, son of King Ladasan of Spain and of a sister of King Perion of Gaul, and Grandiel, and Orlandin, son of the count of Urlanda, and Grandores and Madancil, he of the Bridge of Silver, and Listoran of the White Tower, and Ladedeoin of Fajarque, and Tranfiles the Proud, and Don Gavarte of Valtemeroso. And when they saw that those knights, for love of Amadis, had taken leave of the king, they all went before him and said to him:

"Sire, we came to your house to see Amadis and his brothers, and to win their esteem; and since this was the principal reason for our being here, so it is the reason for us not to be on bad terms in it."

These knights having taken their leave as you have heard, and no one else remaining, Amadis had wished to bid farewell to the queen; but this was not the king's pleasure because she had always been very much opposed to him in this discord; but Amadis sent Don Grumedan to say his farewells. And leaving the palace he went to his dwelling, and all those knights with him, where they found the tables set and they were served many good viands. And at once they mounted their horses, fully armed, and they probably numbered some five hundred knights, among whom there were sons of kings and counts and others of high rank, not only in lineage but also in great prowess and excellence at arms, for their mighty deeds were known throughout the whole world; and they took a direct route to the Firm Island, and rested that night along a riverbank about three leagues from there, where already by command of Amadis, the tents were set up. Mabilia, who was watching them from one window of the palace, saw them go forth so spruce in appearance, for their arms were

new and fine, and with the brightness of the sun, which was reflected on them, they shone very resplendently. There was not a person who saw them who did not marvel and who did not consider the king unfortunate that such a knight as Amadis should wish to leave there along with those who followed him. And Mabilia went to Oriana and said to her:

“Madam, abandon that sadness and look at those vassals of yours, and let your heart be glad to have such a lover, for if until now by serving your father, he led the life of a knight errant, now out of his service, as a great prince he will show himself to be powerful; all of which redounds to your greatness.”

Oriana, greatly comforted by those words, gazed at them, remedying with her great prudence and discretion that passion and affliction that was tortured by desire and appetite.

There went out with Amadis to do him great honor, King Arban of North Wales, and Grumedan, the foster father of the queen, and Brandoyvas, and Quinorante, and Giontes, nephew of the king, and Listoran the good joustier. These went with him separated from his people, and very sad because of this separation from the king. And Amadis kept begging them to be friends with him to the degree that without burdening their honor, they could be, for he would always hold them in the same degree of esteem that until then he had held them; and even though the king should hate him, not having any just reason for it, they should not hate the king, nor therefore stop serving and honoring him as such a good king deserved. They told him that they would never hate him for any reason, for although they would serve the king with the loyalty to which they were obligated, their hearts would never be separated from loving him.

Amadis said to them:

“I beg you, gentlemen, to tell the king that now it seems clear what Urganda, in his presence, told me: that for the sovereignty that I won for another, I would have no reward except anger and separation from my desire, just as now it has happened to me in my gaining the island of Mongaza for his sovereignty, by which his will was moved in defiance of all reason, against me without my deserving it, as you see. And that such things as

these that just Judge often remedies by rendering justice to each one."

Don Grumedan said that he would tell the king everything just as he bade him, and that cursed be Urganda for being so infallible. And with this they returned to the town, and Don Guilan the Pensive came up to Amadis, and weeping said to him:

"Sir, you well know my situation, that by myself or on impulse I cannot do anything, and I have to follow another's will — the will of that woman on whose account I am placed in mortal anguish and sorrow; by whom this time I am forbidden to go with you; on account of which I am put to great shame, for now I should like to repay those great honors that I have always received from you and from your brothers, but I cannot."

Amadis, who knew about the great and tempestuous love affair of this knight, and how he himself loved his lady Oriana and feared her, embraced him laughing, and said to him:

"Don Guilan, my good friend, may it not please God that a man so good and so understanding as you should be remiss in obedience to your lady or violate her command, nor would I give you such advice, for if so, I would not be your friend; rather I urge you to serve her and carry out her will and that of the king, your lord; for I am indeed certain that with your keeping your loyalty wherever you may be, I shall have you for a friend, as I always have had."

"Now, sir," said Don Guilan, "come what may, I trust in God that you will always have my service."

Then he bade him farewell; and Amadis and his company went that night to the seashore, where they had lodging. And all were cheerful and they were encouraging each other and saying that their having left the king would be a divine favor since the king held their services in such low esteem, and that it was better to find out early that deceit than by wasting any more time in his service. But Amadis's heart although courageous in all other respects, in this separation from his lady was greatly weakened, not knowing or thinking when he could see her. Thus they spent that night very well provided with all that they needed. And next morning they mounted and went on their way straight to the Firm Island.

The day after Amadis and his companions left, the king, after having heard mass, sat down in his palace as he was wont to do and looked about him, and when he saw himself so bereft of those knights who used to be there, he recalled how recklessly he had proceeded against Amadis; and he became immersed in such a deep meditation that he paid no heed whatever to anything else. And Gandandel and Brocadan, who already knew what Angriote had said about them, and who saw the king in such deep thought, were quite frightened, believing that the king was not satisfied with the adverse advice that they had given him concerning Amadis. But seeing that it was no longer possible to annul it, they sought to pursue further their evil designs, for great mistakes suffer from this malady. And they decided to go and prevent those knights from returning to the king unless they were dead; and they then went to him together, and Gandandel said to him:

“Sire, from today on you can enjoy yourself and rest, since you have removed from your service those who could have harmed it, for which you should give many thanks to God; and the affairs of your land and court we shall handle for you with greater concern than for our own. Because, sire, when you reflect on the wealth you were wont to give them, and which now is free and at your disposal, your mind will be greatly at ease.”

The king glowered at them and said to them:

“I am quite surprised by your telling me that I should leave in your hands my land and my court, that I, with all those that I employ am not adequate for it, and you in whom I see no such prudence, think you can succeed in it! And even assuming that you were capable of it, my vassals and those of my court would not be content to be governed by your authority; and concerning what you tell me of that great wealth being left free that I used to give those knights, I would like to know in what way I could use it better that would be to my honor and in my service. Because no wealth is well employed except in the power and value of men, for if what those knights bore away went forth from my hand and power, my honor was well protected and my sovereignty increased, and in the end everything was returned to my hand; therefore wealth that is employed where it should be,

rests in a good treasury where it is never lost; and on this matter I do not wish you to speak to me, for I shall not take your advice."

And rising to his feet between them, giving orders to call the hunters, he went to the country; and they remained quite frightened by that answer, seeing that already the king was reflecting on the evil counsel they had given him.

At this time there arrived a maid of Queen Briolanja's, who came with her message to Oriana to let her know what had happened to her on the Firm Island, whereat they were quite pleased, because that queen was dearly loved by them. And then she said to Oriana:

"Lady, I have come to you sent by Briolanja to tell you about the wonders she found on the Firm Island, and she has desired that you be informed by me, for I saw them all."

"May God give her long life," said Oriana, "and good fortune to you for the trouble you have taken."

Then they all came to see what she would say; and the maiden said:

"Lady, know you that Briolanja arrived with all her retinue, just as she went from here, at that island, where she stayed five days; and immediately she was asked whether she would try the chamber and the arch of love, and she said that those two tests she wanted to leave for the last; and they took her at once a league from the castle to some very beautiful houses, which on account of being situated in a very luxurious, delightful place were some of the famous and principal residences of Apolidon. And as soon as the dinner hour came they took us to a large, very beautiful and marvelously wrought room, and at one end of it was a large cave, very deep and very dark, and so frightful to look at that no one dared approach it. And at the other end of that very large palace hall was a very beautiful tower, from the windows of which one can see all the things that are done in that room, and they made us all go up there; where we found the tables and daises placed near the windows, and there the queen and ourselves were very well served with diverse viands by matrons and maidens. And below in the palace hall, as you have heard, the knights and the rest of our people ate, and they were served by knights of the land; and when they placed before them the second

course, they heard very loud hisses in the cave, and hot smoke belched forth, and it was not long before a huge serpent came out and took a position in the center of the hall with a display of ferocity so frightful that nobody dared look at it; and it emitted abundant smoke through its mouth and nose, and it lashed its tail so hard that it made the whole palace shake. And then after it there came forth from the cave two huge lions, and they began between themselves such a fierce and evil battle that no human heart remained there unterrified. Then the knights and the other people, leaving the tables, came out of the palace hall as quickly as they could; and although the windows through which Briolanja and ourselves were looking were very high, not on that account did we fail to have great fear and fright. The fight lasted a half hour, and finally the lions were so tired that they stretched out on the ground as if dead, and the serpent so tired and so weak that it could hardly draw its breath; but after it had rested a bit it took one of the lions in its mouth and carried it to the cave, and returning for the other, it threw them inside and flung itself after them. So they did not appear again the whole day, and the men of the island laughed a great deal at our fright; and making certain that there would be no more that day, we returned to the tables and finished our meal. Thus we spent that day and that night in good lodgings, and next day they took us to another place more delightful than the former, where we spent the day with great enjoyment and a good supply of the things we needed. And when it was time to sleep, they took us to a room surprisingly luxurious and beautiful, where there was a bed of fine and costly bedclothes for Briolanja, and other very good beds for us. And after we had lain down, it being past midnight, for we were very subdued and sleepy, the doors were opened with such a loud noise that we were awakened in great terror, and saw a stag entering the door with lighted candles on its antlers, which illuminated the whole room as if it were day, and half of the stag was as white as snow, and the neck and the head as black as tar, and one antler appeared golden and the other scarlet. And behind it came four dogs of the same appearance as it had, and each one of them was greatly harassing it so that they had the stag in a grievous plight. And behind them came a horn of ivory with

tubes of gold, and it was playing by itself, going through the air as if it went in someone's hand, and it made its own hunting sound, and with it the dogs were stimulated, so that they did not allow the deer to quiet down, for they made it flee from one side to the other of the room, and it was jumping over our beds and making them shake, and sometimes it stumbled on them and fell, and we out of bed in our nightgowns and with hair unbound fleeing before the deer, and some girls hid under the beds. But the dogs did not cease to pursue it as hard as they could; and when the deer saw that there was no shelter in the room, it left through a window, running as fast as it could, and the dogs after it, for which we were all very happy. And taking some of that clothing that was strewn about there, with which to cover ourselves, we gave Briolanja, who was greatly distressed, a smock to put on; and that fear having passed, we had a very great dispute about that disorder in which we saw ourselves. And as we were putting our beds in order, there entered through the door a matron and two maidens with her, and a small girl in front who was carrying candles for her; and she said to Briolanja: 'Lady, what is the matter with you to have arisen at such an hour?' She said to her: 'Friend, such a disturbance as would require a long time to describe.' The matron laughed heartily and said: 'Well, madam, go to bed and sleep, for tonight there will be nothing more for you to fear.'

"With this assurance we arranged the beds and slept for what remained of the night, and next morning early we moved from there and went to a forest where there were big pine groves and beautiful gardens and we were housed in tents on the bank of a stream, and there we found a round house on twelve pillars of marble, with a strangely wrought roof. Between the pillars it was closed with keystones of glass very subtly, so that the one who is inside can see all those outside, and it had some doors wrought with plates of gold and of silver of great and wonderfully rare value. And beside each pillar inside the house was an image made of copper in the likeness of a giant, and the images have very strong bows in their hands, and arrows in them with fiery iron tips as burning and alive as if they had just come out of the fire; and they say that there is nothing that enters there that with

the strength of those arrows and of their fire would not be turned to ashes at once, for the images shoot immediately with the bows, so that they never miss with a shot. And in the presence of Briolanja and ourselves they put there two buck fallow deer and a stag, and immediately the arrows were shot into them; and they having been returned to the bows, the animals remained burnt to ashes. And on the doors of that palace there was an inscription that read: 'Let no man or woman dare enter this house unless he or she be that one who as much and as loyally maintains his love as did Grimanesa and Apolidon who made this enchantment; and it is necessary that they enter together the first time, for if each one by himself does it, he will suffer the cruelest death that ever was seen; and this enchantment and all the others shall last until that man and that woman come who by the great loyalty of their love and the great prowess at arms of the knight shall enter the beautiful enchanted chamber, and there may they be united. And when the marriage of both be consummated, then all the enchantments of this Firm Island shall be ended.' There we were that day, and Briolanja gave orders to call Ysanjo and Enil, and told them that we did not want to see any more except the arch of love and the forbidden chamber; and she asked Ysanjo what that thing was about the serpent and the lions and that of the deer and the dogs. 'Madam,' said he, 'we know only that each day they come out at that hour that you saw them, and they have their fight in that way; and of the deer and of the dogs, I tell you that every night they come to that chamber at that hour that you saw them, go out again through the window, and the dogs behind them, and they go to hurl themselves into a lake that is near here, that we believe comes from the sea; and I do not know, madam, any more to tell you, except that in a year you would not be able to finish seeing the great marvels that there are on this island.' Then morning having come we mounted our palfreys and returned to the castle; and Briolanja went at once to the arch of loyal lovers and entered by the defended columns like one who had never once erred in her love. And the image made a very sweet sound with the trumpet, so much so that it made all of us swoon; and as soon as Briolanja went within where the images of Apolidon and Grimanesa were, the sound

stopped with a very sweet final note that was a marvel to hear; and there she saw those images as beautiful and fresh as if they were alive. So that though she was alone, she found herself well accompanied by them; and then she saw on the jasper the freshly inscribed letters that read: "This is the name of Briolanja, daughter of Tagadan, king of Sobradisa; this is the third maiden who has entered here." And then she decided to leave because of her great fear of seeing herself alone, for none of her retinue could enter there. And having come forth from there, she went to her lodging, and on the fifth day she went to try the forbidden chamber and went dressed in a very wondrously splendid costume, and wore nothing on her beautiful hair but a very handsome gold barrette set with precious stones; and all those who saw her there said that if she did not enter the chamber, there was no other woman in the world who would complete the test, and that from that time on there would be an end to all those enchantments. And she commended herself to God and entered through the forbidden place and passed by the column of copper, and reached the one of marble, and read the letters that were inscribed on it, and passed beyond so far that everybody thought that it was finished; and on coming within three paces of the door of the chamber, three hands took her by her beautiful, precious hair and drew her from the field most pitilessly. Just as the others, they expelled her from the forbidden place, and so badly buffeted that we could not at first revive her."

Oriana, whose heart was depressed and sad with what she had heard previously, became very happy, and she looked at Mabilia and the maid of Denmark and they at her, and they were quite pleased; and the maiden said:

"That day, madam, we spent there, and the next day Briolanja departed for her kingdom."

And as soon as the news had been thus related, the maiden left to go to her lady, and she bore with her the regards of Queen Brisena and of Oriana, and of the other ladies and maidens.

Amadis and his companions, who left the court of King Lisuarte as you have heard, reached the Firm Island, where they were received with great pleasure and joy by all the dwellers of the island; because just as with great sadness that they had lost

their new lord, so in having recovered him, their heartfelt pleasure was doubled. And when those knights who came with him saw the castle which was so strong, and that the island had no other entrance except through it, and was so abundant in land, and as delightful as they had heard, and populated by so many and such good people, they said that it was adequate for waging war from there on everybody in the world. And they were at once lodged in the chief town, which was below the castle.

And know you that this island was nine leagues long and seven leagues wide, and it was entirely populated, with urban areas and other fine dwelling places of knights of the land. And Apolidon had built in the most delightful places, four dwellings for himself, the rarest and most luxurious ever to be seen. And one was that of the serpent and the lions, and another that of the deer and the dogs; and the third, which was called the revolving palace, was a house that three times a day and another three times at night revolved so swiftly that those who were in it thought that they were sinking. The fourth was called Tower of the Bull because each day a fierce bull came out from an old underground passage and charged at people as if it wanted to kill them; and with everyone fleeing before it, it would break down with its strong horns the iron door of a tower and go inside. But in a short while it would come out very gentle, with an old monkey riding on it, so wrinkled that its skin hung down in folds on each side; and this monkey by lashing the bull with a whip, would make it return to the cave from whence it had come. All those knights took great pleasure and delight in watching these enchantments and many others that Apolidon had created out of love of affording pleasure to Grimanesa, his mistress; so that they always had something on which to spend their time. And all were very steadfast in their affection for Amadis and determined to follow him in everything that he might will to do.

Then at this time of which you hear, there arrived there the hermit Andalod, the one who was living on the Poor Cliff at the time Amadis was there; he came to set up the monastery of which you have heard. And when he saw Amadis, he gave many thanks to God for having restored life to such a good man, and he gazed at him and embraced him as if he had never seen him.

And Amadis kissed his hands, thanking him with great humility for the health and the life he had had through God and through him; and a monastery was then founded at the foot of the Cliff in that hermitage of the Virgin Mary, where Amadis, greatly despairing of his life, with great sorrow in his heart on account of the letter that his lady Oriana had sent him, said his prayer and was going to be lost, as has already been told you; and in which monastery there remained a good man whom Andalod had brought, Sisian by name, and thirty friars with him. And Amadis issued orders to give them the amount of income needed for them to live comfortably, and Andalod returned to the Poor Cliff as before.

Then there arrived there Balays of Carsante, the one whom Amadis had taken out of Arcalaus's dungeon, who had gone to say farewell to King Lisuarte, when he found out that Amadis was leaving him, unhappy; also there came with him Olivas, the one whom Agrajes and Don Galvanes had helped in the battle with the Duke of Bristol. And they asked Balays for news of the court of King Lisuarte. And he said:

"There is plenty of news that one can tell." Then he told them: "Know you, sirs, that King Lisuarte has sent orders that all his troops be with him at once, because Count Latine and those he sent to take the island of Mongaza informed him that the old giant had given them all the castles that he and his sons had in their power, but that Gromadaza does not want to give the Boiling Lake, which is the strongest castle there is on the whole island, and three other very strong castles. And know you that Gromadaza has said that never as long as she lives will she give up that one where she already was with her husband Famongomadan and Basagante, their son, and that she will die rather than surrender them, and that he will always receive great offense from her; and that as regards her daughter Madasima and her maidens, he do what he considers good, that she would give very little for them or for their lives, though their loss might cause her some sorrow. Hence I say that thus one can take as an example how rigorous and strong is a woman's heart when angered, seeking to leave those suitable things for which she was engendered, for as her nature does not succeed in doing so, it follows that her

scanty intelligence can provide little that is fitting; and if some woman be found who belies this, it is through the immense grace of the very high Lord in whom is all power, who without any halt can guide things where it pleases Him most, forcing and opposing all the things of nature."

After Balays told them this news, they asked him what the king had said or what he was about to do; and he said to them:

"He is gathering together his strength as I have already told you, and he has sworn that if he did not get the castles that Gromadaza had, within a month, he would behead Madasima and her maidens, and that then he would advance upon the Boiling Lake and that he would not leave it until he had taken it; and that if he had the old giantess in his power, he would have her thrown to his very fierce lions."

This news having been heard by them, they were very angry; and they had those knights lodged, and they talked a great deal about the matter. But Don Galvanes, who did not forget the promise made by him to Madasima, and the great anguish and sorrows by which his heart was tormented on account of his love, said to them:

"Good sirs, you all well know that the chief reason why Amadis and ourselves left the king was on account of Madasima and myself; and I earnestly beseech you all to be my helpers so that I may be able to redeem the word that I left there, which was to defend her with good arguments and if arguments are of no avail, to defend her by force of arms; which with God's help and yours I intend full well to do."

Don Florestan stood up and said:

"Don Galvanes, others are here more learned and of better counsel than I, whom you have to protect Madasima, and if one can defend her through reason, this would be best; but if combat is necessary, I shall take it in the name of God in order to defend her and keep your word."

"Good friend," said Don Galvanes, "I thank you as much as I can, because you well demonstrate that you are my loyal friend; but if one must free her by means of arms, it is fitting that I carry that out, for I promised to do so and I shall undertake it."

"Good sirs," said Brian of Monjaste, "You both speak very well, but we all have a share in this deed; what happened to Amadis with the king was to give us all to understand in what esteem we were held, and what happened to him and to you, Don Galvanes, thus could have happened to any one of us who was there; and if we didn't take further action concerning this act, great discredit would accrue to us all, even though the chief cause be Amadis's; for, since we left together and thus we are, what belongs to each one of us belongs to us all, so that in this there is nothing divided. And leaving aside our own cause, Madasima is a maiden, one of the good ones of the world, and she is in danger of losing her life, and her maidens likewise; and as the principal business of the order of chivalry is to help such women, I tell you I shall strive for them to be defended with reason; and when this fails, it will be with arms, to the full extent that my strength may suffice for it."

Don Quadragante said:

"Certainly, Don Brian, you speak as a very highly placed man, and so I believe that you will fight much better, for this business pertains to us all, and we should so take it that we be regarded as men of good faith, and at once without any more delay, because often it happens that good will helps little with delay, since the deed cannot be accomplished at a time that it may be useful. And remember, sirs, that those maidens are wretched, forsaken, and that not by their own will were they thrown in prison, but on account of that obedience that Madasima owed to her mother; so that, although from a worldly point of view the king has something against them, in the eyes of God, not a thing, since they were condemned more by force than by their desire."

Amadis said:

"I am quite pleased, gentlemen, to hear what you are saying, because when things are considered with love and harmony, only a good outcome may be expected; and if thus your strong and brave hearts in the future as in the present hold to it, not only for the aid of those maidens do I have high hopes, but for passing on to other equally great concerns, for no knights in the world could be equal to you. And since all of you are participating in

this rescue, if you please I shall tell you my opinion of what ought to be done."

They all begged him to tell it. Then he said:

"The maidens are twelve. I should consider it good that they be rescued by twelve of you knights by reason and by arms, each one his own, either together in one body if possible, or separated if the necessity arises; and I am quite certain that all of you who are here, in accordance with your great strength would take this adventure as a delight and a pleasure; but it cannot be, since more than twelve they cannot be; and these I wish to name, the others and I myself being left for matters of greater danger that may befall to us."

Then he said:

"You, Don Galvanes, will be the first, since the affair is chiefly yours, and Agrajes, your nephew, and my brother Don Florestan, and my cousins Palomir and Dragonis, and Don Brian of Monjaste and Nicoran of the White Tower, and Orlandin, son of the Count of Urlanda, and Gavarte of Valtemeroso, and Ymosil, brother of the Duke of Burgundy, and Madancil of the Silver Bridge, and Ladaderin of Fajarque. These twelve I consider good to go on this matter, because among them are sons of kings and queens, and of dukes and of counts, of such high lineage that they can find no one there of whom they are not peers."

All were very pleased with what Amadis had said, and the ones named went at once to their dwellings to prepare the things suitable for their departure, which was to be early the next morning; and that night they all lodged with Agrajes, and at midnight they were armed and on horseback, and on their way to Tasilana, the town where King Lisuarte was.

CHAPTER LXIV

HOW ORIANA FOUND HERSELF IN GREAT DISTRESS ON ACCOUNT OF THE DEPARTURE OF AMADIS AND THE OTHER KNIGHTS, AND MORE SO ON FINDING HERSELF PREGNANT; AND HOW TWELVE OF THE KNIGHTS WHO WERE WITH AMADIS ON THE FIRM ISLAND CAME TO PROTECT MADASIMA AND THE OTHER MAIDENS WHO WERE PLACED WITH HER IN DANGER OF DEATH WITHOUT HAVING ANY JUST REASON AS TO WHY THEY SHOULD DIE.

It has been related to you how Amadis was with lady Oriana in the castle of Miraflores during the period of a week apparently; from that union Oriana was made pregnant, which was not known or perceived by her as a person who knew little about such matters, until the great change in her health and the weakness of her person had already made it manifest to her. And when she realized it, she drew Mabilia and the maid of Denmark aside, and weeping, said to them:

“Alas, my good friends! What will become of me? For as I see it, my death has arrived, which I always have feared.”

They, thinking that she said it because of the departure of her lover and her yearning for him, comforted her as they had done until then. But she said:

“Another misfortune along with that one has come upon me, which places us in greater risk and danger. And this is that truly I am pregnant.”

Then she told them the signs by which they should believe it, so that they knew her suspicion to be true; at which they were quite frightened, although they did not let it be apparent; and Mabilia said to her:

"Lady, do not be afraid, for everything there will be a good remedy; and I have always held the opinion that from such games that is what you would win."

Oriana, although she was greatly troubled, could not keep from laughing, and said:

"My friends, it is necessary that from now on we take counsel in order to help ourselves, and it will be well that immediately I appear more ill and weak, and that I withdraw as much as possible from the company of all women except you, and thus when necessity arises, it will be remedied with less suspicion."

"So let it be done," said they, "and may God direct it; and from now on let us strive to decide what to do with the baby when it is born."

"I'll tell you," said Oriana, "for the maid of Denmark, if she pleases, as a restorer of my anguish and sorrow, will be willing to place her honor in discredit so that mine be helped along with my life."

"Lady," said she, "I have no life or honor except it be by your will. Therefore command, for I will obey unto death."

"My good friend," said she, "such a hope have I in you; and the honor that you now risk for me, I shall have you recover, if I live, increased manyfold."

The maiden knelt and kissed her hands. Oriana said to her:

"Then, my good friend, this is what you shall do: go occasionally to see Balasta, the abbess of my monastery of Miraflores, inasmuch as you go about other matters, and when the time for me to give birth has arrived, you will go to her and tell her that you are pregnant, and beg her that besides keeping it secret for you, she arrange help for what is born, which you will have placed at the door of the church, and that she have it given a good, Christian upbringing; and I know she will do so, because she loves you very much. And in this way what pertains to me will be concealed, and not much is risked in what pertains to you, since it will not be known except by that honorable lady, who will keep it secret."

"Thus it will be done," said the maiden, "and you have taken a very good resolution."

This is enough for now on this subject until the proper time; and let us speak of King Lisuarte. When he found out that the giantess Gromadaza did not want to surrender to him the Boiling Lake and the other castles that we have already mentioned, he gave orders on the advice of Gandandel and Brocadan to have Madasima and her maidens brought before him. And they having come in his presence, he said to them:

“Madasima, you already know that you entered my prison under the agreement that if your mother did not surrender to me the island of Mongaza with the Boiling Lake and the other castles, you and your maidens would be beheaded. And now according to what I have learned from the troops that I have there, she has been remiss in what she promised me; and since that is the way it is, I want your death and that of these maidens to be an object lesson and admonishment to others who may make contracts with me, so that they will not dare to lie to me.”

This having been heard by Madasima, her great beauty and high color acquired a yellow hue, and she knelt before the king and said:

“Sire, fear of death makes my heart much weaker than it naturally is, I being a young maiden. So that I remain devoid of good sense, and my tongue knows not what to answer; and if in this court there is some knight who, upholding justice, will speak for me in consideration of the fact that I was placed in this prison entirely against my will, he will be doing what he is obligated to do according to the order of chivalry: to answer for those women who find themselves in such circumstances. And if there not be such a knight, you, sire, who have never failed matron or maiden in tribulation, give orders that I be given a fair hearing, and let not anger and rage overcome reason, which as king you ought to consider.”

Gandandel, who was eager in his desire for her to die, thinking thereby to augment the enmity existing between the king and Amadis, said:

“Sire, by no means should these maidens be heard, for they have been condemned to death with no other condition, except that that land be surrendered to you, and therefore justice should be meted out without permitting further delay in the matter.”

Don Grumedan, foster father of the queen, who was a very loyal knight and a great authority on all matters involving honor, as one who had had practical experience at arms and with his keen mind had read much on the subject, said:

"That the king will not do, if it please God, nor will such cruelty or excess occur through him; for this maiden, constrained more by the obedience due her mother than by her own will, was involved in this quest, and just as in what is hidden that humility will be thanked by God, so also in what is public the king, as His minister following His teachings, must do so; all the more so because I have learned that within the next three days some knights from the Firm Island will be here who come to plead for the maidens; and if you, Don Gandandel, or your sons, wish to uphold the reason that you here have mentioned, you will find among them those who will answer you."

Gandandel said to him:

"Don Grumedan, if you wish me ill-fortune, I have never deserved it of you; and if you have thus affronted my sons, you well know that they are such as will uphold as knights all that I may say."

"We are close to seeing it," said Don Grumedan, "and for you I do not wish any more evil or good than I see you counseling the king."

The king, although he had wronged Amadis very much against all reason, and might have in his thoughts the intention to annoy him in matters pertaining to him, could not be of such avail that his new passion could overcome that former old virtue of his; and when he heard what Don Grumedan said, he was pleased by it and asked him who the knights were who were coming to free the maidens, and he told them all by name to him.

"There are plenty there," said the king, "of good, smart knights."

When Gandandel heard them named, he was quite frightened and very repentant for what he had said about his sons, for he well saw that their prowess did not equal to any degree that of Don Florestan and Agrajes, and Brian of Monjaste and Gavarte of Valtemeroso; and while the king ordered Madasima and her

maidens returned to the prison, he went to Brocadan, his brother-in-law, with great anguish of heart because things were going very much the opposite of what he had thought at the beginning, and he was receiving the reward that the merits of evil deserve. Here happened what the Gospel says: not to have a thing hidden that be not known; for this Gandandel went with Brocadan to his house in a secluded place to take counsel about the arrival of the knights from the Firm Island, and how before they came they might strive with the king to have Madasima and her maidens killed. Then while Brocadan was there blaming Gandandel very much for the wrong he had done Amadis in alienating the king from him without Amadis's deserving it, and all the other things that had occurred in that wicked business, and showing great concern and sorrow for the wicked counsel that they had taken, fearing to attain quickly the wrath of God and that of the king, while losing their fiefs and their sons, in whose interests they had begun it, it happened that a niece of this Brocadan, being enamored of a young knight, Sarquiles by name, a nephew of Angriote of Estravaus, who, since she was keeping him secluded in a partitioned-off space next to that room where they alone and withdrawn were taking counsel, heard all they were saying and found out all their evil secrets, at which he was quite surprised. And after they left, and night having come, he came forth from there, and arming himself with all his arms in a house outside of the town, where he had left them, he mounted his horse in the morning as if he had come from another direction, and went to the palace of the king, and speaking with him, said:

“Sire, I am a subject of yours and was brought up in your court, and I should like to protect you from all evil and deceit so that you might nor err in your affairs by carrying out the will of others. And it has not yet been three days since I, being in a certain place, heard that some men are seeking to give you bad advice, inimical to your honor and good name; and I tell you not to trust what Gandandel and Brocadan tell you in the matter of Madasima and her maidens, since in your court there are persons who with less deceit will advise you, and what moves me to this you will know and everybody who is here, within twelve days; and if you pay attention to what these

whom I mention will say to you, you can understand immediately that I knew something about it. And, sire, God be with you, for I am going to my uncle Angriote."

"God be with you," said the king, and he remained thinking about what he had told him.

And Sarquiles mounted his horse and by a short cut that he knew, he went as fast as he could to the Firm Island; and with the effort from the journey, his horse arrived weak and exhausted, so that he could no longer carry him. And he found Amadis and Angriote and Don Bruneo of Bonamar, who were riding horseback along the seashore, preparing small boats in order to cross over to Gaul, for Amadis wanted to see his father and mother. And he was well received by them; Angriote said:

"Nephew, what eager desire have you had that you bring your horse in such bad shape?"

"A very great one," said he, "to see you and tell you something it is necessary that you know about."

Then he told how the maiden, whose name was Gandaza, had had him secluded in the house of Brocadan, and all that he had heard from him and Gandandel about the evil deed that they had negotiated with the king with regard to Amadis. Angriote said to Amadis:

"Does it appear to you, sir, that my suspicion was far removed from the truth, although you did not let me bring it to a head? But now, if it please God, neither you nor anything else shall deflect me from causing the great wickedness of those evil men to be made clear; for such great treachery they have done to the king and to you."

Amadis said to him:

"Now, my good friend, you can undertake it with more certainty and reason than formerly, and with that God will help you."

"Then I shall leave here," said Angriote, "at break of day tomorrow, and Sarquiles will go on another horse with me, and you will quickly know about the payment that those evil ones will have for their wickedness."

And they went at once to the dwelling of Amadis, for Angriote was always there with him; and they made ready all

that they needed for the journey. And next day they mounted and went where they knew King Lisuarte was; he was very pensive about the things that Sarquiles had told him, and he waited to see how they could turn out. Then one day Gandandel and Brocadan came to him, and said to him:

"Sire, we are very sorry that you do not think about your own concerns."

"It may well be," said the king, "but why do you say so to me?"

"On account of those knights," said they, "who come from the Firm Island, who are your enemies, and without fear seek to come into your court to rescue these maidens on account of whom you are to have their land; and if you take our advice, before they come these women will be beheaded, and you will send those knights orders not to enter your land. And with this you will be feared, for neither Amadis nor they will dare anger you; because according to the present status of the affair, if out of fear they do not give it up, they will not give it up out of virtue; and this, sire, command to be done at once without more counseling or delay, because things hastily done, like these, cause greatest fright."

The king, who was remembering what Sarquiles said to him, recognized then that he had told the truth in seeing how they were pressing for the death of the maidens, and he did not intend to be carried away by passion; instead he said to them:

"You say two things which are very outrageous and against all reason; one of them being that without any form of justice, I should have the maidens killed. What account would I give to that Lord whose minister I am, if I were to do this? For He put me in his place in order that I might do things justly and in His name as He would do them. And if I were doing wrong and injury in order to put that great fear into people that you talk about, all that, rightly and with reason, would finally be charged to me; because kings who perform cruelties more through desire than through reason, trust more to their own knowledge than to that of God, which is the greatest mistake they can make. Therefore the true and most certain way for any prince to assure himself in this world and in the next is to do things with the

agreement and advice of persons of good intentions, and to think that although at the beginning some delays may arise, in the end, since they are to be guided by the just Judge, the outcome can only be good. The other thing that you tell me, that I send orders that knights not come to my court, would be a very indecent thing in keeping anyone from seeking justice before me, all the more so if it were a question of those quite inimical to me, for it is a great honor to me for it to be in my power to do what they may beg of me, and that they come out of need to submit to my judgment. Therefore I shall do nothing of what you tell me nor do I consider it good advice, and much less what you advise me against Amadis, for which I deserve great sorrow, because never from him or from his lineage did I receive aught but many services; and if they had had anything to the contrary, some others would have known of it or suspected it, but no other proof appears save yours alone. You have advised me very badly, and have done harm to one who never deserved it from you. I, who erred, suffer the penalty and so I believe that you will finally; if you have not adduced the truth, you will not be without the punishment."

And standing up between them, he went away to his knights. Gandandel was very frightened when he saw the king thus and because he knew of nothing whereby he might reinforce what he had said, Brocadan said to him:

"Now is not the time, Gandandel, to turn back, for in an affair so tainted, it would be of little advantage; rather, now with more effort one ought to uphold everything we told the king."

"I do not know how that can be done," said Gandandel, "for a person would not be found who would not say the opposite."

Thus they were turning over in their minds how the mistake they had made might be greater, for this is the nature of evil men.

Next day the king rode forth with a great company after having heard mass; he went out into the country, and it was not long before the knights from the Firm Island arrived, who came for the freeing of Madasima and her maidens. And the king, who saw them coming, moved toward them to receive them, because they deserved it, in accordance with their great excellence

and because he was greatly given to honoring everyone, and they came into his presence with great humility. And their men set up tents in the countryside in which they might lodge, and the king went that far with them; and as he was about to leave, Don Galvanes said:

“Sire, trusting in your virtue and in your good and just ways, we come to ask as a favor that you may be willing to hear Madasima and her maidens, and that they receive justice, and we are here to uphold their rights; and if we are not able to do so with arguments, may it not cause you sorrow, sire, that we uphold it by force of arms, since there is no cause for which they ought to die.”

The king said:

“From today on, go and rest in your lodging, for I shall do everything that I rightly should do.”

Don Brian of Monjaste said to him:

“Sire, we expect you to do what befits your royal station and your conscience; and if some of it be lacking, it will be on account of a few evil counselors who do not protect your honor and reputation; which fact, if it not irk you, I would make known at once to anyone who might say the contrary.”

“Don Brian,” said the king, “if you had believed your father, I well know that you would not have left me for another, nor would you come to reason against me.”

“Sire,” said Brian, “my reasoning is for you, for I don’t tell you to act unlawfully, or to give your support to a few individuals — who perchance will not serve you as well as I — who damage your reputation; and as regards your saying to me that if I had believed my father I would not have left you, I did not leave you, because I never was your man, although I am of your lineage; and I came to your court to seek my cousin Amadis, and when you were not pleased that he be your liege man, I went away with him, not erring a jot in my obligation.”

This which you hear, Brian of Monjaste experienced. The king went to the town and they stayed in their lodging, where they were visited by many friends. As regards Oriana, I tell you that she never left a window from which she watched those who

had such affection for her lover, meantime praying to God that He give them victory in that quest.

That night Gandandel and Brocadan had anguished hearts because they found no reason calculated to uphold what they had begun, but to let it drop now they found to be a greater danger; therefore they decided to go ahead with it. Next morning the twelve knights went to hear mass with the king; and after mass, the king went with those of his council and with many other nobles to a palace, and gave orders to summon Gandandel and Brocadan, and he said to them:

“The arguments that you have always used with me in the matter of Madasima and her maidens it is necessary now that you uphold and convince these nobles that she and the maidens ought not to be heard.”

And he ordered them to be in a place where they might hear them. Ymosil of Burgundy and Ladaderin of Fajarque presented themselves before the king.

“We and these knights who came here ask you as a favor that you order Madasima and her maidens to be heard, because we understand that thus by right you ought to do.”

Gandandel said:

“The right, many are those who discuss it and few those who are acquainted with it. You say that by right these maidens ought to be heard, which by right should not be, since without any condition they committed themselves to death, and thus they entered the prison of the king; the agreement was that if Ardan Canileo were overcome and killed, they would surrender freely the whole island of Mongaza, and if not, that they be killed and the knights with them. And the knights after the death of Ardan Canileo gave up the castles that they had, and Gromadaza does not intend to give up what she has, therefore there is not nor can there be any reason to exempt the maidens from death.”

Ymosil said:

“Certainly, Gandandel, it ought to be unnecessary for you to argue as you have here, before a good king and such knights, since it is to such a degree contrary to what is right, for more because of malice than for any just cause you have said it; because it is manifest to all those who know anything that no matter

what agreement man or woman may enter into, if it is not a matter of treason or treachery, one ought to be heard and judgment rendered according to the blame one may have; and thus it is done in the lands where there is justice, and anything else would be extreme cruelty. And this is what we ask of the king: that he consider it with these nobles who are here, and render justice."

Gandandel told him that that was so unjust that no more could be said, and that the king should judge it, since he had already heard the contending parties. And thus the matter remained; and with the king and certain knights staying there, all the others left. The king wanted very much for Argamonte, his uncle, a very honorable count of high intelligence to present his opinion on the matter, but he deferred to the king, saying that no one knew the law so fully as he, and so said all the others. When the king saw this, he said:

"Since you leave it to me, I say that the reasoning of Ymosil of Burgundy, that the maidens ought to be heard, seems to me well founded."

"Certainly, sire," said the count and all the others, "you decide what is just, and thus it ought to be done."

Then they called the knights and told them of it; and Ymosil and Ladaderin kissed his hands for it, and they said:

"Then, sire, if it be your will, command Madasima and her maidens to come, and we shall save them by valid arguments, or with arms if necessary."

"It pleases me well that it be thus," said the king, "and let the maidens come, and we shall see if they will approve of you."

And then they went for them, and they came before the king with such great fear and so modestly that there was not a man there who did not have great compassion for them. The twelve knights from the Firm Island took them by the hands, and Agrajes and Don Florestan took Madasima. Ymosil and Ladaderin said:

"Lady Madasima, these knights come to save you and your maidens from death. The king wishes to know if you authorize us to be your champions."

"Lords, if the authorization of maidens captive and without fortune, can be granted, we offer it to you, and in God and in you we place our trust."

"Since that is the way it is," said Ymosil, "now let anyone who wishes to speak against you come forward, for if there be anyone, I shall defend you by arguments or by arms; and if as many as twelve come forward, here they will be answered."

And the king looked at Gandandel and Brocadan and saw that they kept their eyes on the ground and in dismay, for they did not respond. He said to the knights of the Firm Island:

"Go you to your lodging until tomorrow, and in the meantime those who may wish to make a reply will take counsel."

Then they went with Madasima as far as the prison and from there to their lodging. And the king took Gandandel and Brocadan aside and said to them:

"Many times you have told me and counseled me that it was just to kill these maidens and that you would defend your position by fair argument; and even, in case of necessity, your sons would defend it by arms. Now it is time for you to do it, for I, because what Ymosil says seems to be fine and just reasoning, shall not command anyone of my court to fight with these knights. Therefore, take measures; if not, the maidens will be free, and I not well advised by you."

And they told him that immediately on the morrow they would come with a message, and they went very sad to their houses. And their decision was to argue stubbornly with good arguments for what they had begun, but not to put their sons into battle because their argument was not valid and they were not as skilled in arms as those knights. But that night came news to the king that Gromadaza the giantess was dead, and that she had ordered the castles to be surrendered to the king in order to set free her daughter and her maidens, and that already Count Latine had the castles in his possession, at which he was greatly pleased. And next day after mass, he sat down where he was to serve as judge, and before him came the twelve knights, and he said to them:

"From today on do not speak about the affair of the maidens, for you are released from it, and Madasima and her maidens are

free from death and from prison, for I already have the castles on account of which I held them prisoners."

Gandandel and Brocadan were very pleased with this, the more so because they were expecting nothing but great dishonor. And the king commanded at once Madasima and her maidens to come, and he said to them:

"You are free and I grant you your quittance. Do whatever you like, for I have the castles for which I was holding you."

And he did not wish to tell her that her mother was dead. Madasima sought to kiss his hands, but the king was unwilling, as one who never gave them to matron or maiden except when he was doing them a favor; and she said to him:

"Sire, since you leave me free, I place myself under the protection of my lord Don Galvanes, who for my sake, together with his friends, has made such a great effort."

Agrajes took her by the hand and said:

"My good lady, you have done what you should do; and although you now be disinherited of your land, you shall have another in which you will be honored until God remedies it."

Ymosil said to the king:

"Sire, if Madasima is given her rights she ought not to be disinherited, for it is known that sons and daughters who are under the control of their parents, although it may irk them, must carry out their orders; but for this they cannot be condemned to be disinherited, since obedience rather than desire renders them obliged to do what their parents wish. And since you, sire, are here to give to each one his rights, you are obliged to do so without reference to yourself in order to offer an example to others."

"Ymosil," said the king, "the maidens you have free; do not speak of the other matter, because concerning that land I have had many annoyances, and now that I have it, I shall defend it; and I cannot take it away from my daughter Leonoreta, to whom I gave it."

Don Galvanes said to him:

"Lord, in that right which is Madasima's to that land which belonged to her grandparents, in that I am involved; and I beg you to remember some services that I have performed for you,

and do not seek to disinherit me, since I am willing to be your vassal and in your good graces, to serve you with it as loyally and as best I am able."

"Don Galvanes," said the king, "Do not speak of that, for already is done what cannot be undone."

"Since that is the way it is," said he, "that neither right nor restraint is of any avail to me, I shall endeavor to have it as best I can, and that it not come under your sovereignty."

"Do what you can," said the king, "for it already has been in the power of others braver than you, and it will be easier to protect it from you than it was to recover it from them."

"You hold it," said Don Galvanes, "because of that person who has a poor reward, who will help me to recover it."

The king said:

"If he helps you, many others will serve me who were not serving out of love for him, for I had him in my court and defended him from them."

Agrajes, who was furious, said:

"Certainly, all those who are here and many others know well, whether Amadis was defended by you, or you by him, although you are king, and he always went about as a knight errant."

Don Florestan who saw Agrajes so angry, put his hand on his shoulder and drew him a little aside and stepped forward and said to the king:

"It seems, sire, that you value more highly the services of those whom you mention than the services of Amadis, for we are close to demonstrating the truth of it."

Don Brian of Monjaste pushed by Florestan and said:

"Although you, sire, hold in low esteem the services of Amadis and of his friends, the services of those who rightly could consign them to oblivion must be of great value."

The king said:

"I well understand, Don Brian, by your appearance that you are one of those friends of his."

"Certainly," said he, "I am indeed, for he is my cousin and I must follow his will completely."

"We shall certainly have here the means to prevent you."

"May everything be needed," said he, "to resist what Amadis will be able to do."

Then knights came from both sides to reply, but the king extended a staff that he held in his hand, and commanded them not to speak any more about that; and they all sat down again. Then came Angriote de Estravaus and with him his nephew Sarquiles, fully armed; and they came up to the king to kiss his hands. The twelve knights were surprised by their arrival, for they did not know the reason for it. But Gandandel and Brocadan were rendered fearful and they looked at each other, as those who knew what Angriote had said about them previously and they thought he came on that account; and although they considered him the best knight in the king's seigniory, they endeavored to formulate a reply to him. And they called their sons to their side, and gave them orders not to say any more than what they might tell them to say. Angriote went before the king and said:

"Sire, order Gandandel and Brocadan to come here, and I shall tell such things about them whereby you and those who are here may know them better than up to now."

The king ordered them to come and everybody drew near to see what that might be. And Angriote said:

"Sire, know you that these men, Gandandel and Brocadan, are disloyal and false to you, that they have counseled you very falsely, not having consideration for you, or for Amadis who gave them so many honors and never wronged them; and they as evil men told you that Amadis was promoting an uprising in the land—Amadis, who never had any thought but to serve you. And they made you lose the best man that a king ever had, and with him many other good knights without deserving it; therefore I, sire, in your presence, tell them that they are evil and false, and that they have committed great treason against you while you were trusting your fortune to them. And if they deny it, I shall fight them both. And if their age excuses them, let them put their sons in the same number in their places, for with the help of God I shall make them recognize the disloyalty of their parents, and have you, good king, so recognize it."

"Sire," said Gandandel, "now you see how Angriote comes to dishonor your court, and this is caused by your permitting to

enter your land those who do not wish your service; and if that had been remedied, the present situation would not have come about. And do not be surprised, sire, if Amadis should come tomorrow to challenge you yourself; and if Angriote had taken me on at the time when I performed great services at arms in a reign other than yours for your brother, King Falangriz, he would not dare say what he said; but now that he sees me old and weak, he makes bold as if to a thing conquered, and this discredit concerns you more than me."

"No, evil sir," said Angriote, "for no longer can your false trouble-making libels, since they are revealed, do any harm; because the situation in which you have placed the king with them should suffice, for I do not come to upset or dishonor his court; rather, from his honor to extract that bad seed that cast the good seed out of here."

Sarquiles said:

"Sire, you well know the words that I have said on this, for not many days have passed, and by them you will know to be true what my lord and uncle Angriote says; which I heard with my own ears — all the evil that these two bad men did to you in making you suspicious of Amadis and his lineage. And if they say it is not so and excuse themselves as aged, let their sons reply, who are strong and young, those three against us two; and God will show the truth, and there it will be seen if they are such as can remove Amadis and his line from your service, as their fathers said."

When the sons saw their father so rightly discredited and that all those of the palace were laughing on seeing him put in such a bad light, they forced their way with great fury through the crowd shoving everyone aside; and when they were in front of the king, they said:

"Sire, Angriote is lying in all that he has said about our father and Brocadan, and we shall fight Angriote for him, and you see here our gage."

And they threw into the king's lap a glove of each of them, and Angriote extended the skirt of his coat of mail, and said:

"Sire, you see here mine, and let them go arm at once; and you, sire, mount and you will see our battle."

The king said:

"Most of the day is already passed, so that there is not time for you to fight; and tomorrow, after mass, be prepared for battle, and we shall put you in the field."

Then there arrived there a knight, Adamas by name, who was son of Brocadan and of the sister of Gandandel; and although he was of huge body and very terrific strength, he was very base in character, so that everyone disliked him, and he said to the king:

"Sire, I say that in what Sarquiles said he has lied, and I shall fight him tomorrow if he dares come on the field with his uncle."

Sarquiles was very happy about this, to find himself in the company of his uncle, and he gave at once his gage to the king, for he wanted the fight. Then the king ordered everyone to go to his lodging; and thus it happened that Angriote and Sarquiles went with the twelve knights, and took with them Madasima and her maidens, who had already said farewell to the queen and to Oriana; and the queen gave orders to give her a luxurious tent in which to stay. The king remained with Don Grumedan and with Giontes, his nephew; and he gave orders to call Gandandel and Brocadan, and he said to them:

"I am very much surprised at your having said so many times that Amadis wanted to commit treason and seize from me the land, and now that proof of it was so necessary, you let it drop thus, and have involved your sons in an affair wherein they do not know what justice they have on their side. You have greatly wronged God and me, and you have done great harm in causing me to lose such a man and such good knights; and you shall not be without punishment, because that just Judge will give it to him who deserves it."

"Sire," said Gandandel, "my sons came forward thinking that the proof would be delayed."

"Certainly," said Don Grumedan, "they thought truly, because there is not, nor will there be, any against Amadis in this matter or in any other in which he is alleged to have wronged the king; and if you suspected it, it was so much against reason that even

the devils in hell would not have been able to think it. And if the king were to cut off your heads a thousand times over, he would not be avenged for the harm that you have done him; but you will remain and God grant that it not be for more evil, and those worried sons of yours will be victims of your guilt."

"Don Grumedan," said they, "although you thus consider it and have wished it, we have hope that our sons will nurture our honor and their own."

"May God not save me," said Grumedan, "if I wished it any more than all the good or bad advice you gave to the king deserves."

Then the king ordered them not to speak any more about it, since it was already useless; and he went to eat, and the others to their houses. That night they prepared their arms and their horses, and Angriote and Sarquiles kept vigil from midnight on in a hermitage of Saint Mary which was near their tents. And at dawn all twelve knights armed themselves, for they feared the king because they beheld him angry with them; and they took with them Madasima and her maidens on their palfreys, each one his own, and Angriote and Sarquiles in front of them, and thus they came through the town and went to the field where the battle was to be, for the king and all his knights and other people were already there, and three judges to judge it. One was King Arban of North Wales and another Giontes, nephew of the king, and the third Quinorante, the good jouter; and they took Angriote and Sarquiles and placed them at one end of the field. And then came Tanarin and Corian, the two brothers, and Adamas, their cousin, and they came on the field very well armed and on beautiful horses, disposed to perform well, if the wickedness of their fathers did not prevent. And each side being arrayed against the other, Giontes sounded a trumpet that he had, and the knights moved at full speed of their horses; and Corian and Tanarin went straight at Angriote, and Adamas at Sarquiles; and Tanarin struck Angriote so hard that his lance flew to pieces. And Angriote struck Corian on the shield so fiercely that he knocked him to the ground over the haunches of the horse; and when he turned to Tanarin, he saw him standing with sword in hand. And as he saw his brother on the ground he went

furiously toward Angriote, and thought to strike him on the helmet; but he delivered the blow too soon, so that he hit the horse hard on the head and cut from it a large piece and the headband of the bridle, so that the bridle fell to its chest. And as he came at headlong speed and Angriote was coming at him likewise, they clashed with their shields so hard that Tanarin went to the ground stunned; and Angriote, who saw his horse thus wounded, jumped from it as quickly as he could, as one who was very agile and brave and had seen himself many times in similar dangers. And when he was on foot he clasped his shield and grasped his sword, with which he had delivered many and great blows at other times, and was going toward the two brothers, who were together, and saw that his nephew Sarquiles was fiercely fighting Adamas a sword battle on horseback; and when he came up to the two brothers, they caught him between them and struck him mighty blows, as knights who were valiant and of great strength. But Angriote defended himself, against one with his shield and against the other with his sword, so that he made them turn about, in such wise that he received no blow squarely that his arms did not deflect to the ground; for, as has been told you, this knight was the best swordsman of all the knights of the king's seigniory, so that in a short while he had them in such condition that their shields were in shreds and their coats of mail rent in many places, from which blood was flowing; but he was not so sound that he did not have many wounds and was losing much blood. Sarquiles, when he saw his uncle thus and that he could not overcome Adamas, sought to risk everything; and he spurred his horse hard and grappled with him, and they struggled thus for a time in tight embrace and each trying to overthrow the other. And as Angriote saw them thus, he came up as quickly as he could against them to help Sarquiles in case he fell underneath, and the two brothers followed him as closely as they could in order to help their cousin. At this point the two knights fell to the ground still in tight embrace, and there you would have seen a great melee: Angriote struggling to help his nephew, and the others, their cousin; but at that time Angriote performed wonders at arms by giving such hard and terrible and sinister blows that however much the two brothers did, they could

not offer enough resistance to enable Adamas to leave the hands of Sarquiles alive.

When Gandandel and Brocadan saw this, for until then they had hope that the strength of their sons would uphold that which with great wickedness they had plotted, they left the window with much pain and anguish of heart. And likewise did the king, for he was grieved about all the good fortune of those who were friends of Amadis, and he did not want to see the overthrow and death of those knights or the victory of Angriote; but all those who were there were quite pleased that in this world those evil men Gandandel and Brocadan should pay something for the blame that they deserved. But the four knights who were on the field thought only of striking each other everywhere mighty blows; however it was not long before Angriote and Sarquiles were tired of so many blows given to the two brothers, who no longer offered any defense, or did anything but retreat while looking for some kind of shelter and not finding it. They would deliver a few blows and again flee, thinking to take an advantage in order to save their own lives. But finally they were overcome, not being able to stand the blows that their foes gave them, and they were killed by their hands, to the great pleasure of the very beautiful Madasima and of the knights of the Firm Island, and even more to that of Oriana and Mabilia, who had never stopped imploring God to give them that victory that they attained. Then Angriote asked the judges if there was anything more to do. They told him he had done enough for the satisfaction of his honor; and withdrawing them from the field, their companions took them, and with Madasima they returned to their tents, where they had their wounds cared for.

Book II of *Amadis* ends

NOTES

Chapter I

Medieval canon law, as Justina Ruiz de Conde has documented in her book, *El amor y el matrimonio secreto en los libros de caballerías* (Madrid, 1948), and to which Lord Fisher, former Archbishop of Canterbury has alluded in a recent publication, according to an Associated Press dispatch from London (*San Francisco Chronicle*, Mar. 12, 1971), conferred a certain legality on unions prefaced by a solemn pledge to wed (as in the case of Elisena's union with King Perion). On the other hand, secrecy was a long-established convention of courtly love. On this, see C. S. Lewis, *The Allegory of Love* (Oxford, 1936), Chapter 1, "Courtly Love."

The knight errant in the sense of a knight traveling about on horseback, accompanied by a squire bearing his arms (i.e., weapons and armor), for the purpose of defending by force of arms the rights of oppressed matrons and damsels ("ladies in distress") probably, with rare exceptions, did not exist in medieval life. On the other hand, knights did participate in tournaments, and when successful against an adversary were entitled to claim the latter's horse and arms. And the knight in the service of his feudal overlord, or as a mercenary fighting man serving a foreign monarch or great lord, was a commonplace. For a somewhat realistic portrayal of these activities, as set forth in an Old French epicohistorical poem, see *Gilles de Chyn* by the thirteenth-century poet, Gautier de Tournay and edited by E. B. Place (Evanston, Ill., 1941).

Chapter II

From the heyday of the Greek philosophers (e.g., Plato) down to the close of the Middle Ages, dreams were commonly regarded

by the erudite as prophetic visions requiring the exercise of a superior intelligence for their interpretation. Compare the allegorical interpretations of dreams and visions set forth in the Bible. On the subject of dreams and their interpretation, see Lynn Thorndyke, *A History of Magic and Experimental Science during the First Thirteen Centuries of our Era* (New York, 1923), vol. 2, chapter 51.

Urganda as a literary type descends directly from Morgan the Fay and the Lady of the Lake of the Arthurian cycle.

Chapter V

Amadis at first blush seems a ridiculous crybaby. But medieval literature affords conclusive evidence that it was perfectly conventional in the Middle Ages for grown men to burst into tears and weep loudly whenever their emotions were deeply stirred. Famed examples are to be found in the Spanish *Cantar de mio Cid* and the French *Chanson de Roland*. As for Amadis's tears at the mere mention of his beloved, this is but a slight exaggeration of a commonplace feature of the literature of courtly love. See C. S. Lewis, *The Allegory of Love*.

Chapter XIII

The man speaking from the castle tower mentions devils who go about at night. This refers to a superstition quite current in the Middle Ages and even later. Compare *Don Quijote*, Part 1, Chapter 31; and Victor Hugo's poem, *Les Djinns*.

Concerning the medieval trial or ordeal by battle and the feudal overlord's exercise of judicial functions (cf. legal connotation of "court"), see H. C. Lea, *Superstition and Force*, 4th ed. (Philadelphia, 1892), pp. 101-246.

Chapter XIX

Anent magic in Spanish literature, see S. M. Waxman, "Chapters on Magic in Spanish Literature," *Revue Hispanique* 28 (1916): 325-463.

Chapter XL

Latterly "Don Alfonso of Portugal" has been tentatively identified as the ill-fated young son-in-law of Ferdinand and Isabella. See E. B. Place in *PMLA* 71 (1956): 525-26, and the works therein cited by him.

Chapter XLIV

The description of the enchanted apartment formerly occupied by Apolidon and Grimanesa includes mention of a type of window nowadays produced by manufacturers of glass without any recourse whatever to magic.

Chapter XLVII

The name "Patin" would appear to be in reality a derisive nickname implying folly or stupidity.